

**The farriers new guide: containing first, the anatomy of a horse. Being an exact and compendious description of all his parts; with their actions and uses: illustrated with figures curiously engrav'd on copper-plates. Secondly, an account of all the diseases incident to horses, with their signs, causes, and methods of cure. Wherein many defects in the farriers practice, are now carefully supply'd, their errors expos'd and ammended, and the art greatly improv'd and advanc'd, according to the latest discoveries / the whole interspers'd with many curious and useful observations concerning feeding and exercise, &c.;, by W. Gibson / [W. Gibson].**

### **Contributors**

Gibson, W. 1680?-1750.

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Printed for William Taylor, 1720.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/kjyqbabu>

### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.







~~B. 6.~~  
~~No. 7.~~

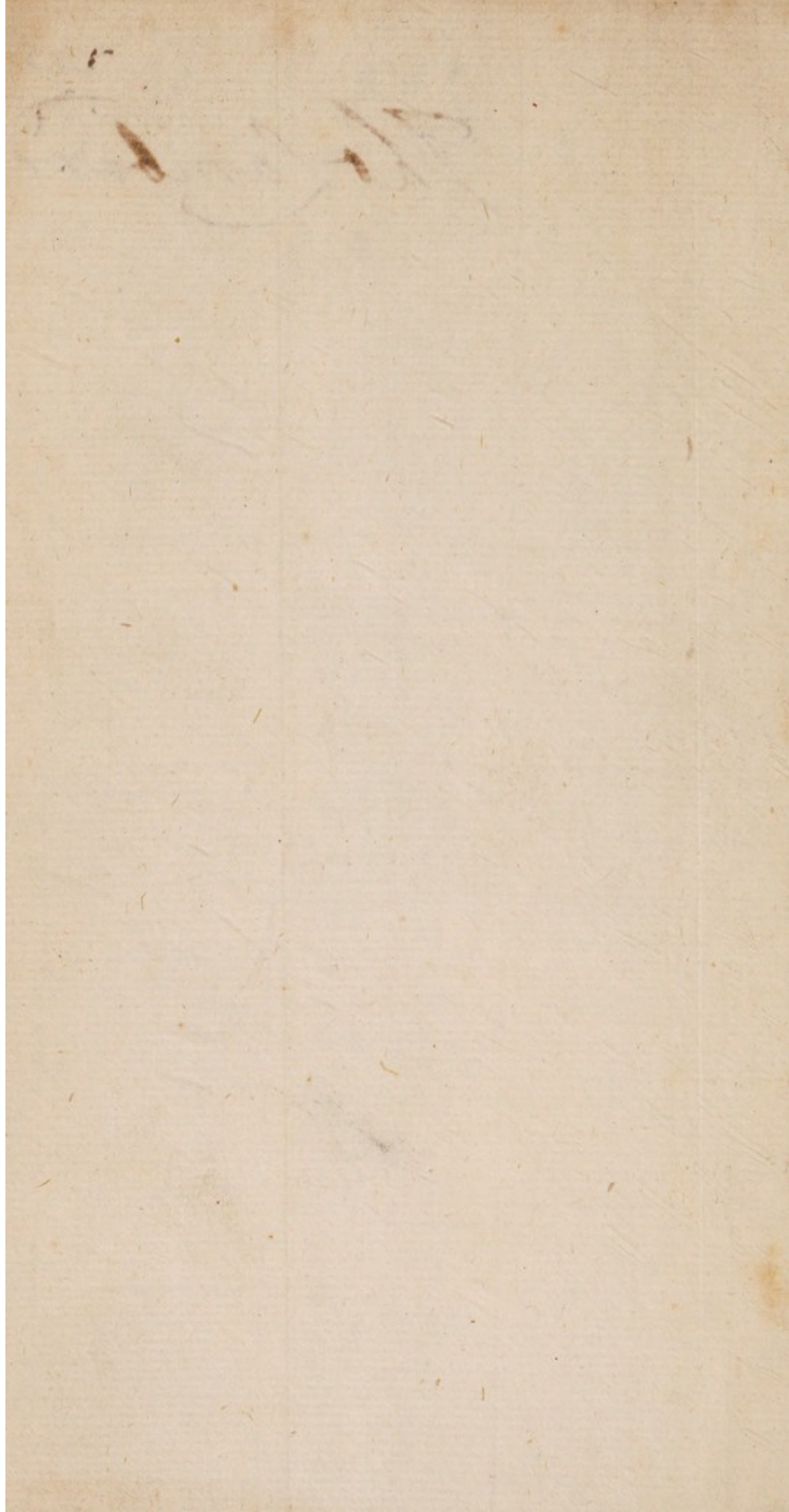
M. xx 18/8


A. 2. 5.

4,552/B

7. 3  
The Lambard







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2018 with funding from  
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b3052975x>



**W** The Hips.  
Hips hot  
Hip strand.

**X** The Flank.  
pursings Broken  
Wind Chest Found  
and Light Belly'd.  
x Navel gall.

**Y** The Reins.  
Swayd Back

**Z** The Withers.  
the Withers galled  
the Shoulder  
Strand.

**A** Diseases of  
the Head  
the Staggers  
Madness &c.

**B** The Diseases of  
the Eyes. Lunatick  
or Moon Eyes.  
Rheums &c.

**C** The Nose.  
Hemorrhage of  
Blood Cold Faln  
Strangles Gland  
ers.

**D** The Mouth.  
Barbs Woolfs-  
Teeth Lampas.

**V** the Fundament.  
Worms Lax or Lo-  
osness Molten Gr-  
eage if falling of  
if fundament.

**T** Stones bruised  
or Hardend  
Swelld or  
Shrunk. &c.

**S** The Yard.  
Painful or Strang-  
ry Pissing Blood

**R** The Hough or hams  
Hough straind Mastis  
Sinner Above the  
Hough hurt Hough  
Bony Spavin Salender  
& Cramp & Hittle hurt.

**Q** The Shank.  
Rats Tails Mules  
Scratches &c.  
Kibd Heels.

**P** The Hind Par-  
terns. Chinks  
& Cravices hard  
Warty Excreescens  
pasterns swelld & gowd.

**O** The Hind Foot  
Figs & other  
Spongy Excreescen-  
ces.

**N** Hoof. & foots ob-  
es paind & Surbaid  
hoof bound hoof  
Perichid Numngs.

Casting of the  
hoof false  
Quarters foot  
Prick'd.

**Table of Diseases.**  
The Letters of the Alphabet  
Directing to the Parts affected.



**E** The Orvet and  
Throat. the Vives.  
Strangler and  
Stag evil &c.

**F** The Counter.  
the Anticor. pal-  
pitation at the  
Heart.

**G** The Bending of  
the Fore Leg.  
Malender &c.

**H** The Shank.  
Windgalls &c.

**I** The Back Sinner.  
ev. Attaint upper  
or over reach on  
& Back Sennerv.

**K** The Heel.  
Attaint nether or  
over reach upon  
the Heel.

**L** The Pastern.  
Ringbone &c.

**M** Coronet.  
Tread or Uleer  
upon the Coronet  
Quitter Bone.



**Instruments & Utensils**



T H E  
**Farriers New Guide:**  
 C O N T A I N I N G

*First*, The Anatomy of a Horse, being an exact and compendious Discription of all his Parts; with their Actions and Uses: Illustrated with Figures curiously engrav'd on Copper-Plates.

*Secondly*, An Account of all the Diseases incident to *Horses*, with their Signs, Causes, and Methods of Cure; wherein many Defects in the Farriers Practice, are now carefully supply'd, their Errors expos'd and amended, and the Art greatly improv'd and advanc'd, according to the latest Discoveries.

T H E  
 Whole interspers'd with many curious and useful Observations concerning *Feeding* and *Exercise*, &c.

By W. GIBSON.



L O N D O N:  
 Printed for WILLIAM TAYLOR, at the Ship  
 in Pater-Noster-Row. 1720.



THE  
Farric's New Guide

CONTAINING

THE Anatomy of a Horse being an  
easy and copious Dictionary of all his  
Parts with their Actions and Uses illustrated  
with Figures engraved on Copper  
plates



Secondly An Account of the Diseases in-  
cident to Horses, their Causes and  
Methods of Cure, wherein many Disorders in the  
Farric's Practice are now generally supply'd  
their Errors exposed and amended, and the  
Art greatly improv'd and advanced, according  
to the latest Discoveries.

THE  
Whole interspers'd with many curious and useful Observa-  
tions concerning feeding and exercise &c.

By W. GISSON.



LONDON  
Printed for William Taylor at the Ship  
in Pall-mall near St. James's 1750.





# THE PREFACE.



AS the general Use and Service of Horses has render'd them more worth the Notice and Regard of Mankind than any other of the Brute Creatures; so there has in most Ages of the World been a more than ordinary Care taken, not only to model and fit them for their respective Services, but also of their Breed and Preservation: And we find Horses were of so great Account with the Ancients, that even *Aristotle*, *Xenophon*, *Pliny*, and others of greatest Genius among them, have bestow'd some of their Labours that Way, being sensible how much a good and serviceable Breed of Horses conduc'd to the Benefit of the Community, both in Peace and War: Neither have the Moderns been less industrious in all these Matters, but have made many excellent Improvements in Horsemanship: For about the Time that Painting, Sculpture, and other Arts, were reviv'd in *Italy*, the Art of Riding, and of perfecting Horses for the Wars, and in all useful and gentile Exercises, was then also cultivated, and afterwards improved by *Frenchmen* who went to *Rome* and *Naples*, on Purpose to be instructed therein. Tho' the Perfection, to which that Art is now arriv'd, is by all the ablest Masters throughout *Europe*, justly ascrib'd to the Noble Duke of *Newcastle*, who was not



## The P R E F A C E.

only himself an excellent Horseman, but the best Judge that ever wrote upon the Subject.

But all this While it does not appear, that there has been any Provision made for the Cure of the Infirmities and Accidents to which that noble and generous Creature is exposed, suitable to what his Services really deserve. For albeit the same Persons, who were the first Improvers of Horsemanship, were no less studious of their Diseases, and were also the first of all the Moderns, who seem to have writ professedly of them ; yet it must be own'd, their Writings are more like Systems of old *Astrology*, than as if they had been composed for the Cure of Horses : Neither can this be thought very strange, if it be considered, that these Authors had no other Means of arriving at their Skill, but by adding from Books of Physick and Surgery, what they judg'd necessary to perfect the common and received Practice of Farriers, which in those Times was of a very masculine Kind, and had been handed down thro' many ignorant Ages, without any other Regulation, than what had obtain'd by Rule and Custom.

Now it is very easy to conceive, how those who are uninstructed in the Principles of any particular Art, may be misled in what they copy and borrow from it ; for as they are not Judges themselves, they will neither be apt to make Choice of the best Authors ; nor can it be supposed, if they did, that they should mend the Matter very much, in a Science so much complicated as that of Physick, &c. and which, by the Ignorance of those and the preceeding Times, was itself embarrassed with many idle and whimsical Dreams, not to be met with, or at  
least



## The P R E F A C E.

v

least not depended on by ancient Writers, and which have been absolutely rejected, since the modern Discoveries have cleared the Way to true Knowledge.

And that this was the Case of these Gentlemen who first put Pen to Paper on the Diseases of Horses, is evident from their injudicious Collections; for in them we have all the Refuse of physical Authors, and most Books that are at this Day extant upon the Subject, have been form'd upon the Writings of these Persons; so that the Cure of Horses seems to be but very little understood; notwithstanding all the Care and Pains has been taken to perfect it.

*Solleysell* was so sensible of this, and of the bad Customs which had obtain'd among the Farriers of *France* in his Time, that it put him upon a more diligent Search into the Business, by consulting the best Authors of Physick and Surgery, as himself takes Notice; whereby he has indeed not only deliver'd a more safe and regular Practice, than any that went before him, but has also introduced Methods altogether new, with a great Variety of Medicines, which before had never taken place in the Diseases of Horses: But yet, for all this, he was himself infected with many of the Errors of his Predecessors; for he is so scrupulous as to Times and Seasons, and so much ty'd up to Custom, that it even renders his Methods very impracticable in many Circumstances; and as he was not rightly acquainted with the *Animal Oeconomy*, he has accounted for many of the Diseases, not from the true Mechanism of the Body of a Horse, but in a speculative and abstracted Way, which is so far from leading any one into the Nature and Cause of Diseases, that it must rather bewilder his



his Pupils, and bring them further into the Dark.

Nor are these the only Things wherein that Author is blameable; but if we examine into his Method of Cure, it is so imperfect and perplexed in many Places by frequent Digressions, that a Man must be well acquainted with the Subject, or at more than ordinary Pains to reap any great Advantage from it: And as to his Medicines, tho' many of them are, no doubt, extraordinary good, and very well adapted to their several Intentions: Yet it is very plain, he has inserted a Number of others with long and tedious Encomiums on their Virtues and Excellencies, which upon the strictest Examination has proceeded more from a fond Opinion he has had of them, than from any real Virtue in them: Besides, that many of them are so costly, that in the Process of some regular Cures, they must exceed the Price of any ordinary Horse.

Neither has he been able to obviate the Objections, which we find have been made to himself, for inserting such vast Numbers of Remedies, for what he answers, concerning the Variety of Constitutions, is very little to the Purpose, since a Medicine of the same Intention needs only be made stronger or weaker in the principal Ingredients; or if any Alteration be necessary, that ought to depend upon a Change or Complication of Symptoms; all which shou'd be clearly explain'd by those who deliver Institutions of Cure. And as for his Chymical Processes, we look upon many of them as unnecessary Implements, which only help to fill up his Book, and shew more of Pomp and Ostentation, than any real Use; especially since there are but few of them which vary much from the com-  
mon



mon and received Forms ; and if it was otherwise, they could not easily be comply'd with by any who are unacquainted with the Chymist's Art, or unprovided with the Instruments that are proper to make them.

But if *Solleysell*, who is deservedly reputed the best Author, was even faulty in these Respects, notwithstanding all the Pains he had taken ; What can we hope from those of less Learning and Ability, who have only delivered Things at Second-hand ? Of these, all Nations have produced sufficient Store, whose Precepts have been, as much, if not, more followed than original Authors ; but none has been so much abus'd that Way as our selves : For altho' we have had the Reputation of improving many Arts beyond what others have done ; and tho' that of Horsemanship was even brought to its greatest Perfection, by the noble Person whom we have already taken Notice of, yet we have hardly One who has treated of the Diseases of Horses in any tolerable Way. *Blundevil*, who was the first of any great Repute amongst us, is now almost quite forgot. As for *Markham* and *De Grey*, with others of later Date, they were only Copiers from him, as himself was also a Copier and Translator from the *Italians*, and what these Authors have with so much Assurance taken from the common *Rote*, and added as their own, is, generally speaking, the most insignificant of any Thing they have delivered ; so that it is no Wonder, if the Practice of those be very absurd, who tie themselves up to their Rules.

The Want of proper Helps is certainly a very great Disadvantage, not only to *Farriers*, but to all those who are interested in Horses ; for tho' they



they may practise with Certainty enough in some Operations, and in many common Accidents that require only outward Applications, yet they must needs be at a great Loss in most Diseases, where the Mass of Blood is affected; and therefore, we find in all such Cases, their main Recourse is to Bleeding and Purging, and whether that be proper or not, they neither know themselves, nor can their Books inform them: And when a Horse gives Signs of inward Sicknes, the Book (which is chiefly made up of a Parcel of insignificant Receipts) furnishes them with a Cordial-Drink, compos'd of some Spices, or a few Herbs to be boiled in Ale or white Wine; and if one Drench or two does not make a Cure, they are at a great Loss what to do next: Having no other Notion of Medicines, but as if they work'd by a Sort of Magick.

That this is the common and ordinary Way of Practice among Horses, every one knows. We cannot however but own, there are many Gentlemen, and also some of the ablest *Farriers*, who have not confin'd themselves so much to Custom, but have fallen upon better Methods than those generally prescrib'd; and we find several very good Remedies, handed from one to another, which are not to be met with in Books; but yet, as most are unacquainted with the Requisites necessary for the right Administration of these Remedies, they often prove as Weapons in unskilful Hands, which may either do Good or Hurt, as they happen to be right or wrong apply'd; and if there be some who know how to apply them better than others, yet while their Methods are not communicated



to the Publick, and thereby render'd of general Use, the Art can be but little advanced.

From all which Reasons, and the frequent Complaints of those who are the greatest Sufferers by the Deficiency of this Art, we have been induc'd to propose this our *New Guide*; wherein we have not only delivered an Account of all the Diseases incident to Horses, with the Method of Cure, but also the *Anatomy of a Horse*, the Knowledge of which, being as necessary to Farriers, as that of the human Body to Physicians and Surgeons, and we are in Hopes it will meet with the more ready Reception, because the Attempts that have been of this Kind already by *Signior de Ruini* and *Mr. Snape*; late Farrier to King *Charles II.* have both been in some Measure rendred fruitless; the First having writ in a Language unknown to us, and at a Time when this Art was in a Manner in its Infancy; and the other having never publish'd any Thing profess'dly of Diseases (tho he fully intended it) but only his Volume of Anatomy, which, besides that it is now rarely to be met with, it is also so large, and incumbred with so many Things foreign to the Purposes, as makes it in a great Measure unprofitable to those for whom it was principally intended.

And therefore, that we might avoid these Inconveniencies, we have in our Anatomical Part wholly study'd the Benefit of such as are unacquainted with the Subject, having describ'd all the Parts of a Horse, with their several Uses, in as short and concise a Manner as possible, and at the same Time omitted nothing that is absolutely Material; and we have not only rectify'd several Mistakes in *Mr. Snape*, but have added many Things from the modern Discoveries which



are not to be met with in that Author, and which are very necessary to the Knowledge of Diseases. Neither need we make any Apology for the hard Applications of some of the Muscles, other than what Mr. *Snape* has already done, viz. That whereas most of them have the same Use with those of the human Body, he therefore thought it prudent to retain the same Names, believing it would be too assuming in him to impose others.

The Figures of the several Parts, are by all, own'd so necessary, that we need not say any Thing to recommend them, they being constant Helps, not only to those who are Strangers to the Subject, but also to such as are acquainted therewith ; and tho' we are in this Respect chiefly indebted to the Industry of Mr. *Snape*, as he was to *Ruini* for many of them, yet we doubt not of Approbation in the Choice we have made, as we have not any that are useless, but such as are of most Importance.

As to our Treatise of Diseases, it is partly the Result of some Observations were made while I attended the Army, and partly of some that have been made since, during which Time, we have carefully taken Notice of all those Things, both in Books and in Practice that were the chief Hinderances to the Advancement of the Farriers Art, and what Steps we have taken to put it upon a better Footing, will be judg'd reasonable, by such as have perus'd Mr. *Snape's* Book, especially those short Digressions where he has accounted for some Diseases that were the least known by Farriers. The same Method Mr. *Snape* has observed in these few ; we have carefully followed throughout the whole, which altho' it may seem somewhat Difficult at first View,  
to



to those who are unacquainted with the *Animal OEconomy*; yet, as all is founded upon the Make, Frame, and Disposition of the Parts of a Horses Body, and is therefore plainly demonstrable to Sense, it will in the End be found more easy than the usual Methods, that have been only built upon Figment and Fancy.

But, that the Reader may the more readily overcome those Difficulties, we have endeavoured to describe all the Diseases in a Way that is the most Familiar and Intelligible, having ranked those together, that have the nearest Dependence upon each other, and in such a Manner, that the understanding of one, may lead him insensibly into the Knowledge of another. A Method not hitherto observ'd, or rightly understood, by any of our Authors. We have likewise been more than ordinary Careful, in distinguishing, with respect to Signs and Causes, and in providing for the several Accidents that may happen, than which nothing conduces more to the Cure and preservation of brute Creatures, who are incapable of declaring their Infirmities; and because many of the Diseases of Horses have a near affinity with those of the human Body, and as the comparing the one with the other, must needs tend very much to the advancement of this Art, we have therefore, taken Notice of that in many Particulars, so far as the Mechanism of a Horse may Occasion the same Symptoms and Accidents, and wherever they differ, we have endeavour'd to put it in as clear a Light as possible, and have accordingly accommodated the Method of Cure.

And as the right Administration of proper Remedys is of no less importance, we have taken particular Care in that Respect, having not only,



only, in all Cases, inserted such as are known to be of most Efficacy, but also laid down the Precautions necessary in all their several Intentions : and herein, we have study'd both the Ease and Profit of the Practitioner, by freeing him of those long and tedious Compositions, wherewith most Books so much abound, and which are chiefly made up of a Number of useles and insignificant Ingredients. But these Things shall be more fully considered in a small Treatise apart, concerning the Medicines proper for Horses, which we intend as a Supplement to this, and shall be publish'd with the Approbation of the best Judges.

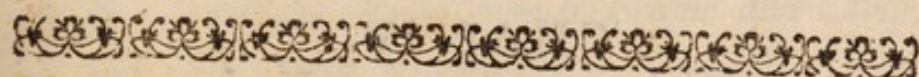
As to the Defects and Errors we have already taken Notice of, in the common and ordinary Practice ; as also those committed by the abuse of Tents, the Application of greasy Dressings, and many other Things too tedious to be inserted here, we Hope, we need make no Apology for so doing, since it will appear to any one who shall peruse the following Treatise, that our Meaning in this was not to find Fault ; but in Order to their Amendment. For wherever we have observed any Thing in the received Method, or in any Author supported by Experience, and agreeable to the Principles of Art, we have been so far from rejecting it, that we have rather recommended it to the World, by such Explanations, as we judged necessary to render it more intelligible and useful.







T H E  
CONTENTS



The Anatomy of a H O R S E.



*T* H E I N T R O D U C T I O N . Page. 1

Chap. I. Of the Parts which invest and cover the whole Body. 4

Sect. 1. Of the Hair Scarfskin, Hide and fleshy Pannicle. ib.

Sect. 2. Of the Fat and common membrane of the Muscles. 6

C H A P. II.

Of the lower Belly. ib.

Sect. 1. Of its proper Investiture and Teguments. ib.

Sect. 2. Of the Caul. 8

Sect. 3. Of the Gullet, Stomach, Guts and Mesentery. 9

Sect. 4. Of the Spleen, Pancreas and Liver, with the porus Biliaris or Gall Pipe. 13

b

Sect.



	Page.
Sect. 5. <i>Of the Kidneys, Ureters, and Bladder.</i>	16
Sect. 6. <i>Of the Parts of Generation in a Horse, and Mare.</i>	17

## CHAP. III.

	<i>Of the middle Venter or Chest.</i>	25
Sect. 1.	<i>Of its proper containing Parts.</i>	ib.
Sect. 2.	<i>Of the Heart and Pericardium,</i>	28
Sect. 3.	<i>Of the Wind-Pipe, and Lungs.</i>	31
Sect. 4.	<i>Of the Larynx and Pharynx.</i>	35

## CHAP. IV.

	<i>Of the upper Cavity or Head.</i>	37
Sect. 1.	<i>Of its proper containing Parts.</i>	ib.
Sect. 2.	<i>Of the Brain and Cerebellum, with the Medulla Oblongata, and Pith of the Back.</i>	39
Sect. 3.	<i>Of the Rise and Progress of the Nerves.</i>	46
Sect. 4.	<i>Of the Eyes and their several Parts.</i>	49
Sect. 5.	<i>Of the Ears.</i>	51
Sect. 6.	<i>Of the Nose and Mouth,</i>	54

## CHAP. V.

	<i>Of the Muscles.</i>	59
Sect. 1.	<i>Of the Muscles of the Eye-Lids and Eye.</i>	ib.
Sect. 2.	<i>Of the Muscles of the Nose, Lips and Cheeks.</i>	61
Sect. 3.	<i>Of the Muscles of the lower Jaw.</i>	64
Sect. 4.	<i>Of the Muscles of the Ear.</i>	65
Sect. 5.	<i>Of the Muscles of the Tongue and Os Hyoides, with those of the Larynx, Uvula, and Throat.</i>	66.
		Sect.



	Page.
Sect. 6. <i>Of the Muscles of the Head and Neck.</i>	70
Sect. 7. <i>Of the Muscles of the Breast.</i>	72
Sect. 8. <i>Of the Muscles of the Back and Loins, with those of the Fundament and Bladder.</i>	73
Sect. 9. <i>Of the Muscles of the Shoulder Blade, and Shoulder, with those which move the fore- Leg and Foot.</i>	75
Sect. 10. <i>Of the Muscles of the Thigh, and those which move the hind-Leg and Foot.</i>	81

## CHAP. VI.

<i>Of the Bones.</i>	89
Sect. 1. <i>Of the Bones which Frame and Compose the Skull, with its Suture.</i>	ib.
Sect. 2. <i>Of the Jaw-Bones and Teeth together, with the Os Hyoides, or Bone of the Tongue.</i>	95
Sect. 3. <i>Of the Vertebrae of the Neck.</i>	99
Sect. 4. <i>Of the Vertebrae, of the Back and Loins, as also of the Breast-Bone, Collar-Bone and Ribs.</i>	101
Sect. 5. <i>Of the Blade-Bone, the Shoulder-Bone, and the Bones of the Fore-Leg and Foot.</i>	104
Sect. 6. <i>Of the Croupe and Rump-Bones.</i>	108
Sect. 7. <i>Of the Ossa Innominata, divided into the Hip, Haunch, and Share-Bones.</i>	109
Sect. 8. <i>Of the Bones of the Thighs, Hinder-Legs and Feet.</i>	110
<i>The Appendix concerning the Bloodvessels, and Circulation of the Blood, &amp;c.</i>	115





THE  
*Farriers New Guide.*

	Page.
CHAP. 1. <i>Of the Diseases of Horses in general, and the Causes thereof.</i> — —	1
Chap. 2. <i>Of the Signs of Sickneſs in Horses.</i>	6
Chap. 3. <i>Of the Method of Cure.</i> — —	9
Chap. 4. <i>Discovering ſome Errors in the Methods uſually taken to prevent Diſeaſes in Horses, with the propereſt Means to preſerve Health</i>	12
Chap. 5. <i>Some general Rules to be obſerved in Bleeding and Purging.</i> — — —	19
Chap. 6. <i>Of the Fevers of Horses, in general</i>	24
Chap. 7. <i>Of a ſimple continued Fever.</i> — —	32
Chap. 8. <i>Of a Putrid Fever.</i> — — —	41
Chap. 9. <i>Of peſtilential Fevers.</i> — — —	45
Chap. 10. <i>Of a Heſtick Fever.</i> — — —	49
Chap. 11. <i>Of Intermittent Fever.</i> — —	52
Chap. 12. <i>Of Surfeits.</i> — — —	57
Chap. 13. <i>Of the Diſeaſes of the Head.</i> —	62
Chap. 14. <i>Of the Head-ach.</i> — — —	63
Chap. 15. <i>Of the Stavers or Staggers.</i> — —	64
Chap. 16. <i>Of a Palsy.</i> — — —	71
Chap. 17. <i>Of the Falling-Evil, and Convulſions.</i>	73

Chap. 18.



# The CONTENTS.

v

	Page.
Chap. 18. <i>Of the Lethargy, or Sleeping-Evil.</i>	74
Chap. 19. <i>Of the Frenzy and Madness in a Horse.</i>	76
Chap. 20. <i>Of the Diseases of the Eyes. — —</i>	77
Chap. 21. <i>Of a Wound or Blow on the Eye, &amp;c.</i>	79
Chap. 22. <i>Of Rhumes, and Inflammations in the Eyes. — — — — —</i>	82
Chap. 23. <i>Of Lunatick, or Moon Eyes. — —</i>	85
Chap. 24. <i>Of Films, Webs, and other Diseases of the Eyes of Horses, causing Dimness, or loss of Sight. — — — — —</i>	93
Chap. 25. <i>Of a Cold and Morfounding. — —</i>	99
Chap. 36. <i>Of Chest-Foundring. — — — —</i>	106
Chap. 27. <i>Of Purfive, Broken-winded, and consumptive Cases. — — — — —</i>	108
Chap. 28. <i>Of the Glanders, and Mourning of the Chine. — — — — —</i>	116
Chap. 29. <i>Of the Strangles. — — — —</i>	127
Chap. 30. <i>Of the False or Bastard-Strangles</i>	133
Chap. 31. <i>Of the Vives. — — — —</i>	134
Chap. 32. <i>Of the Anticor. — — — —</i>	138
Chap. 33. <i>Of the Diseases of the Stomach, and first of the loss of Appetite, and of a deprav'd Appetite. — — — — —</i>	143
Chap. 34. <i>Of the Hungry-Evil. — — — —</i>	149
Chap. 35. <i>Of the Diseases of the Guts, and first of the Cholick. — — — — —</i>	150
Chap. 36. <i>Of the dry Gripes, and adstriction of the Bowels. — — — — —</i>	ib.
Chap. 37. <i>Of the Lax, or Scouring. — — — —</i>	159
Chap. 48. <i>Of the Bloody-Flux. — — — —</i>	166
Chap. 39. <i>Of Worms, Bots, and Trunchions.</i>	167

Chap. 40



## The CONTENTS.

	Page
Chap. 40. Of Pain in the Bowels, caused by sudden Accidents. —————	172
Chap. 41. Of the Yellows, or Jaundice. —	175
Chap. 42. Of the Diseases of the Reins and Kidneys. &c. —————	180
Chap. 43. Of the Pain-Piss or Strangury. —	ib.
Chap. 44. Of a Flux of Urine and staling of Blood. —————	182
Chap. 45. Of the Colt-Evil, shedding of the Seed and Matring of the Yerd. ———	184
Chap. 46. Of the Dropsy. ———	186
Chap. 47. Of a Horse that is Hide-Bound. —	188
Chap. 48. Of the Farein. ———	192
Chap. 49. Of the Mange. ———	218
Chap. 50. Of Tumors, Imposthumes and Abscesses —————	222
Chap. 51. Of Wounds. ———	230
Chap. 52. Of Gunshot, Wounds and Burns. ———	243
Chap. 53. Of a Gangren and Mortification. —	245
Chap. 54. Of the biting of Venomous Beasts. ———	247
Chap. 55. Of Ulcers. ———	248
Chap. 56. Of Cauterizing and giving the Fire. ———	252
Chap. 57. Of Rowelling. ———	256
Chap. 58. Of Gelding and Curtailing of Horses. ———	257
Chap. 59. Of the Lampas. ———	258
Chap. 60. Of the Barbs. ———	ib.
Chap. 61. Of the Tick. ———	ib.
Chap. 62. Of Woolves Teeth. ———	259
Chap. 63. Of Gigs, Bladders, and other Diseases of the Mouth. ———	ib.
Chap. 64. Of the Poll-Evil. ———	260
Chap. 65.	



# The CONTENTS.

vii

	Page.
Chap. 65. Of Hurts and Bruises in the Withers, &c. —————	260
Chap. 66. Of a Navel-Gall, &c. ———	262
Chap. 67. Of a Shoulder-Wrench, Shoulder-Pight, and Shoulder-Splate. ——— ———	ib.
Chap. 68. Of a Swayd-Back, and Strains of the Hips. ——— ———	265
Chap. 69. Of Bones broken and out of Joint. —————	266
Chap. 70. Of Hurts in the Stifle. ———	268
Chap. 71. Of the Bone-Spavin. ——— ———	ib.
Chap. 72. Of the String-Halt ——— ———	270
Chap. 73. Of the Blood-Spavin. ——— ———	ib.
Chap. 74. Of Mallenders and Sellenders. ———	271
Chap. 75. Of the Hough Boney. ——— ———	272
Chap. 76. Of the Curb. ——— ——— ———	ib.
Chap. 77. Of a Jardon. ——— ——— ———	273
Chap. 78. Of Splents and Oslets, &c. ———	274
Chap. 79. Of a Ring-Bone. ——— ———	277
Chap. 80. Of Wind-Galls. ——— ———	278
Chap. 81. Of a Sinew-Sprain, &c, ———	279
Chap. 82. Of the Grease falling into the Legs. —————	281
Chap. 83. Of the Mules or Kibd-Heels. ———	286
Chap. 84. Of the Pains or watry Sores on the Legs and Pasterns. ——— ———	287
Chap. 85. Of Warts, Scratches, Rats-Tails, and other Excrescences on the Legs and Pa- sterns. ——— ——— ———	288.
Chap. 86. Of a Quitter-Bone. ——— ———	290
Chap. 87. Of Foundering in the Feet. ———	291
Chap. 88. Of Surbating, &c. ——— ———	293
Chap. 89. Of Retrails and Pricks in the Foot. —————	294
Chap. 90. Of the running Frash. ———	296
Chap. 91. Of the Crown-Scab. ———	ib.
Chap. 92.	



	Page.
Chap. 92. <i>Of Fig.</i> ——— ——— ———	297
Chap. 93. <i>Of Hoofs Brittle or too Soft.</i> —	298
Chap. 94. <i>Of Narrow Heels.</i> ——— ———	299
Chap. 95. <i>Of a False Quarter.</i> ———	300
Chap. 96. <i>Of casting the Hoof.</i> ———	302







T H E  
A N A T O M Y  
O F A  
H O R S E.

---

The Introduction.

**T**HE Bodies of all Quadrupeds, as well as Men, are compos'd of different Parts, which are adapted to their several Functions: Some are solid, as the Bones and Cartilages; others are soft, as the Glands and Muscular Flesh; and some are of a middle Nature, as the Ligaments of the Joints, and Tendons of the Muscles. But whether their particular Structure be loose or solid, or between both, it is very certain that all are made up of small Fibres or Threads. This is so plainly observable in the soft Parts, that it needs no manner of Proof, since every one must have taken Notice, in tearing Flesh asunder, that it is compos'd of little Parcels or Bundles, and these Parcels may again be divided into others, which are less, and afterwards into single Threads,

B                      which



## The INTRODUCTION.

which are infinitely smaller than a Hair : Nature has also observ'd the same Oeconomy in the Structure of the hard Parts ; for when we cut a Bone across, all the Poruli, or little Holes, which form the Interstices of its Fibres, are, in most Parts of it, plainly perceivable ; and if it be cut lengthways, their Direction and Course is no less manifest.

But of all the different Substances whereof an Animal Body is compos'd, that which Anatomists call a Membrane, is, next to a Fibre, the most simple in its Structure, it being a thin expanded Substance, which has Length and Breadth without much Thickness ; so that it seems only to be made up of single Threads, laid lengthways and across, like a fine Web. We find some of them pretty thick, especially towards their Origin ; but others much thinner than the Film of an Egg : The whole Body is wrap'd up in one of these, and every particular Part has a membranous Cover, which preserves it from the Injuries it would be expos'd to from those Parts which lie next it. Some Parts are involv'd in double Membranes, as the Brain, and Pith of the Back, &c. which are very soft and delicate, and could not be easily preserv'd by a single one.

But besides their Office of covering and defending all Parts of the Body, some of them serve as Bags, or Cases, for Food and Excrements ; others are form'd into Conduits for the Blood and animal Juices. But some of these being partly muscular, and partly membranous, they may be properly said to be of a mix'd Nature, as are most of the Muscles, and many other Substances throughout the Body.

The Muscles are made up of fleshy and tendinous Fibres ; which kind of Structure is necessary to their Action, they being the Instruments of Motion. Almost all Muscles are fleshy and soft in the Middle, and for that Reason are capable of being contracted and dilated ; for if they were otherwise, it would be impossible for any Creature to move ; whereas by the Figure they are of, we find 'em ready to answer every Inclination of the Mind, without Pain or Stiffness. The Muscles are of different Figures, some flat, as those on the Rim of the Belly ; others more round, as those of the Thighs and Legs, some

of



of which, towards their Insertions, terminate in a strong nervous, sinewy Substance, called a Tendon.

A Ligament is more compact and firm than a Tendon, but not altogether so hard as a Cartilage. It is that Substance which ties the Joints together; whereof some are round, as those which we observe fastned to the Head of a Bone, and the Inside of its Socket; others are flat, and cover the Joints like so many Pieces of Leather nail'd on, to keep the two Bones from falling asunder, and to preserve an Uniformity in their Motion.

A Cartilage, or Gristle, which we observe more or less at the Ends of most Bones, is harder and less pliable than the Ligaments: These being of a smooth Surface, and moderately thick, are a Defence to the Ends of the Bones, which are more hard and brittle; and, if they were not thus fortify'd, might therefore be worn and abraded by their Motion.

The Bones are of the most hard and compact Substance of the whole Body, they are without Sense, as are also the Ligaments and Cartilages, otherwise they would be unfit to answer their particular Functions: But notwithstanding their Insensibility, if any of them happen to be diseas'd, they may cause Pain, and create a great deal of Trouble.

As the Bones are, of all the Parts which compose an animal Body, the most solid, the Glands, or Kernels, are reckon'd among the softest, being curious Bundles of Vessels, which are infinitely small, and laid closely together, in many Circumvolutions and Turnings: From some of these are separated Excrements, and from others Juices, which have their peculiar Uses, as will be shewn hereafter.

The Veins and Arteries, Nerves, and Lymphatick Vessels, are the Conduits and Pipes, thro' which all the liquid Juices of the Body do pass. The Arteries are the Vessels which carry the Blood from the Heart to the Extremities, and the Veins are the Channels which carry back that Portion of it which is more than sufficient for the Nourishment of the particular Members. The Nerves are of a compact Substance, like so many tough Cords, of a white Colour, and different Sizes, some being pretty large, others infinitely small; and tho' they seem to be solid and imperforate, that is to say,



## The INTRODUCTION.

without any visible Bore or Cavity in them, yet it is very certain they carry the animal Spirits from the Brain into all Parts of the Body; and are the Instruments which communicate all Sensations to the Imagination. The Lymphatick Vessels are of a more thin Texture, and carry a clear transparent Liquor, which is also subservient to the Functions of Nature.

In short, all the Parts of the Body, whether those that are hard, or those which are denominated soft Parts, are nourish'd by Blood, and their peculiar Juices produc'd of Blood: Neither is it improbable that the whole animal Frame is compos'd of the several Modifications of Veins, Arteries, Nerves, and Lymphatick Vessels.

These Things being premised, for the Benefit of such as are Strangers to the Study of Anatomy, I shall now proceed to handle the Subject particularly, and take every Part as it lies in its proper Order.

### C H A P. I.

*Of the Parts which invest and cover the whole Body.*

#### S E C T. I.

*Of the Hair, Scarfskin, Hide, and Fleshy Pannicle.*

The Hair.

**I**N describing the Parts of a Horse, the first Thing that presents to our View, is the *Hair*, which may not improperly be call'd the uppermost Cover of the whole Body. It will be very little to our purpose to spend time about its Production, or how it comes to be of so many different Colours; I shall therefore proceed to observe, that the Hair is both an Ornament and a Defence to all Animals. That which we call his Coat, is not only agreeable to the Eye in a plump young Horse, but a Defence from the Injuries of Cold and Heat, and the Accidents to which he would be often expos'd, in his feeding among Shrubs and Bushes; and that which grows out to some Length on the Footlock, is a no less Defence to that prominent Part, when he travels on stony Ways, or in frosty Weather, when the

Roads



Roads are crufted, which otherwise would be very much expos'd to Wounds and Bruifes. As for the Mane, Tail, and Foretop, they add greatly to the Beauty of a Horfe, and are a fuitable Decorement to a Creature of fo much Fire and Mettle.

The firft flefhy Tegument, or Cover, is the Scarfskin, and is that which riles fo eafily into a Blifter, by being pinch'd or fcalded; it is not endu'd with any tender Sensation, but will bear the Touch without Pain; it is produc'd from the Hide, which it involves and covers on all Parts, and has from thence its Nourifhment. Its Ufe is not only to cover the true Skin, and defend it from thofe painful Sensations to which it would be expos'd, as we daily obferve, when it is fretted off; but as it refembles a curious Net-work, and is full of little Holes or Pores, it is thereby fuited to give way to the Excrementitious Matter which continually exhales from the Body.

The Cuti-  
cula, or  
Scarfskin.

The next common Covering is the Skin (properly fo call'd) or Hide, which lies immediately under the other. It is nourish'd with Veins, Arteries, &c. and is alfo porous for the Paffage of the Sweat, or other perfpirable Matter, which is feparated from a vaft Number of little Glands, which lie on the infide of it; and as the Scarfskin is a Defence to the Hide, fo the Hide is a Defence to thofe other Parts which lie under it.

The Hide.

Underneath the Skin is plac'd the flefhy Pannicle, which is muscular, and helps to draw the Skin into Wrinkles, by which means a Horfe throws off the Duft, Flies, or other Things that hurt him. It is alfo nourish'd with its proper Veins and Arteries, &c. and befides its peculiar Ufes, it ferves, in concert with the Skin, to defend the Body from external Injuries, viz. by keeping it warm in Winter, and preventing a too great Exhalation of the Spirits in hot Weather.

The flefhy  
Pannicle.



## S E C T. II.

*Of the Fat and common Membrane of the Muscles.*

The Fat. Besides these Teguments above-mention'd, there is the *Fat*, and common *Membrane* of the Muscles. The *Fat*, which lies between the fleshy Pannicle and the said Membrane, is distinguish'd from that which covers the Caul, by its Oiliness, and is said to be generated of the more unctuous Particles of the Blood, working thro' the Vessels, and detain'd there by the Closeness of the said Pannicle. It is not one continu'd Covering in Horses, as in Bulls, and some other Animals, but chiefly fills up the Interstices of the Muscles externally, and is not only a Defence, as the other Teguments are, but serves to make a Horse look plump, smooth and beautiful. How far it is capable of being again converted into Nourishment, I shall not offer here to determine.

The common Membrane of the Muscles.

As to the Membrane of the Muscles, which is the innermost of all the common Teguments, it is said to take its Origin from the Back; and spreading itself all over the Body, is knit to their proper Coats by a great Number of small Fibres, yet not so closely as to hinder their Action: It is in a Horse considerably thick, and serves to strengthen and confirm all the Muscles in their proper Situation, and to be a *Capsula*, or Case, to defend them from Injuries.

## C H A P. II.

*Of the lower Belly.*

## S E C T. I.

*Of its proper Investiture and Teguments.*

**B**Y the lower Belly is to be understood all that Cavity which is below the Midriff, and is encompass'd by the Short-ribs, the Point of the Breast-



Breast-bone, Loins, Haunch-bones, and Share-bones, and is fill'd with Guts, and other Entrails.

The proper Teguments of the lower Belly, are the Muscles, and the Membrane which lies under them, called the *Peritonæum*.

The Muscles are of different Shapes and Figures, according to their several Uses. These on the lower Belly are divided into five Pair; the uppermost are called the *oblique descending* Muscles, and derive their Origin from the Sides of the Breast-bone, the Points of some of the lowermost Ribs, where they resemble the Teeth of a Saw; from the Tips of the Cross-processes of the Joinings of the Rack-bone in the Loins, and run sloping downwards into the white Line, which is only a tendinous Substance, form'd by the Endings of such of those Muscles as meet and are determin'd in it, and reaches from the Point of the Sword-like Gristle of the Breast-bone, as low as the Share-bone, dividing the lower Belly in the Middle. These two Muscles have their Insertion from below the Navel downwards to the End of that Line.

Five Pair of Muscles belong to the lower Belly.

The *oblique descending* Pair.

The next are the *oblique ascending* Pair; they rise from the upper Part of the Haunch-bone, and from the Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins and *Os Sacrum*, and taking a contrary Course to these above describ'd, they are inserted partly on the Ends of the Short-ribs, and partly on the white Line, from the Point of the Breast-bone down to the Navel. Their Action is different from the former; for as those draw the lower Part of the Belly sideways, towards the Breast, from whence they arise; so these draw down the Chest somewhat astant towards the Loins.

The *oblique ascending* Pair.

The third Pair are call'd the *Recti*, or streight Muscles; because their Fibres run in a streight Line from their Origin, at the Sides of the above-mention'd Gristle, and the Ends of the Bastard-ribs to the Share-bone, where they are inserted. There are, in these, several tendinous Interstices, which are the Cause why some Anatomists have divided them into divers Muscles. They shorten the

The *streight* Pair.



Belly, by drawing the Breast and Share-bone towards each other.

The Pyramidal Pair.

The fourth Pair are called the *Pyramidal*, from the Resemblance they bear to a Pyramid, being broad at Bottom, and growing gradually narrower towards the Top: They seem to be deriv'd from the streight Muscles, and are assisting to them in contracting the Belly.

The Transverse Pair.

The last are the *Transverse*, or Cross Muscles, which have their Origin from the lowermost bastard Ribs on each side, from the transverse Processes of the Joints, or *Vertebrae* of the Loins and Haunch-bones, from whence, running across the Belly, they are inserted in the white Line.

Besides that these Muscles are a Cover and Support to the lower Belly; they have not only their particular Offices, but act in concert with each other, and give their mutual Assistance in compressing the Guts to the Expulsion of their Excrements.

The Peritonæum.

Underneath the Muscles lies the *Peritonæum*, which is the next proper Tegument of the Guts. It is a double Membrane of an oval Figure, and is thought to derive its Origin from that which involves the Pith of the Loins; its inside is very smooth, and lin'd with a sort of *Mucus*, which proceeds from the Guts, over which it is spread. From this Membrane all the lower Parts of the Belly are furnished either with their common or proper Membranes. It has Ligaments, whereby it helps to bind all the Guts in their proper Situation, that no violent Motion may displace them; it also affords a strong Ligament to the Liver, and is a great Support to a vast Number of small Vessels, which would either be broke, or twisted in so long a Course, were they not preserved within its Duplicature.

## S E C T. II.

### Of the Caul.

The Caul.

The *Caul* seems to be a proper Invelopment or Cover to the Guts, being in most Animals spread all over them; tho' in a Horse it is often seen to lie forward



forward in Wrinkles, which may be occasion'd by his violent Labour. It is in Figure like a Purse-Net, being double, and open at Top, but knit together towards the Bottom: It adheres to the lower Part of the Stomach, and likewise to the Spleen, and hollow side of the Liver. By its under-side it is fasten'd to that Part of the Gut *Colon*, which lies under the Stomach lengthways, and likewise to the Sweet-bread, and Beginning of the small Guts.

As the Caul has Plenty of Fat, it not only serves *Its Use.* to keep the Bottom of the Stomach, and most of the Guts moist, but also to cherish them with its Warmth: And besides this, it has likewise a further Use, *viz.* to sustain a vast Number of Branches of Vessels which pass between its Membranes to the Stomach, Spleen and Guts, &c.

## S E C T. III.

*Of the Gullet, Stomach, Guts and Mesentery.*

Tho' all the *Gullet* be not contained in the lower *The Gullet.* Belly, yet as it is an Appendage to the Stomach, and the Funnel thro' which every thing passes into it; a Description of it cannot be so proper any where else, as in this Place.

It is hollow and round, beginning at the Root of the Tongue, behind the Head of the Wind-pipe, under which it passeth, turning a little to the Right, to give way to the great Artery; afterwards inclining to the Left, it passes thro' the Midriff, and is inserted into the Stomach towards its left Side.

It consists of three Coats or Cases; the outermost seems to come from the *Pleura*, &c. the middlemost is muscular and thick, consisting of two Ranks of fleshy Fibres ascending and descending obliquely cross one another: The innermost is membranous, with streight Fibres only; its Veins communicate with those on the Breast and Neck, as do also its Arteries. At its Beginning it has two *Its Vessels.* large Glands or Kernels, which separate a Moisture to keep its inside glib, to facilitate the Passage of the Food, &c. Where it is inserted into the Stomach,  
it



it is composed of a pretty thick Substance made up of circular and fleshy Fibres, whereby it contracts and dilates itself to give way to the Aliment, or shut up the Stomach at pleasure. This is call'd the left or upper Orifice of the Stomach; and that, whereby it discharges itself into the *Duodenum*, its right or lower Orifice.

The Stomach.

The *Stomach* is round and somewhat long, resembling a Bag-pipe, but more capacious on the left Side than the right; its Magnitude is, generally speaking, more or less, according to the Size of the Horse. It is also composed of three Cases, the outermost of which seems to rise from the *Peritonæum*; the second is muscular and fleshy; and the last a Continuation of the innermost Coat of the Gullet.

Its Vessels.

It has Arteries from the *Celiac* Branch of the *Aorta*, and Veins from the *Splenick*, and the *Gastricks*, a Vein common to its left Side and the Caul, and one common to the Caul and the right Side from the *Mesentericks*; and lastly, the *Pyloria* which comes from the *Porta*.

Its Nerves.

It has Branches from the recurrent Nerves, which being exceeding numerous, are the Occasion of its being so very susceptible of Hunger, and all other Sensations.

Its Use.

The Use of the Stomach is to concoct and digest the Aliment, so as to render it fit for Nourishment; and this is perform'd chiefly by its Muscular Motion, which is manifest from its Structure, and the Power it has of contracting itself into those *Rugæ*, which we discover in it when it is empty.

The Guts.

After the Stomach come the *Guts*, which, according to Mr. *Snape's* Computation, are in Number six; to wit, the small Gut, the *Cæcum* or blind Gut, the three *Colons*, and the straight Gut.

The small Gut.

The *small Gut* (which in a Man is divided into three, to wit, the *Duodenum*, *Jejunum*, and *Ilion*, from its several Circumvolutions) is in a Horse reckon'd to be about 26 Yards in Length; and is in all its turnings fasten'd to the Mesentery. The Stomach empties its Aliment into this Gut, which is furnished with an infinite Number of milky Vessels,



sels, call'd *Lacteals*, that receive the finer Portion of the Aliment; which being convey'd by these little Conduits, across the *Mesentery*, to one common Receptacle, ascend upwards along the Spine, thro' a pretty large Channel, which is call'd the *Thoraick Duct*; and from thence into the Veins, and is incorporated with the Blood. The coarser Part of the Food, by a Peristaltick or Vermicular Motion, which is common to all the Guts, falls downwards, and is discharg'd in Excrement. There are in this Gut, besides the Vessels it has in common with the rest, two Ducts which open into it; the one from the Liver, and the other from the Sweet-bread; each of which sends in a Juice that contributes to the Refinement of the Aliment, &c.

The next is the *Blind Gut*, which has but one Passage for the Excrements, so that they are forced to return back the same Way they went in.

The *Cæcum*,  
or Blind  
Gut.

The three *Colons* (which in Man are but one continued Gut) are next the Blind Gut; they are divided into three Guts by two narrow Necks of about half a Yard in length. This Gut is drawn up into many Purses or Cells by two Ligaments, one of which runs along the upper side, and another along the under side, which, with the Assistance of a Valve at its Beginning, hinder the Excrements either from returning back into the small Guts, or falling too soon downwards, before the Chyle or milky Substance is sufficiently prepared, and sent off into its proper Vessels. The *Cæcum* seems also to be instead of a Valve, to hinder the Aliment or Chyle from falling too soon downwards into the *Colon*; for if it was not in some Measure obstructed, and detained in its Passage thro' these large Conduits, the Body could never be sufficiently supply'd with Nourishment. The first of these *Colons* is about a Yard and a half in Length; the second about a Yard, and that which joins to the *Rectum*, or streight Gut, near six Yards long.

The three  
*Colons*.

The *streight Gut*, which goes streight downwards to the Fundament, is not above half a Yard in Length; its Coats are thicker than those above described, its middlemost being very fleshy and muscular:

The streight  
Gut.



cular: At its Extremity there is a Sphinctre, which dilates itself for the Evacuation of the Excrements, and keeps it contracted, or shut up at all other Times.

There is on the inside of the whole Guts a *Mucus*, or slimy Matter, which preserves them from being hurt, either by the Hardness of the Excrements, or the Pungency of any sharp corrosive Humours; for they being, as most other membranous Substances, full of Branches of Nerves, would be in perpetual Pain, had not Nature taken a special Care of them.

The Mesentery.

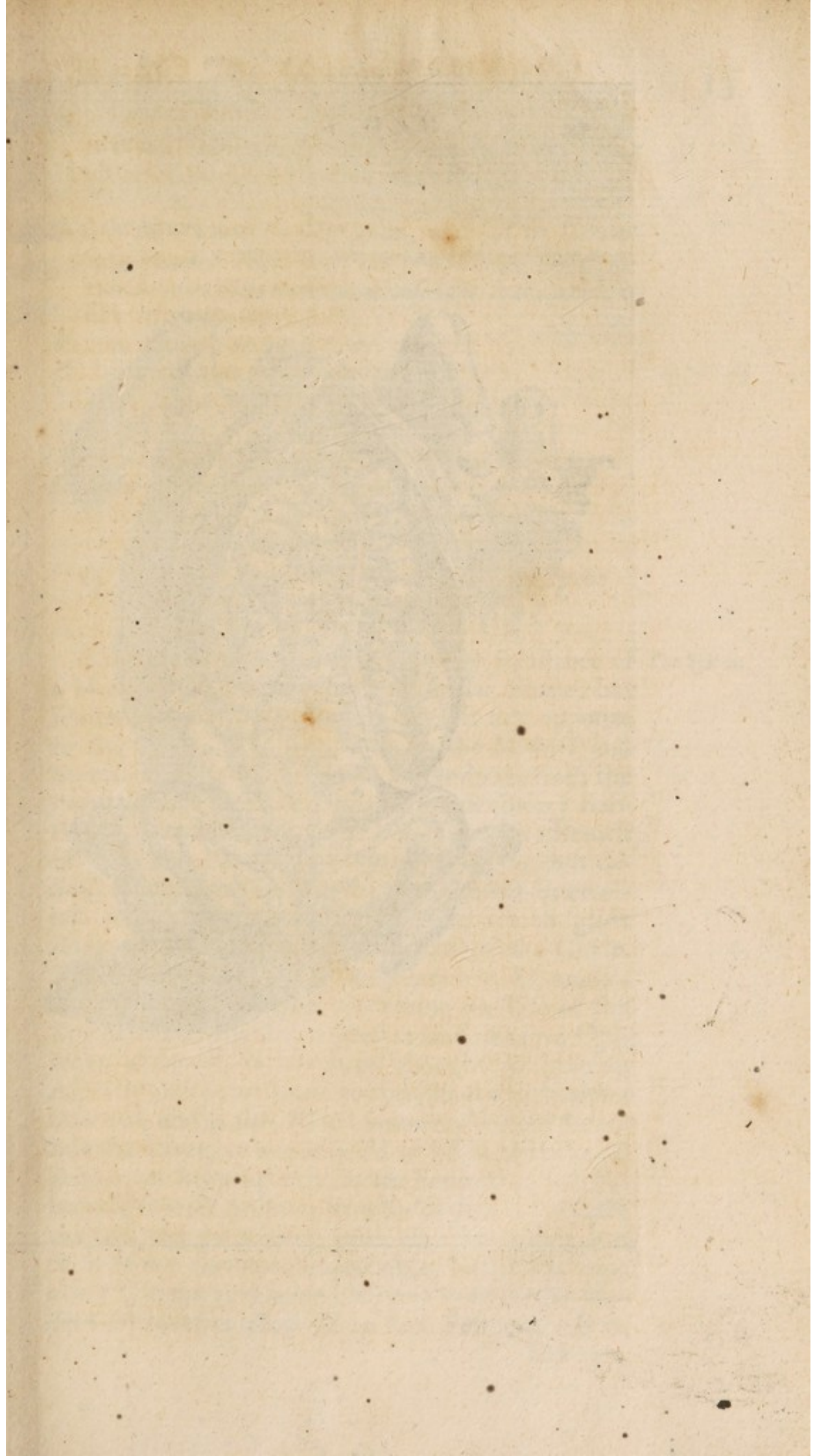
The *Mesentery*, which, in the next place, comes properly to be describ'd, is so called from its Situation in the middle of the Guts. Its Rise is from the third Rack-Bone of the Loins, and is composed of three Membranes, the middlemost being very full of Kernels or Glands, which, when they happen to be over-much dilated, obstruct the Passage of the Chyle, which runs across its Membranes; and the Body being thereby depriv'd of its Nourishment, becomes lean and emaciate, and at length falls into irrecoverable Diseases.

At its Rise it is gathered together in a vast many Plaits or Folds, which being open on that Part of it to which the Guts adhere, makes them lie in those Circumvolutions and Turnings in which we always observe them; and this seems absolutely necessary; because, if they were not ty'd in such manner, but left loose, the Excrements would either pass too quickly thro' them, or else be wholly obstructed, by reason they would be apt to twist and entangle one with another.

Its Vessels.

In a Horse the Mesentery is usually above a quarter of a Yard in Breadth, and besides the milky Vessels which are sustain'd by it, it has abundance of Lymphaticks, which serve to dilute the Chyle. Its Veins are Branches of the *Porta*; and its Arteries the *Meseraick* or *Mesenterick*: As to its Use, it is sufficiently demonstrable from what has been already said concerning it and the Guts.







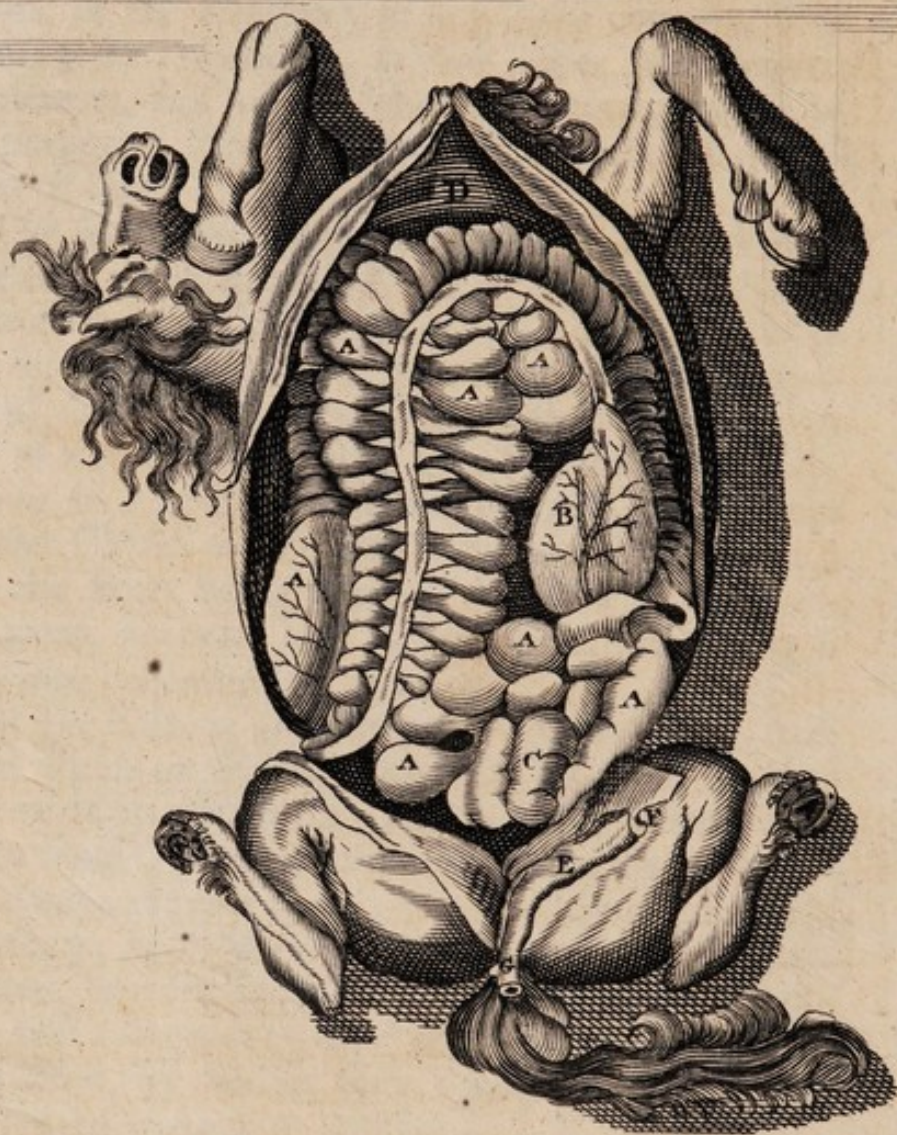




TABLE I. represents the Guts as they appear after the Caul is taken away.

A A A A. Sheweth the Gut Colon, with all its Circumvolutions and Folds, with the small Necks, which divide it into three Parts; as also the Space which it takes up in the lower Belly.

B. The Cæcum or Blind Gut.

C. The Rectum or Streight Gut.

D. Part of the Diaphragm, or Midriff.

E. The Yard.

F. The Glans or Nut.

G. The Fundament with its Sphinctre.

#### S E C T. IV.

*Of the Spleen, Pancreas and Liver, with the Porus Biliarius, or Gall-Pipe.*

The Spleen or Milt is a soft spungy Substance of a black livid Complexion, a triangular Shape, but somewhat longish, situated on the left side opposite to the Liver; it adheres both to the Midriff and Stomach: It is covered with a Membrane from the Peritoneum, which, because of its soft spungy Substance, is considerably thick. Its Veins are a Branch of the Porta; its Arteries spring from the left Cæliack Branch, and its Nerves from the left Intercostal. It has also Lymphatick Vessels, which glide along the Caul to the Receptacle of the Chyle. There is no Part of the Body wherein Anatomists have differed more than concerning the Use of the Spleen: To pass by a great many various Opinions about it, it has been thought to give an Asperity and Sourishness to the Blood which comes into it; and as that Blood is convey'd from thence into the Liver, it was believ'd to be in order to ingender, or keep up a moderate Ferment in it; but because several Animals have liv'd after it has been cut out, and been more brisk than when they had it, it is not therefore improbable, but it has some other Use not yet known; especially since the Modern Discoveries allow of no such Ferment. It is, however,



however, certain, that it serves to cherish and support the left side of the Stomach, as the Liver does the right to further Digestion.

The Sweet-bread.

The *Sweet-bread* or *Pancreas*, so called, because it is altogether fleshy, is situated under the back Part of the Stomach, and lies cross the Belly. It is a white and soft glandular Substance, stored plentifully with single Kernels over its Surface, which are somewhat prominent, and of a reddish Colour.

Its Vessels.

It has its Cover also from the *Peritonæum*. Its Arteries spring from the *Cæliacal*, and its Nerves from the *Intercostals*; its reflux Blood is sent into the Liver, as that of the Spleen: Besides, it has a Passage into the first Gut a little below the Stomach, which is call'd the *Pancreatick Duct*. The Liquor, which that Duct discharges, is believed, in Conjunction with the Gall, to sweeten the Chyle, to free it from all manner of Impurities. This Liquor seems chiefly to be derived from the little Glands which are on its outside, there being a great many little Pipes detached from them, thro' all Parts of it, to the above-mentioned Duct. As for the further Uses of the Sweet-bread, I shall only take Notice, that as it lies across under the lower Part of the Stomach, it not only contributes to its Warmth, but may help to keep it somewhat elevated; by which Means its muscular Action is not hindered, as it might probably be when full, if its Weight was not supported.

Its Use.

The Liver.

The Ancients believ'd the Liver to be the chief Instrument of Sanguification; neither could they be much blamed for this Opinion, it being agreeable to the first Discoveries made in Anatomy.

Its Substance is fleshy, somewhat resembling congealed Blood: It is situated on the upper Part of the lower Belly, on the right side, under the short Ribs. The Liver of a Horse has four Lobes, which grasp the Stomach, and keep it warm. It is ty'd by three Ligaments; the chief of which is called its *Suspensory*, and is a Production of the *Peritonæum*; it is very strong and nervous, arising from the Midriff towards its right side, and is inserted in the thickest Part thereof, where its uppermost Cover,



Cover, expanding itself, forms the proper Tegument of the Liver; another Ligament fixed to the Point of the Breast-bone, in conjunction with the first, keeps it suspended in such manner that it can neither fall downwards nor sideways. The *Umbilical Vein*, by which the *Fœtus* is nourish'd, becomes its third Ligament, which is very necessary in a Horse, because it preserves the Liver in galloping, or leaping, from falling forwards, and bearing too hard upon the Midriff.

Its Veins are the principal Branches of the *Cava*, Its Vessels. or hollow Vein, whose other Branches receive all the Blood which is brought in by the *Porta*, forming the hollow Vein above-mention'd, by a Combination of all their Roots into one great Trunk. The *Porta* (so called from its Office) is form'd from the Branches which have been already observ'd to come from the Spleen, Sweet-bread, and Guts, &c. Its Arteries are from the *Celiac*, and its Nerves from the Intercostals, &c. Its lymphatick Vessels take the same Course, as those of the Spleen and Pancreas.

Tho' a Horse has no *Gall Bladder*, yet he wants not sufficient Store of *Gall*, which is separated by its proper Vessels, and convey'd directly into its Duct, which opens into the first Gut, about ten or twelve Inches below the undermost Orifice of the Stomach. This Liquor is separated from the Blood, which is imported to the Liver from the Spleen, &c. and serves, in conjunction with the *Pancreatick Juice*, for the Purposes above-mention'd. The *Porus Biliaris*,  
or Gall-pipe.

The Liver is of great Use, as it is a constant Its Use. Receptacle for all the Blood which is return'd from the Spleen, Pancreas, and Guts, where it, no doubt, undergoes such Changes and Alterations, by the Separation of the Gall, as are necessary, before it goes into the Heart, to fit it for a fresh Progress into all Parts of the Body. It is moreover exceeding helpful to the Stomach, as it not only cherisheth it by its Warmth, but also keeps it steady, and preserves it from any counter Action, that



that might mar its muscular Motion, and hinder Digestion.

## S E C T. V.

*Of the Kidneys, Ureters, and Bladder.*

**The Kidneys**

The *Kidneys* are seated in the *Loins*, behind the *Stomach* and *Guts*, the *Right* under the *Liver*, and the *Left* under the *Spleen*. They are seldom alike: In a *Horse*, that on the right *Side* is somewhat triangular; and the other is much broader below than at top, not unlike the Figure of an *Egg*.

**Their Vessels.**

They are nourish'd by their own proper Vessels, which are call'd the *Emulgents*; the *Artery* springing directly from the *Aorta*, and the *Vein* having as near a Communication with the *Cava*: Their *Nerves* spring from the same Branch of the *Inter-costal* that goes to the *Stomach*, and that is the Reason why the least Disorder in the *Kidneys*, *Ureters*, or *Bladder*, causes such sudden Sicknes.

The Substance of the *Kidneys* is chiefly glandular, having, on the outside, a vast Number of little *Kernels*, which separate the *Stale* from the *Blood*, and from them proceed an equal Number of little *Pipes*, or *Conduits*, which run from the Circumference towards the Center, like the *Spokes* of a *Wheel*: By these the *Urine* is convey'd into other *Glands*, which are call'd the *Carunculae papillares*, from the Resemblance they bear to *Teats*, which, in a *Horse*, are as big as small *Field Beans*; and when it has undergone a further Change in these *Glands*, it is empty'd into a *Cavity* call'd the *Pelvis*, or *Bason*, which is in the Center of each *Kidney*. This being a membranous Substance, is no other than an Expansion of the *Ureters*, which are two *Canula's*, or *Pipes*, from which the *Urine* passes from their respective *Kidneys* to the *Bladder*.

**The Ureters.**

The *Ureters* keep not a straight Course from the *Kidneys*, but in Form of the Letter *f*, they enter



enter into the Back and lower Part of the Bladder, where passing about an Inch between its Membranes, to prevent the return of the Urine back the same way, they are inserted near its Sphinctre, or Neck.

The *Bladder* is seated in the lower Part of the Belly, within that Circumference which is made by the Loins, Hip-bones, and Share-bone. It is of an irregular Shape, somewhat resembling a Pear, composed, as the Stomach and Guts, of a treble Coat, or Skin, the outermost from the *Peritonæum*, the middlemost muscular, the innermost very thin, and of an exquisite Sense, having Nerves both from the *Intercostals*, and the *Vertebræ* of the Loins. Its Veins and Arteries are Branches of the *Hypogastricks*. The Bladder is perforated, or bored, not only where the *Ureters* enter into it, but also in its Neck, to give passage to the Urine which runs along the *Urethra*, or Piss-pipe, in order to its Discharge out of the Body: Its Neck is compos'd of muscular and fleshy Fibres, which form a sphinctre Muscle, such as has been describ'd belonging to the Fundament, which opens and shuts at Pleasure.

As for the *Capsulæ Atrabiles*, which some Persons have called Deputy-kidneys, because they are situated near the true Kidneys, and somewhat resemble them; I shall not spend the Reader's Time about them, since Anatomists have not as yet clearly determin'd their Use.

The *Capsulæ Atrabiles*, or Deputy-Kidneys.

## S E C T. VI.

*Of the Parts of Generation in a Horse and Mare.*

The *Yard* being the most external of all the Parts administering to Generation, I shall therefore begin with it. Its outward Cover, or Sheath, is nothing else but a Production of the Scarfskin, Hide, and fleshy Pannicle, which are ty'd by an Appendage, call'd the *Frænum*, or Bridle, which runs along the underfide, in a narrow Slip, almost to the Root of the Yard; so that the Sheath folds back in several Wrinkles, and gives full Liberty to the Yard, as often as it is extended and drawn.

The *Yard*.



Its Sub-  
stance.

The internal Substance of the Yard consists of two nervous Bodies, which, as in Man, make up the greatest Part of its Bulk. These two Bodies are very spongy and open in a Horse, and when dry'd, are extremely light; but in a Bullock, and some other Animals, they are more compact and solid. They are composed of a vast many Branches of Veins, Arteries and Nerves, which are variously interwoven one with another. On the under-side, between these two cavernous Bodies, runs the *Urethra*, or Piss-pipe, from the Sphinctre of the Bladder to the Extremity of the Glans or Nut, which affords a Passage both for the Urine and Seed.

The Glans is an Appendage to the Yard; it is of a round Figure, but very thin in Proportion to what it is in Man; it is not so cavernous as the Yard, but of a quicker Sense, being the chief Seat of Pleasure in Copulation.

Its Muscles.

The Yard has two Muscles on each side towards its Root: The first Pair spring from the external Process or Knob of the Hip-bone, and help the Yard in Erection; the other two rise from the Fundament, and are called the *Dilators*, because they serve to open and widen it for the freer Passage of the Seed and Urine. Its Veins and Arteries spring from the *Hypogastricks*, and its Nerves from the lower *Vertebral*.

Its Vessels.

The Stones.

Next to the Yard the *Testes*, or Stones, properly take place, because in them the Seed is prepared: They are two glandular Bodies of an oval Figure, situated under the Root of the Yard, hanging in a *Scrotum* or Bag; which is no other than a Production or Continuation of the Sheath above described. The Stones have each a Branch from the *Aorta*, or great Artery, which brings the Blood directly from thence, not only for their Nourishment, but for Seed.

Their Vessels.

Their Veins are Branches of the *Cava*, some of which open into the great Trunk thereof, very near the *Emulgents*, but not in the *Emulgents*, as in Men. These are called the *Præparantia*, or preparing Vessels, which from the upper side of the  
Stones



Stones are curiously clasped and twined, like the Tendrils of Vines ; and growing narrower and uniting more together as they advance towards the Belly, they are denominated by several Names, as the Pyramidal Body, and *Plexus Pampiniformis*, &c. On the back-side of each Stone there is a longish Body somewhat white and round, called the *Parastatæ* or *Epididimæ* ; from each of these runs a pretty large Vessel which empties itself into the Seed-Bladder, situated on each Side the Root of the Yard and on the inside of the Share ; these are called the *Deferentia*, or the Vessels which carry back the Seed : Both the *Deferentia* and the Blood-Vessels above described are inclosed in a *Capsula* or Sheath, which is a Production of the *Peritonæum*, proceeding from the lower Belly on each side, which not only serves for this Use, but forms the outermost Cover of the Stones, and is that which Anatomists call the *Tunica Vaginalis*.

Each Stone has a *Cremaster* or suspensory Muscle Their Muscles. to draw them up in time of Copulation, which arising from the Ligament of the Share-bone, expands itself all round the inside of the *Tunica vaginalis* ; and, according to Mr. *Snape*, forms their second Coat. Besides these, the Stones have an innermost Coat or Cover, which is thick and nervous, and not only contributes to their Warmth, but is a great Defence to their true Substance, which consists of a very fine Clue of Vessels, made up of Veins, Arteries and Nerves, and form'd out of those above described ; so that the Liquor passing thro' so many Circumvolutions and Turnings in Vessels which are infinitely small, it is thereby so often strained and refined, till it becomes fit to enter into the *Parastatæ* ; where probably undergoing some further Degrees of Refinement, it is completely formed into Seed.

There are several glandular Bodies situated at the Root of the Yard immediately before the Seed-Bladders, and are therefore called *Prostates* : The Prostates. These separate a clear slimy Matter, which being forced out in Time of Copulation, no doubt preserves the Urinary Passage from the Pungency of the more spirituous



spirituous Parts of the Seed; and may at other times, in Conjunction with the *Mucus*, which is in that Passage, defend it from the Heat and Sharpness of Urine, Sand or other gritty Matter, sent into it from the Bladder.

Having given this short Account of the Genitals of a Horse, we come in the next place to those of a Mare, which differ from the other, not only as they are all contained within the Cavity of the Belly, but likewise as to their Figure and Use.

The Parts  
of a Mare.

A Mare has two *Testes* or Stones, as well as the Horse, which lie backwards on each side under the Loins; and these are nourished with Arteries which spring from the *Aorta*, and are more in Number than those of a Horse. The above-mentioned Author mentions but one Vein from the *Cava*; which is contrary to his own Figure of a Mare's Genitals, where there are several; but this he seems to have borrowed from the Anatomy of a Woman, having probably never examin'd those Parts of a Mare with that Industry the Author has done, from whom he has taken this Figure.

The Ovaria.

Wherein  
they differ  
from the  
Stones of a  
Horse.

The Stones of a Mare are not as those of the Horse, oval and round, but flat like a Garden-Bean: They have their common and proper Teguments, and in their inner Substance several *Ovaria* or Egg-beds, which are Receptacles for the Male-Seed.

The Womb.

Its Horns  
and Tubes.

Somewhat forward and below these *Ovaria* is seated the Womb or *Matrix*, between the Neck of the Bladder and the streight Gut, where it is firmly ty'd in its Place by two Pair of Ligaments; it is differently shap'd from that of a Woman, being divided by its *Cornua* or Horns, whose hollow round Insertion seems to compose its *Fundus* or Bottom. Out of these Horns arise the *Tubæ* or Trumpets, so called by *Fallopious*. At their *Exit* they are very small, but in their Progress grow wider and somewhat contorted. Towards their Extremity they are again contracted into a small Orifice or Mouth, with a jagged Membrane all round their Circumference, not unlike the Husk of a Rose. The Use of these Tubes is to convey the Seed from the Womb to the *Ovaria*, where



where the Impregnation first begins; and also to afford it a Passage back again into the same Place.

The Substance of the Womb is fleshy, inclosed within two Membranes, which are nervous and sensible: It has a great Number of Blood-Vessels from the *Hypogastricks*, which, after Conception, enlarge it like a Sponge, and fill it with Blood, not only that it may become a proper Bed for the *Fœtus* to lie in, but also to supply it with sufficient Nourishment.

Its Substance.

The *Vagina* or Sheath is an Appendage to the Womb, being only a Production of its Membranes; it is that which forms the long Passage reaching from the *Pudenda* or Privities. On its inside are several *Rugæ* and Caruncles; the Use of which are to stimulate the Horse to a vigorous Discharge of his Seed. Besides these, there are the *Nymphæ* just within the *Labia*, and the *Clitoris* more backward, which not only serve to the same purpose, but to augment the Pleasures of the Mare; the *Clitoris* being a spongy Body, answering to the Glans or Extremity of the Horse's Yard, and endued with the same Sensation. The inside of that Passage has a thin *Mucus* from its Glands, which is not only a Defence to it, but likewise serves to facilitate the Passage of the Horse's Yard; which being an extreme sensible Part, would otherwise be hurt by its Unevenness. About an Inch within the Lips, on the upper side, there is a small Passage, by which the Urine is discharged from the Bladder into the Extremity of the Sheath: And as the Bladder has its Sphinctre to shut up its Neck when the Urine is drained from it, so the *Nymphæ* do the same Office in the *Vagina*; and when they are contracted, or rather closed together, form the *Fissure* or Chink. They are also of further Use to prevent Flies, Dirt, or any extraneous Matter from getting within it.

The Sheath.

The *Udder* is another Part peculiar to the Mare, being that from whence the Foal receives its first Nourishment after its Birth. Its Substance is partly fat, and partly glandular: By its Glands the Milk is separated from the Blood, which is brought

The Udder.



into it by the *Hypogastrick* Arteries, and carry'd along in little Pipes to two Glands, which are pretty large, seated at the Root of each Pap, where undergoing its last Refinement it is discharged first into its proper Vessicles, and then into the Paps which convey it to the Foal.

Tho' the Udder of a Mare seems to be one undivided Substance, yet, as in all other Animals, it is truly separated; the Vessels of one Pap having no immediate Communication with the Vessels of the other. So that if a Mare should have one side of her Udder hurt, the Foal may still be nourished by the other.

It may perhaps be expected that I should put an End to this Chapter by giving some Account of Conception, and the Manner of the Foal's being nourished in the Womb, and likewise that I should take some Notice of the Male-Seed, which by most modern Anatomists is believed to be full of *Animalcula*, or little moving Creatures, which, they say, by the Help of a Microscope may be plainly discerned in that Liquor. But as these things would not only be too tedious, but of more Curiosity than Use to the Farrier, for whose Service this is principally intended: And as Anatomists differ among themselves in many Circumstances concerning them; and moreover as it would, besides a bare Knowledge of the Structure of the Parts, require in the Reader a competent Skill in natural Knowledge to understand those Disputes fully: I shall not therefore detain him about them, but proceed to a Description of the Middle Venter or Chest, being that which properly comes next under Consideration.

T A B L E II. represents the Stomach, and several other Parts contained in the lower Belly.

Fig. I. Sheweth the Stomach taken out of the Body.

A. *The Gullet.*

B. *The upper Orifice of the Stomach.*

CC. *Two Nerves dispersed through the upper Part of the Stomach.*

D. *The*



- D. The Pylorus, or lower Orifice of the Stomach.
- E. Its Entrance into the small Gut.
- F. The Entrance of the Porus Biliarius, or Gall-Passage into the Beginning of the small Gut.
- G. The Entrance of the Pancreatick Duct into the same Gut.
- H. Part of the first Gut.
- I. The outside of the Stomach, with the Ramifications or Branchings of the Blood-Vessels upon it.
- KK. The outermost Coat of the Stomach turn'd back.
- L. Its middle Coat, with the Ramifications of the Nerves upon it.
- MMM. The Gastrick Vessels inserted into the Bottom of the Stomach.

Fig. 2. Sheweth the Stomach turned inside out.

- A. The left Orifice, or Mouth of the Stomach.
- B. The right or lower Orifice.
- C. The Wrinkles and Folds of its muscular Coat.

Fig. 3. Shews the hollow side of the Liver.

- AAAA. Its four Lobes.
- BB. The Vena Porta, with its Egress out of the hollow side of the Liver, together with a Nerve of the sixth Pair creeping over it.
- C. The Trunk of the Vena Cava, or hollow Vein.
- D. The Porus Biliarius or Gall-Passage.
- E. A Branch of the Cæliack Artery.

Fig. 4. Represents the Spleen, with its Vessels.

- A. The concave, or hollow side of the Spleen.
- B. The Splenick Vein.
- CCC. The Splenick Artery.

Fig. 5. Shews the Pancreas or Sweet-bread freed from its Membrane and Part of its Substance, the better to shew the Course of its Vessels.

- AAA. The Body of the Pancreas dissected.
- BB. The Pancreatick Duct.



- C. The Orifice of the said Passage into the first Gut.
- D. An Artery which is dispersed through its Substance.
- E. A Vein which accompanies the said Artery.
- F. A Branch of the Intercostal Nerves.

Fig. 6. Shews the Kidneys, Ureters and Bladder, with the Parts of Generation in a Horse.

- A. The descending Trunk of the hollow Vein.
- B. The descending Trunk of the great Artery.
- C C. The emulgent Veins arising out of the hollow Vein.
- D D. The emulgent Arteries springing from the great Artery.
- E E. The Kidneys.
- F F. The Deputy-Kidneys.
- G G. The Ureters.
- H. The Bladder.
- I. Its Inside.
- K. Its Neck where it opens into the Urethra or Piss-pipe.
- L. The cavernous Body of the Yard.
- M. The Urethra or Piss-pipe.
- N N N N. The Seed preparing Veins commonly so called.
- O O. The preparing Arteries.
- P P. The Pyramidal Bodies, or Corpora varicosa.
- Q. The right Testicle, with its innermost Coat.
- R. The Left divested of its Coats.
- S. The Epididimis of the left Testicle.
- T T. The Deferent Vessels.
- U U. The Seed-Bladders.
- X X. The Prostates.

Fig. 7. Shews the Womb of a Mare, with its Horns and Tubes, &c.

- A A. The Bottom of the Womb.
- B B. The Vagina or Sheath.
- C. The Sheath cut open to shew the Clitoris.
- D D. The Cornua or Horns of the Womb.
- E E. The Tubæ or Trumpets.
- F F. Their Fimbria or jagged Orifices.
- G G. The Ovaria or Stones of a Mare.
- H H. The broad Ligaments.



I. *The Bladder.*

K. *Its Insertion into the Sheath near its Orifice.*

L. *The outward Orifice of the Sheath.*

Fig. 8. Represents one of the *Ovaria* or *Testicles* taken off, and cut through the middle to shew the Eggs more plain.

## C H A P. III.

*Of the Middle Venter or Chest.*

### S E C T. I.

*Of its proper containing Parts.*

**B**Y the *Chest* is to be understood all that Cavity The Chest. which is circumscribed above by the *Collar-Bones*, and below by the *Midriff*, before by the *Breast-Bone*, behind and on both sides by the *Back-Bone* and *Ribs*.

Its containing Parts are the *Muscles*, the *Bones*, Its contain-  
ing Parts. the *Pleura* and *Mediastinum*.

The first thing that appears after the common Teguments are removed, being the *Muscles*, I shall therefore begin with them, and at the same time only take Notice of the *Intercostals*, leaving the rest to another Opportunity.

The *Intercostals* compose all the *Flesh* that we observe to fill up the Spaces between the *Ribs*: The Inter-  
costal  
Muscles. They are in Number sixty-four, to wit, thirty-two on each side; and are distinguished by the *External* and *Internal*, or the *Uppermost* and *Lowermost*.

The *External* take their Rise from the lower Part of the upper *Ribs*, and end in the upper Part of the lower; and the *Internal* from the upper Part of the lower *Ribs*, ending in the lower Part of the upper: By which means they not only differ in their *Origins* and *Insertions*, but also in the Course of their *Fibres*, which run directly across each other in Form of the Letter X; so that their Action is also contrary: The *External* extending the Chest, by raising the *Ribs*, and drawing them backwards,



backwards, help to make room for the Air in Inspiration, or taking in the Breath; whereas the Internal contract the Breast, by drawing the Ribs downwards towards the Breast-Bone, for Expiration or Expulsion of the Air.

*The Pleura.* Next the Muscles, on the inside of the Ribs, we observe the *Pleura*. It is a double Membrane which springs from the inside of the Spine; and is believ'd by some to take its Origin from the Coats of the Nerves. It is perforated in several Places for the Ingress and Regress of the Vessels, which go from the Heart to the Head, and the Veins which return from thence; as also for such as go downwards to the lower Belly and Extremities, and those which return from thence to the Heart.

*Its Vessels.* Its Veins are from the *Vena sine pari* and upper *Intercostals*; its Arteries from the upper *Intercostal*, and its Nerves from between the *Vertebrae* of the Back.

*Its Use.* As the *Peritonæum* furnishes proper Teguments for all the *Viscera* in the lower Belly, so this performs the same Office to all the Parts contained in the Chest, which it involves on all sides. It is likewise a Defence to the *Intercostal* Vessels which run between its Membranes, preserving them from being grated and hurt by the Ribs.

*The Diaphragm, or Midriff.* The *Diaphragm* or Midriff, which divides the Chest from the lower Belly, comes next in order. It is a thin Substance, but muscular and fleshy, arising, according to some, from its Circumference; and, according to others, from the fleshy Productions, which spring from the *Vertebrae* of the Loins. Its middle is nervous, and its two sides fleshy. The Direction of its Fibres are from its back and innermost Part or nervous Body, branching out on each side to its Circumference towards the Ribs. It has several Perforations, or Passages for the Nerves and large Blood-Vessels, which retain to and from the lower Belly; as also a large one for the Gullet.

*Its Vessels.* It has Veins from the Trunk of the *Cava*, with some Twigs from the *Vena Adiposa*. Its Arteries are



are from the *Aorta*: Its proper Nerves are two, proceeding from the spinal Marrow at the third or fourth Joinings of the Rack-Bones of the Neck, being in their Course sustained by the *Mediastinum*. These Nerves enter in at its Center, and disperse themselves through its whole Substance.

Its chief Use is in Respiration, and is the principal Muscle that assists in that Action, dilating and contracting itself as the Ribs are dilated and contracted. It is also useful in assisting the *Peristaltick* Motion of the Guts, whereby the Chyle is forwarded into its Vessels, and the Excrements to a Discharge. It is, moreover, useful to divide the lower Belly from the Chest, as has been observed.

As the *Diaphragm* divides the lower Belly from the Chest, so the *Mediastinum* divides the Chest in the Middle. It is a double Membrane arising from the *Pleura* or Rib-coat, where, beginning at the Breast-Bone, it holds a direct Course towards the Back. Near the Back and the Breast this Membrane is united for a little Way; but in the Middle it is separated so wide as to contain the Heart and its *Pericardium* or Bag: It is like the *Pleura*, from whence it proceeds very smooth on its outside towards the Lungs, but somewhat rough towards the Heart, by reason the *Pericardium* adheres to it by several small membranous Filaments.

It has Veins from the *Phrenica* or *Midriff-Vein*, and from the *Vena sine pari*; it has also one from the *Subclavian*, which is proper to it, called the *Mediastina*. Its Arteries spring from the *Phrenica*, and its Nerves are detached from that Pair, which descend by it to the *Midriff*.

Besides its Use in dividing the Breast, it preserves the Heart from being hurt in its Motion by the bony Sides of the Chest. It is further useful to sustain the Vessels which take their Course through it; and by its being knit to the *Midriff*, preserves that Muscle from being drawn too much downwards by the Weight of the Liver, whose suspensory Ligament is fix'd to it.



## S E C T. II.

## Of the Heart and Pericardium, &amp;c.

The Peri-  
cardium, or  
Purse of the  
Heart.

The *Pericardium* is that Bag in which the Heart is inclos'd as in a Purse. It rises from the Basis, or upper Part of the Heart, from the outer Coats of the great Vessels, which spring originally from the *Pleura*. It is of a middle Substance, neither very hard, so as to hurt the Lungs, nor yet so soft as to be itself easily injur'd by the Motion of the Heart. It is perforated in five Places, namely, on the right Side, for the ascending Trunk of the *Cava*, which, coming from the Liver, enters the right *Ventricle*, and by the *Subclavian* Vein, which descends by the Channel-bones into the same *Ventricle*; and thirdly, by the *Pulmonary* Artery, which goes out of the right *Ventricle* into the Lungs: On its left Side it is perforated for a Passage to the *Pulmonary* Vein, which comes from the Lungs, and enters the left *Ventricle*: And, lastly, for the great Artery that passes out of the said *Ventricle*.

Its Vessels.

Its Veins are from the *Phrenick* and *Axillaries*; its Arteries are so small that they are not very discernable; its Nerves come from the *par Vagum*.

Its Use.

The Use of this Purse, or Bag, is to cover the Heart, and be a Defence to it, to contain a Moisture not only to keep it glib and easy in its Motion, but also cool. There are various Opinions concerning this Liquor of the *Pericardium*, and from whence it is derived; but I shall not give the Reader any Trouble by reciting them, but hasten to the Heart itself.

The Heart.

The *Heart* is the principal Fountain which sends Blood and Nourishment into all Parts of the Body, and is wonderfully suited in every Respect for that purpose.

It is situated in the midst of the Chest, where it is encompass'd by the Lobes of the Lungs, having its Point inclining to the left Side. It is in Shape not very different from what it is in most other Animals, only in a Horse it does not grow so gradually



gradually narrow towards its Point, as in some, nor so broad in proportion at its Basis, or Root.

Its Substance is fleshy and very solid, that it may the better endure the Perpetuity of Motion, and expell the Blood with more Force to all Parts of the Body. It is for that purpose compos'd of muscular and fleshy Fibres, which, towards the Top, take their Direction spirally, like the Contortions of a Snail's Shell. Its Substance.

It is said to have a two-fold Motion, which, by Anatomists, is called its *Systole* and *Diastole*; or, in other Words, its Contraction, when its Top is drawn towards its Basis, or Bottom, for the Expulsion of the Blood into the Arteries; and its Dilatation, when it is filled with Blood from the Veins. As often as we feel the Pulse beat, so often is the Heart contracted, it being the Contraction, or *Systole* of the Heart, which communicates that Vibration, or Pulsation, to all the Arteries.

The Heart, besides its *Pericardium* above-described, hath two Membranes, one that covers all its Outside, which it derives from the outer Coat of the great Artery, and another which lines it through all its Inside, which proceeds from the inner Coat of the said Vessel. It is stored with Fat towards its Bottom, which keeps it moist and glib, as the Water in the *Pericardium* does the rest of its Substance.

Besides the large Vessels which empty themselves into it, and those which are constantly fed by it, its has a Vein and two Arteries, which are proper to it, and by which its Substance is chiefly nourish'd. These being wove all round it like a Garland, are therefore called *Coronariæ*. It has also many small Branches of Nerves, which spring from the eight Pair, and send forth other small Branches to the *Pericardium*. Its Vessels.

Within the Heart there are two *Ventricles*, or Caverns, divided into a Right and Left, by a fleshy Partition. The Right of these *Ventricles* is much the widest, but not quite so long as the Left, neither is it of so compact a Substance, or of so great Strength, the *Septum*, or Wall, being peculiar to Its Ventricles.



to the left. The Reason of this Difference seems to be, because the right *Ventricle* sends the Blood only into the Lungs by the pulmonary Artery, whereas the Left detaches it into all Parts of the Body. The Inside of these *Ventricles* is very curiously made up, and interlin'd with several fleshy Pillars, somewhat resembling the small *Gothick Columns*. The Use of which seems to be chiefly for the better Commination of the Blood and Chyle, being, in every Contraction, wrung thro' them as through a Sieve.

The Valves  
of the large  
Vessels.

The large Vessels, which we have already observ'd to retain to the Heart, and likewise those by which it is constantly emptied, have each of them Valves, for the better Performance of their several Functions; to wit, the *Vena Cava*, which enters into the right *Ventricle*, has three called *Trienspidæ*, from their triangular Figure. They are plac'd at the Bottom of the Heart, where the said Vein enters, and pointing inwards, a free Admittance is given to the Blood, which goes into the Heart, but none of it can return back again the same way. The *Vena Arteriosa*, or pulmonary Artery, which carries the Blood from the same Ventricle to the Lungs, has also three Valves, called *Sigmoideæ*, from the Resemblance they bear to the old *Greek Sigma*; these look from within outwards, by which means they hinder the Blood from returning back again into the Heart.

To the *Arteria Venosa*, or pulmonary Vein, which returns the Blood from the Lungs into the left Ventricle, belong two Valves, called *Mitrales*, from the Resemblance they bear to a Miter. These have the same Office as those of the *Cava* above-describ'd: And the three Valves of the *Aorta*, or great Artery, call'd *Semilunares*, from their being fashion'd like so many Half-moons, have the same Office as those of *Arteria Pulmonaris*.

Its Auricles.

But lastly, there belong also to the Heart two *Auricles*, or Earlets, from the Resemblance they bear to Ears, being seated like two Purses on each Side of its *Basis*. These Earlets have their *Diastole* and *Systole*, like unto the Heart, only with this Difference, that when the Heart is contracted, the

Earlets



Earlets are dilated, and when the Heart is dilated, the Earlets are contracted; the Reason is, because they receive the Blood from the Cava and pulmonary Veins, so that as they empty themselves into the Heart, it forthwith becomes dilated; and when the Heart is contracted, they must of consequence be filled, the Course of the venal Blood being, at that Interval, intercepted.

The Use of the *Auricles* is to measure out the Blood in certain Proportions, before it enters the Heart, lest, rushing in with too great an Impetuosity, it might not only cause the Valves to be violated, but occasion a Suffocation in the Heart itself, whereby the vital Faculty might be quite destroy'd. Their Use.

## S E C T. III.

*Of the Windpipe and Lungs.*

The *Lungs* are the chief Instruments of breathing, they fill up the greatest Part of the Cavity of the Chest, being divided into two Lobes, one of which lies on the right Side of the *Mediastinum*, and the other on the left. The Lungs.

They are composed of the various Ramifications, or Branchings of the Veins, Arteries and Nerves, together with the Windpipe, the Extremities of whose Branches are very finely wove together, so as to form an infinite Number of little *Vessicles*, or *Air-bladders*, resembling small Grapes when they are extended, but not very perceivable at any other Time. When an Animal sucks in the Air, these little *Vessiculæ*, or Bladders, are then dilated and full, and when the Air is emitted, as in Expiration, they become empty.

The Windpipe, whose Branches make up a great Part of the Substance of the Lungs, is that great Channel, which beginning at the Root of the Tongue, descends down the Throat, and, as soon as it reaches the Lungs, divides itself into two large Branches, one to each Lobe. These The Wind-  
pipe.



send off a great many Branches, which detach an infinite Number of other Branches that reach into all Parts, and whose Extremities open into the *Vesiculæ*, or Bladders, above-describ'd. This Pipe is called the *Trachea*, or *Aspera Arteria*, from its Roughness, which Name it obtains from the Throtle to the Lungs; but those Branches which it sends off into each Lobe, are term'd its *Bronchia*.

It is compos'd of a double Membrane, which incloses its *Circular Rings*, the innermost of which being muscular, made up of streight and oblique Fibres, it thereby contracts and dilates itself in the Action of Breathing. Those Rings do not quite encompass the *Trachea*, or *Aspera Arteria*, but leave a fourth Part of the Circle wanting, lest they should hurt the Gullet whereon it lies, and occasion Pain in swallowing; but after it divides itself into its *Bronchia*, they go quite round every Branch of it, so far as is perceivable to the naked Eye; and, doubtless, hold the same Form where its Branches are the most minute and small. These Rings being, in a great Measure, cartilaginous, induce the whole Windpipe, and all its Branches, with a sort of Elasticity, or Spring, whereby it acts in concert with its membranous and muscular Parts.

Their Blood  
Vessels.

The Blood Vessels, which also compose a great Part of the Bulk of the Lungs, are partly a Branch from the great Artery, but principally the pulmonary Artery and Vein: These Veins and Arteries have frequent Inosculations, or Communications one with another, by which means they become curiously interwoven towards those *Vesiculæ*, or Air Bladders above-mention'd, which kind of Structure is, by most Anatomists, believ'd to be, to the End that every minute Particle of the Blood in those Parts may be impregnated with Air.

There are, besides these, abundance of Lymphaticks, which attend on the Veins and Arteries thro' the whole Surface of the Lungs, to receive the



Fig. 1.



Fig. 1.



Fig. 4.



Fig. 5.



Fig. 3.

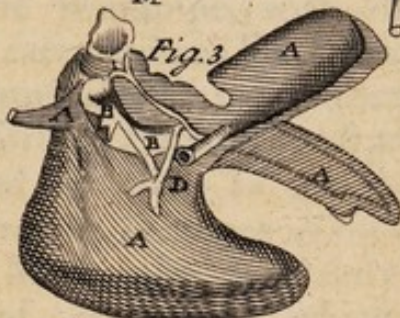


Fig. 6.



Fig. 7.

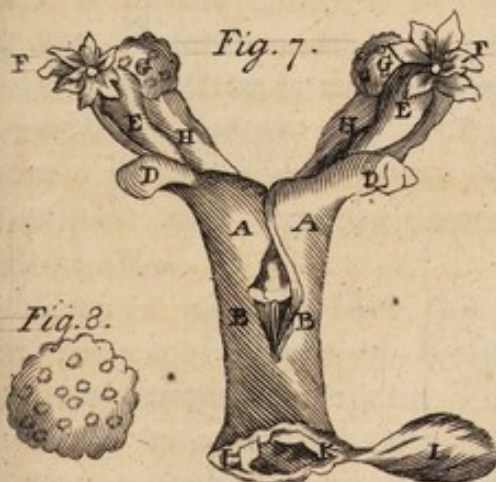
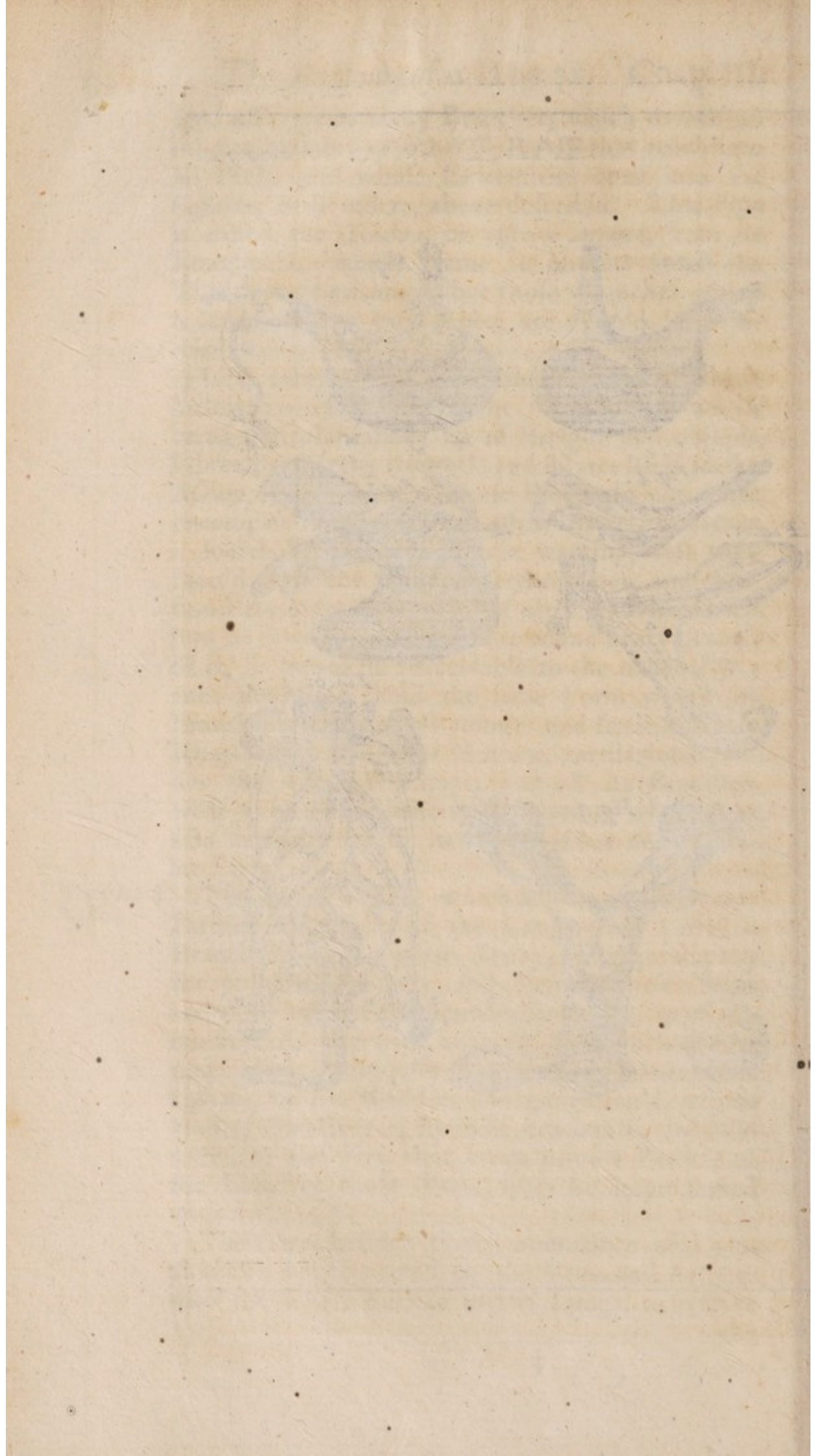


Fig. 8.









the superfluous Moisture separated by the Glands, which they afterwards discharge into the *Thoraick Duct*. The Lungs have also Nerves, which spring from the recurrent Branches of the wandering Pair. These accompany the Blood Vessels thro' their whole Substance, and are divided into innumerable Branches.

As to the Use of the Lungs, it is evident from Their Use what has been already said, that they are the chief Organs of Respiration, being, in every Respect, suited to receive the Air, which is the proper Element for all Quadrupeds, as well as Man, to breath in: And as the Windpipe, with all its Branches, is made up of cartilaginous Rings, which act in concert with its muscular Coat; it thereby becomes endu'd with a sort of *Elasticity*, or Spring, by which it is extended as often as the Air is drawn in, and in Expiration becomes again contracted. This sort of Mechanism is plainly visible in the Windpipe of any Animal, which being drawn out to its full Length, immediately gathers itself up, as soon as the Force whereby it was stretched is remov'd. The Elevation and Depression of the Chest is in like manner occasion'd by the Extension and Contraction of the Lungs; and as its Action is thus subservient to them in Respiration, it seems also to be chiefly deriv'd from them; so that the Air may be properly term'd the principal, tho' not the immediate Cause of that Action also.

Now as we are sure the Air is the immediate and principal Cause of Respiration, it would be to little purpose to spend Time about the various Opinions concerning that Motion of the Lungs, to wit, whether it be Natural or Animal, as the Philosophers term it, or whether, according to some, it be partly Natural and partly Animal; I shall only therefore observe, that altho' it is somewhat in our Power to regulate that Action, by drawing in more or less Air at Pleasure, yet we are very well satisfied no Creature can imprison it in the Lungs, or keep it out two Minutes, without a manifest Violence to Nature; so that it seems to be chiefly

D

natural,



natural, there being nothing in it voluntary, further than that we can, in some measure, help ourselves in Accidents which may happen to those Parts, which cannot but occasion Pain as often as the Lungs and Chest are extended or depress'd, if we should let them have their full Liberty.

But besides the Use of the Lungs in Respiration, by the Air which they perpetually draw in, they invigorate the Blood, and render it more fit for the several Functions of Life. And this will appear reasonable, when we consider that the whole Mass of Blood takes its Course through the Lungs before it is detached into any other Part of the Body; so that during its Progress there, it is not only purged from many of its thinner Impurities, which visibly fly off from the Mouth and Nose in breathing, but also from its grosser Parts, which by Expectoration are discharged through the Pipes of the *Aspera Arteria*. And as the Blood-vessels accompany the Wind-pipe in all its Branches, the Blood itself is not only thought to be thereby cooled, but at its Return is believed to give a moderate Temperament to the Heart, which, no doubt, must be very much heated by the Perpetuity of its Motion.

The *Thymus*.

Having thus given a short Account of the Heart and *Pericardium*, as also of the Lungs and Wind-pipe, together with their several Uses, I shall, before I leave this middle Cavity, take some Notice of that large Kernel called the *Thymus*. It is so called from the Resemblance it bears to a *Leaf of Thyme* in its Shape, and is situated across the uppermost Part of the Breast, along the Collar-Bones, covering them on the inside.

Its Use.

Its Use is to prevent the two large Branches of the *Aorta* and *Cava* from being hurt by the sharp Edges of these Bones in their Passage over them. And as it serves to this purpose chiefly (there being no Vessels or excretory Ducts visible in its Substance) it is therefore much larger in Foals than in grown Horses, as it is indeed proportionally in all other young Animals; because the older any Creature grows, the Coats of the Blood-vessels be-  
come



come the more nervous and strong, and therefore are not in such Danger of being abraded.

## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Larynx and Pharynx, with the Tonsils, &c.*

Tho' these do not properly belong to the Chest, yet as I have already treated of the Gullet and Wind-pipe, to which the *Larynx* and *Pharynx* are united; and as the one has Communication with the lower *Venter*, and the other with the Chest, I have therefore chose to take Notice of them under this Division, leaving those Parts by which they are circumscribed, to be considered with the Bones and Muscles.

The *Larynx* is composed of five Cartilages or Gristles; the first of which is called *Scutiformis*, The Lab. rynx. because it resembleth a Shield: The next is called *Annularis*, from its Likeness to the Ring which the *Turks* wear on their Thumb when they go a shooting: The third and fourth, because they are joined together under one common Tegument, and resemble an Ewer, are therefore termed *Guttules*; these two form the *Glottis* or little Tongue: The fifth is named the *Epiglottis*, because it is placed above the *Glottis*. The Substance of this is soft, and in Shape like an *Ivy-Leaf*, and serves as a Valve to hinder any thing from falling into the *Wind-pipe*.

These Cartilages are moved by several Pair of Muscles, and serve principally to frame and modulate the Voice in all Creatures, and are therefore the Instruments of Neighing in Horses. Its Use.

The *Larynx* has two Pair of Glands or Kernels belonging to it; one Pair is placed on its upper Part, and at the sides of the *Uvula*, and are called the *Tonsils*; and by some, in humane Bodies, the *Almonds of the Ears*. The Tonsils. These separate a great deal of the Saliva which comes from a Horse's Mouth, and serve to moisten not only the *Larynx*, to which they chiefly belong, but also the *Gullet*, by which means every thing passes down it the more easily.



The other Pair are placed at the lower End of the *Larynx*, one on each side of the *Scutiform* or *Shield-like* Gristle; these in Horses are very large, and are swell'd when a Horse has the Glanders.

The *Pharynx*.

The Top of the Gullet or *Pharynx*, which is so called from its Office, because it carries and conveys Food from the Mouth towards the Stomach; is somewhat more fleshy than the rest of the Gullet, being also seated in the upper Part of the Throat behind the *Larynx*. It has several Muscles whereby it acts, but these shall be also treated of hereafter.

**TABLE III.** shewing all the Parts of the middle Cavity or Chest.

*Fig. 1.* Represents those Parts *in situ*.

- A A. The outward Teguments laid back.
- B. The Breast-Bone, and some Part of the Ribs also laid back to shew the Parts contained in the said Cavity.
- C. The great Kernel called Thymus.
- D. The Heart.
- E E. The right and left Lobes of the Lungs.
- F. The Mediastinum.
- G. Part of the Midriff.

*Fig. 2.* Shews the *Vena Cava*, and right Ventricle of the Heart dissected.

- A. The Orifice of the Coronary Vein.
- B. The treble pointed Valves.
- C C C. The Fibres which fasten the Ends of the Valves to the Substance of the Heart.
- D D. The Sides of the Ventricle.

*Fig. 3.* Shews the left Ventricle also opened lengthways to shew its Valves.

- A. The Pulmonary Vein coming from the Lungs.
- B B. The Valves called Mitrales.

*Fig. 4.*



Fig. 1.

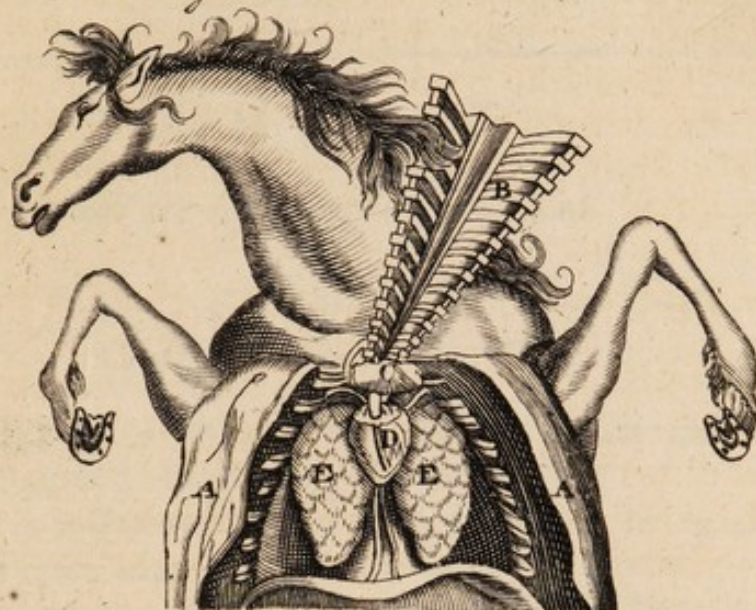


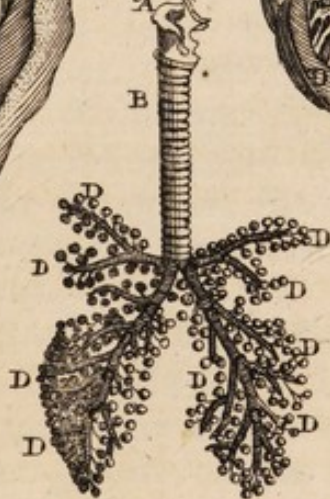
Fig. 3.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 4.





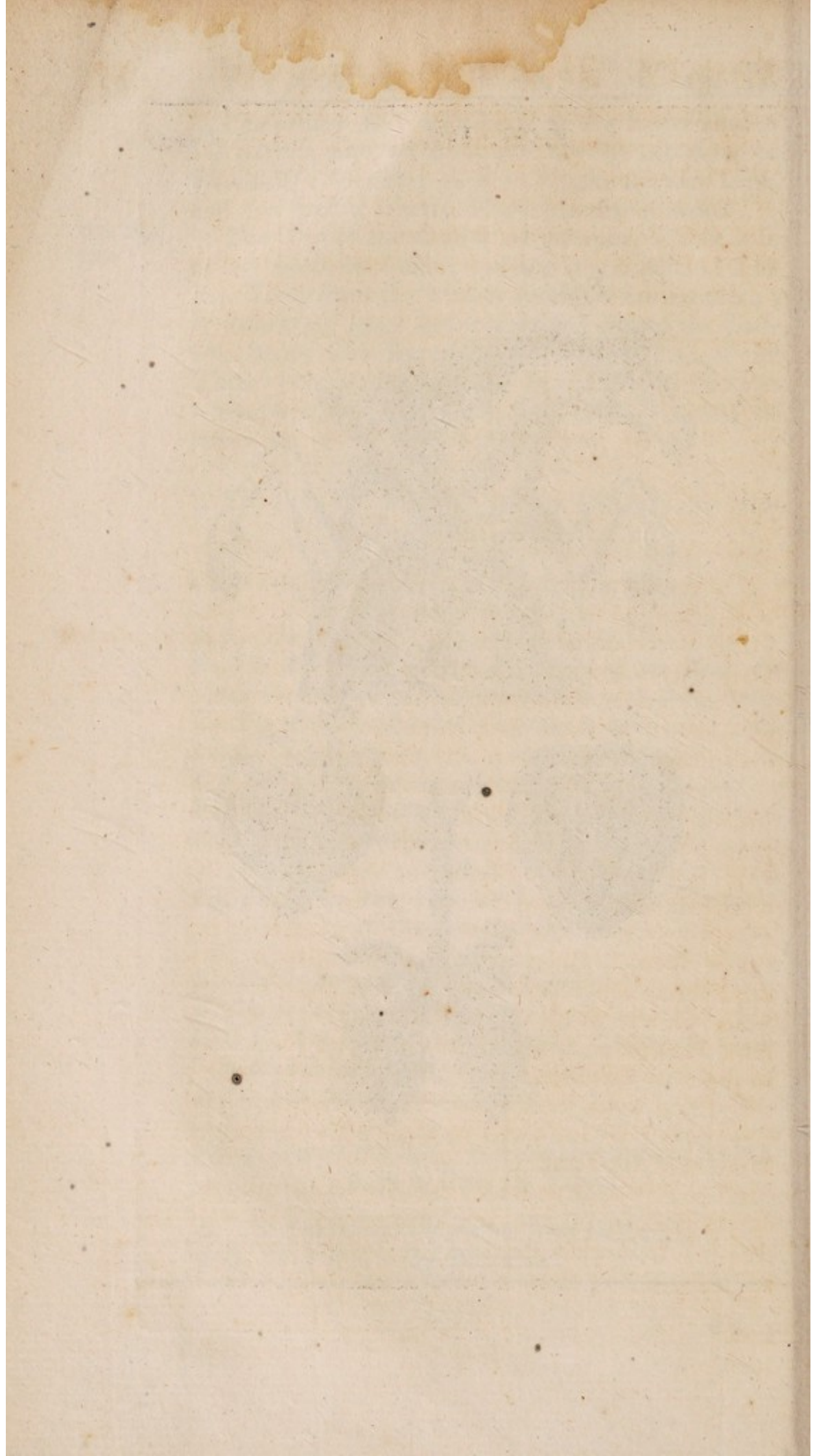




Fig. 4. Shews the Lungs divested of their *Parenchyma* or fleshy Substance.

A. *The Larynx.*

B. *The Wind-pipe.*

CCCC, &c. *Its various Branches.*

DDDD, &c. *The innumerable little Bladders at the Extremities of these Branches.*

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the upper Cavity or Head.*

### SECT. I.

*Of its proper containing Parts.*

AS the Parts already described have always been esteemed the Seat of the *Vital Faculty*, so the Head is accounted that of the *Animal*, it being the The Head. Origin from whence all Sensations are derived.

The proper containing Parts of the Head are reckon'd to be these five, namely, the *Muscles*, the *Pericranium*, the *Periosteum*, the *Skull*, and the *Meninges* Its proper containing Parts. or Membranes contained within it: Leaving the Muscles and the Skull to be treated of in their proper Places, I shall begin with the *Pericranium*.

It is a very thin Membrane spread over the whole Skull, adhering every where to the *Periosteum*, excepting where the Temporal Muscles come between them. There are a great Number of slender Fibres, which pass from it thro' the *Suturæ* or Seams of the Skull to the *Dura Mater*, or uppermost Membrane of the Brain; which Fibres serve to stay that Membrane in its Place, so as to hinder the Brain from being hurt by the Hardness and Unevenness of the Skull in violent Concussions of Muscles of the Head.

† The *Periosteum*, to which the *Pericranium* adheres, is a Substance of the same Nature and Use, only that it is somewhat thinner. It is endued with an exquisite Sense, from whence sometimes arises an

† The *Periosteum* is believed by modern Anatomists to be only an Expan-

sion of the Teguments of the Muscles of the Head.



excessive Pain when the Bones are wounded, they being themselves altogether insensible.

These two Membranes have Arteries from the *Carotids*, and Veins from the *external Jugulars*, and are chiefly of Use to cover and defend the Skull from outward Injuries, which otherwise would be exposed and laid bare by every slight Accident.

*Dura Mater.*

Immediately under the Skull we observe the *Dura Mater*, so called from its Texture, which is very firm; and likewise, as it has been generally believed, to give Origin to most Membranes throughout the Body. It is the uppermost Membrane, peculiar to the Brain, which it involves and covers on all Parts, and is so well fastened to the *internal Processes* of the Skull, that it cannot easily be removed; and besides the Communication which has been observed to be between it and the *Pericranium*, it is tied to the Membrane underneath it, to wit, the *Pia Mater*, and to the Brain itself by the Blood-vessels, which penetrate the Skull, and are inserted in it, and pass through it.

*The Falx.*

This Membrane is double, as the *Peritonæum* and *Pleura*, and sends forth a Production, which in Man resembles a Sickle, and is therefore called the *Falx*, it being broad towards the hind Part of the Head, and narrow and sharp towards the Nose, and curved at Top. Tho' it be of a Shape somewhat different in a Horse, yet Anatomists have given it the same Name. This divides the upper Part, or *Cortical Substance* of the Brain directly in the middle into a right and left Side. Within its Duplication are several Cavities called the *Sinus's* of the *Dura Mater*; the longest of which runs lengthways from before to the Noll, where it is divided into some Branches, whereof two descend downwards to the bottom of the *Occiput*, and a third to the *Glandula Pinealis*. These are supposed to be Cisterns that contain the superabounding Blood, which is emptied into them by the Arteries, and suck'd up again at leisure by the Veins.

*The Pia Mater.*

The *Pia Mater*, which immediately involves the Brain, and adheres close to it in all its Convulsions and Folds, is a very thin Membrane, but of exquisite



exquisite Sense ; for which Reason several Anatomists have been of Opinion, that all the Nerves which arise from the Head, derive their Coats from it, and not from the *Medullar* Part itself. It is furnished with an infinite Number of *Arteries*, which spring from the *Carotids* and *Cervical Arteries*, and *Veins* from the *Jugulars* ; all which are very small, but finely interwoven one with another.

These two Membranes are not only of Use to cover and involve the Brain, in order to preserve it, and to keep its loose Substance together, but also to sustain the Vessels that enter into it. And moreover, they are further useful, as they make up the two innermost Coats, which sheath the Pith of the Back.

The Use of these Membranes.

## S E C T. II.

*Of the Brain and Cerebellum, with the Medulla Oblongata, and Pith of the Back.*

The Brain of a Horse is much less in Proportion than the Brain of a Man ; but is composed of a medullary Substance, and has most or all the same Parts which are discoverable in a Humane Head.

The Brain.

It is divided into three Parts, viz. the *Cerebrum*, *Cerebellum* or Brainlet, and the *Medulla Oblongata*.

The *Cerebrum* contains all that Substance which lies uppermost in the Head, and which is divided into two Halves by the *Falx* above-described : Its outside is of an ashy Colour, and form'd into several Convolutions and Windings, but not with any visible Regularity, as the *Cerebellum* ; its inside is white, and therefore called the *Corpus Callosum*.

The *Cerebellum* is divided from the *Cerebrum* by a Production of the *Pia Mater*, which also affords a particular Cover to all its Folds, which keeps them separate and apart from each other. This is made up of four Parts, whereof two are lateral, one on each side ; the other two are in the middle standing before and behind ; they are somewhat orbicular, and are called the *Processus Vermiculares*, from the Resemblance they bear to the Worms in rotten Timber.

The Cerebellum or Brainlet.



The Medulla  
Oblongata.

The *Medulla Oblongata* is the beginning of the *Spinal Marrow*; it is of an uniform white and compact Substance, harder than the Brain or *Cerebellum*. It arises from six Roots, two of which spring from that Part of the Brain, which is call'd the *Corpora Striata*; the other four arise lower and more backward, from those Protuberances which are termed the *Nates* and *Testes*. It is round, being in Length about two Inches within the Head, before it passes out at the *Noll*, whence it is continued along the *Chine* downwards to the Fundament, and through all that Passage is termed the *Spinal Marrow* or *Pith* of the Back. This has, besides the *Pia Mater* and *Dura Mater*, another Membrane, which forms its outermost or third Coat, and is said to arise from a strong Ligament which binds together the forepart of the Rack-bones.

But before I proceed to the Use of the Brain, it will not be amiss to take a View of its Parts somewhat more narrowly, that the Learner may be the more fully instructed in the Knowledge of that, which in all Animal Bodies is so absolutely necessary and essential to Life and Motion. In order to which I shall follow the usual Method of Dissection, beginning with its under-side, having already taken a general Survey of the whole.

The Rete  
Mirabile.

The first thing which is the most observable on that side, is the *Rete Mirabile* spread all over the Bottom of the Brain, and is a curious Net-work of Blood-Vessels form'd out of the small Twigs which spring from the largest Branches of the *Carotid* and *Cervical* Arteries, having passed through the Skull by proper Holes in the Bones of the Temples. These Vessels are the more adapted and fitted to the Nourishment of the Brain, as they are thus interwoven one with another, by which Means the Blood takes a much longer Stay than if they observed a more streight and equal Direction.

The Glandula  
pituitaria.

The *Glandula pituitaria* is the next thing observable: Towards the Bottom of the Brain it is inclosed within the Membranes, and seated in a small Cavity in the Os *Cuneiforme* or Wedge-like Bone, appointed by Nature for that purpose. It has a Con-

duit



duit called the *Infundibulum*, or Funnel, which conveys the Excrements of the Brain into it; and for that Reason most Anatomists have believed there was a Passage from it to the Nose: But later Enquiries have discovered two small Ducts which it sends off to the *Jugular Veins*; so that some are of Opinion it is again mix'd with the Blood. This Funnel or *Infundibulum* is said to take its Rise from the fore-part of the third Ventricle, into which this Moisture seems to be first separated, and is only conveyed by it to the Gland above-mention'd, where it probably undergoes another Degree of Refinement, that it may be the better adapted to the Purposes of Nature.

Anatomists have, it seems, been very much puzzled to find proper Resemblances for several Parts of the Brain, having distinguished some of them by the Name of *Nates* or Buttocks; and others, by that of *Testes* or Stones. These come next under our Consideration: They are four orbicular or round Prominencies, which jet out from the *Medulla oblongata*, or beginning of the Spinal Marrow; the two first, to wit, the Buttocks, being the largest, and the two Stones, which are lesser, being only Appendages to them.

The *Corpora Striata*, so called, from their being streaked or chamfered, are only the Ends of the two Thighs, which proceed from the Buttocks; by these the *Medulla oblongata* adheres to the Brain, as has been observed; and by the *Nates* and *Testes* above-described, it adheres to the *Cerebellum* or Brainlet.

Between the Buttocks is placed that noted Gland, called the *Glandula Pinealis*, and has been thought by some Philosophers to be the Seat of the Soul, tho' modern Anatomists have so far degraded it, as to make it only the *Penis* or Yard of the Brain, both on Account of its Situation, and probably as it seems to be of no other Use but to separate a little clear *Lympha* from the Arterial Blood.

Between the Buttocks and near this little Gland, there is a small Chink, to which some have given the Name of *Anus* or *Arse*; others have called it the



the *Vulva*; whether it has obtained this Appellation in Derision of the other, is not material.

The Ventricles.

As for the *Ventricles* of the Brain, which by some have been reckon'd four, by some three, and by others but one; I shall not trouble the Reader about the Number, but only take Notice, that they are situated in the middle of the Brain, reaching forwards towards the Nose, and downwards towards its Bottom, in Shape of a Half-Moon. The Use of these Ventricles is, according to the latest Enquiries in Anatomy, to serve as a Receptacle for that Portion of the *Serum* which is separated from the glandulous *Skin* that invests them, and from the *Glandula pituitaria*, and is thought to be again imbibed by the Veins, and by them conducted afresh into the Mass of Blood. They are likewise thought of Use to give a free Passage to the Blood in those Channels called the *Plexus Choroides*, that run along their Sides, which probably might be too much compress'd by the great Weight of the Brain, had not Nature found out that free and easy Situation for them.

The Fornix.

Besides those Parts already described, there are to be found in the Brain the *Fornix*, the *Septum Lucidum*, and the *Corpus Callosum*,

We have already taken Notice of the *Corpus Callosum*, as being the inner Substance of the Brain, which is distinguished from the Cortical Part that involves it by its Whiteness, &c. The *Septum Lucidum* is only that Partition which divides the *Ventricles* and the *Fornix*, is a kind of Vault or Arch which rises between the Brain and the *Medulla Oblongata*, and serves to bear up the upper Part of the Brain, that it may not press too hard upon the subjacent Parts.

The Use of the Brain.

Now, as to its Action and Use, it is very certain, the Brain, according to the Philosophers Terms, is the chief Seat of the *Animal Faculty*, as the Heart is the Fountain of the *Vital*. The Animal Spirits being prepared out of its *Parenchyma* or marrowy Substance, and from thence conveyed into the Nerves, which communicate Sense and Motion to all Parts of the Body.

These



These Spirits are first of all form'd out of the *Vital*, or in other Words, out of the *Arterial Blood*, which is constantly sent by the Heart to the Brain, where there are innumerable Twigs dispersed, not only through its *Cortical* or Greyish Substance, but also through its White and *Medullary Substance*; some of which Twigs spring from the *Plexus Choroides* and *Rete Mirabile* above described, and others from the *Carotids* themselves immediately. The superfluous *Serum* is separated by the Glands, and that Portion of the Blood, which is not chang'd to Animal Spirits, is taken up by the Veins, and returned back again from whence it came. As soon as those Spirits are elaborated, or rather as soon as the Blood has undergone so many different Modifications and Changes in the Capillary or Hair-like Vessels of the Brain, as to render its Particles fine enough to pass through the inner *Medullar Substance*, they then enter those Fibres which compose it, and seem to be no other than a large Bundle of *Tubuli* or little Pipes, which (if the Comparison may be used) somewhat observe the same Oeconomy with those of the Kidneys, which pass from the external *Glandular Part* to the *Carunculae Papillares*. These little Particles, or rather Spirits, are conveyed by the foresaid *Tubuli* to the upper Processes of the *Medulla Oblongata*, to wit, the *Corpora Striata*, *Nates* and *Testes*, &c. and are there emptied into the Nerves, whose inner Substance is white and fibrous, like the *Medulla* from whence they spring.

The Animal Spirits.

After this short Account of the Formation of the Animal Spirits, the next thing that occurs, is in what Manner they become the Instruments of Sense and Motion. In order to give the Reader a general Idea of this, which is as much as can be done in so small a Treatise, it will be necessary in the first place to consider the Substance of a Nerve, which is very solid and compact, proceeding by a sort of Gradation from that of the Brain; for as the *Corpus Callosum*, or inner Substance of the Brain, is more firm than the *Cortical Part*, so a Nerve is even at its Origin some degrees beyond that in  
Solidity;

Their Use.



Solidity ; by which means it is the more adapted to its peculiar Functions. But besides the Solidity and Compactness of the Nerves, their Tenseness is also a great Means of their Action ; for as the Blood-vessels, which have no other Sense, but what is borrowed from them, and as their Office is only to carry vital Spirits for the common Nourishment of the Body ; as these are therefore branched off in many Circumvolutions and Turnings, and are form'd irregularly into such Meanders as we observe in Brooks and Rivulets, and as some Branches are sent upwards, and others downwards, as is necessary, in order to their several Functions ; so the Nerves on the other hand, as they take their Origin from the Head and Spine, are detached from thence into all Parts of the Body in such manner as they may be every where braced as straight as the Strings or Cords of an Instrument ; by which means they have a free and uninterrupted Undulation, and, as in all their Branchings, they are little or no ways contorted, but, for the most part, form compleat and perfect Angles, the said Undulation is communicated as intirely to their Origin, as if their Course was directly straight from it.

And therefore as the Nerves are of a very compact and solid Form, and can be brac'd and extended in such manner as has been observed, and consequently endu'd with Elasticity, they must easily and suddenly communicate all Sensations to the Imagination, there being no Part of the Body which does not participate of some little *Fibrille* or Threads detached from them ; or, according to some, there being no Part of the Body, which is not more or less adapted to receive the nervous Juice ; by which means a close and intimate Correspondence is kept up with the Nerves : So that whenever an Animal Body is touch'd on any Part, it is presently sensible of that Touch by Virtue of the Communication which they keep between the Head and all Parts of the Body.

Now as to Motion, to which the Nerves are equally subservient, that (I think) is termed *Voluntary* in a Man, and *Spontaneous* in a brute Creature,



ture, as the one is said to act by the Determination of the *Will*, and the other by *Instinct*; but this is not material, since both are said to be produced by the Determination of the Animal Spirits; for when any Creature goes to move, the Spirits are thought to be detached in a more than ordinary Quantity into those Parts which are to be put in Motion. And as the Arterial Blood always accompanies the Spirits, and is equally determined with them, the Muscles are thereby fill'd or emptied, according as the Will or Instinct directs, as we shall see more fully hereafter.

But before I leave this Subject, it may perhaps be expected that I should give some Account of the Nature of those Spirits, which are said to flow in the Nerves, and are reckon'd the principal Cause of Action in them. To satisfy those who have a Curiosity that way, I shall only in brief take Notice, that these are thought by some to be of a viscous and clammy Nature, tho' composed of very fine Particles: And this sort of Composition they think is agreeable to that Elasticity and Springiness, which is observable in the Nerves. Others have denied any such thing as a Juice to be in the Nerves; because when a Nerve is cut asunder, there is no visible Bore or Cavity in it; neither are there any *Poruli* or little *Interstices* perceivable in it. But it is very certain, according to the common and unalterable Laws of Nature, whereby all Bodies are made up of Parts, and these also made up of other Parts, they must therefore have *Interstices*, tho' they be imperceptible; and that Juice which flows in them, whether between those *Interstices* only, or any other Way; tho' it be also imperceptible, yet it is that which we not improperly denominate the *Animal Spirits*. Tho' we can say but very little more than this, that it is the most subtle of all the Juices which are to be met with in an Animal Body, and therefore the best suited to the Services for which it is appointed.



## S E C T. III.

*Of the Rise and Progress of the Nerves.*

Besides the Nerves, which arise from the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, Back and Loins, there are nine Pair which take their Origin immediately within the Skull.

The first  
Pair of  
Nerves.

The first are those which go to the Nose, and are therefore called the *Olfactory* Nerves, and by some the *Mamillary Processes*, because they are round at their End like a Pap: They rise from the Shanks of the *Medulla Oblongata*, betwixt the *Corpora Striata* and the Chambers of the *Optick Nerves*, from thence running along the bottom of the Brain; after increasing and growing broader, they are divided into a great many Twigs, which receive outer Coats from the *Dura Mater*, having only before a single Integument from the *Pia Mater*. Many of these Twigs pass through the Holes of the Sieve-like Bone to the Nose, where they help to compose the Organs of Smelling.

The second  
Pair.

The second Pair are the *Optick* or seeing Nerves; these rise a little behind the former, out of the *Medulla Oblongata*: At their Rise they are somewhat soft, being covered only with the *Pia Mater*; but as soon as they reach the *Dura Mater*, they become cloathed by it, as the *Olfactory Nerves* above described. This outermost Coat constitutes the *Sclerotica* or horny Tegument of the Eye; and from the *Pia Mater* proceeds the next Coat of the Eye, called the *Uvea*, from its Resemblance to a Grape in Colour: And lastly, the Marrowy Substance forms the *Retina* or Net-like, which by some is called its *third Coat*.

The third  
Pair.

The third Pair are called the *Eye-movers*: These arise from the bottom of the *Medulla Oblongata*; at the Rise they are united, which is the Reason why some believe, when one Eye is carried towards any Object, the other is also directed towards the same; as the *Optick Nerves* pass through the first Hole of the Wedge-like Bone, these pass through the second, until they come to the Muscles of the Eye,  
where



where they are dispersed; by their actuating the Muscles, the several Motions of the Eye are performed.

The fourth, or *Pathetick Pair*: These take their Rise different from all the rest, viz. from the Top of the *Medulla Oblongata*, behind the *Nates* and *Testes*, and passing along the side of the *Medulla*, are afterwards hid in the *Dura Mater*, until they reach the Hole through which the last Pair do pass, which they accompany, until they are inserted in the *Trochlear Muscles* of the Eyes; these are called by Dr. *Willis* the *Pathetick Nerves*, which move the Eyes in all Passions and Affections.

The fourth  
Pair.

The fifth Pair take their Beginning in a Horse a little below the former, tho' in a humane Subject they seem to arise from the *Cerebellum*. These are made up of a Bundle of Fibres gathered together, so that they look to be a Number of Nerves springing from one common Origin, which send out Branches into all Parts of the Head, viz. to the Eyes, the Palate of the Mouth, the Nose, but chiefly to the lower Jaw. The Temporal Muscles and Muscles of the Face, and some Branches which go downwards, inoculating with the sixth Pair, constitute the Root or first Trunk of the *Intercostal Pair*. It is owing to the several Branchings and Inoculations of these Nerves following, that there is so great a Sympathy and Consent among all those Parts where they take their Progress.

The fifth  
Pair.

The sixth Pair inoculate with the fifth, after they have passed single through the same Hole of the Skull, and been hid some time under the *Dura Mater*; after which they send back some Branches, which constitute the beginning of the *Intercostal Nerves*. Each of these are divided, near the Orbit of the Eye, into two, one being spent on that Muscle of the Eye, which draws it outwards; the other on that which is only proper to Brutes, called the *seventh Muscle*.

The sixth  
Pair.

The seventh Pair are the *Auditory Nerves*: These in a humane Head take their Rise from under the *Annular Processes* of the *Cerebellum*, but in a Horse from the sides of the *oblong Marrow*. They have

The seventh  
Pair



two Proceſſes, one of which is ſomewhat ſoft, and is carried through the Hole of the *Os petroſum* into the Cells of the Ears, which it cloaths with a very fine Membrane, and by which the Sounds are conveyed into the common Senſory; the other is ſaid to conduce chiefly to Motion, ſending forth ſeveral Slips to the Tongue, Lips, Mouth and Noſe, actuating the outward Organs of the Voice, others taking their Courſe to the Muſcles of the Forehead and Eye-lids, and ſome to the Muſcles of the Ears, aſſiſting a Horſe in moving his Eyes and Ears upon hearing or ſeeing any thing that is aſtoniſhing to him.

The eighth  
Pair.

The eighth Pair is generally termed the *Par vagum* or wandring Pair, becauſe they inoculate and keep up a Communication with the Branches of many other Nerves, and are diſtributed, not only to the Head, but alſo into many other Parts of the Body, particularly to the Heart, the Lungs and Stomach, as alſo to all the other *Viſcera* in the lower Belly.

The ninth  
Pair.

The laſt Pair, reckon'd by Dr. *Willis* the ninth and laſt, which ariſe out of the Skull; but by ſome, to be only Branches of the fifth and ſixth Pair, becauſe they take their Origin from ſome of their recurring Branches. This Pair has alſo ſeveral Inoculations, and are form'd with other Branches into ſeveral *Plexus's*, as thoſe laſt deſcribed, but not ſo numerous. They take their Courſe chiefly to the *Meſentery* and *Loins*, ending towards the *Fundament*, in ſeveral ſmall Twigs.

The Nerves  
which ariſe  
without the  
Skull.

Having deſcribed the Nerves, which take their Origin within the Skull, we proceed in the next place to thoſe which derive their beginning from between the Joinings of the Neck, Back and Loins, which ſhall, in a manner, be but juſt nam'd; they being in Number thirty-ſeven, whereof ſeven ariſe from the Neck, ſeventeen from the Back, and thirteen from the Loins and *Os Sacrum*.

Thoſe of the Neck are all of them diſperſed, partly on the Muſcles of the Face, partly on the Muſcles of the Neck itſelf, and partly on thoſe of the Shoulders and Fore-Legs; only it is to be re-  
marked,



marked, that a Twig from each Nerve of the fifth Pair being joined with the like Twigs of the fourth and sixth, compose that remarkable Nerve, which goes to the Midriff, called the *Nervus Phrenicus*.

The first two Pair, which arise from between the *Vertebrae* of the Back, communicate with the lowermost of the Neck, sending forth some Twigs to the Neck and Shoulders: The second, as also all that follow, send each of them a Twig to the *Intercostal* Nerve, or Nerve of the ninth Pair; their other Branches being chiefly spent on the *Intercostal* Muscles, and Muscles of the Back, with some small Slips towards those of the lower Belly.

As these are chiefly dispersed among the Muscles of the Back, and the *Intercostals*, and the Muscles of the lower Belly, so those of the Loins, and those also which spring from the *Os Sacrum*, are dispersed into the Muscles of the Loins, Hips and hinder Legs, only that the *anterior*, or fore-Branches of the first Pair of the Loins, are spent on the fleshy Part of the *Midriff* and Muscle *Psoas*, and the *posterior* Branches on the Muscle called the *longissimus Dorsi*.

The Yard of a Horse, and the Womb of a Mare, are also furnished from the *anterior* Branches of the Loins, and the Stones from the *anterior* Branches of the *Os Sacrum*, sent off to them from the fore-Part of the Thigh.

#### S E C T. IV.

*Of the Eyes, and their several Parts.*

Every one knows that the Eyes are the Organs The Eyes or Instruments of seeing, the Ideas of all outward Objects being conveyed by them to the common Sensory.

They are of a convex globular Figure, inclosed within their proper Lids; which is an Orbit or Socket made for that Purpose out of the Bone.

The Eye-lids, of which I shall first take Notice, serve as a Safeguard to preserve them from The Eye-lids. Dust and other external Injuries. They are composed



posed of the Skin, fleshy Pannicle and Muscles, which are all wrought into an exquisite Fineness; the inner Membrane, which is very smooth, that the Eye may move the more easily under it, is a Production of the *Pericranium*; the Extremities or Edges are hard and gristly, partly to help their Action, and partly that they may meet close together. As to the Fat which lies among the Muscles, it is of the same Use as in most other Parts, to keep the Eye moist, and easy in its Motion.

The Eye itself is composed of three *Humours* and four *Tunics*.

The Humours and Tunics of the Eye.

The *Adnata*.

The first of its *Tunics* is called *Adnata*; it arises from the *Pericranium*, and is spread all over the White of the Eye; by which means it keeps it firm in its Orbit or Socket: It is of exquisite Sense, and very full of Blood-vessels, which are perceivable at all times, but especially when the Eye is any ways hurt.

The *Sclerotica*.

The next, which is the first of its proper Coats, is called the *Sclerotica*, from its Hardness: It arises from the *Dura Mater*, being opaque on its hind Part, but clear and transparent, like Horn, on its fore Part; from whence it obtains another Name, and is called the *Cornea*.

The *Choroides*.

The third, called *Choroides*, from its Resemblance to the *Chorion*, which inwraps the *Fœtus* in the Womb. This arises from the *Pia Mater*, as it also forms the innermost Coat of the *Optick Nerve*. It is black on its Inside, and open on its Fore-part the whole Breadth of the *Pupilla*. The Fore-part of this Coat is also distinguished from its Back-part by the Name of *Uvea*, from its resembling the Colour of a Grape. To this belongs the *Ligamentum Ciliare*, because it consists of slender Filaments, like the Hairs of the Eye-lids. The Use of these Filaments is to widen and constrict the *Chrystalline Humour* by contracting or opening the Perforation of the *Uvea*.

The *Retina*.

The innermost or fourth *Tunic* is an Expansion of the Substance of the *Optick Nerve*, and is called the *Retina*; because it encompasseth the glassy Humour, like a Net; by a Combination of the Rays



Rays of Light on the fine Filaments of this Coat; and the Reflexion which is caused by the Opacity of the *Sclerotica*, and the Blackness of the Inside of the *Uvea*, all external Images are convey'd distinct to the Imagination; whereas if the Rays were not thus collected on the *Retina*, there would be no such thing as distinct Vision.

The Humours of the Eye, which come next to be considered, are in Number three.

The outermost is called the *aqueous* or watery Humour, being thin and fluid, like Water; it fills up the Space between the *Cornea* and *Chrystalline* Humour in the Fore-part of the Eye.

The *aqueous* Humour.

The *Chrystalline* is the next, so called from its Brightness, being clear and transparent, like Chrystal; it is inclosed in the *vitreous* or glassy Humour; it is looked upon to be the chief Instrument whereby the Rays of Light are collected upon the filamentous Expansion of the *Retina*.

The *Chrystalline* Humour.

The last is called the *Glassy* Humour: It is not so solid as the *Chrystalline*, but exceeds both it and the watery Humour in Quantity; it is partly convex, excepting that Cavity, where it receives and surrounds the *Chrystalline*: It is not so bright as the *Chrystalline*, but yet transparent, that the visible Species received into the *Chrystalline* Humour might not be reflected before they reach the *Retina*, but should be transmitted to it pure and unmix'd.

The *vitreous* Humour.

## S E C T. V.

### *Of the Ears.*

The Ear is divided into the External and Internal; the External is that Part which a Horse moves backward and forward at Pleasure, and is so well known, that there needs but little to be said about it. Its Use is partly for Ornament, and partly to gather all Sounds, and transmit them to the Internal.

The Ear.

The Internal Ear consists of several Parts, which are very curious, and are seated in the Cavity of the *Os Petrosum*.

Its Parts.



The Drum.

The first of these is the *Drum*, with its Cord and Muscles. The Drum is a very thin and transparent Membrane, being an Expansion of the softer Process of the *Auditory Nerve*; it is very dry, that it may the better contribute to Hearing; and strong, that it may the better endure loud Sounds, or any other external Injuries; for if once this be broke, or any ways relaxed, a Deafness must unavoidably ensue.

The *Concha*  
with the  
small Bones  
contained  
in it.

Within this Membrane there is a Cavity called the *Concha*, wherein are four little Bones, which are bound together by a small Ligament proceeding from the Cord of the Drum. The first is called the *Hammer*, which lies upon the second, called the *Anvil*. The third is named the *Stapes* or *Stirrop*; but in a Horse it is triangular, like the Greek Letter  $\Delta$ . Upon the upper Part of the *Stirrop* the longest Foot of the *Anvil* stands. The fourth is called *Orbicular*; it is of a round Shape, and tied with a slender Ligament to the side of the *Stirrop*, where it is fastened to the *Anvil*.

Their Use.

These Bones are a Defence to the Drum, and preserve it from being torn or beat inwards by the violent Vibrations of the outward Air in loud Sounds, and are thus assisting to the Sense of Hearing. When the external Air beats upon the Drum, it is driven against the *Hammer*, which strikes upon the *Anvil*, as the *Anvil* bears against the *Stirrop*; and as this Force is more or less exerted, so the *Stirrop* opens the oval Window more or less, and proportionally the Sound appears louder or lower.

The *Concha*.

The Cavities within the *Os petrosum* are in Number three: The first, wherein these four little Bones are situated, is called the *Concha*, from its resembling the Shell of a Taber. When the Membrane is struck upon by any outward Sound, the Echo is made in this Cavity, as in a common Drum.

There are in this Cavity divers Instruments, whereof some are for Pulsation, as the four little Bones above-mentioned; some are for conducting the Air into the other Cavities, such are the  
two



two small Perforations, called the Windows; and a third sort are those by which the pituitous Matter collected within this Cavity, is discharged towards the Palate and Nose.

The first of these two Perforations being the uppermost and largest, is from its Figure named the *Oval Window*, which is kept shut next the *Concha*, by the *Basis* of the Stirrop, as often as the Sound ceases. The other, which is round, is always open, having no Covering, and is divided by the *Os squamosum* into two Pipes; one of which tends to the *Cochlea*, the other into the *Labyrinth*.

The oval Window.

The *Labyrinth*, which is the second Cavity, by its several Turnings and Windings, which are somewhat circular, modulates the Sounds in such manner as they may be leisurely communicated to the Auditory Nerve, which is dispersed through the Membrane that invests this Cavity. There are, besides the two Windows which open into this Cavity, one Perforation which opens out of it into the inner Cavity called the *Cochlea*, into which the Air passes, after it has been agitated in this Cavity and the *Concha*. Besides these there are four other small Holes for the Ingress of the nervous Fibres, that are inserted on the Membrane, which cloaths it.

The Labyrinth.

The *Cochlea*, which is the third and innermost Cavity, is so called from the Resemblance it hath to a Snail's Shell, especially in its spiral Windings; it is far less than either of the former, but invested, as the others are, with a thin Membrane, into which also the slender Fibres of the Auditory Nerve do enter. This Cavity is filled with the internal inbred Air, as well as the former, by which the Echo is made to the Impulse of the external Air upon the *Tympanum*: And the Auditory Nerve being expanded upon the Membrane, which lines all those Cavities, it is suddenly affected therewith, whereby it comes to be communicated to the Original of the Nerves, where all Sounds are distinguished.

The Cochlea.



## S E C T. VI.

*Of the Nose and Mouth.*

The Nose.

As the Ear is made up of Parts, whereof some are External, and some Internal, so the Nose is also composed of the like Parts.

The external Parts of the Nose are made up of Skin, Muscles, Bones, Cartilages, and Vessels of all sorts.

Its Parts.

The Skin is extremely thin, and without Fat, and adheres so fast to the Muscles and gristly Part, that it can hardly be separated from them.

The Bones, which make up its Cavities, are some of them common to it and the Forehead, and some of them proper to the Nose only. The Gristles are in Number five, which shall be treated of hereafter with the Bones.

Its Vessels.

The Vessels of the Nose are Veins from the Jugulars, Arteries from the *Carotids*, and Nerves from the third Pair, besides the Olfactory Nerves, which are proper to it.

It is lined on its Inside with a fine Membrane, which taketh its Rise from the *Dura Mater*. There are on the backside of this Membrane abundance of little Kernels, which separate a great Part of the Moisture which comes from the Nose. It has also another Membrane, called its *Muscular Membrane*, which is said to contract and draw together the Nostrils.

The Os Cribriforme.

On the upper Part of the Nose is seated the *Os Cribriforme* or Sieve-like Bone, which is perforated in many Places, that the small Twigs, which spring from the Mamillary Processes, may have a free Passage through it into the inside of the Nose, serving there to be the immediate Organs of Smelling.

As the Ear is form'd in such Manner as to collect and gather together all Sounds into its Cavity, so the Nose is likewise adapted to gather into it all Smells; which Sensation is performed in  
this



this Manner : The *Effluvia*, which fly off from all odoriferous Bodies, being carried in the circum-ambient Air, are communicated to all Creatures as often as they draw in their Breath at the Nostrils ; but more to a Horse than to many others, by reason he sucks in most of his Breath that Way. As soon as these *Effluvia* or odoriferous Particles are got within the Nose, those little Branches of the Olfactory Nerves, which are spread all over its inside, are immediately affected therewith, and immediately communicate that Sensation, whether it be grateful or unpleasant, to the common Sensory, where it is distinguished.

Thus the Nose is not only useful as it helps all Its Use. Creatures to distinguish that which is proper for their Food, from that which may be hurtful to them, as it is the chief Instrument of that Instinct, but it is also useful to discharge a great deal of Excrements from the Blood.

We come now to the Mouth, which is the last The Mouth. thing to be considered under this Division ; and is generally divided into that which is called External, and that which is termed Internal.

The Lips are its external or outward Parts, which The Lips. are also divided into the upper and under : These are compos'd of a soft fungous Substance, as also of some proper Muscles covered on their outside with Skin and Hair, but on the inside with a Membrane common to the Mouth and Stomach.

The Uses of the Lips are to gather in Hay or Oats, or other Food, and to retain it while it is a chewing ; they likewise serve to keep the Gums and Teeth from external Injuries.

The Parts of the Mouth are some of them fleshy, The internal Parts of the Mouth. and some of them bony : The fleshy Parts are the Lips last described ; as also the Muscles of the Cheeks and lower Jaw. The bony are the upper and lower Jaw, together with the Teeth.

All these Parts, excepting the Teeth, are covered or lined with a pretty thick Membrane, which in the Palate is rugged and knotty, by reason there are a great Number of small Glands lie under



it, out of which Part of the Slaver is separated into the Mouth.

The Parts contained within the Mouth, are the Teeth, the *Os Hyoides* or Bone of the Tongue; besides which, there are the Gums, the Palate, the *Uvula*, the Kernels called the *Almonds of the Ears*, the Tongue and its Muscles.

**The Gums.** The *Gums* are composed of a fleshy Substance destitute of Motion, that so the Teeth might the better be fastened in their Sockets.

**The Palate.** The *Palate* so called, from its being fenced or paled in with Teeth, forms the upper Part of the Mouth. It extends from the back Part of the Mouth to the fore-Teeth, but is not so hollow in a Horse as in humane Subjects; it is composed of eighteen Bars, and consists of Bones and peculiar glandulous Flesh, which are covered with a thick Coat, which is full of Perforations or little Holes, that afford a Passage to the Slaver which is separated from the Glands above-mentioned.

**The Uvula.** The *Uvula* is a red fungous Kernel somewhat longish, seated at the back Part of the Palate, where the internal Passage of the Nose opens into the Mouth, hanging downward, with a small, but bluntish end over the Chink of the *Larynx*.

The Use of the *Uvula* is to moderate the Coldness of the Air before it passes into the Lungs, and to hinder any thing from falling into the Wind-Pipe: In a Horse it is of other Use, as it hinders the Water from going into the Nose when he drinks. When this is much relaxed, it prevents the Food from passing into the Gullet, and makes it apt to return back into the Nose.

**The Tongue** In describing the *Tongue*, I need say nothing as to its Figure, it being sufficiently known to every one. It is covered with two Membranes, the outward cloathing only its upper Part, being also very porous. The inward Membrane covers the whole Tongue, and is thin and soft, having many Protuberances bunching out of it, which are inserted into the Pores and Holes of the outward Coat.

It is of a fleshy Substance, having Vessels of all sorts, to wit, Veins from an inward Branch of the external



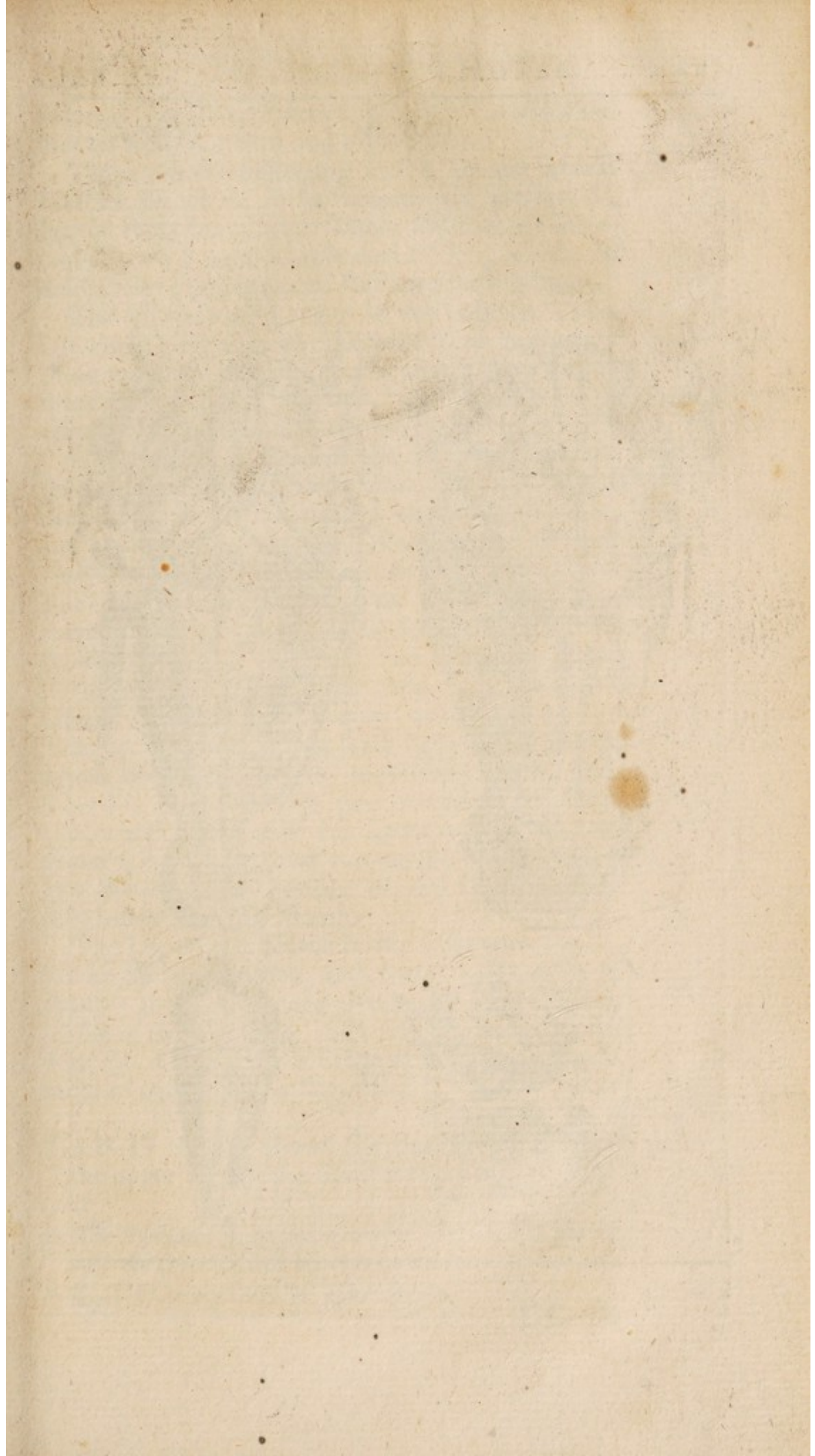




Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.

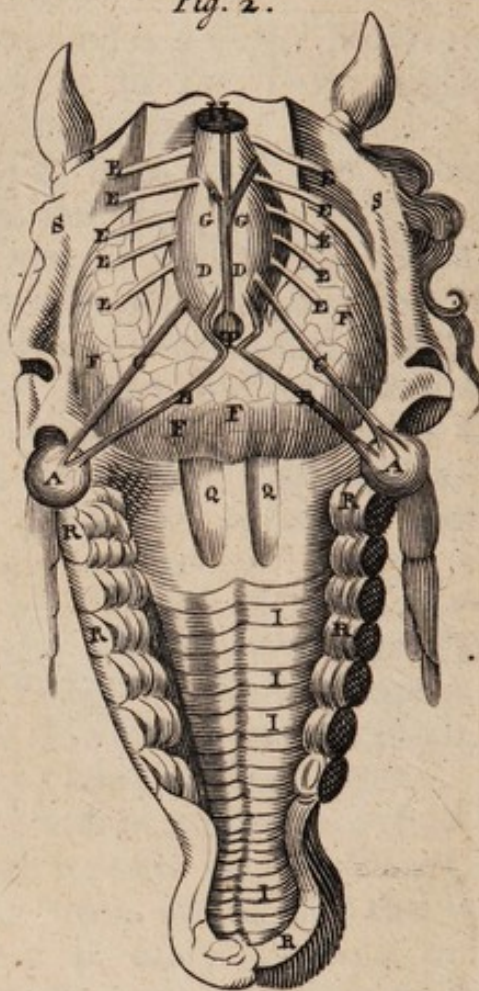


Fig. 3.

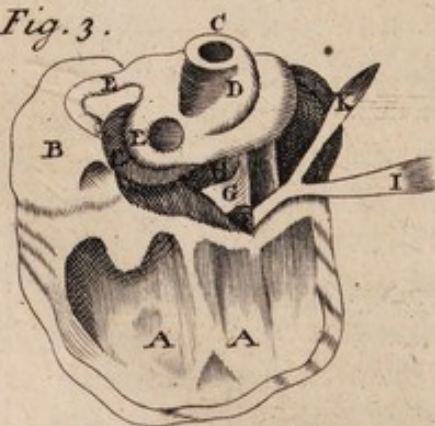
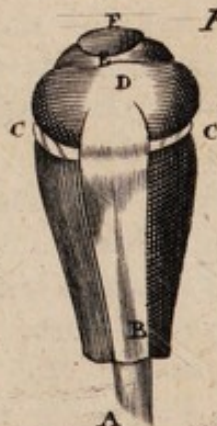


Fig.





external Jugulars, Arteries from the *Carotids*, and Nerves from the fifth and eighth Pair.

There are also belonging to the Tongue several Muscles, by which all its Motions are perform'd ; but of them hereafter. These Muscles are interlarded with a considerable deal of Fat, which, no doubt, serve somewhat to facilitate their Action.

The Use of the Tongue is not only for Taste, but also to serve as an Instrument to turn every thing taken in at the Mouth, that it may be the more expeditiously chewed, and afterwards to thrust it backwards towards the Stomach.

Underneath the Root of the Tongue there is a pretty large Kernel, from whence two Pipes, called the *Salival Ducts*, do spring ; one from the fore, and another from the hind Part ; these two are soon united into one, which runs towards the Chin. But Dr. *Wharton* has observed, that in a Horse there are other pretty remarkable Glands that stand on each side this Duct, and discharge themselves into it. This Pipe ends in other small Glands towards the *Frænum* or Bridle of the Tongue, which discharge some Part of that Slaver, which keeps the Mouth continually moist. Besides this Duct there are two others of the same Use, which arise out of the Kernels under the Ear, called the *Parotides*, and run on the outside of the Jaw-Bone to the middle of the Cheek, where they open into the Mouth.

The Use of the Slaver is the same with the *Saliva* or Spittle in Men, and serves continually to moisten the Mouth ; and all the solid Part of Food, whilst it is in chewing, and being swallowed down with the Aliment, it is believed by some Anatomists to contribute to Digestion.

T A B. IV. *Fig. 1.* Shews the Brain *in situ*, when the upper Part of the Skull is taken off.

A. *The Substance of the Brain covered with the Pia Mater, only the Dura Mater being removed.*

B B. *The Cerebellum or after-Brain.*

C C. *The*



C C. The *Processus vermiformes*, or *Worm-like Processes*.

D. A *Portion of the Medulla oblongata*.

E. The *Dura Mater*, so far as it contains the *Medulla oblongata*, cut asunder and turned back,

Fig. 2. Represents the under side of the Brain and Spinal Marrow, with the Origin of the Nerves.

A A. The *Eyes*.

B B. The *Optick Nerves*.

C C. The *moving Nerves of the Eyes*.

D D. The *Pathetick Nerves*.

E E E, &c. The other *Nerves arising within the Skull from the Spinal Marrow*.

F F F. The *Bottom of the Brain*.

G G. The *Medulla oblongata*, or *Beginning of the Spinal Marrow*.

H. The *Spinal Marrow cut off*.

I I I I. The *Bars of the Palate of the Mouth*.

Q Q. The *Cavity that goes from the Palate to the Nose*.

R R R R. The *Teeth*.

S S. The *Dura Mater turn'd back*.

T. The *Glandula pituitaria*.

Fig. 3. Shews the Bones of the Ear, &c.

A A. The *Inside of the Os Temporis or Temple-Bone*.

B. The *Os spongiosum*, or *spungy Bone*.

C. The *Hole through which the Auditory Nerve does pass*.

D. The *greater winding of the Cochlea*.

E E E. The *three bony half Circles that form the Labyrinth*.

F. The *Malleus or Hammer*.

G. The *Incus or Anvil*.

H. The *Stapes or Stirrop*.

I. The *external Muscle of the Ear*.

K. The *internal Muscle*.



Fig. 4. Represents the Eye taken out of the Head.

- A. The Optick Nerve cut off.
- B. The Origin of the Muscles.
- C C. Their several Terminations into the Coats of the Eye.
- D. The common Coat of the Eye called the Adnata or Conjunctiva.
- E. The Cornea or horny Coat.
- F. The Pupilla or Apple of the Eye.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Muscles.*

### SECT. I.

*Of the Muscles of the Eye-lids and Eye.*

**T**HE Eye-lids have three Pair of Muscles, one Pair to open them, and two to shut them. Three Pair of Muscles belonging to the Eye-lids.

That which openeth the Eye-lids is called *Rectus*, or *Aperiens*, from its Office. It springeth with a slender, but fleshy Beginning, from the same Place as the *Elevator* of the Eye doth, to wit, at the Hole through which the *Optick* Nerve passeth into the Orbit, and holds the same Course with it, till at last parting from it with a pretty broad, but thin Tendon, it is inserted into the Gristle at the Edge of the upper Eye-lid, where it serves to open the Eye-lid by lifting it up.

The other two Muscles of the Eye-lids are called *Shutters*, and otherwise *semicircular*, because each of them runs the Length of the Eye-lid; they are seated between the *Membrana carnosæ* and the inner smooth Skin that lines the Eye-lids. That which draweth down the upper Lid, is larger than the Muscle which moveth the lower Lid to shut it.

The



The Frontal Muscles are also thought to contribute something to the Motion of the Eye-lids, as they arise from the Skull near the Coronal-Suture, and are inserted in the Eye-brows; for by their Action they contract the Skin of the Forehead, by which means the upper Eye-lid is sometimes drawn a little upward.

The Eyes.  
Seven Pair  
of Muscles  
belonging  
to them.

The Eyes have seven Pair of Muscles, of which four are streight, two oblique or slanting, and the other Pair circular or round. The streight serve to move the Eyes upwards and downwards, the oblique move them obliquely, and the circular Pair keep the Eyes suspended in its Place. They all arise from the same Origin, to wit, from the Membrane that invests the Orbit of the Eye, near the Hole through which the *Optick* Nerve doth pass into the said Orbit, touching one another at their beginning, but immediately separating into fleshy round Bodies, from which they again degenerate toward their Termination into a thin membranous Substance, which is inserted into the horny Coat of the Eye, encompassing it as far as it is white.

These Muscles have their several Appellations from their several Actions. The first of the streight Muscles, from its Office of pulling up the Eye, is called *attollens*, and in Man sometimes *superbus*, as the second is called *deprimens* or *humilis*. The third is called *adducens*, because it pulleth the Eye towards the Nose: And the fourth *abducens* or *indignatorius*, from its Office of drawing the Eye to the outer Corner; which Turn or Aspect of the Eye betokens Anger or Scorn.

When these Muscles act separately, they have these four several Motions; but when they all cooperate or work together, they have but one tonic Motion, which is principally to keep the Eye steady and fix'd; but in Beasts, that have the suspending Muscle, that Action is perform'd chiefly, if not altogether by it.

The next are the two oblique Muscles, which also are termed the *circumagentes*, from their rolling the Eye about, and are distinguished by the Names of  
Major



*Major* and *Minor*; the one being longer than the other, though somewhat slenderer; the longer arises from the same Origin with those above-described, and endeth in a small round Tendon, which passeth through the transverse Gristle called *Trochlea* into the inner Corner of the Eye: This rolleth the Eye inwards, as the other (which rises from the Chink in the lower Part of the Orbit, and has the same Insertion with the *Major*) rolls it towards its outward Corner.

The seventh or round Muscle is called the *suspensorius* or *septimus Brutorum*, being peculiar to Brutes only. It is short and fleshy, encompassing the *Optick Nerve*, and is inserted in the hinder Part of the *Cornea*. This Muscle is not only assistful in the Tonick Motion of the Eye, but is also useful to keep the Eye suspended, lest, by looking continually towards the Ground, it should hang too much outward.

## S E C T. II.

*Of the Muscles of the Nose, Lips and Cheeks.*

The Nose is moved by four Pair of Muscles, two Pair called the *adducent* or closing Muscles, and two Pair term'd the *abducent* or widening Muscles.

The Nose.  
Four Pair of  
Muscles.

The first Pair of the *abducent* arise from the upper Jaw-Bone near the first proper Pair of the Lips, and are inserted partly into the lower Part of the Wings or gristly Circumference of the Nostrils, and partly into the upper Part of the upper Lip.

First Pair.

The second Pair take their Origin near the Eye, with an acute and fleshy Beginning, and end on the Wings, as the other Pair, but more expanded. The Use of these two Pair of Muscles is to draw the gristly Circumference or Wings of the Nostrils upwards, and so to widen and open them.

Second Pair.

The other two Pair, or *adducent* Muscles, arise, the one from the Root of the Gristle, which ascend-

Third and  
Fourth Pair.

ing



ing cross-ways to the Ridge or Top of the Nose, are there inserted. The other are hid in the Cavity of the Nostrils under the inner Coat that cloaths them, and at their Insertion are spread on the gristly Circumference.

The first Pair of these Muscles being contracted, depress the *Ale* or Gristles of the Nose; and the latter Pair draw them inwards, and so close the Nostrils; to which Motion the orbicular or round Muscle of the upper Lip is also assistant; for by its drawing it downwards, it doth at the same time contract the Nostrils.

The Lips.

To the Lips belong several Pair of Muscles, some of which are proper to them alone, and others are common both to them and the Cheeks.

Two Pair common.

The first common Muscle is called the *Quadratus* or four-square Muscle: It arises from one of the *Vertebrae* of the Neck, and some Part of it from the Shoulder-blade, the Collar-bone and Breast-bone; from all which it ascends obliquely to the Chin, Lips and Root of the Nose, which Part it draws slanting downwards.

The second is the *Buccinator*: This springs from almost the whole Length of the upper Jaw-bone, at the Root of the Gums; it is seated under the upper Part of the former, and is spread over the whole Dimension of the Cheek. Besides its Use in contracting the Cheek in Horses and other brute Creatures, it greatly assists the Action of chewing, by turning the Meat, which falls between the Teeth and the Cheek, over again to be ground and broken.

Five Pair proper, and an odd one.  
First Pair.

The Muscles, which are proper to the Lips only, are accounted by Anatomists five Pair, and one single Muscle. The first is called *Par attollens* or Lifters up of the Lip. This Pair spring from the upper Jaw, where it forms the hollow of the Cheek, and are inserted in the upper Lip near the Nose. When both these Muscles act together, they draw the upper Lip directly upwards; but if only one acts, then is but one side drawn upward obliquely. The Action of these Muscles is very perceivable



vable when a Stone-horse smells a Mare, or when any other Horse smells at Dung, or any other thing that sends up pungent *Effluvia* into the Nostrils.

The second Pair are the *abducent* or Drawers of the Lip on one side : They arise from the Cavity that is under the *Os Jugale*, from whence they take their Course on each side to the middle of the upper Lip, where they are inserted with a strong round Tendon ; these jointly move the Lip upwards and outwards, as the former ; and when they act separately, they assist the former by helping to draw the Lip sideways. Second Pair.

The third Pair is called by *Riolanus* *Zugomaticum* or *Jugale*, from their Rise, which is outwardly from the Process of the Bone of that Name. These reach to the sides of the upper Lip, and are inserted near the Corner of the Mouth. Their Use is to draw the Lip sideways upwards. Third Pair.

The fourth Pair is called *deprimens*, from their Office of drawing the under Lip downwards. They arise fleshy and broad from the lowermost Part of the lower *Mandible*, from whence each marches obliquely unto the under Lip, and are inserted into it about its middle. This Pair assist in the same Action with the first of the common Muscles called the *Detrahens quadratus*. Fourth Pair.

The fifth Pair, or oblique *detrahens*, from their Office of drawing the lower Lip obliquely downwards and outwards : They take their Beginning from the sides of the lower Jaw, from whence they ascend upwards, and are each inserted into the Corners of the lower Lip. Fifth Pair.

The odd Muscle or *Orbicularis*, so called, because it goes round both Lips, and sometimes *constringens*, as it serves like a *Sphinctre*, to purse up or contract the Mouth, makes up the greatest Part of the Lips, and has all the other Muscles inserted into it. The Orbicularis or odd Muscle.



## S E C T. III.

## Of the Muscles of the lower Jaw.

Five Pair  
Belonging to  
the lower  
Jaw.  
First Pair.

The upper Jaw being immoveable, hath no Muscles, but the lower Jaw having divers Actions, is moved by five Pair.

The first are called the *Temporal Muscles*, because they are seated on the Temples. They spring on each side from the Bones of the Forehead, the *Sinciput*, the Temples, and *Os cuneiforme*, or Wedge-like Bone, and descend under the *Os jugale*, between the *Periosteum* and *Pericranium*, to the acute Process of the lower Jaw, into which they are inserted: These Muscles pull up the lower Jaw, and shut the Mouth.

Second Pair.

The second Pair arise from the *Styloid Process* of the Temporal Bone, fleshy and round towards their Origin, but lose their fleshy Substance, and degenerate into a nervous and round Tendon as they approach the Flexure of the lower Jaw-bone; and then becoming fleshy again, are inserted into the inner side of the lower Jaw towards its middle or fore-Part; these being assisted by the *Quadrati* above described, pull down the Jaw, and so open the Mouth.

Third Pair.

The third Pair are called the *Masseters*, being very assistant in the Office of Chewing, by moving the Jaw to the right and left Side; each of these hath two Beginnings, one from that Suture where the fourth and first Bone of the upper Jaw are joined; and the other from the *Os Jugale*, and are largely inserted into the outsides of the lower Jaw: These, by reason of the Diversity of their Fibres, move the Jaw divers Ways.

Fourth Pair.

The fourth Pair are called *Pterygoideum externum*: These have a double Beginning, as the former, springing partly from the upper and outside of the wing-like Process of the *Os cuneiforme* or wedge-like Bone, and partly from the rough and sharp Line of the said Bone; from whence, descending downwards, they are inserted in the inside of the lateral Part of the lower Jaw; by which means they

move



move forwards, stretching the Teeth of the lower Jaw further out than those of the upper,

The last Pair are called *Pterygoideum internum* : Fifth Pair. These arise from the Cavity of the wedge-like Bone, and are inserted in the inner and hinder Part of the lower Jaw. Their Use is to draw it backwards, contrary to the former, and also to assist the Temporal Muscle in drawing it upwards.

# S E C T. IV.

## *Of the Muscles of the Ear.*

The Muscles of the Ears in Brutes, especially The Muscles of the Ears. Horses, Asses, Oxen, and other Animals that have large Ears, differ much in Magnitude from those in Man, they being indued with little or no Capacity of Motion ; but that is made up in Man by the easy Motion of the Head, by which means he can readily turn himself to the hearing of all Sounds ; whereas four-footed Beasts wanting that Agility, need to have their Ears always moveable to receive the Sounds every Way, and likewise to drive off Flies and other Insects that are troublesome to them, which Men can do with their Hands.

Now the outward Ear has four Muscles, which The outward Ear 4 Muscles. are considerably larger in brute Creatures than in Man ; and the inward Ear has two, which are proportionable in both.

The first is called the *attollens Aurem*, the Lifter First. up of the Ear : It arises at the outside of the frontal Muscle, from whence being carried over the Temporal Muscle, it is inserted in the upper Part of the Ear, moving it upwards and forwards.

The second is called *detrahens Aurem*, or the Pul- Second, ler back of the Ear : This arises from the mammillary Process, and is inserted into the Root of the Gristle of the Ear.

The third or *adducens Aurem*, by which the Ear Third. is drawn forwards and somewhat downwards, is implanted into the lower side of the Root of the Ear, and is only Part of the *Musculus quadratus* before spoken of.



The fourth, or *abducens Aurem*, because it draws the Ear backwards, takes its Beginning at the Occiput or back Part of the Head, whence it is carried transversely to the hinder Part of the Ear, into which it is inserted: This Muscle is assisting to the second.

The inner  
Ear, two.

The first of the two Muscles of the inner Ear, called *Externus Tympani Auris*, or the external Muscle of the Drum of the Ear, because it moves that Membrane upwards and outwards, arises from the upper Part of the Passage of the Ear, and becoming narrower, it grows into a very fine and small Tendon, which runs along the outside of the Drum, and is inserted into its Center over the Hammer, which, along with the Drum, it draweth upwards and outwards.

The *Internus*, or inner Muscle, takes its Rise from the Bottom of the wedge-like Bone, where it joins to the *Processus petrosus*; it lies within the Cavity of that Bone, and at its middle is divided into two very small Tendons, whereof one is inserted into the upper Process of the Hammer, and the other into the Neck of it. The Use of this Muscle alone is to draw the Head of the Hammer obliquely forwards, and also to bring it somewhat inwards; but when they act both together they move the *Tympanum* with its small Bones upwards and downwards. This Action is perform'd as often as an Animal attentively listens to any approaching Noise.

## S E C T. V.

*Of the Muscles of the Tongue, and Os Hyoides, with those of the Larynx, Uvula and Throat.*

The  
Tongue,  
five Pair of  
Muscles.

The Tongue has five Pair of Muscles proper to itself, besides those that are common to it and the *Os Hyoides*.

The first Pair are called the *Genioglossum*, because they arise from the Chin in Men, and are inserted in the Tongue. In a Horse they arise from the Ruggedness on the middle of the lower Jaw, in the inner and lower Part of it they have several  
such



such Inscriptions as these on the streight Muscles of the Paunch, and are inserted into the lower side of the middle of the Tongue. Their Use is to move the Tongue forwards; which Action is frequently perform'd by Horses when they gather their Meat.

The second Pair, called *Ypsiloglossum*, because they rise from the Bottom of the *Os Hyoides*: They are inserted in the middle of the Tongue, and in their Action are contrary to the former, by drawing it backwards.

The *Myloglossum*, or third Pair, arises from the inner Part of the lower Jaw, at the Roots of the farthest grinding Teeth, and are inserted into the Ligament which ties the Tongue to the Jaws. When these act together, they draw the Tongue downwards, but when they act separately, they draw it obliquely to one side.

The fourth Pair, called *Ceratoglossum*, because they arise from the Horns of the *Os Hyoides*, from which reaching to the sides of the Tongue, they are there inserted. Their Action is much the same with that of the third Pair.

The last Pair are called *Styloglossum*, because they arise from the *Styloides* or Pen-like Process of the Temple-bones: They are inserted into the sides of the Tongue about its middle. When these act singly, they draw the Tongue to one side, but when conjunctly, they pull it upwards and inwards.

The Fork-like Bone of the Tongue, called the *Os Hyoides*, hath four Pair of Muscles, which are common to it and the Tongue.

The first Pair is called *Sternohyoideum*, because they spring from the inside of the upper Part of the *Sternum* or Breast-bone, and taking their Course close by the Wind-pipe, are inserted into the Root of the *Os Hyoides*, which they move downward and backward.

The *Geniohyoideum* is opposite to the former, arising from the inside of the Forepart of the lower Jaw, and is inserted into the Middle-part of the



Bone *Hyoides*, which draws it streight upwards and a little forwards.

The third Pair, called the *Caracohoidium*, arise out of the *Processus Carocoides*, at the upper End of the Shoulder-blade, and run obliquely upwards under the first Pair of Muscles of the Head, and are at length inserted into the Horns of the *Hyoides*. Their Use is to pull that Bone obliquely downwards.

The fourth and last Pair, called the *Stylocerato-hyoidium*, arise from the *Styloid Process*, and also end in the Horns of the *Os Hyoides*; they move that Bone obliquely upwards.

As the Muscles of the Cheeks and Tongue serve to toss the Meat to and again in the Mouth, and those of the lower Jaw help to grind it, so these Muscles, which are common to the Tongue and *Os Hyoides*, are principally of Use to give the Tongue such Motions as forward it into the Gullet, when it is sufficiently prepared to go into the Stomach.

The Mus-  
cles of the  
*Larynx*.

The *Larynx*, or upper Part of the Wind-pipe, has six Pair of Muscles, and one single one. The first two Pair being common to it, and all the rest proper.

The first of the common Pair is called the *Sternothyreoideum*, and by some *Bronchium*, or the Weasand Muscles: These arise from the upper and inner Part of the Breast-bone, ascending by the sides of the Wind-pipe to the Shield-like Gristle, where they are inserted. Their Use is to draw down the said Gristle, and so to widen the Chink.

The second Pair, called *Hyothyreoideum*, arise from the lower side of the *Os Hyoides*, and are inserted into the *Thereoid* Gristle. These are said to streighten the Chink of the *Larynx*, tho' some affirm they widen it, and that the other Pair contract it.

Its proper  
Muscles.

The first Pair of the proper Muscles of the *Larynx*, called *Cricothyreoideum Anticum*, because they take their beginning from the Ring-fashioned Gristle *Cricoides*, and are implanted in the sides of the *Thereoides*, which they move obliquely downwards, thereby opening the Chink of the *Larynx*.



The next Pair, named *Cricoarytenoideum posticum*, arise contrary to the former, from the lower and back Part of the Ring-fashioned Gristle, and are inserted in the lower End of the Ewer-like Gristle, whereby they raise it upward and backward to open and widen the *Larynx*.

The third or lateral Pair, arising from the sides of the Ring-fashioned Cartilage, terminate in the sides of the Ewer-like Gristle, opening also the *Larynx* by drawing the Gristles obliquely to one side.

The fourth Pair are the largest and strongest of all the proper Muscles of the *Larynx*, and arise close one to another from the middle of the hollow Part of the Shield-like Gristle, filling that Cavity through its whole Length, and are inserted into the two sides of the Ewer-like Gristle, assisting the former.

The fifth and last, called *Arytenoides*, or *claudens secundum*, takes its Rise from the hinder Line of the Ewer-like Gristle *Arytenoides*, and is implanted in the sides of the same. This single Muscle helps to streighten the Throttle by drawing both sides of the Ewer-like Gristle together.

The *Epiglottis* or Throat-flap, which covers the Chink of the *Larynx*, has no very distinct Muscles, but in those Creatures that chew the Cud, and shall therefore be omitted in this Place.

The *Epiglottis* no Muscles but in Creatures that chew the Cud.

The *Uvula* is said to have two Muscles to hold it up, which have also very hard and long Names bestowed on them; but they are so inconsiderable, that they are hardly worth Notice.

The *Uvula* two Pair, but very small.

The *Pharynx*, which is the upper Part of the Gullet, has belonging to it three Pair of Muscles and one single one, besides two Pair of a later Discovery. The first Pair are called the *Sphenopharyngeum*, which arise from the Appendage of the Wedge-like Bone, and are inserted into the lateral Parts of the Palate and *Pharynx*, which they widen in swallowing.

The *Pharynx* three Pair.

The next Pair are called *Cephalopharyngeum*, springing from that Part of the Head which joins to the first *Vertebra* of the Neck, and are implanted on the outside of the *Pharynx*, streightening it by their

Action,



Action, as soon as the Food has pass'd through it, thereby also forcing it down the Gullet.

The third Pair, called *Stylopharyngeum*, arise from the *Styloid* Process of the Temporal Bone, and are inserted into the sides of the *Pharynx*, which they dilate and widen.

One single  
Muscle or  
Sphinctre.

The single one, which has the Name of *Oesophagiæus*, encompasseth the upper Part of the Gullet, forming its *Sphinctre*, and serving for the same Use as those of the Arms and Bladder, to wit, to draw and purse up the Mouth of the Gullet, as those do the Extremities of the Bladder and streight Gut.

Two Pair  
discovered  
by Doctor  
Browne.

The last two Pair, first discovered by Dr. Browne, were by him called *Pterygopalatini* and *Sphenopalatini*. The Use of the first Pair being to depress the *Glandula Palati*, and that of the second to elevate and lift it up.

## S E C T. VI.

### *Of the Muscles of the Head and Neck.*

Four Pair  
common to  
the Head  
and Neck,  
and eight  
proper to  
the Head.

There are four Pair of Muscles common to the Head and Neck, and eight Pair proper to the Head only.

The *Mastoideum*, which modern Anatomists reckon the first proper Pair, have each a double Beginning, one from the Breast-bone nervous, and the other from the Collar-bone, which is fleshy; from whence they ascend obliquely to the mammillary Processes of the Temporal Bone, into which each is inserted. When these act together, they bend the Head forward, but when separately, they draw it a little to one side.

The *Splenium* is reckon'd the second Pair, being the first of those which pull back the Head; they arise from the five uppermost *Vertebrae* of the Chest, and the five lowermost of the Neck, with a nervous Beginning, ascending to the hinder Part of the Head, where they are inserted. When these act together, they draw the Head backward, but when they act singly, they draw it a little to one side.

The



The third Pair nam'd *Complexum* or *Trigeminum*; because each of them arise with three Heads; two from the first, second, fourth and fifth transverse Processes of the Chest, and the third from the Ridge of the seventh *Vertebra* of the Neck. All which uniting together, are inserted into the Noll-Bone.

The third Puller back of the Head, or fourth Pair, called *Parvum crassum*: These are situated under the former, arising nervous from the transverse Processes of the six uppermost *Vertebrae* of the Neck, but afterwards becoming fleshy, are carry'd obliquely upward, and are inserted into the hindermost Root of the *Processus mammillaris*. When these act singly, they incline the Head lightly backwards to one side; but when they act together, they bring it streight backwards.

The *Rectum majus* and *Rectum minus*, which make up the fifth and sixth Pair, are seated one under the other, and are both inserted into the Noll, assisting the fourth Pair in their Action.

The *Obliquum superius*, which is accounted the seventh Pair, arise from the middle of the *Occiput*, and are inserted into the Lips of the transverse Processes of the first *Vertebra* of the Neck; their Use being to nod the Head backwards.

The last Pair, called *Obliquum inferius*, take their Origin from the Spine or Ridge of the second *Vertebra* of the Neck, and forming an oblique Course, terminate in the transverse Processes of the first *Vertebra*, being of Use to move the Head semi-circularly. Now the Reason why there are so many Muscles appointed to move the Head backwards, is because of its great Bulk and Weight; by which means it is of itself prone enough to incline forward and downward, so that it wants not only a Stay, but requireth a greater Force to move it upward or backward.

The Muscles common to the Head and Neck are in Number four Pair, as has been observed.

The first called *Spinatum*, because they are seated among the Spines of the *Vertebrae*, take their Rise from the Root of the Spines of the seven

Those common to the Head and Neck.



uppermost *Vertebrae* of the Chest, and five lowermost of the Neck, and are inserted into the whole lower side of the Spine of the second *Vertebra* of the Neck. Their Office is to bend the Neck backward, or a little obliquely.

The next Pair is called *Transversale*, because they both arise, and are inserted into the transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae*, arising from those of the uppermost *Vertebrae* of the Chest; and being inserted into the outsides of all the transverse Processes of the Neck-bones. Their Use is the same with the first Pair.

The third Pair, called *Longum*, lie hid under the Gullet, arising from the Body of the fifth and sixth *Vertebrae* of the Back, and reaching the highest *Vertebra* of the Neck, into which they are inserted. Their Use is contrary to the first two Pair, bending the Neck forward when they act together, and when they act singly, to one side.

The last Pair is called *Triangulare*: These are seated forward on the sides of the Neck, having some Perforations, by which Veins, Arteries and Nerves, pass out of the Body into the Fore-legs.

## S E C T. VII.

### Of the Muscles of the Breast.

The Breast  
widen'd and  
depress'd by  
six Pair.

Having briefly run over the Muscles which serve to move the Head and Neck, we come now to those of the Breast, which actuate the Chest, whereof four Pair widen and dilate it, and two Pair contract it.

The four  
Pair that  
widen the  
Breast.

The first of those which serve to widen the Breast are called *Subclavium*, from their Situation under the Clavicle or Collar-bone. These arise from under that Bone, and are implanted into the first Rib near the Breast-bone, drawing the first Rib upwards and outwards.

The second Pair, called *Serratum majus anticum* (from the Resemblance their Tendons have to the Teeth of a Saw) arise from the inside of the Shoulder-Blade and the two upper Ribs, and are inserted



inserted into the lower five true Ribs and two upper short Ribs, so that their Breadth takes up a great Part of the side of the Chest. These co-operate with the first Pair in widening the Chest, as do also the two following Pair, viz. the *Serratum posticum superius*, rising from the Spines of the three lower Rack-bones of the Neck and first of the Back, and being inserted into the *Interstices* of the upper Ribs; and the *Par serratum posticum inferius*, taking its Origin from the Spines of the three lowermost *Vertebrae* of the Back and first of the Loins, and having their Insertions into three or four lower Ribs, before they turn cartilaginous.

These four Pair, together with the Midriff and the widening *Intercostal* Muscles, dilate the Chest in *Inspiration*; that is to say, in drawing in the Breath; and the two following Pair, to wit, the *Triangulare* and *Sacrolumbum*, with the Internal and *Intercostals*, depress the Chest in *Expiration* or letting forth the Breath. The triangular Pair having their Rise from the middle Line of the Breast-bone, on its inside, and their Insertion into the bony Ends of the third, fourth, fifth and sixth true Ribs: And the other Pair taking their Origin from the *Os sacrum* and Spine of the Loins, and having their Insertion into the lower side of all the Ribs, about three or four Fingers Breadth from the Ridge of the Back.

The two Pair that depress the Breast.

### S E C T. VIII.

*Of the Muscles of the Back and Loins, with those of the Fundament and Bladder.*

The Muscles of the Back and Loins are usually reckon'd four Pair, which are common to both.

Four Pair common to the Back and Loins.

The first go by the Name of *Longissimi*, from their extraordinary Length, being the longest of the whole Body, and endu'd with most Strength. They arise from the *Os sacrum* and Haunch-bone, and passing by the Ridge of the Loins, Back and Neck, they reach to the mammillary Processes of the Temple-bones, they are almost confounded with



with the *Par sacrolumbum* and the *semispinatum*, in their Passage thro' the Loins, but arriving towards the Back, they again part with them, and appear to be distinct from them. When both act together, they extend the Back and Loins, but when they act singly, they incline the Spine to one side. They are of further Use to most Creatures, but especially to Beasts of Burden, being a Bar and Stay to the whole Back.

The *Par quadratum*, or second Pair, so called from their Figure, being square when joined together, tho' triangular when separate. They arise broad, thick and fleshy from the backward and upper Cavity of the Haunch-bone, and from the inner and upper side of the *Os sacrum*, and are inserted into all the transverse Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins. Their Use is to bend the Racks of the Loins with a right Motion forward or downward, but when one only acts, it draws the Loins to one side somewhat downwards.

The third Pair, arising from the *Os sacrum*, are therefore called *Par sacrum*; they spring from that Part of the said Bone where the Spine is fasten'd, ending in the Spine of the lowest *Vertebra* of the *Thorax*; but at the same time having in their Passage several Insertions into divers of the Spines and oblique Processes of the *Vertebrae* of the Loins. If these act separately, they pull the Body a little on one side; but when both act together, they extend that Part of the Spine to which they are fasten'd.

The last Pair, called *Semispinatum*, arise with a nervous Original from all the Spines or Ridges of the *Os sacrum* and Loins, and are inserted into the transverse Processes of the Loins, and some of the lowermost of the Chest. When all these Muscles of the Back and Loins work together, the whole Back is extended; but if the Muscles of that side alone, the Body is then inclined to that side.

The *Anus*  
3 Muscles.

The *Anus* hath three Muscles, two called the *Levators*, and one nam'd its *Sphinctre*.

Its *Sphinctre*.  
tre.

The *Sphinctre* is seated at the Extremity of the straight Gut, encompassing it all round like a Ring. It is attached to the lower *Vertebrae* of the *Os sacrum*,  
composed



composed of circular Fibres, being of Use to contract the Orifice of that Gut, as has been observ'd in another Place.

The two *Levators*, or Lifters up of the Fundament, are small, broad and nervous, arising from the Ligaments of the Hip-bones and *Os sacrum*, from whence, passing by the sides of the Gut, they adhere to it, and are inserted into the upper Part of the *Sphinctre*; a Portion of them also growing to the Root of the Yard, and in Mares to the Neck of the *Matrix*. Their Use is to assist the Muscles of the lower Belly in the Expulsion of the Excrements, which they do by lifting up the Fundament.

The two  
Levators.

The Bladder has also its *Sphinctre*, which is composed of circular Fibres, as that of the *Anus*; and in like manner serves to constrict or purse up its Neck, that the Urine may not pass out without a spontaneous relaxing of that Muscle. In Mares it is seated at the Hole where the Neck of the Bladder opens into the *Vagina*.

The Sphinctre of the  
Bladder.

Having already taken Notice of the Muscles belonging to the Yard, called its *Erectors* and *Dilators*, and the *Cremaster* Muscles, by which the Stones are suspended, as also those of the *Clitoris* in Mares, I shall therefore pass them by in this place, and proceed to the Shoulder-blade, &c.

## S E C T. IX.

*Of the Muscles of the Shoulder-blade and Shoulder, with those which move the Fore-leg and Foot.*

The Shoulder-blade has four Pair of Muscles agreeable to its four several Motions.

The Shoulder-blade  
four Pair.

The first Pair, called *Cucullares*, from the Resemblance they bear to a Monk's Hood, are seated between the two Shoulder-blades, covering the Top of the Withers. These arise thin and fleshy from the hind Part of the Head, but as they pass down the Neck, have other membranous Beginnings from five of its Spines, and from eight or nine of the uppermost of the Chest, and are inserted into the whole



whole Spine of the Shoulder-blade, as also into the Shoulder-bone, and broader Part of the Collar-bone. When the upper Part of this Muscle is contracted, then the Shoulder-blade is thought to be moved somewhat obliquely upwards, because of the oblique Direction of its Fibres; but when that Part which springs from the Withers is contracted, it is then pulled streight thitherward.

The second Pair are called *Levatores* or Lifters: They are situated above the Collar-bone, arising from the transverse Processes of the first four *Vertebrae* of the Neck, and are inserted into the fore-Corner of the Shoulder-blades; these draw the Blades upwards and forwards.

The third Pair, named *Serratum minus Anticum*, lie under the pectoral Muscles, and spring from the four uppermost Ribs, before they turn gristly, by four fleshy Portions representing the Teeth of a Saw, and are inserted into the Anchor-like Process of the Shoulder-blade: These move the Shoulder-blades forward towards the Chest.

The last Pair, called *Rhomboides*, are seated under the *Cucullares*, and take their Origin from the hinder Processes of the three lowermost Spines of the Rack-bones of the Neck, and from the three uppermost of the Chest, and are implanted into the *Basia* of the Shoulder-blades, their Use being to draw them somewhat upwards and backward.

The Shoulder  
nine  
Muscles.

The Shoulder has five several Motions perform'd by nine Muscles, to wit, backwards, forwards, upwards, downwards and circularly.

But before I proceed to a Description of its Muscles, it will be proper to intimate, that altho' the Shoulder-blades in Horses are generally taken for Part of the Shoulder, yet Anatomists have always distinguished between the Shoulder-blade and Shoulder, accounting that Part only to be the Shoulder, which is joined to the Shoulder-blade, and reaches towards the Elbow.

Two Erectors.

The first of its Muscles is called *Deltoides*, from its Figure resembling the Greek Letter  $\Delta$ . It arises fleshy from the midst of the Collar-bone, the Top of the Shoulder, and the whole Ridge of the Shoulder-blade,



blade, and is inserted in the middle of the Shoulder-bone. This Muscle not only raises up the Shoulder, which is its chief and principal Use, but by the various Direction of its Fibres it assists in other Motions, but especially in that which is circular.

The second Erector of the Shoulder is named *Supraspinatus*, because it fills all that Cavity which is between its Spine and upper Edge. It arises from the Spine of the Blade, with a long and fleshy Beginning, and is inserted into the Neck of the Shoulder-bone by a strong and broad Tendon.

The *latissimus* and *rotundus Major* are the two Depressors of the Shoulder; the first is so called from its Breadth; for, with its fellow, it almost covers the whole Back. It rises from the Tops of all the Spines of the Rack-bones that are between the sixth *Vertebra* of the Chest, and the middle of the *Os sacrum*, as also from the upper Part of the Haunch-bone, and is inserted below the upper Head of the Shoulder-bone length-ways. Two Depressors.

The second *Depressor*, which is the fourth Muscle of the Shoulder, called *rotundus Major*, takes its Origin from the lower *Costa* of the Shoulder-blade, and is inserted into the upper and inner Part of the Shoulder-bone. The Use of this, and the last described, is to pull the Shoulder downward.

The two Pair of Muscles, which bring the Shoulder forward, are called, the one by the Name of *Pectoralis*, and the other *Coracoideus*. The *Pectoralis* is so called from its Situation on the fore-side of the Breast. It arises from the middle of the Collar-bone; its Middle proceeds from the whole Length of the Breast-bone, and the Ends of the Gristles of all those Ribs which terminate in it; and its lower Part springs from the sixth, seventh and eighth Ribs. Its Insertion is with a broad and finewy Tendon into the Shoulder-bone a little below its Head. Two Pair which bring the Shoulder forwards.

The *Coracoideus* has its Beginning from the *Processus Coracoideus*, from whence it reaches to the middle



middle of the Shoulder-bone, where it terminates. The Use of this and the former is to draw the Shoulder forward.

Three  
move it  
backward.

The following three Muscles, to wit, the *Infra-spinatus*, *Subscapularis* and *rotundus Minor*, move the Shoulder backward.

The *Infra-spinatus* arises from the *Basis* of the Blade below its Ridge, and is inserted by a broad and short Tendon into the fourth Ligament of the Shoulder-bone.

The *Subscapularis* is seated between the *Scapula* and Ribs, and is inserted into one of the Ligaments of the Shoulder; and the *rotundus Minor*, which arises from the lowest Corner of the *Scapula*, is implanted into the Neck of the Shoulder-bone.

As to the circular Motion of the Shoulder, that is not perform'd by any single Muscle, but by several of these already named acting successively one after another, which is easily enough to be conceived by those who carefully observe their Origins and Insertions, and the various Directions of their Fibres. But we shall now proceed to those that move the Fore-leg and Foot.

Two Mus-  
cles bend  
the Fore-  
Leg.

The Fore-leg is bended by two Muscles, to wit, the *Biceps* and *Brachæus internus*.

The *Biceps* so called from its double Head or Beginning, arising partly from the upper Brim of the Shoulder-blade, and partly from the Anchor-like Process of the same Bone. This Muscle becometh strong and fleshy, and runs all along the inside of the Cubit-bone to the Knee, where it is inserted. Its Office is to bend the Cubit forward and somewhat inwards.

The second or *Brachæus internus*, so called in Man from its Situation on the inside of the Arm, and may properly enough retain the same Name in a Horse. This takes its Beginning near the Insertion of the *Deltoides*, after which it runs its Course as the former, and is inserted into the fore-side of the Cubit-bone a little above the Knee, and is assisting to the former.

Two extend  
it.

Two Muscles also extend the Cubit, and these are seated on its hind Part; the first is called *Lon-*



*gus*: It takes its Origin from the lower Rib of the Blade-bone, and descending along the hinder Part of the Shoulder-bone, is inserted into the outside of the Cubit-bone, towards the Knee. This draws the Leg backwards, and somewhat outwards, and thereby stretches it out streight.

The second is called *Brevis*, from its Shortness; it arises from the hinder Part of the Neck of the Shoulder-bone, and holding the same Course with the first, it is inserted also with it, and assists it in its Motion.

There are besides these, two other Muscles which give their Assistance in extending the Cubit, to wit, the *Brachialis Externus*, and *Anconæus*; but *Spigelius* and others have thought the one to be only part of the *Longus*, and the other a Part of the short Muscle; and therefore have left them out.

Two Assistants.

These are all the Muscles that move the fore Leg of a Horse, falling somewhat short of the Number of those which move the Arm of a Man, by reason a Horse has only one single Bone in that Part, whereas there are two in the Arm of a Man, to wit, the *Cubit* and *Ulna*, which serve to turn the Arm and Hand round; which kind of Motion is not any ways necessary for a Quadruped.

The Shank, which somewhat answers to the *Metacarp* in a Man, has the same Number of Muscles with the fore Leg, viz. two *Extensors*, and two *Flexors*.

Two bend the Shank.

The first of the *Flexors*, or *Benders*, is called *Cubitæus internus*; it arises from the inner Knob of the Shoulder-bone, and is implanted into the inner and hinder Sides of the Top of the Shank. The second may be called the *Cubitæi interni Socius*, or *Auxiliarius*, as having the same Rise, Progress and Insertion with the other.

The Extenders of the Shank are the *Cubitæus externus*, and its Fellow, which take their Origin from the outer Knob of the Shoulder-bone, and are inserted into the outer and fore-side of the Head of the Shank.

Two extend it.

The next Joint is the great Pastern, answering to the first Joint of the Finger in a Man's Hand,



as the little Pastern does to the second, and the Coffin Joint to that on which the Nail grows; all which are bended and extended as the former.

The Pasterns, &c. bended by two Muscles.

The first Bender of the Pasterns and Coffin-Joint is called *Sublimis*; it springs from the inner Knob of the Shoulder-bone, and is inserted into the Pasterns.

The second is named *Profundus*, arising from the upper Part of the Cubit-bone, and bending its Course down to the Coffin-Joint, into which it is inserted.

Extended by two.

They are extended by one considerable Muscle, called *Extensor Magnus*. This springs from the outer Knob of the Shoulder-bone, and is inserted into the fore and outer Parts of the Pastern and Coffin-Joint.

Lastly, The Muscle which answers to that called *Palmaris* in a Man; it arises fleshy from the inner Knob of the Shoulder-bone, but presently grows into a slender Tendon, which descends to the Sole of the Foot.

T A B. V. Represents a Horse standing with his Face towards us, that one may have a full View of all the Muscles that appear on his fore Parts.

A A. Shew the Par Mastoideum.

B B. The Muscles of the Scapula, or Shoulder-blade.

C C. The Par Trigemini, or Complexum.

D D. The Par Triangulare, or Scalenum.

E. The Wind-pipe in its natural Situation.

F F. The Par Longum removed from under the Gullet.

G G. The Pair of the Nose, called Philtrum.

H H. The closing Muscles of the Nostrils.

I I. The Muscles of the Eye-lids.

K K. The temporal Muscles.

L L. The Muscles of the Ears.

M. The Frontal, or Forehead Muscles.

N. The Cucullaris, or Monks-hood.

O. The Deltoides of the Shoulder.

P. The Serratus Major Anticus shrunk up.

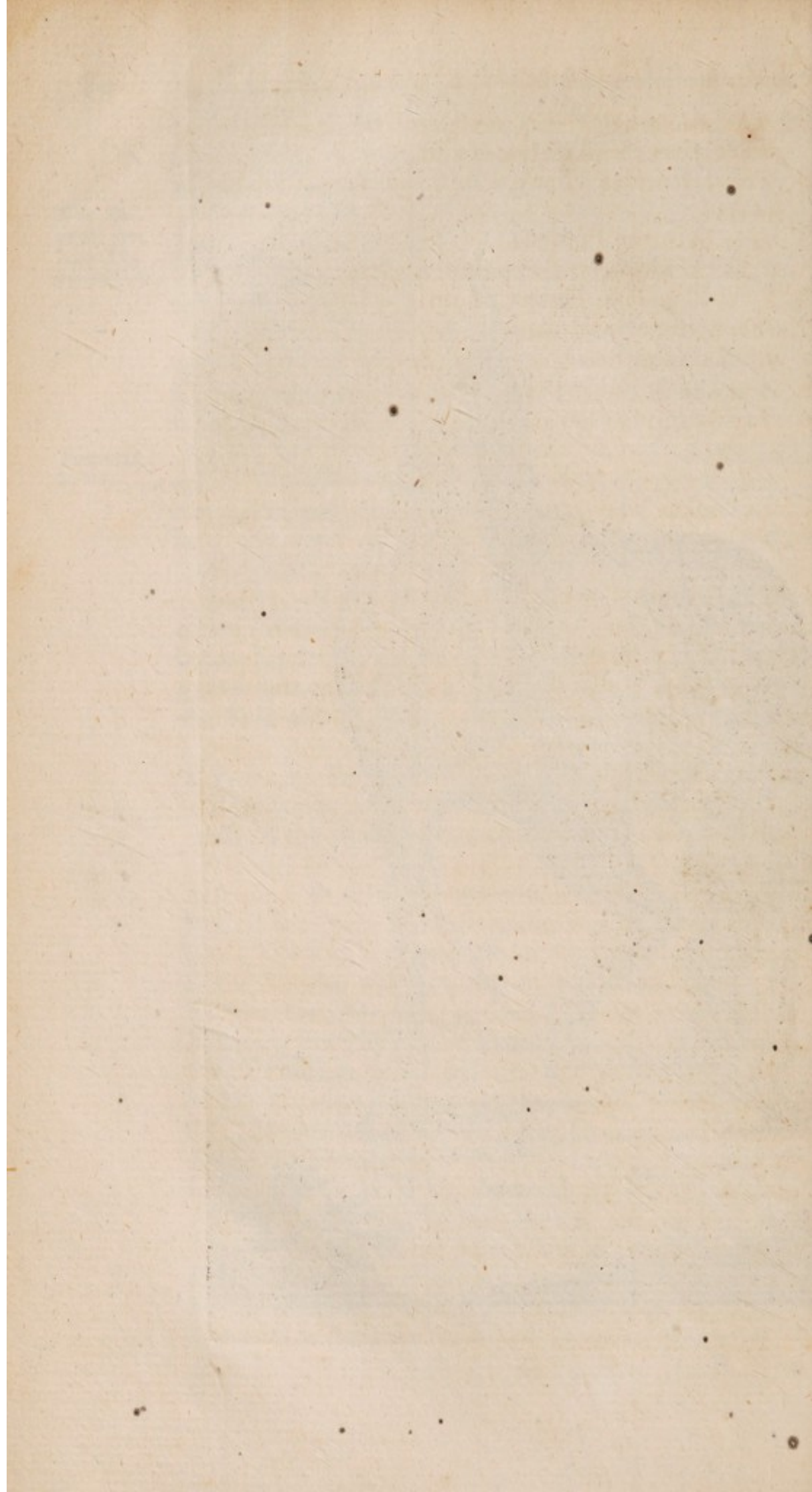
Q Q. The Pectorals.

R. The











R. *The oblique descending Muscle of the lower Belly, sprung from the Serratus Major.*

S. *The Deltoides of the Thigh, so called by Mr. Snape.*

T. *The Serratus Posticus.*

V V V. *The external Intercoastal Muscles.*

V X Y. *The three Buttock Muscles.*

Z. *The Vastus Externus.*

a. *The Sacrolumbus.*

b. *The Longissimus Dorsi.*

c. *The Semispinatus.*

### S E C T. X.

*Of the Muscles of the Thigh, and those which move the hind Leg and Foot.*

The Thigh of a Horse comprehends that Part which is between the Joint of the *Huckle*, or *Whirle Bone* and the *Stifle*.

It is mov'd by several Muscles, the first of which are call'd the *Benders* of the Thigh, and are in Number three, viz. the *Psoas*, the *Iliacus Internus* and *Pectineus*. Three bend the Thigh forward.

The first of these arises fleshy from the transverse Processes of the two lowermost *Vertebrae* of the Chest, and two or three uppermost of the Loins, from whence, descending by the inside of the *Oss Ileum*, it ends in a strong round Tendon, which is inserted into the foreside of the upper Part of the lesser Head of the Thigh Bone. The Use of this Muscle is to draw the Thigh upward, and somewhat inward.

The second, or *Iliacus Internus*, springeth with a slender fleshy beginning from the inside of the Haunch bone; and being join'd by its Tendon to the former Muscle, is inserted by a round Tendon into the lesser Head, or *Rotator* of the Thigh bone. This Muscle is also of use to raise the Thigh upward, tho' not so much inward as the other.

The *Pectineus*, which is the last of these three Muscles, arises broad and fleshy from the Line of



the Share-bone, near the Gristle, and is implanted with a broad and large Tendon into the lower End of the Thigh-bone. This draws the Thigh upward and inward, and is that Muscle, which, in Men, helps to lay one Thigh over the other.

This Muscle, and all those that follow, excepting the two last, are inserted into the lower End of the Thigh-bone, just above the *Stifle*; whereas in Men they are most, or all of them, inserted into its upper Part, either at its Neck, or into one or other of the two Knobs at the lower End of its Neck, called the great and lesser *Trochanters*. Mr. *Snape* thinks the Reason of this Difference is owing to the shortness of the Thigh-bone of a Horse, compar'd with that of a Man, whereby his Muscles being very plump and bulky upon his Buttocks, it was necessary they should have some space to grow more slender, and become tendinous; and therefore he says they are extended as far as the *Stifle*, which answers to the Knee in Man. But this is also owing to the different Action of the Thigh of a Horse from that of a Man, which manifestly requires its Muscles to have a lower Insertion.

Three bend  
it backward.

As there are three Muscles which bend the Thigh forwards, it has the same Number to bend it backwards.

The first is called *Gluteus externus*, or the most outward Buttock Muscle; it rises with a fleshy Beginning from the Crupper, the Ridge of the Haunch-bone, and from the *Os Sacrum*, and passing over the Joint of the Huckle-bone, it ends in a strong and broad Tendon, which is inserted above the *Stifle* into the inner Part of the Thigh-bone. Its Use is to extend the Thigh, and enable a Horse to go backward.

The next is called the *Gluteus Medius*, lying in Man directly under the other, but in a Horse side by side with the other. It rises from the Spine of the Haunch-bone, a little higher than the other, and from thence descends obliquely over the Joint of the Hip, and is inserted into the lower End of the outer side of the Thigh-bone.

Its



Its Use is to extend the Thigh, and to draw it outward and backward, as when a Horse stands to stall.

The third and last of the Extenders is called *Gluteus Minor*, or lesser Buttock Muscle; it rises round and fleshy as high as the former, and descending obliquely over the Joint of the Hip, to the lower End of the Thigh-bone, is inserted somewhat towards its fore-side. This assists the other in its Action.

The Thigh is mov'd inwards by the *Triceps*, or, according to some, the *Quadriceps*, from its having four Heads; the first Head rising nervous from the upper Part of the Share-bone, and descending to the inside of the lower End of the Thigh-bone. The second beginning fleshy at the lower side of the same Bone, and ending a little higher than the former. The third arising partly nervous and partly fleshy, from the under side of the *Coxendix*, is inserted near the last. The fourth, having a like Origin from the Tip of the *Coxendix*, runs along the inside of the Thigh, and ends in a round Tendon; which joining with the Tendon of the first part of this Muscle, has the same Insertion with it.

Moved inwards by one Muscle.

The Thigh is also turn'd outwards by four small Muscles, call'd *Quadrigeni*, all which are placed one by another, upon the outside of the Articulation of the Thigh. The first is the longest, and takes its Origin from the lower and outer Part of the *Os Sacrum*; afterwards, passing over the great *Rotator*, it is inserted into the outside of the lower End of the Thigh-bone.

And turn'd outwards by four.

The second and third arise both of them from the Knob of the *Os Ischium*, near each other, and are inserted with the first.

The fourth is more fleshy than the rest, arising from the inner Part of the Knob of the *Ischium*, and terminating with the former: To these must be added the *Deltoides* of the Thigh, which springs from the outside of the Tip of the *Ileum*, with a sharp Beginning, but growing triangular, is inserted with a broad membranous Tendon into the



outside of the Thigh bone, by its Situation it seems to assist the Action of the *Quadrigemini*.

Turn'd ob-  
liquely by  
two.

But lastly, the Thigh is turn'd obliquely by two Muscles call'd *Obturatores*, or *Stoppers*. The first is called *Obturator Internus*, and takes its Origin from the inner Circumference of the Hole above-mention'd, and is inserted into the Cavity of the great *Rotator*. The *Obturator Externus*, from the external Circumference of the said Hole, and is inserted into the same Cavity with the former.

The Leg has three several Motions peculiar to it, *viz.* it is bended, extended and turned obliquely outwards; to perform all which Motions there are the same Number of Muscles in Horses as in Man, only that some of them are different from those in Men, with respect to their Insertions.

The Leg is  
extended by  
five Muscles.

It has first of all five Muscles, called *Extenders*, of which the first is named *Membranosus*; and by some the *Fascia Lata*, because it involves and covers almost all the Muscles of the Thigh. This Muscle rises fleshy from the upper Part of the *Os Ileum*, near the great Process of the Thigh-bone; and covering the whole Thigh and the Stifle, over which it crosses, it is at last inserted into the fore and upper Part of the Bone of the Leg. Its Use is to extend the Leg directly; or, according to some, to draw it obliquely outwards.

The second is called *Longus*, arising from the upper Part of the Appendix of the *Os Ileum*; and passing obliquely down the Thigh, it is inserted into the Bone of the Leg, a little below the Stifle. This Muscle not only extends the Leg, but also helps to draw it inwards; for which Reason some Authors reckon it one of the Benders of the Leg.

The third is called *Rectus*, from its straight Course: It takes its Beginning from the lower Brim of the Haunch-bone, and descends straight down the foreside of the Thigh, until it reaches the Stifle, where it turns into a strong and broad Tendon; and adhering to the *Patella*, in its Passage over it, it is at last inserted into the foreside of the upper Part of the Shank.

The



The fourth is named *Vastus Externus*, because of its great Bulk; it rises from the Root of the great *Trochanter*, and from the Neck of the Thigh-bone, cleaving close to its outside, until it arrives at the Stifle, where, becoming membranous and broad, and uniting with the Tendon of the straight Muscle, it is inserted into the same Place with it, but on its outside.

The last, or *Vastus Internus*, rises from the Root of the lesser *Trochanter*, and descending down the inside of the Thigh-bone, it unites itself with the former two, after it has passed over the Stifle, and is inserted with them into the same Place of the *Tibia*. These three last describ'd Muscles, joining together at their crossing the Stifle, from one broad and strong Tendon, which involves the *Paletta*, or Knee-bone of the Stifle, and tying it so firmly, that it is almost impossible for it to be displac'd.

The Benders of the Leg are in Number four, Bended by  
viz. the *Biceps*, the *Semimembranosus*, the *Seminervosus*, and *Gracilis*. four.

The *Biceps* rises sharp and nervous from the Appendage of the *Coxendix*, and passing along the outside of the Thigh, is inserted into the outside of the *Appendix* of the *Tibia*, or Leg-bone; this bends the Leg by pulling it backward.

The next, according to *Bartholin* (who follows this Order in his Description of those Muscles) is the *Semimembranosus*, which takes its Beginning from the Knob of the *Coxendix*, as the other, and running down the back Part of the Thigh, is inserted into that Part of the Leg-bone, which in Man is call'd the Ham.

The third is called by the said Author *Seminervosus*, being partly nervous and partly fleshy, as the other is partly fleshy and partly membranous. It has the same Origin with the other two; but descending obliquely towards the inner Part of the Thigh, it reaches to the middle of the Leg-bone, into whose inner Part it is inserted.

The fourth is called *Gracilis*, being slender; it arises with a nervous Beginning, from the Middle



of the Share-bone, and descending along the inside of the Thigh, is inserted near the other. When these Muscles act together, they draw the Leg directly backward; but when they act singly, some being placed more outward, and some more inward, they then bend the Leg either to this or that Side.

Moved obliquely by one.

But besides these, there is another called *Popliteus*, which moves the Leg obliquely. This rises broad and nervous from the outer Head of the Thigh-bone, and going obliquely down the Thigh, is inserted in the back Part of the upper Knob of the *Tibia*.

We come now to the Muscles which move the lower Part of the Leg and Foot; and here it will be necessary to take notice, that by the lower Part of the Leg is to be understood that Space which reaches from the Hock to the great Pastern, which, Mr. *Snape* says, is answerable to the Instep in Men, as the great Pastern and little Pastern answer to the first and second Joints of the Toes; and the Coffin Joint to that whereon the Nails do grow.

The Instep bended by two Muscles.

The Instep is bended by two Muscles, to wit, the *Tibæus Anticus*, and *Peronæus Anticus*. The first arises sharp and fleshy from the upper Appendix of the Leg bone, cleaving close to it in its descent, and passing under the Gristle of the Hock, is divided into two or more Tendons, that are inserted into the foreside of the Instep-bone, which, with the rest of the Foot, it moves forward and upward.

The second is called *Peronæus Anticus*, tho' improperly in a Horse, who wants that Bone which in a Man is named *Perone* or *Fibula*. This takes its Origin from the upper Appendix of the *Tibia*, or Leg-bone, and is inserted into the outside of the Instep-bone, which, with the rest of the Foot, it moves forward and somewhat outward.

The Foot extended by three Muscles.

The Foot is also extended or drawn backwards by three Muscles, the first is called *Gastrocnemius externus*; and is that Muscle, which, in Man, forms the Calf of the Leg. It takes its Rise from the inner Head of the Thigh-bone, and part of it from



from the outward Head of the same Bone, and afterwards uniting together about the middle of the Leg, they there turn into one strong Tendon, which being united with that of the following Muscle, to wit, the *Gastrocnemius internus*, are both inserted into the Heel-bone.

This Muscle lieth somewhat under the former, arising from the hinder Part of the upper End of the Leg-bone, and is inserted as aforesaid.

The last Extender of the Foot is called *Plantaris*, or the Muscle of the Soal or Tread, it arises fleshy, round, and slender between the former two, taking its Origin from the back Part of the lower Head of the Thigh-bone, and, in its descent, soon becomes a slender round Tendon, which, joining very closely with the Tendons of the former two, passes down to the Heel-bone, where it leaves them, and proceeds along the back Part of the Instep-bone, and the two Pasterns, terminating within the Foot all over the Bottom of it, making that Part of the Foot which lies next under the Soal, and plainly appears when the Soal is drawn out. The Tendons of these three Muscles joining together, form that great Sinew called *Magna Chorda*, by which the Butchers hang up their Meat.

The Foot is also moved somewhat sideways, to wit, inward and outward, by two Muscles.

Moved sideways by two Muscles.

The first is called *Tibialis Posticus*, having its Origin from the upper End of the Leg-bone, and its Insertion into the Soal of the Foot, its Use being to move the Foot obliquely inward.

The second, called *Peronæus Posticus*, arises from the upper and hinder Part of the Leg-bone, by a nervous and strong Beginning, and descending with the Tendon of the *Peronæus Anticus*, on the outside of the Hock, continuing its Course beyond it to the Bottom of the Foot, into which it is implanted. This moves the Foot contrary to the former, viz. obliquely outward.

The Pasterns and Coffin-Joint are likewise bended and extended by their proper Muscles.

The Benders are in Number two, viz. the *Flexor Longus* and *Flexor Brevis*. The first arises from

The Pasterns bended by two.



from the upper and hinder Part of the Leg-bone, and descends on the inner side of the Hoof, down the Instep-bone and Pasterns, into the Coffin-Joint. The second takes its Origin from the inside of the Heel-bone, a little below the Hock, and has the same Insertion with the former. These bend the Pasterns and Coffin-Joint backward.

And extended by two.

The Extenders are also two, the first called *Extensor Longus*, and the other *Extensor Brevis*: The one rising from the inner side of the Shank, just under the Stifle, is inserted into the fore and upper Part of the Coffin-Joint. The other rising from the fore Part of the *Annular Ligament*, that binds about the Instep-Joint, and descending under the former, has the same Insertion. These two extend the Pasterns and Coffin Joint, by drawing them forward.

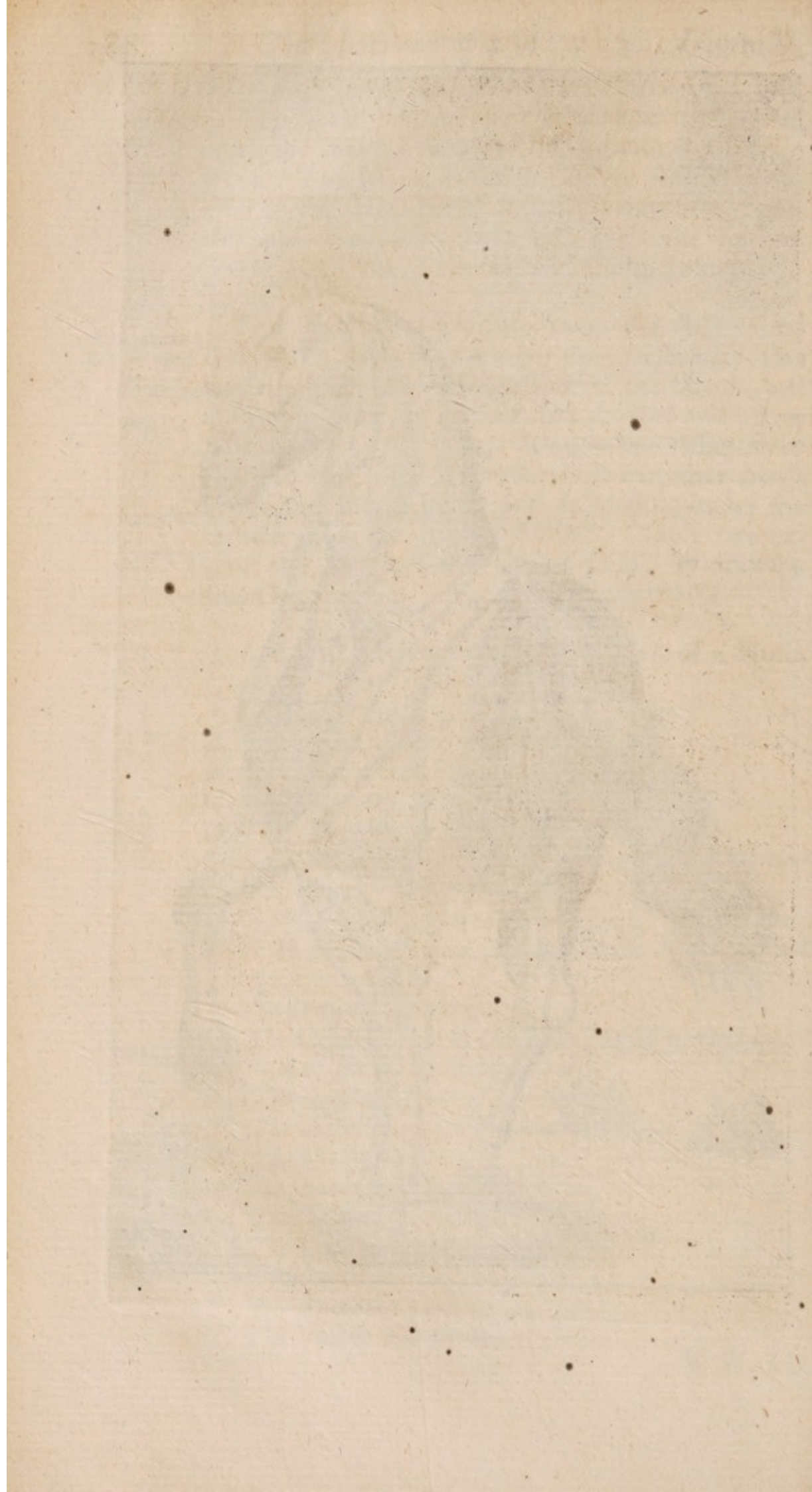
T A B. VI. Represents the hind Part of a Horse with his Muscles.

- A A. The Cucullaris, or Monks-hood.
- B. The Edge of the Deltoides of the Thigh.
- C. The Glutæus Minor, or lesser Buttock Muscle.
- D D D. The Glutæus Medius.
- E E. The Glutæus Major, or greater Buttock Muscle.
- F. The Biceps.
- G G. The Seminervosus of both Legs.
- H H H. The Lividus, or Pectinalis of both hind Legs.
- I. The Semimembranosus.
- K. The Orbicularis, or Orbicular Muscle of the Lips.
- L. Part of the Longissimus Dorsi.
- M. The circular Muscle of the Nose.
- N. The Sphincter of the Fundament.
- O. The Mastoides.
- P. The Massorius of the Cheeks.
- Q. The Triangularis.
- R. The Complexus, or Trigemini.
- S. The Transversalis Colli.
- T. The Spinatus Colli.
- V. The Vastus Externus.











W W. *The Gastrocnemius Externus.*X. *The Peronæus Anticus.*Y. *The Peronæus Posticus.*

## C H A P. VI.

*Of the Bones.*

## S E C T. I.

*Of the Bones which frame and compose the Skull, with its Suture.*

THE first and uppermost Part of the Head is The Skull.  
 the Skull, called by Anatomists the *Cranium*,  
 from its Office of covering the Brain like a Helmet.  
 It is composed of nine Bones, three of which are Its Bones proper and common.  
 common to it, and the upper Jaw, which are the  
 Wedge-like-bone, the *Os Jugale* or the Yoke-  
 like-bone, and the *Os Cribriforme* or Sieve-like-bone.  
 The other six are proper Bones, and make up the  
 Skull itself; and these are the *Frontal* or Fore-  
 head-bone, the *Occipital* or Noll-bone, the two  
 Bones of the *Sinciput* or *Parietal*-bones, and the  
 Temple-bones, within which are contain'd the  
 small Bones of the Ear, which, with the two *Orbi-*  
*cular*-bones, make up the Number of seventeen  
 Bones peculiar to the Skull.

The larger Bones are distinguish'd by several Its Sutures, or Seams.  
 Seams, called *Sutures*, both which, and the Bones,  
 are of the same Number in a Horse as in Men,  
 only that they are different in Shape and Figure.

Some of these *Sutures* are proper to the Skull  
 alone, and some are common to it and the upper  
 Jaw. They are also distinguish'd into those that  
 are true and those that are false, such as are inden-  
 ted one into another, being of the first kind; and  
 such as are plain and linear, like two Boards glew'd  
 together, being accounted of the second kind, or  
 only false *Sutures*.

The



Its true Sutures.

The true *Sutures* are three in Number, and proper to the Skull only, viz. the *Coronal*, *Lambdoidal* and *Sagittal*.

The *Coronal* so called, because the Ancients were wont to wear their Crowns or Garlands on that Part. This Suture, as in Men, so likewise in a Horse, runs athwart the Skull above the Forehead, reaching on each side to the Temple-bones, and joining the Forehead-bone to the *Sinciput*.

The second, *Lamdoïdes*, because of its Resemblance to the Greek Letter  $\Lambda$ . This is seated on the hind part of the Head, being opposite to the other, beginning at the Bottom of the *Occiput*, and ascending above the Ear somewhat higher than in Men. It joins the Bone of the *Occiput*, or hind and under part of the Skull, to the Bones of the *Sinciput* and Temples.

The third begins at the middle of the *Lambdoidal* Suture, dividing the two Bones of the *Sinciput*, and is therefore called the *Sagittal Suture*; but in Horses, and many other Quadrupeds, it crosses the *Coronal Suture*, as in Children, quite down to the Nose. This Suture in a Horse is not so much indented as the other two, but is in a great measure streight and linear.

Its false Sutures.

The false Sutures are in Number two; the first passes from the Root of the *Processus mammillaris* with a circular Duct, returning down again towards the Ear, encompassing the Temple-bone.

The second runs obliquely downwards, arising from the Top of the former, and passes to the Socket of the Eye, and the Beginning of the first common Suture.

Those common to the Skull and upper Jaw.

The Sutures which are common to the Skull, the Wedge-like Bone and upper Jaw, are chiefly those three that follow, to wit, the *Frontal*, the *Wedge-like Suture*, and the *Cribrosa*: The first being that by which the Process of the Forehead Bone is joined with the first Bone of the upper Jaw; the second that by which the Wedge-like Bone is joined with the first Bone of the same Jaw; and the third that Suture, which is common to the wedge-like Bone and the *Septum*, or Partition of the Nose.

These



These *Sutures* are of Use, not only as they divide Their Use. the Bones which compose the Skull, but also as they afford a free Ingress and Egress for the Vessels which supply Life and Nourishment to the Parts contained within the Skull, and likewise as they give a Passage to those little Fibrils, by which the *Dura Mater* is kept suspended: And further, they are of Use in case the Skull should at any time happen to be broke, that any such Fracture or Fissure might not run thro' the whole Skull, but be stop'd at the End of the fractured Bone; whereas if it was not for these Seams, it might with one Blow be shiver'd all in Pieces like an Earthen Pot. But I shall now return to the Bones.

The *Frontal* or Forehead Bone, which I have already taken Notice of, as the first proper Bone of the Skull, is seated before, and makes the fore-Part of the Skull. It is bounded on its fore-Part by the Coronal and first common Suture, on the Sides by the Temporal Bones, and on its Inside by the *Offa spongiosa*, or spongy Bones. Between its *Lamina* or Plates there is a double Cavity, from whence there is also a double Passage into the Nostrils, distinguished by many bony Fibres and small Scales, which are encompassed with a green Membrane, and contain a soft medullar, or rather oily Substance. These are proportionably larger in a Horse than in a Man, and have various Uses ascrib'd to them, being thought by some to assist in the Office of Smelling, by intangling the odoriferous Air; by some, to promote the Shrillness of the Voice; and by others, to be a Receptacle for some Portion of the excrementitious Matter, which is separated from those Parts.

The Frontal-Bone with its Cavities, &c.

Besides these Cavities, there is a *Sinus* or Den on each side, called the *Frontal Sinus's*, compos'd of a double Scale; one making the upper Part of the Orbit of the Eye, and the other forming the Cavity above the Eyes, on either side, which is not very plain, having only Inscriptions answerable to the winding Convolution of the Brain. This Bone has also two Holes, which go to the Orbit of the Eye, whereby the first Branch of the Nerve of the



the fifth Conjugation goeth to the Muscles of the Forehead. It has likewise four Proceſſes, two of which are ſeated at the greater Corner of the Eye, and the other two at its leſſer Corner, helping to form the upper Part of the Orbit.

The Sinciput.

The Bones of the *Sinciput* are the next to the Frontal, being joined to it by the *Coronal Suture*, and behind to the *Occipital-Bone* by the *Lambdoidal Suture*, on each ſide, to the Temple-Bones, by the *Sutura Squammoſæ* or ſcaly Sutures, and by one of the common Sutures to the Wedge-like Bone. They are alſo joined one to the other by the *Sagittal* or Arrow-like Suture.

Their Figure is ſomewhat ſquare, and though their Subſtance is thinner than that of the other Bones of the Skull, yet they are alſo made up of two *Lamina*, excepting where they are joined to the Temple-bones. They are ſmooth on their outſide, but inwardly uneven, having ſeveral Cavities to which the *Dura Mater* adheres by the ſides of the *Sagittal Suture*; as alſo ſeveral long and winding Inſcriptions or Furrows form'd by the Branches of the *internal Jugulars* in their Paſſage to the Brain. Theſe Bones have alſo ſeveral *Perforations*; ſome of which go quite through, others piercing only the upper Table for the Entrance of thoſe Veſſels which run between its Plates.

The Noll-bone, with its Parts.

The *Occipital* or Noll-bone, which makes the hinder and lower Part of the Head, and middle of the *Baſis* of the Skull, is the hardeſt of all the Bones of the Skull, excepting the *Os petroſum* of the Temple-bones, being very thick at Bottom, where the two *Sinus's* of the *Dura Mater* are joined. At the ſides of the great Perforation, through which the Spinal Marrow deſcends, it is ſomewhat thin; but that its Thinneſs might be no Prejudice to it, it is ſtrengthen'd by a large Prominence, which aſcends from the ſaid Perforation quite to its upper Part. By this Prominence the two Protuberances of the *Cerebellum* are alſo diſtinguiſhed.

This Bone is in a Horſe five-corner'd, and has ſeveral Channels or *Sinus's*, two of which being pretty large, receive the Protuberances or Bunchings



ings of the *Cerebellum* or After-brain ; others receive some of the Convolutions of the Brain itself, and some, the two *Sinus's* of the *Dura Mater*, that they might not be compressed or hurt for want of a proper Cavity to lie in.

It has also divers *Processes*, four of which being covered with a smooth Gristle, are receiv'd into the *Sinus's* of the first *Vertebra* of the Neck ; but that which goes between the Protuberances of the *Cerebellum*, is the most considerable. It is perforated in five Places for the Passage of several Vessels, besides the large Hole through which the *Medulla* goes into the Spine of the Neck.

The last of the proper Bones of the Skull are the Temple-bones, which are seated on each side of the Head, reaching to the Bottom of the Ears. Their Figure is on their upper sides semicircular, but below they are rugged and unequal, like a Rock ; from whence, and from their Hardness, the Temple-bone has also obtained the Name of *Os petrosum*. These Bones are very thick at their Bottom, but grow extremely thin upwards, lying like two Scales on the lower Edge of the Bones of the *Sinciput*.

The Temple-bones,  
with their  
*Processes* and  
*Sinus's*.

They have each of them two *Sinus's*, the outermost being the largest, is lined with a Gristle, and receives the longer *Process* of the lower Jaw. The other or inward Cavity is common to the Temple-bone and Noll-bone. There are also four *Processes* belonging to each Temple-bone, viz. that which in Man is called the *Processus Styloides*, or Pen-like *Process*, tho' improperly in a Horse, it being but short. The next is called the *Processus mammillaris*, being somewhat shap'd like a Nipple. The third passing forwards from the Hole of the Ear to the Protuberance of the first Bone of the upper Jaw, and being join'd to the last, forms the *Os Jugale* or Yoke-bone. The fourth is the *Processus petrosus*, or hard and uneven Part of the Temple-bone ; this being internal, jets out a pretty way into the inside of the Bottom of the Skull, within which there are two Perforations ; one to give a Passage for an Artery, and another for the  
Auditory



Auditory Nerve, into the inner Cavities of the Ear, to wit, the *Tympanum*, *Labyrinth* and *Cochlea*.

This *Process* has also on its outside three Perforations or Holes; the first is called the *Meatus Auditorius* or Auditory Passage: The second is that through which the *Jugular* Vein enters into the inner Cavities: The third is seated between the *Mammillary* and *Styloid Processes*, ending in that Passage that goes from the Ear to the Mouth. As to the little Bones that are contained in the Cavities of this *Process*, viz. the *Incus*, *Malleus*, *Stapes* and *Os Orbiculare*, which, with those already describ'd, make up the whole Number of Bones proper to the Skull; having taken Notice of them already in another Place, I shall therefore pass on to those which are common to the Skull and upper Jaw; and these are in Number three, namely, the *Os Sphenoides* or *Wedge-like Bone*, the *Sieve-like Bone*, and the *Yoke-like Bone*.

The  
Wedge-like  
Bone.

The *Wedge-like Bone* is so called from its being placed like a *Wedge* between the Bones of the Skull and upper Jaw; it is joined before to the *Frontal-Bone*, and behind to the *Occipital*, its Sides to Part of the *Petrosum*, above and below to some of the Bones of the upper Jaw and Palate.

It has several *Processes*, some external, and some internal; as also divers Cavities, two of which are common to it, and the *Temple-bones*, and the Bones of the *Sinciput*. Its Holes are about seven on each side; one of which gives a Passage to the *Optick Nerve*, the rest are penetrated, some by one, and some by several Pairs of Nerves; others by the *Carotid Arteries* and *Jugular Veins*; and again, others both by Nerves and Blood-vessels.

The *Os Cri-*  
*briforme* or  
*Sieve-like*  
Bone.

The *Os Cribriforme* is the next Bone common to the Head and upper Jaw, and is so called from its innumerable little Holes, which make it like a *Sieve*. It is situated in the fore and under side of the Skull, between and a little below the Sockets of the Eyes, and at the upper part of the Nostrils, and is joined by an even Line to the Forehead-bone, the second of the upper Jaw, and the *Wedge-like bone*.



It is made up of four Parts, viz. the *Crista Galli*, or Cock's-Comb, to whose sharp *Appendix* the *Falx* adheres. The second Part is that which is perforated, and makes up the greatest Portion of it. The third is only a *Process* on its under side, by which the Nostrils are divided: And the fourth is called the *Os spongiosum*, its Cavities being filled with a spongy sort of Flesh. This Bone helps to make up the inner Corner of the Orbit of the Eye, and through its Holes gives a Passage to the innumerable *Fibrillæ* of the Auditory Nerves.

The last is the *Jugale* or Yoke-like Bone, and is composed of two Bones; one of which is a *Process* of the Temple-bone, and the other a *Process* of the first Bone of the upper Jaw, forming the lower side of the lesser or outer Corner of the Orbit of the Eye.

## S E C T. II.

*Of the Jaw-bones and Teeth, together with the Os Hyoides or Bone of the Tongue.*

Besides the Bones which are common to the Skull and upper Jaw, there are twelve, viz. six on each side, which are proper to the upper Jaw alone, and are those which frame the lower side of the Orbit of the Eye, the Nose, Cheeks and Roof of the Mouth.

The first is called *Zygomaticum*, because its *Process* makes up Part of the *Os Jugale*: It composes the lower Part of the outer Corner of the Eye.

Twelve  
Bones pro-  
per to the  
upper Jaw  
viz.

The first,  
*Zygoma-  
ticum*, with  
its Fellow.

The next is seated in the inner Corner of the Orbit of the Eye, and is called *Lachrymale*, because it has in it a Cavity which contains the *Lachrymal* Gland. This Bone has also a Perforation into the Nostril, through which a Nerve of the fifth Pair passes to the inner Membrane of the Nose.

The second,  
*Lachrymale*.

The third is seated in the inner side of the Orbit of the Eye, and is continued with the fungous Bones of the Nostrils. This Bone is joined to four Bones, viz. to the Forehead Bone, to the Wedge-like Bone, to the last described, and the next

The third.



next following, and is not distinguished by any peculiar Name.

The fourth,  
*Os Mala.*

The fourth is called the *Os Mala* or Cheek-bone. This Bone composes the greatest Part of the Cheek, as also of the Palate; and moreover contains all the upper Teeth in its lesser Caverns. It is much the largest of all the Bones of the upper Jaw, and is circumscribed with divers Sutures, being joined above to the Frontal-bone on the side next the Nose, below to the Wedge-like Bone, and the Bone of the Palate of the Mouth, before to the *Lachrymal* Bone, and one of those Bones that make the upper Part of the Nose, as also to the Cheek-bone on the other side. It has also three Perforations, two of which are under the Orbit of the Eye for the Passage of two Branches of Nerves that are bestowed on the Face; and the third for the Passage of a Vein and Artery, which go to the Nostrials. This Bone has likewise a great Den or Cavern on each side in that prominent Part which stands out under the Orbit of the Eye, and on each side of the Nose; when there happens to be Matter pent up in this Cavity, it occasions intolerable Pain, by reason of a very fine and sensible Membrane which lines its Inside.

The fifth,  
which makes  
the Promi-  
nence of the  
Nose.

The fifth Bone of the upper Jaw, with its Companion, makes up the bony Prominence of the Nose. It is hard and solid, and is perforated in several Places for the Passage of Nerves and Blood-vessels. It is joined above to the internal Process of the *Frontal*-bone: Its Sides adhere to the first and fourth Bone of this Jaw, in the middle to its Companion, and underneath to the Gristles that make the lower part of the Nose.

The last,  
with its  
Companion,  
frame the  
Roof of the  
Mouth.

The last is that Bone, which, with its Companion, frames the Roof of the Mouth: It is broad, thin and solid, but somewhat rough and uneven at that End where it resembles a Semicircle. It is joined behind to the Wing-like Processes of the Wedge-like Bone; and on the Inside to the Partition of the Nostrials. It is also joined to the Cheek-bone, and to its own Fellow at its back part. It has likewise two Perforations, one on either side,



sides, which have Communication with the two Holes of the Wedge-like Bone.

The lower Jaw, which makes the lower part of the Capacity of the Mouth, comes next to be treated of. This differs from the former, in that it is moveable, whereas the other is not. At both Ends of it there are two Processes, the foremost of which running upwards, and from a broad *Basis* growing sharp, ends in a Cone or Point. It is this Point that receives the Tendon of the Temporal Muscle; from whence it is, that a Luxation of the lower Jaw is very dangerous, if not speedily reduc'd.

The lower Jaw, with its Parts.

The other, which is the backward Process, is called *Articularis*, having a Neck and a longish Head covered with a Gristle, by which it is received and articulated into the *Sinus* of the *Os petrosum*, and is strongly knit thereto by a membranous Ligament. It hath at the sides of those Processes, small, shallow Cavities, for the Lodgment of its Muscles. Towards its back part it has a Cavity within it, which contains a marrowy Juice for its Nourishment. It has also four Perforations or Holes, whereof two are at the Roots of the Processes, by which a Vein and Artery, as also a Branch of the fifth Pair of Nerves, do pass to the Teeth. The other two are in its fore-part, giving way to two Twigs of the said Branch, which go out to the lower Lip.

Both the lower and upper Jaw have Sockets for the Teeth to stand in, which, by reason of their Depth, have been called *Alveoli*: When any of the Teeth fall out, as the *Foal-Teeth*, &c. these Pits soon become obliterated, and the Jaw grows smooth.

The Teeth are of a Substance harder than any of the other Bones, which is absolutely necessary, considering their Office is to break and cut all the Aliment. That part of them which stands out above the Gums, is smooth, and free from any Covering, but all within the Sockets of the Jaws is more rough, and covered with a thin Membrane of exquisite Sense. Those which are called *Grinders*, have a manifest Cavity within

The Teeth.



within them, but the Fore-Teeth and Dog-Teeth have but very obscure ones. By the small Holes which are discernable in the Roots of the Teeth, is conveyed into these Cavities a capillary Branch of an Artery from the *Carotids*, a small Vein from the *Jugulars*, and a Twig of a Nerve from the fifth Pair; which being expanded through the thin Membrane that invests the said Cavity, is partly the Occasion of that exquisite Pain which is felt in the Tooth-ach. These Vessels before-mentioned, namely the Vein, Artery and Nerve, are inclosed in one common *Capsula* or *Sheath*, when they enter the Jaw, and running along a proper Channel under the Roots of the Teeth, send off to each of them, in their Passage, those small Twigs aforesaid.

Though the Teeth of Horses are differently situated from those in Men, and are also more numerous; yet as to their Offices, they admit of the same Division, and are of three Kinds, namely, the *Incisores*, *Canini* and *Molares*.

The *Incisores*.

The *Incisores*, Cutters or Shredders, are those we call the Fore-teeth, being seated in the fore-part of the Jaw. They are broad and sharp-edg'd, the better to crop and bite off the Grass: They are in Number twelve; six on each Jaw. These have but one Root or Phang.

The *Canini*.

The next are the *Canini* or Dog-Teeth, which in Horses are called the *Tushes*; and are of Use to break whatever is too hard for the Fore-Teeth to cut or shear asunder. These have also but one Phang, and are seldom to be found in Mares.

The *Molares*.

Those of the third Rank are the double Teeth, and are named *Molares* or Grinders, because they grind the Food like a Millstone: They are in Number twenty-four, twelve on each Jaw; their Seat is in the inner Part of the Mouth, being environ'd on their outside by the Cheeks, to prevent the Food falling out of the Mouth while it is a-grinding. These have several Asperities on their upper Part, by which means they are rendered more fit for their peculiar Office.



The two foremost of these Teeth, which stand next the Tusshes, are those by which a Horse may be known to be under seven Years old, having till then several thin Shells or Scales growing round the outside of the Top of them, forming a Hollow in the middle. And it is to be observed, That the nearer a Horse comes to that Age, the more those Edges are worn down, till at last they become even with the rest; so that the Age of a Horse is no more to be known by that Sign.

Those by which the Age of a Horse is known.

The several Periods of a Horse's Age, while only a Colt, are also distinguishable by the Fore-Teeth; but these things being sufficiently known by every one who has been used among Horses, I shall therefore proceed to the Bone of the Tongue.

That Bone is called *Hyoides*, from its Shape, being like the Greek Letter  $\upsilon$  (*Ypsilon*). It is seated at the Root of the Tongue, being the Foundation or Supporter of it. It is made up of three Bones, the middlemost being gibbous outwards, but inwards somewhat hollow: The other two are called its *Cornua* or Horns, and are all tied to the adjacent Parts by a Substance which is partly nervous, and partly fleshy.

The Os Hyoides, or Bone of the Tongue.

This little Bone is of great Use; all the Muscles that move the Tongue being either inserted into it, or taking their Origin from it. It also gives Rise to some of those Muscles that move the *Larynx* or Throttle, and is a resting Place to the *Epiglottis* or Throat-slap, when it is lifted up in breathing.

### S E C T. III.

#### *Of the Vertebrae of the Neck.*

The Neck is made up of seven *Vertebrae* or Rack-bones, reckoning from the Head downward, that next the Head being the first; they have each of them a large Cavity to give way to the Spinal Marrow: And besides this large Hole, which they have in common with all the other *Vertebrae*, they

The Vertebrae of the Neck.



have each two small Perforations in their *transverse* Processes, through which the cervical Veins and Arteries do pass to the Head; and between their Joinings there is a third found, partly out of the lower side of the upper *Vertebra*, and partly out of the upper side of each lower *Vertebra*, by which the Nerves pass outward from the Spinal Marrow.

The first is called the *Atlas*.

The first of these Bones in a Humane *Skeleton* is called *Atlas*, because the Head is articulated to it, and, as it were, supported by it; and may therefore retain the same Name in a Horse. Its Body is slender, but more solid than the Tips of its Processes, which are porous and open; instead of its hinder Spine or Process, it has only a semicircular Prominence jetting out, lest the larger straight Pair of Muscles, which pass over it, should be hurt in bending the Head forwards; but it has all its other Processes in common with the rest. On the fore-side of its great *Foramen* inwards it has a small Socket somewhat semicircular, and lin'd with a Cartilage to receive the Tooth-like Process of the second *Vertebra*.

The second, *Dentata*.

The second *Vertebra* is because of this Process called *Dentata*; it is an Appendix, which springs from between its two ascending Processes long and round, its Head resembling the upper Part of the Dog-Tooth in Man, or the Tush in a Horse. It is also covered with a *Cartilage* on that Part which is received into the foresaid *Sinus* of the first *Vertebra*; upon it the Head turns round, as upon a Hinge. The *Basis* of this Tooth-like Appendage is encompassed with a Ligament that knits it to the *Occiput*. This and the following *Vertebrae* have *Spines*, or hinder Processes, each of which are divided into two, for the better Connexion of the Ligaments and Muscles to them, and are, in every respect, like the second, save only that their lateral Processes are larger and divided as well as the hinder.



## S E C T. IV.

*Of the Vertebrae of the Back and Loins, as also of the Breast-bone, Collar-bones, and Ribs.*

The Back is made up of seventeen *Vertebrae*, or Rack-bones, which are somewhat different, both in their Bodies and Processes, from those of the Neck, the last being longer and more flat on their inside, that the Gullet might rest more securely on them; and as for their Processes, tho' they are equal in Number, viz. two tending obliquely upwards, and two tending obliquely downwards, two transverse, or lateral ones, and one acute hinder one, called the *Spine*; yet those which are now to be describ'd, have their *Spines*, or hinder Processes single and not divided; and their lateral ones more short and blunt; and, instead of the Holes which are in those of the Neck, have only a shallow Cavity, into which the Ribs are articulated.

Those of the  
Back and  
Loins.

Neither are the Bodies of these *Vertebrae* of such a firm and solid Make as those of the Neck, tho' they are more bulky; besides, that they are full of small Perforations, for the Admission of Blood-vessels to the Spinal-marrow, and have each two Holes at their Joinings, for the Egress of the Nerves which proceed from thence.

They have also on each Side a *Sinus*, or Cavity, for the Inarticulation of the Head of the Rib, which *Sinus's* are wanting in those of the Neck, having no Communication with any other but among themselves.

The transverse Processes of two or three of the lowest of these Rack-bones grow gradually shorter, and their *Spines* more blunt and even, declining not so much downwards as those more forward. As for the great Perforation in their Middle, it is proportionable to their Size and the Marrow contain'd within it.

The *Vertebrae* of the Loins, which compose the third Part of the *Spine*, come next to be consider'd. They are in Number seven, and are



bigger than any of the foregoing ; their hind Processes, or Spines grow shorter, but are broader and thicker than those of the Back, somewhat bending upwards, as most of the other decline downwards ; but as to their lateral Processes, they exceed those of the Back in length : They are joined one to another by a clammy Gristle, as also the uppermost of them to the last of the Back, and the lowest to the first of the *Os Sacrum*, by the same kind of Articulation. These have also several Perforations for the Ingress and Egress of Nerves and Blood-vessels, as also a large Cavity in each for the Spinal-marrow.

The Sternum, or Breast-bone.

Directly opposite to the upper *Vertebrae* of the Back, is seated the *Sternum*, or Breast-bone, which is very different in a Horse from what it is in a Man, being, in all humane *Skeletons*, flat on its outside, and pretty streight ; whereas in our present Subject it is not only somewhat arched, but in its middle is prominent and sharp, like the Keel of a Ship, being also hollow on its inside. This Bone in Foals, as in Children, seems to be made up of divers *Cartilages*, which, in time, become so united, as to leave no Marks of their ever having been divided.

In its upper Part it is pointed and sharp, whereas its lower Part is somewhat blunt and obtuse, terminating in a Gristle call'd the *Cartilage Ensiformis*, or Sword-like Gristle. Its Use is to serve as a Safe-guard to the Breast, as also for the Articulation of the Collar-bones ; and the nine uppermost Ribs having on each Side nine little *Sinus's*, or Cavities, for that purpose.

The Clavicle, or Collar-bones

The Collar-bones, which are the first that are united to the Breast-bone, are in Number two, one on each side ; they are called *Claviculae*, either because they resemble the antient Keys, which were in Shape like an *Italian s*, or because they lock up and close the Chest : Their Heads are spongy and open, but their Middle somewhat thin and flat, and somewhat more solid ; by one End they are joined to the Top of the Breast-bone, and by the other to the first Rack-bone of the Back, differing



differing from those in Man, which are jointed with the Shoulder. They help to support the Shoulder-blades, and keep them from sliding forward upon the Breast-bone and Shoulder-bones, which, upon a Fracture, or Dislocation of these Bones, frequently happens.

Next the Collar-bones are seated the Ribs. The Ribs. They are in all thirty four, viz. seventeen on each Side. Their Substance is partly bony and partly cartilaginous. The nine uppermost are called the true Ribs, because each, with its Fellow, makes a kind of Circle, being joined together by the Mediation of the Rack-bones of the Back behind, and the Breast-bone before; each Rib has two Knobs, one of which is received into the *Sinus* of the Body of the *Vertebra*, and the lesser Knob into that of the transverse Process; they are in like manner joined to the Breast-bone, their Cartilages ending in little Heads, which are received into its smooth *Sinus's*.

The eight lowermost are called the Bastard-ribs, because they don't circumscribe the Body, as the uppermost do, by their two-fold Articulation into the Rack-bones and Breast-bone. They are of a more soft and pliable Substance than the true Ribs, and the nearer they advance towards the Loins they grow shorter, leaving an open Space for the Stomach and Guts, which might have easily been hurt by them, as often as distended with Meat or Water.

They are all rough and uneven on their outside, especially towards the Back, that the Ligaments by which they are ty'd to the Rack-bones might take the firmer hold, but on their inside they are smooth, and covered with the *Pleura*, lest they should hurt the Lungs, and the other Parts that bear against them. They are also narrow and thick towards the Back, but broader and flatter towards the Breast, and are furrowed on the lower Part of their inside, in which some Blood-Vessels and a Nerve are conducted. They are a Defence to the Bowels within the Breast, and likewise to those in the lower Belly.



## S E C T. V.

*Of the Blade-bone, the Shoulder-bone, and the Bones of the fore Leg and Foot.*

The Blade-bone.

The Blade-bone, or Shoulder-blade, is seated like a Target upon the Side of the true Ribs, reaching from the *Vertebrae* of the Back almost to the Collar-bone. On its inside it is somewhat concave and hollow, but arched on its outside: It is jointed to no Bone, but by its lower End, where it has a Cup that receives the round Head of the Shoulder-bone: It is, however, knit to several Parts by the Muscles which are inserted into it, or take their Origin from it. It has three Processes, the first is that Part which forms its Neck; the second is extended along the middle of its outside, and is called its Spine. The third is towards its lower and inside, and from the Resemblance it has to an Anchor, is called *Ancyroides*, or its Anchor-like Process.

It has also about its Neck five Appendages, three of which afford an Original to some Muscles, and from the other two arise the Ligaments by which the Head of the Shoulder-bone is ty'd into its Cup. Round its Brim there is a thick Gristle, which not only makes its Cavity the deeper, that the Head of the Shoulder-bone, which is jointed into it, should not so easily slip out, but also facilitates its Motion.

The *Os Humeri*, or Shoulder-bone.

The Shoulder-bone has two Heads, the uppermost inserted into the Cup of the Blade-bone, and the lowermost joined to the upper Part of the *Cubit*, or Leg-bone.

The uppermost Head is large and orbicular, covered with a Gristle, and is, at first, only an Appendix to the *Cubit*; but, in time, becomes a Process of the Bone itself; on the outside of this orbicular Head there are two lesser Prominences, into which two Ligaments are inserted; and on its inside there is a Cavity, out of which arises the strong Ligament that ties it into the Cup of the Blade.

The



The lower Head of this Bone, which in a humane Body is articulated with two Bones, viz. the *Radius* and *Ulna*, is, in a Horse, only united to one; yet it is so firmly coupled to that one, that it cannot be easily displac'd, for there being three *Processes* and two *Sinns*'s between it and the *Cubit*, they both receive, and are received of each other: And besides these *Processes*, which serve to its Articulation, there is on each side one, from whence arise the *Muscles* which lie on both sides of the Leg. About its Middle there is a Perforation, by which the Blood-vessels have recourse to and from the Marrow contained within its large Bore, and are these by which it is nourished.

The next Bone, called the *Cubit*, or Leg-bone, reaches from the Elbow to the Shank. This Bone has, on its hinder and upper Part, a notable *Process*, long and round, which enters the larger Cavity of the lower Head of the Shoulder-bone, and makes that bunching out which is usually call'd the Elbow; this *Process* is somewhat rough and uneven, partly that the *Ligaments* that encompass the Joint might be the more strongly knit to it, and partly for the Origination and Insertion of the *Muscles* which serve to move those Parts, for which Cause the Bone is rough at the Root of this *Process*, as also the whole Circumference of the *Sinus*, into which it is inserted.

The *Cubit*,  
or Leg-bone.

Between this and the Shank-bone there are two Ranges of little Bones, one above another, three in the first Range, and four in the second, all which are very firmly joined together. These differ one from another in their Magnitude, Form and Situation, and are said to be first cartilaginous, but that in process of time they grow hard and bony. Their Substance is spongy, as are all those which at first are only cartilaginous, of which kind are the Appendages of Bones, the Breast-bones, and the like. They are covered with a *Ligament* which is partly membranous, and partly cartilaginous, whereby they are so compacted, that without dividing the said *Ligament*, it is hard to distinguish

The seven  
small Bones  
seated be-  
tween the  
Leg-bone  
and Shank.



tinguish them one from another, but at first View they may be all taken for one Bone.

On their outer Surface they are somewhat bunching, but on their inside they are hollow. The first that is placed on the inside of the upper Rank is somewhat longish and curved inwards, articulated with the Cubit-bone, and below with the second of the lower Rank, touching both the third and fourth of the same Rank, and join'd to the second of its own Rank. The second has a Cavity on its upper Part, which receives an Appendix of the Cubit-bone. The third is joined above by a plain Surface to the said Cubit-bone, and with the second is joined underneath to the fourth Bone of the lower Rank. The fourth Bone, or first of the lower Rank, is round and smooth, and is joined above to the outside of the lower Part of the first Bone, and below to the Shank-bone. The fifth has on its upper Part a large Sinus, into which the first Bone of the upper Rank is articulated, and another below for Reception of part of the Head of the Shank-bone. The sixth is joined with a plain Superficies on each side to the seventh, and the foregoing above to the second, and below to the Shank-bone. The seventh is joined on its upper end to the third of the upper Rank, and below to the Head of the Shank-bone, and on its inside to the foregoing, to wit, the sixth.

*Their Use.*

These Bones are of use, not only to facilitate the Motion of the Knee, but also to strengthen it, for by their convex outside the Joint can never be extended too far the contrary Way, and the Number of the lower Rank exceeding that of the upper Rank (as the upper end of the Shank-bone is broader than the lower end of the Cubit) and as the Bones themselves are somewhat different in their Size from each other, like a piece of good Mason-work, they cannot easily be pull'd asunder; whereas if the Bones of both Ranks were of one Size and Number, and their Seams and Junctures to run streight thro', it would be impossible but every the least false Step must disorder them in such manner as to occasion an irrecoverable Lameness.



ness. As to their Motion, altho' by this sort of Articulation they seem as if they were incapable of any singly; yet it is very certain the whole have a small tendency inward, as often as the Shank is bended, tho' that be scarcely discernable, and by virtue of the cartilaginous Ligament, which covers all those little Bones, and ties them together, they recover themselves as with a Spring; so that the Motion of that Joint must be more easy and quick than it could possibly be by any other kind of Articulation.

But it would oblige me to go beyond the Limits of this short Abridgment, if I should explain the Mechanism of the Bones; I shall therefore proceed to the Shank-bone, which comes next in order, and is that which reaches from the Knee to the great Pastern, and answers to the Back of the Hand in Man. As that consists of five Bones; the Shank-bone of a Horse is made up of three, having one much larger and longer than either of the other. It is joined, by its upper Part, to the lowermost Range of the small Bones, and below to the upper end of the great Pastern, by a reciprocal Articulation, having two round Heads and three small Cavities, whereby these two Bones both receive and are received into each other, as the lower End of the Shoulder-bone and the upper End of the Cubit.

The Shank-bone.

To each Side of this Bone is fastned a Splint, in Shape like a Bodkin, being thick and round at the upper End, but small and pointed at the lower; between these do run the Tendons of the Muscles that move the Foot.

The next is the great Pastern. This Bone is gibbous and crooked on its upper Part, where it is articulated with the Shank-bone; it has three small Processes, which are received into the Cavities of the said Shank-bone; and two Cavities which also receive its two Processes; and has also two small triangular Bones fastned to its back Part, whereon the Foot-lock Hair does grow; these two Bones are a Stay to that Joint, which

The great Pastern.

Arti-



Articulation being like a Hinge, would be apt to strain the Ligaments every time a Horse should stumble.

The little  
Pastern.

The little Pastern is not much unlike the other, only that it differs in its Length; its upper End is articulated with the great Pastern, and its lower End consists of two Heads, as that of the great Pastern, which are received into the Coffin-bone, in the same manner as itself receives the lower End of the great Pastern.

The Coffin-  
bone.

The Coffin-bone, which is the lowermost of all the Bones of the Leg, is so called from its Howness. It is somewhat *Semilunary*, or half Moon fashion'd, thick upwards, where its Cavities receive the lower End of the little Pastern, but thin and broad at its Bottom, and towards its Edges, for its more firm fixing upon the Ground. Its Substance is open and porous, having innumerable little Holes thro' its Sides, for the Passage of the Vessels; as also many small *Sinus's*, wherein are inserted the Tendons of the Muscles that move the lower Part of the Leg and Foot.

## S E C T. VI.

*Of the Croupe and Rump-bones.*

The Os  
*Sacrum*, or  
Croupe.

The *Croupe*, or the Bone which lies under the Crupper, otherwise called the *Os Sacrum*, is seated at the lower End of the Back, and adheres to the last *Vertebra* of the Loins above, and below to the first of the Bones of the *Dock*, or Rump: It is much the broadest of all the Bones of the Back, of a Figure somewhat triangular, growing, from a broad Beginning, narrow towards the first Bone of the Tail; it is hollow on its inside, but uneven outwards, because of the Muscles of the Back and its Ligaments cleaving to it. It has hardly any oblique Processes but on its first *Vertebra*, and its other Processes are either very small or very obscure. On each Side, towards its Edges, there are certain *Sinus's*, to which the Haunch-bones adhere, by an intervening Cartilage. It has six *Vertebrae*, its Spines grow gradually less the nearer they approach



proach to the Rump, as the Vertebres themselves do also. The Spinal Marrow has likewise a Passage in it as in the other *Vertebrae*, out of which there are several lesser Perforations for the Egress of the Nerves.

The Rump-bones are in Number eighteen, and are joined to each other by an intervening Cartilage, or Gristle; but so loosely, that a Horse can move his Tail which way he pleases; these have no Hollowness in them, only the uppermost has a small Cavity that receives the Process from the last Bone above describ'd; they are soft and spongy, and therefore the better adapted to Motion, as they are also from their Make, growing gradually less, until they end in a small pointed Cartilage.

## S E C T. VII.

*Of the Offa Innominata, divided into the Hip, Haunch, and Share-Bones.*

The *Offa Innominata* are seated on the Sides of the *Os Sacrum*. The first is called the *Os Ilium*, *Os Ilium*, because the Gut *Ilium* lies under it; it is the uppermost and broadest, and is joined to the *Os Sacrum* by a true Suture; it is somewhat semicircular, being convex and uneven on its outside, which is called its *Dorsum*, or Back and Concave, and even on its internal side, which is called its *Costa*; and that Part, by which it is joined to the upper *Vertebrae* of the *Os Sacrum*, is called its *Spine*, or Edge.

Its *Spine* is, in many Places, rough and uneven, there being several Muscles that take their Origin from it, as also from its *Dorsum*, or Back-part, which is in like manner accommodated for the same purpose.

The second is called the *Os Pubis*, or Share-bone, *Os Pubis*, which forms the inferior and fore Part of the *Offa Innominata*; it is joined to its Fellow by an intervening Cartilage, and forms the fore Part of that Cavity, which, in Humane Bodies, is called the *Pelvis*, or Basin. It is perforated with a very large Hole, and on its hinder, and inner Side, has



two Proceſſes, from whence the cavernous Bodies of the Yard, and ſome Muſcles, take their Original.

*The Iſchium  
or Coxendix.*

The third is the Inferior and Poſterior, called the *Iſchium*, or *Coxendix*. It has a large Cavity, which receives the Head of the Thigh-bone. This Cavity has its Circumference tip'd with a Cartilage, call'd its *Supercilium*, or Brow, where there are ſeveral *Sinus's* and *Protuberances*, ordain'd partly for the Production of Muſcles, and partly for Ligaments.

In all young Animals theſe may be divided into ſeveral Bones; but in ſuch as are old, the Cartilages, by which they were at firſt only join'd, change their Nature and become bony, by which means they grow united and make but one Bone.

### S E C T. VIII.

*Of the Bones of the Thighs, hinder Legs and Feet.*

*The Thigh-  
bone.*

The Thigh-bone is that which reaches from the Hip to the Stifle; it is long and round, and, in ſome Parts, a little convex, its upper Part is made up of a large Head and Neck, with two Proceſſes, and below it determines into a Head, which has two Productions with a Cavity between them.

Its upper Head is round and ſomewhat longiſh, that it may the better fill up the *Acetabulum*, or Cup, which of itſelf is deep, but the more ſo as it is incompaſs'd with a Cartilage. There is alſo a thin Cartilage which covers the round Head of this Bone, that its Motion may be ſlip and eaſy within the Cup, and becauſe of the great Weight which the Thigh ſuſtains; it is therefore ty'd by two ſtrong Ligaments, one of which is round, ariſing from the inſide of the *Acetabulum*, near its Bottom, and implanted into a little *Sinus* on the upper and fore Part of the ſaid Head of the Thigh-bone, and the other proceeding from the Edge of the *Acetabulum*, by the Aſſiſtance of a membranous Subſtance, incloſes the whole Articulation.

*The*



The slender Part, under the Head of the Thigh-bone, is called its Neck; it is pretty long and oblique, and is accounted a Process of the Bone. There arise, at the lower End of the Neck, two other Processes, which go by the Name of the greater and lesser *Trochanters*. The uppermost, or larger Process, is rough, because of the Insertion of some Muscles into it. The undermost is also somewhat uneven, especially towards its Root, where the *Vastus Internus* rises. A late Anatomist has observ'd that these Protuberances encrease mightily the Force of the Muscles, by removing not only their Insertions, but likewise their Directions from the Centre of Motion.

The Thigh-bone below its Middle becomes thicker, its lower End terminating in an ample and broad Head: This Head is form'd into two Processes, betwixt which there is a large Space that receives a Protuberance of the Head of the Leg-bone. The outside of these two Processes is rough, but their inside is smooth, being covered with a Cartilage for the more easy Motion of the Joint. From them proceed some of the Muscles that move the Leg, and into them are inserted some of those that move the Thigh. Their Sides are full of small Holes, from whence arise the Ligaments that strengthen the *Patella*, or Stifle.

In the Middle, between the two Heads, there are two Cavities, the foremost of which receives the Protuberation of the Stifle-bone, being covered with a Gristle for that purpose. The other, which is deeper, as also rough and unequal, receives the Protuberation of the Leg-bone. Besides these, there is a Cavity on the outside of the outer Head, and another on the inside of the inner Head, through both which the Tendons of several Muscles of the Leg descend.

Where the lower End of the Thigh-bone is joined to the upper End of the Leg-bone, on the fore-side is placed a small Bone somewhat round, called the *Patella*, or Stifle-pan; it is plain without, but on its inside it is a little convex, having a Ridge which falls between the Juncture of the

The *Patella*  
or Stifle-  
pan.



two Bones; its inside is covered with a Gristle, and its outside with the broad Tendons of some of those Muscles that extend the Leg, which keep it firm in its Place, by adhering closely to it. This Bone not only strengthens the Articulation of the Thigh and Leg, but also serves as a Pulley for the Tendons of the Muscles which pass over it, and facilitate their Action by removing their Direction from the Center of Motion.

The *Tibia*,  
or Leg-bone.

The *Tibia*, or Leg-bone, to which the Thigh-bone is articulated, comes the next to be describ'd. In a Horse it is very different from what it is in Men, being long and round, and not triangular, as in the latter; its upper Part is much broader and thicker than its lower, and both receives and is received by the Thigh-bone, having two Cavities, and betwixt them a Prominence, which is also covered with a Cartilage, as all the other Appendages of the Joints are. Within the Cavities of this Joint there is always to be found an unctuous, or oily Matter, which is separated to further the Motion thereof, by keeping it moist and slippery. Its lower Head is round, and likewise covered with a Gristle, to facilitate the Motion of the Instep.

This Bone has several Sinus's and Appendages, as well as the Thigh-bone, not only for the Passage of the Tendons of some Muscles, but also to give rise to others which move the Foot; and has likewise a considerable Bore, which reaches from the upper to the lower Appendage, and is filled with Marrow to keep it moist, and preserve it from becoming too brittle.

The small  
Bones of the  
Hock.

The Bones of the Hock are in Number the same with those in the Knee, and are likewise disposed in two Ranks, viz. three in the first Rank, and four in the undermost. They are also articulated with the Instep, as the others are with the Shank, only that they are seated in the bending of the Joint. These Bones are of use to hinder a Horse from falling upon his Hams, when he raises himself upwards, and goes upon his Haunches; and are also like a Spring to that Joint, by which he



he recovers himself in all Actions where the hind Legs are chiefly concern'd.

The Instep-bone, to which these small Bones The Instep. are articulated, is made up of three Bones, which adhere so closely together that they can hardly be separated or distinguish'd, until the *Periosteum* is very clean scraped off; and are much the same as those of the Shank already describ'd. The Pasterns and Coffin-bone, &c. agreeing also, in every Respect, with those of the fore Foot, I shall therefore omit mentioning them in this Place. But before I leave this Subject, it will, no doubt, be expected I should take some Notice of the Hoofs, they being also a hard Substance, and a very great Defence to a Horse's Foot.

The Hoofs of a Horse are those Parts which The Hoofs, answer to the Nails in humane Bodies, and are no other than a Bundle of Husks, which cover and sheath the *Papillæ Pyramidales* of the Skin, on the Extremities of the Feet, which dry, harden, and lie close one upon another. They are of a middle Nature between Bones and Gristles, that they may not splinter and break because of their Hardness, and at the same time be able to bear and support so great a Burden without much Damage, and are without Sense, that they may endure travelling among Stones and rough Ways. They adhere pretty firmly to the Parts included within them, and are fastned to the Coffin-bone by a Ligament that proceeds from their Root, which is also, in some Measure, encompass'd with the Skin.

Underneath the Hoofs there are many Twigs of Nerves, and Tendons, and Muscles, which take their Course quite to the Soal of the Foot. When these are prick'd or bruis'd, they occasion exquisite Pain. But of this when we come to treat of the Diseases incident to the Feet.



T A B. VII. Represents the Skeleton of a Horse.

A A. The Shoulder-blade.

B. The Breast-bone.

C C. The Shoulder-bone.

D D D D. The Bones of both fore and hind Legs.

E E E E. The small Ranges of Bones which make the Knee and Hock.

F F. The Shank-bones.

f f. The Instep-bones.

G G G G. The Bodkin-like, or Splent-bones.

H H H H. The great Pasterns.

I I I I. The little Pasterns.

K K K K. The Coffin-bones.

L L L L. The small triangular Bones that adhere to the upper End of the great Pasterns,

M M. The Os Ilium, or Haunch-bone.

N. The Coxendix, or Hip-bone.

O O. The Os Pubis, or Share-bone.

P P. The Thigh-bones.

Q Q. The Patella, or Stifle-pan.

R R R, &c. The Cartilages at the End of the Ribs.

S S S, &c. The seventeen Ribs.

T T T, &c. That Part of the Ribs where they are articulated into the Vertebrae of the Chest.

V. The Os Hyoides, or Bone of the Tongue.

W. The lower Jaw,

X. The upper Jaw.

Y. The Noll-bone.

From I to 17 are the seventeen Vertebrae of the Chest.

From I to 7 the seven Vertebrae of the Loins.

From I to 6 the six Processes of the Os Sacrum.

From the Cypher I to 18 are represented the eighteen Bones of the Rump or Dock.

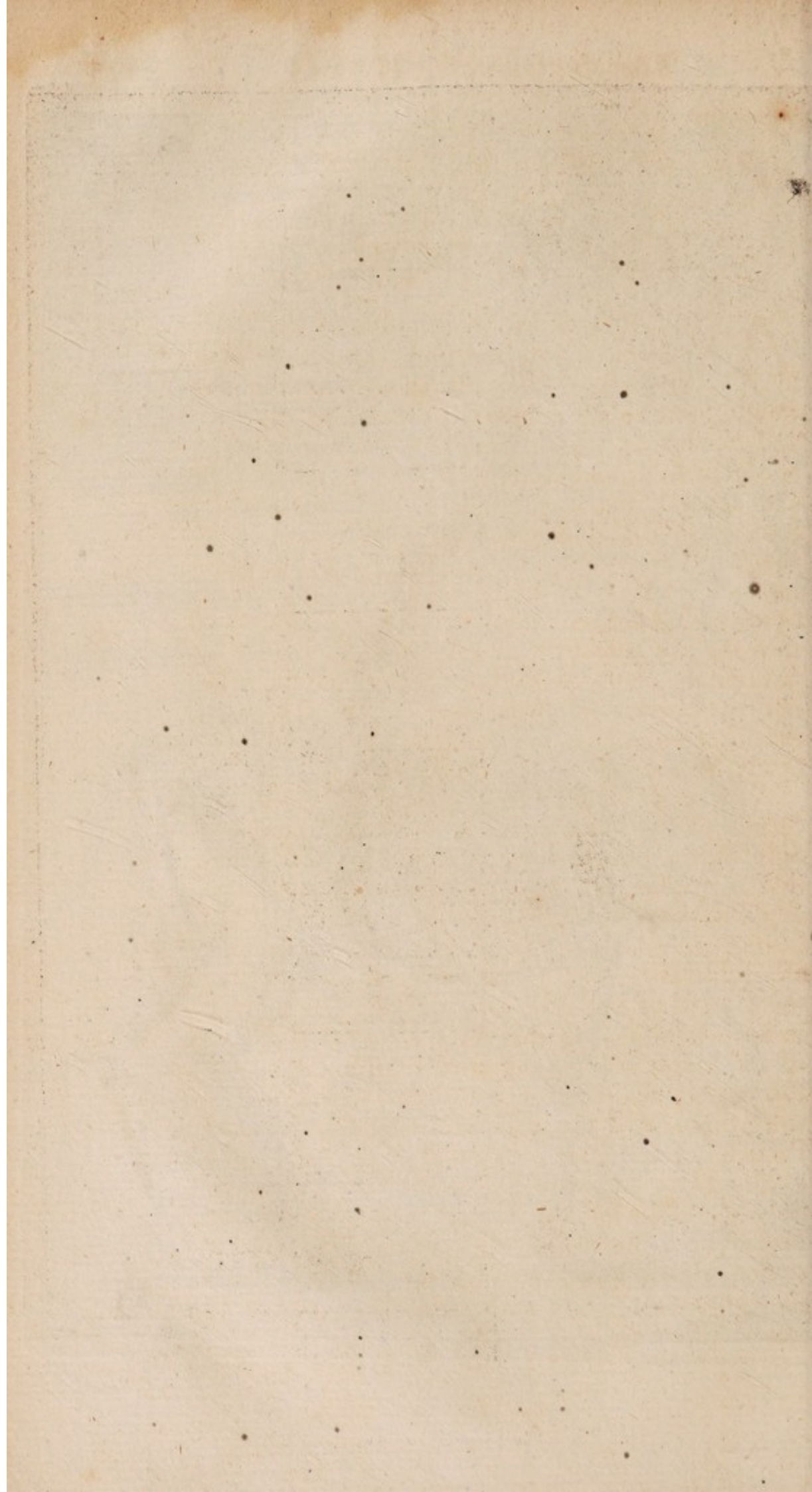
I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII. Shew the seven Vertebrae, or Rack-bones of the Neck,















## The Appendix.

**A**FTER a short Description of the Parts Concerning the Blood-Vessels and Circulation of the Blood, which compose and make up the Body of a Horse, it cannot be thought unnecessary to add some things in general, concerning the Way and Manner by which an animal Body is sustain'd and nourish'd, and thereby render'd fit to perform the several Functions of Life. I shall therefore sum up this Abridgment with a brief Account of the *Circulation* of the Blood, and its Distribution into all Parts of the Body. And, in order thereunto, I shall not only study Brevity, but endeavour to make the Discourse as easy and intelligible as possible, beginning with the Aliment, and throughout the whole following the Order of Nature, that those who have not had the Opportunities of Study may reap some Benefit by it.

As soon as an Animal gathers in his Food, the The Chyle Glands of the Mouth pour forth their Liquor, not only that it may be the more easily chew'd, but that it may be thereby render'd soft, and more readily pass thro' the Gullet into the Stomach. When it has arriv'd there, several Instruments become assistful to Digestion. The Juices which flow from the Glands of the Stomach, and the Drink, help to keep it moist; so that by the continual Action of its Sides, which, by virtue of its muscular Fibres perpetually rub one against another, and by the Assistance of the inclosed Air, all the Parts and Particles of the Food are greatly separated. The grosser Parts are carry'd downwards by the peristaltick Motion of the Guts, the Pressure of the Midriff and Muscles of the lower Belly, and are voided at the Fundament, while the finer Parts constitute that white milky Substance which we call Chyle.



Its Passage  
into the  
small Guts.

The Chyle being thus prepar'd in the Stomach, passes by degrees out at its lower Orifice into the small Guts, and is, by the same Powers, squeez'd into the small and minute Orifices of the *lacteal* or milky Veins, which, as has been observ'd in another Place, arise from all Parts of the said Guts, by fine *Capillary*, or Hair-like Tubes: And altho' these Tubes are so small, that they cannot be perceived but in Animals open'd alive immediately after eating, at which time they are full of Chyle; yet every one of them imbibe and drink up part of the refined Aliment; and as they run from the Sides of the Guts to the Glands in the Mesentery, they unite and form larger Branches, and are called the *lacteal* Vessels of the first kind. These Extremities of the *Lacteals* having Communication with the small capillary Arteries of the Guts, receive a thin *Lympha*, which not only dilutes the Chyle and helps to drive it forwards, but also washes the *Lacteals* and Kernels, that they may not fur and be stop'd up by its staying in them upon fasting.

The Lacteals.

There are other *Lacteals* which are larger, and are called *Venæ Lactææ Secundi Generis*, or the *Lacteals* of the second Kind: These receive the Chyle that was discharg'd by the first into the vesicular Kernels of the Mesentery, and carry it immediately into its common Receptacle.

The Lymphatics, which arise from most of the Intestines of the lower Belly, and from the lower extreme Parts, empty their Liquor into that Receptacle, which, being mix'd with it, makes its Parts still more fine and fit to be united with the Blood; and as the Chyle leaves its Receptacle, and ascends the thoracick Duct, the other Lymphatics, which arise from the Parts contain'd in the Chest, empty themselves into that Duct, and those which come from the Head, Neck, and Arms, discharge their Contents into the Jugular and Subclavian Veins, by which it becomes yet more diluted and perfect as it enters into the Mass of Blood.

The *Lacteals* and thoracick Duct have Valves which open for the Passage of the Chyle, but shut them-



themselves so as to hinder its return back again; and the thoracick Duct being plac'd behind the great Artery, receives a new Impetus by its Pulsation, which also forwards the Ascent of the Chyle. The Lymphducts contract themselves at unequal Distances, and have also their little Flood-gates, which permit their Liquor to take its Course towards the Chyle Vessels, but hinder its coming back the same Way, by all which means the animal Body can never be depriv'd of its Nourishment, but in case of Sickness or Want.

The thoracick Duct and Laeteals have Valves to hinder the return of the Chyle.

The Chyle being prepar'd in the Stomach and small Guts, as has been observ'd, and being also further refin'd, by the Commixture of the *Lympha*, in its Passage thro' the Laeteals and thoracick Duct, is convey'd by that Canal to the left subclavian Vein, where it opens itself at several Orifices, and mixing with the Blood, is carry'd directly to the right Ventricle of the Heart, and is no further to be trac'd under the Name of Chyle, but henceforth becomes a Part of the Blood.

Its Entrance into the Blood.

Now that all the Blood takes a circular Course thro' the Heart, is an Opinion so generally received, that I need say nothing about it, but proceed to shew the Way and Manner by which that is performed.

The ascending and descending Trunks of the *Cava* unite opposite to the Heart, and open into its right *Auricle*, or Ear; and at that Place where they enter there is a small Protuberance made by their Coats on the inside, like an *Isthmus*, which hinders the Blood of either Trunk from rushing against the other, but directs both into the Ear. The right Ear receives in its *Diastole*, that is, when it is distended, all the Blood from both Branches of the *Cava*, which it empties by its *Systole* into the right Ventricle of the Heart, which at the same time is in its *Diastole*. The right Ventricle in its *Systole* presently empties itself into the Pulmonary Artery, or that of the Lungs, for it cannot return back again into the Ear, because of the *Valvula Tricuspidis*, as that which is once received into the Ear cannot return into the *Cava*, because

The Circulation of the Blood thro' the Heart, &c.



of the tendinous Circle about its Mouth, which contracts itself as often as the is Ear filled. As soon as the Blood has taken its Progress through all Parts of the Lungs in the *Pulmonary* Artery it is received from its Capillary Branches into those of the *Pulmonary* Vein, and is conveyed by it back again into the left Ear of the Heart, which, by its Contraction, thrusts the Blood into the left Ventricle, then in its *Diastole*, and when that is contracted, it is thrust out into the *Aorta*; for it cannot come back again into the Ear, because of the *Valvulae Mitrales*.

The *Aorta*.

Its Distribu-  
tion into all  
Parts.

The *Aorta* having received the Blood from the left Ventricle, sends out two small Branches called the *Coronariae*, which go to the Heart, and then forming a small Arch, by which the Force of the Blood is somewhat abated, in its Expulsion it is divided into the *Aorta* ascending and descending.

The *Subcla-  
vian* Arter-  
ies.

The ascending Trunk climbing up by the Wind-pipe to the Top of the Breast, sends forth two Branches, called the *Subclavian*, which run under the Channel-Bones on each side. These send forth several other Branches, both from their upper and under side: From their upper side spring those Arteries, which, in Men, are called the *Cervical*, being partly spent on the Muscles of the Neck and Breast, and partly on the *Glandulae Thyroides*. Out of their lower side proceed the superior *Intercostals*, which passing through the Chest, send forth several Branches to the Arms in Humane Bodies, and to the Fore-legs in brute Creatures.

The *Carotid*  
Arteries.

Where the *Subclavians* go off from the great Artery, on each side there arises two other principal Branches, which ascend upwards towards the Head, and are called the *Carotid* Arteries: These are spent chiefly on the Brain, forming there the *Rete Mirabile* and *Plexus Choroïdes*, &c. but as they ascend, they detach several Branches to the Wind-pipe, *Larynx*, some to the Tongue and lower Jaw, and others to the external Parts of the Head. By these four principal Branches, to wit, the *Subclavian* and *Carotids*, the whole Head and Neck, as also the external



external Parts of the Chest and Fore-legs, are supplied with Nourishment.

The descending *Aorta*, as it goes down towards the Midriff, sends forth the inferior *Intercostals* and the *Bronchial Artery*, which accompany the Branches of the Wind-pipe in the Lungs; and when it arrives at the Midriff, it detaches those called the *Phrenick Arteries*, which are dispersed through the Midriff and *Mediastinum*. After it has passed through the Midriff, it marches downwards as far as the last *Vertebra* of the Loins, but by the way sends off several Branches to the Stomach and other Intestines, as the *Celiac*, the *Splenick* and the upper *Mesenterick*; after these spring forth the emulgent Arteries one on each side, which go to the Kidneys; and below these from the main Trunk also arise the *Spermaticks*, which go to the *Testicles* and *Ovaria*, &c. then the lower *Mesentericks* communicating with the upper, supply the whole Mesentery.

The descending Trunk.

Its Distribution.

As soon as the Trunk of the great Artery has reach'd the Top of the *Os sacrum*, it divides itself into two equal Branches, called the *Iliacks*, which are again subdivided into the External and Internal. From the Internal proceed those called *Musculæ*, which are bestowed on the *Psoas* and Muscles of the Buttocks; as also the *Hypogastricks*, which run to the straight Gut, the *Matrix* and Bladder, the *Prostates* and *Yard*, and to all the other Parts contain'd within the *Pelvis*. From the External *Iliacks* arise first the *Epigastrick Arteries*, which turning forwards, creep along the outside of the Rim of the Belly, as far as the Navel, where they meet the Mammary. The next are those called the *Pudenda*, which go to the Privities of both Sexes. Afterwards the *Iliack Branches* go to the Thighs, and are then called the *Crural Arteries*, supplying the hind Legs and Feet with many considerable Branches.

This is the Order and Distribution of the principal Arteries of almost all Animals, each of which Arteries are subdivided into others, and these again into others, till at last the whole Body is overspread with most minute Capillary or Hair-like Arteries,



which frequently communicate one with another; so that when any small Artery is obstructed, the Blood is brought by the communicating Branches to the Parts below the Obstruction, which must otherwise have been deprived of its Nourishment. Nature has observed the same Oeconomy in the Distribution of the Veins, that in case any Vein should be obstructed, the Blood might not stagnate, but be also return'd by other communicating Branches.

The Arteries very strong, and endu'd with a Spring.

But before I proceed to an Account of the Veins, I shall observe further concerning the Arteries, that as it is their peculiar Province to carry the Blood from the Heart, and distribute it into all Parts of the Body, they are perfectly fitted for that purpose by their Structure: For an Artery being composed of three Coats, the middlemost very strong, and endued with Elasticity by Virtue of the Spiral Direction of its Fibres, it is thereby enabled to bear the frequent Sallies of the Blood in its Expulsion from the Heart; and lest these Fibres should separate, upon any violent Impulse, the innermost Coat, though a fine transparent Membrane, yet it is wove so close, as to be able to preserve the middlemost, and keep the Blood within its proper Channels.

The Coats of the Veins a Continuation of those of the Arteries.

It is moreover to be observed, as the Arteries are conical Channels, and grow gradually smaller, so their Coats grow proportionably thinner. And the Coats of the Veins seem, according to the Opinion of the most modern Anatomists, to be only a Continuation of the Coats of the capillary Arteries reflected back again towards the Heart. But altho' the Coats of the Veins be the same with those of the Arteries, yet it is to be taken Notice of, that the Muscular Coat of all the Veins are as thin as in the Capillary Arteries; the Pressure of the Blood against the sides of the Veins being much weaker than that against the sides of the Arteries, and therefore not requiring its Channels to be so thick and strong.

The Veins are not endued with Pulsation, as the Arteries, because the Blood falls into them with

a con-



a continued Stream from the Capillary Arteries, which, by reason of their Smallness, have only a very weak, or scarcely any Motion; and then as it advances towards the Heart, it moves from a narrow Channel to a wider; and therefore its Motion would have been extremely languid and slow, had not Nature contriv'd several Helps to promote its Passage. For that Reason, as it is the Office of the Veins to return and carry back all the Blood to the Heart, there is to be seen in most of them (especially in such as have their Direction upwards) several Valves at convenient Distances, sometimes one, and sometimes more, like so many half Thimbles stuck to their Side with their Mouths towards the Heart; and as the Blood moves that way, they are pressed close to the Sides of the Vein; but if it should fall back, it must fill the Valves, and stop up the Channel that no Blood can repass them. And besides these Valves, it is also observable, that in many Places where there is a Branch of a Vein, there is an Artery lies under it, which, by its continual Pulsation, helps to forward the venal Blood towards the Heart; so that albeit the Blood moves from a narrow Channel into a wider, as has been observed, and its Motion is in many Places directly upwards, yet nothing can happen in a natural Way to retard its Progress.

The Veins  
have Valves.

But I shall detain the Reader no longer with the Difference between the Veins and Arteries, believing what has been already said sufficient to give any one a Notion of their several Offices, I shall therefore proceed to give some Account of the Order and Distribution of the Veins as they correspond with the Arteries.

As the great Artery receives the Blood from the Heart, and distributes it from thence into all Parts of the Body, so the *Cava*, like a main River, receives into it the Blood which is convey'd from all Parts of the Body, proceeding at first from Vessels infinitely small, and afterwards uniting in large Branches, which empty themselves into its superior and

The *Cava*.



and inferior Trunks at proper and convenient Distances.

The descending  
*Cava.*

The superior, or descending *Cava*, receives first the Coronary Vein from the Heart near that Place where it opens into the Ear. As soon as it pierces the *Pericardium*, it receives the *Vena sine pari*, which is made by the Union of the Veins of the Ribs on each side.

Its Distribution.

The *Subclavian* and *Jugular* Veins are pretty large Vessels, which answer to the *Subclavian* and *Carotid* Arteries, and are the next of any Note that open into the descending *Cava*. The *Jugulars* are divided into the External and Internal; the External is that large Vein which runs along the outside of the Neck, called in a Horse the Neck-Vein, and is most commonly opened when Blooding is required. This Vein receives and carries back that Portion of the Blood, which comes from all the external Parts of the Head and Face, viz. from the Eye-veins, the Temple-veins, and those of the Nose and Lips. Into the Internal *Jugulars* open all those Veins which lie within the Bars of the Mouth and under the Tongue, and all the other Branches which communicate with those of the Brain.

The *Subclavian* Veins, viz. the two large Branches which pass under the Channel-bones, not only receive a great Part of the Blood which comes from the Chest, but likewise have all those Veins open into them which run along the outward Part of the Breast, Fore-legs and Feet, such as the Breast-veins that run between the Fore-legs, which Farriers sometimes open in Fevers, &c. the Plate-veins, the Shank-veins and Shackle-veins, as also the Veins of the Cornet and Toe, which are usually opened in Diseases of the Legs and Feet.

The ascending  
*Cava.*

The *Cava ascendens*, or the great ascending Vein, which answers to the great descending Artery, receives also all those Branches of Veins which return the Blood from most Parts of the lower Belly, viz. the *Mesenteria* from the Mesentery, the *Portæ* from the Liver, the *Emulgents* from the Kidneys, the *Spermatick* Veins from the Parts of Generation



tion in both Sexes. And after it divides itself, as the Artery, into the external and internal *Iliacks*, it receives several Branches. Into the internal open the *Hypogastricks*, by which the Blood is returned from the *Matrix*, the Bladder and freight Gut; and into the external open the *Epigastricks*, with Blood from the *Peritoneum* and the external Parts of the lower Belly; and into the *Epigastricks* open the *Crurals*, which receive all the Blood that flows from the extreme Parts; for into them open those Veins, improperly called by Farriers the *Kidney-veins*; as also the *Spavin-veins*, the *Flank* and *Spur-veins*, with that of the Rump, called the *Tail-vein*.

Its Distribution.

These things being premised, it will be easy for any one to form an Idea of the Distribution of the Blood into all Parts of the Body; especially if it be further considered, that the Vessels in which the Blood flows, are divided and subdivided into an infinite Number of Branches; and that even all the Parts of the Body, whether those that are hard, or those that are denominated soft Parts, seem to be no other than so many infinitely small Tubes variously modify'd and combin'd together; for by this means the whole Body is fill'd with Blood and other nutritious Juices, and receives its Nourishment from Blood, as the Blood itself is recruited and repaired by the Aliment. And from the same Consideration it is also evident, that no animal Body can be sustained without the Requisites of Food and Rest, by reason the Structure of all Animal Bodies is of this sort; that is to say, all are made up of Fibres, and these Fibres are again made up of those that are less, and so on in *infinitum*. They must therefore, because of the Infinity of Pores and *Interstices* that are in them, require constant Supplies, as there are continually some Dregs and Excrements exhaling through them.

The Nutrition of the Parts.

But this will appear still more evident, when we consider, besides the *Effluvia* that go off insensibly in this manner through the Pores and *Interstices* of the Body, that most of the Glands are continually

Of insensible Transpiration.



tinually separating some Part of the excrementitious Matter from the Blood; though all that is discharged by the Mouth and Nose, by Urine and Dung, and by Sweat, or any other sensible Way whatsoever, does not near amount to the Discharge that is made thro' the Pores by insensible Transpiration. This is so palpable a Truth, and has been so well proved by the Experiments of *Sanctorius*, that there needs be nothing further said about it. And therefore we may conclude, that since the Bodies of all Animals are thus compounded and made up of Matter which is full of Pores and *Interstices*, and maintained by Juices, which are again capable of being dissipated and wasted through those Pores, there must be continual Supplies of Food to maintain those Bodies in an uniform State.

Now it is plain, that all Bodies suffer a Dissipation and Waste, if the Quantity of the Aliment be abated: For in such a Case we observe any Creature grow lean and emaciate. It is also evident, that all such suffer by Exercise, by hard Labour, by Want of Rest, when it is the stated time of Sleep; and by many other Ways not necessary to be mentioned. And therefore all Creatures are under an indispensable Necessity both of feeding, and taking suitable Rest, to make up the Waste and Decays of Nature; for as often as there is a great Dissipation by Labour, or by any other Way, the small *Fibrillæ* are thereby abraded and wore by the quick Motion the Blood and Spirits were in during that Exercise; or even, if the Body was not in Exercise, it will suffer by the constant Activity of the Spirits themselves; so that a stated Time of Rest must also be necessary for all Bodies, as well as Food: For when the Body is at rest, the Spirits are, as it were, lull'd and laid asleep; so that the Blood acquires, during that time, a more uniform and gentle Motion, and is more equally distributed into all Parts, and thereby fills up all the vacant Spaces that are made during the Time of Exercise, &c.

But



But it may be expected, before I put an End to this Discourse, that I should say somewhat more particularly concerning Secretion; but I shall only observe in general, that it will be necessary to consider, that the Blood, examin'd Chymically, is found to consist only of the following Principles, viz. Volatile Salt and Spirit, some Phlegm and Sulphur, and a little Earth, but little or no fix'd Salt. Now every one, who is the least acquainted with Chymistry, must be sensible how many different sort of Liquors may be form'd out of a few Principles variously combin'd together: So that, although the Blood in itself simply consists only of these above-mention'd, and to the Eye seems only to be made up of its red and serous Parts; yet, according to the latest Observations, there are near thirty several Liquors separated from it; all which is owing to the various Structure of the Glands, some of which are so small, and so variously wound up, and their Vessels drawn out into such an extraordinary Length, that nothing but the most minute and spirituous Particles of the Blood can pass through them; and doubtless of such a Structure is the cortical Part of the Brain, by which the Animal Spirits are discern'd. Others again are more wide, and separate chiefly Excrements. But I shall not enter upon this Subject, seeing those who have any Curiosity that way, may be fully satisfy'd by perusing several Books that have been professedly writ on that Subject.

*The End of the Anatomy of a Horse.*



These may be expected to be the first fruits of the new philosophy, and I think it is not unreasonable to suppose that the new philosophy will be able to give us a more complete and accurate knowledge of the human mind than we at present possess. The new philosophy is not a mere speculation, but a science which is founded on the facts of human nature, and which is able to explain the facts of human nature in a more complete and accurate manner than we at present are able to do. The new philosophy is not a mere speculation, but a science which is founded on the facts of human nature, and which is able to explain the facts of human nature in a more complete and accurate manner than we at present are able to do.

The Mind of the Human Being

The mind of the human being is a subject which has long attracted the attention of philosophers, and which is still one of the most important and interesting subjects in the philosophy of the human mind. The mind of the human being is a subject which has long attracted the attention of philosophers, and which is still one of the most important and interesting subjects in the philosophy of the human mind.



T H E  
F A R R I E R S  
N E W   G U I D E .

C O N T A I N I N G  
An exact and perfect Account  
of all the Diseases incident to

H O R S E S .

W I T H  
The Method of C U R E , &c.

---



---

L O N D O N :

Printed for W I L L I A M T A Y L O R at the  
*Ship in Pater-noster-row.*   M D C C X X .

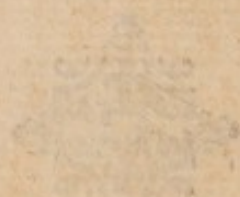


THE  
FARRIER'S  
NEW GUIDE

CONTAINING  
An exact and perfect Account  
of all the Diseases incident to

HORSES.

WITH  
The Method of Curing, &c.



LONDON:  
Printed for WILLIAM TAYLOR and  
Sole in Fenchurch-street. MDCCLXX.





T H E  
F A R R I E R S  
N E W G U I D E.

---

C H A P. I.

*Of the Diseases of Horses in general, and the  
Causes thereof.*



**A**S Health consists in a due and easy Motion of the Blood, so a Disease may be properly said to be an unusual Circulation of the Blood, or when its circular Motion is augmented or diminished throughout the whole Body, or in some Part only; and thus a Creature may be properly term'd diseas'd, when its Blood flows faster than usual, or when it moves more heavily and sluggishly, or when it is irregular in its Motion, being sometimes flow and sometimes more quick. Or, Lastly, When its Progress is impeded and hindered in some particular Part of the Body only, as is common in all Swellings, &c. and therefore whatever occasions an unusual Circulation

A Disease  
defin'd.



tion of the Blood, in any of the foregoing Respects, may be accounted the Cause of a Disease.

Now the Causes which bring on Diseases, being, in a Manner, infinite, since most Accidents to which Bodies are expos'd from other Bodies, may be the Occasion of some Distemper; and likewise since Diseases may proceed from the Action of the same Body upon itself, in a Way that is either voluntary or involuntary; I shall therefore forbear all unnecessary and unprofitable Deviations, and only take Notice of those Causes which are most apparent and the most common.

The Antients being unacquainted with the true Structure and Oeconomy of Animal Bodies, ascrib'd a great deal to those Qualities which they believ'd to be in all Bodies proceeding from the four Elements, as also to the Errors of Feeding, Exercise and Rest, &c. which they call'd the *Non-naturals*. And our Farriers, especially *Markham* and *De Grey*, in Imitation of them, have pulled their Readers with a sort of Philosophy, which neither themselves understood, nor will ever be of any Use to Posterity. The one begins with Generation and Corruption, the other with the Formation of Animal Bodies out of the four Elements, viz. *Fire, Air, Water and Earth*, and subsequent to them to be made up of four Humours, viz. *Blood, Phlegm, Choler and Melancholy*; and accordingly their Bodies were of different Temperaments, hot and dry, cold and moist, as this or that Humor was predominant. Nay, *Markham* has refin'd so far on these Notions, as to judge by a Horse's Colour and Complexion, which of all the Elements had the ascendant in him; and, consequently, whether he is of a cholerick, melancholy, or phlegmatick Disposition.

I shall very readily own, that some of these Marks, which that Author has taken Notice of, may oftentimes denote the Faults and Imperfections of Horses; but that they are reducible to such Temperaments and Humours, as he has ascrib'd to them, is a meer Dream, and, doubtless, may have been the Death of some Thousands of Horses



Horses in this Kingdom, since it is reasonable to suppose that most of the *English* Farriers, building upon him, guess at the inward Distempers of Horses more from their Colour and Complexion, than from any other Signs whatsoever.

All that can be justly observ'd in Horses, as to their Temperaments, is the two Extrems of too much Fire or too little, the rest inclining more or less to the one or to the other. When a Horse has too much Fire, and is therefore untractable and unmanageable (if that Disposition is not itself a Disease) it exposes him to a great many Accidents, which would be needless to name; besides, that by the continual Restlessness of his Spirits, and the constant Hurry of his Blood, he must therefore be subject to several Distempers, more particularly to Fevers, and oftentimes those of the worst kind. If, on the other Hand, a Horse be of a dull, sluggish Disposition, he must also be exposed to Distempers that are peculiar to a slow and languid Blood; and the nearer any Horse approaches to either of these Temperaments, he is the more obnoxious to their Distempers.

What to be  
observ'd  
concerning  
the Tempe-  
rament of  
Horses.

Horses may be also said to be of different Temperaments at different Periods of their Life; and therefore a young Horse being full of Blood, and his solid Parts as yet of a loose Texture, must be more subject to Diseases, than one who is arriv'd at his Prime; and those Diseases must be of worse Consequence to him, if not carefully look'd to. And likewise a Horse who is grown old, tho' such an one is not so apt to be diseased as a Young Horse, yet their Diseases more frequently end in Death, or prove irrecoverable, because the Blood at that time grows languid, and loses the Vigour that is peculiar to Youth and the middle Age, which must needs deprive them of the Benefits and Assistances of Nature. But a Horse in his Prime having then all his Parts well conform'd, and his Blood in its best State, neither too luxuriant nor too much depauperated; and likewise the Quantity of Blood being in that Age nearly adjusted to the Capacity of the Vessels in which it flows; he is therefore



neither apt to be diseased, nor are his Diseases apt to be of long Continuance.

But the Farrier ought carefully to take Notice, that albeit these Observations concerning Temperaments may, for the most part, be very just, yet it is undeniable that some are more robust and hardy, while but Colts, than others are at the Prime of their Age; and some retain a great deal of their Vigour, even when they are grown old, and aseasily get over any Accident as Horses that are young. And likewise it is to be observed, That some Horses of a faint washy Colour sometimes prove hardy and durable; and therefore, besides all common Rules and Observations, it may be necessary to the forming a right Judgment of the Temperaments and Constitutions of Horses, to have Recourse to Examination and Trial.

After what has been said, as to Temperaments, I shall not trouble the Reader with those confused and unprofitable Speculations about Members, Powers, Actions and Operations, and the rest of those they term'd *Naturals*, but proceed to the *Nonnaturals*, which, according to the Ancients, were reckon'd six in Number, viz. Air, Meat and Drink, Sleep and Watching, Motion and Rest, Things excreted and retained, and the Affections or Motions of the Mind, and were such as hurt by Necessity; so that this Enumeration is more accurate, as apply'd to brute Creatures, than to Man, who has the Use of his Reason, and may therefore avoid several of the Accidents proceeding from them.

Nonnaturals, how they profit, or become hurtful.

Now these are said to be profitable or hurtful to all Creatures; but our Business at this time is only to take Notice of them in the latter Sense. And, first, as to Air.

The Air may be many times the Cause of Diseases; for if that be too much rarify'd, it hurts the Blood's Circulation, not being of sufficient force to help it through the Lungs; whence its Motion becomes slow, and Perspiration decreases, which leaves a Load upon the Vessels, and renders the Blood viscid and tenacious. The same Effect also

†

happens



happens from the Air's being too gross, for then the Circulation of the Blood is impeded in the Lungs by its too great Pressure and Weight upon them.

Food may also become hurtful to Horses, both as to its Quantity and Quality ; for if that be musty and raw, corrupt and unclean, it must breed Crudities, and thereby render the Chyle viscid, which will of necessity retard the Motion of the Blood ; and if it be of too hot and spirituous a Nature, it must, on the contrary, render the Blood too thin, and thereby increase its Motion too much. Immoderate feeding, be the Food never so wholesome, especially when the Horse wants Exercise, must vitiate the Blood ; for in such a Case there is no Room given for Digestion, so that a great deal of Chyle must enter into the Mass of Blood before it has been thoroughly prepared in the Stomach. The same Effects may be also produced from excessive Drinking, especially of stagnated Waters, or Waters proceeding from some sort of Minerals.

Long continued Exercise, especially when it is too violent, occasions a too great Dissipation of the Spirits ; and if a Horse's Stomach is very full, or if he be full of Blood, it brings on innumerable Disorders, as shall be observ'd, when we come to treat of the Diseases particularly. But the want of proper Exercise is equally pernicious, as it hinders Digestion, and occasions a too great Distention of all the Vessels, which causes Surfeits, and other Distempers.

A too quick Discharge of the Dung, before there is a due Separation of the Chyle from the excrementitious Parts, occasions Sicknes ; for in such a case there is ejected and thrown out the useful with the useless, whence must proceed a Refrigeration and Weakness of the Body by reason of a debilitated Circulation of the Blood. As on the other hand, when a Horse is costive, and his Excrements retain'd too long, a *Plethora*, or Over-fullness will be apt to ensue. But these are rather to be accounted Diseases than Causes, especially in brute Creatures.



Immoderate Sleep may often be the Cause of Sickness; because in Sleep the external Senses are weak, the nervous Fluid moves slowly, the Heart is seldom contracted, and the Circulation of the Blood goes on with less Briskness: Watching produces all the contrary Effects.

As for the Passions and Affections, to which *Markham* and others have ascribed Diseases, it is very certain that these Creatures have their several Affections, such as Love and Hatred, Fear and Anger, which may be accompany'd with a slow or quick Motion of the Blood, as this or that happens to be predominant; but these being seldom permanent, and of any continuance in brute Creatures, but chiefly administer to their common Instinct of Self-preservation, there cannot therefore be much attributed to them.

Besides the above-recited Causes, which are indeed the most common and ordinary, there are an infinite Number of others, which may bring on Diseases, as has been already observed; and such are all outward Accidents, as Falls, Bruises, Wounds, and the like; as also unseasonable Evacuations, and all improper Application of Remedies, which is frequently practised among Farriers for Prevention, while Horses are in a State of Health. But I shall take some Notice of this in a following Chapter, and therefore proceed to the Signs.

## C H A P. II.

### *Of the Signs of Sickness in Horses.*

Diseases in  
brute Crea-  
tures hard  
to be dis-  
tinguished.

IT is indeed very difficult to arrive at any certain Knowledge in the Diseases of brute Creatures, and therefore it is no wonder if the Farriers are mistaken in enumerating Signs, because we can only judge by outward Appearances, and not from any Insight they can give into their own Indispositions, but especially as there are many Diseases that are accompany'd with the same common Symptoms;



Symptoms; and therefore tho' we may be assured, that a Horse has a Fever or a Strangury, we cannot at the same time be certain, without a very careful Examination, whether he may not have an Inflammation in the *Pleura*, or in his Kidneys. All the Signs that these Creatures usually give in the Affections of particular Parts, is by turning their Heads towards that Part; neither is that always to be depended upon, for a Horse may turn his Head towards the right side of his Belly; and the Farrier, who chiefly takes that Indication to signify a diseased Liver, may be grossly mistaken, since a Horse very frequently gives the same Sign in a Cholick. The only way therefore to get an Insight into the Diseases of Horses, is to make a judicious Comparison of all the Signs that can be gathered in any Distemper, and by that Means the Farrier may go on to administer his Physick with some Assurance; and herein they may be very much assisted by the Remarks of the *Sieur de Solleysell*, who has been a more accurate Observer of all those Things, than any other who has wrote upon the Subject.

The first Sign that a Horse commonly gives of Sickness, is loathing his Food; this is common to all Fevers. In some Cases a Horse looks wild and haggard, and albeit at other times he was easy and tractable, he now grows disobedient and restless, will neither stand long, nor when he lies down, will he continue in that Posture, but immediately starts up again: This may, for the most part, be reckon'd a Sign of violent and excessive Pain; and, no doubt, proceeding from an Inflammation of the *Pleura* or Lungs, especially if his Heart and Flanks beat, and that he labours for Breath. Other Signs of Sickness are a dry and parched Mouth, the Tongue white and crufted over, and the Breath excessive hot. Some Signs are also exhibited which denote Sickness, but are different from the former; as when a Horse hangs his Head, has a Coldness and Dampness about his Ears, his Eyes watery, sometimes with a Mixture of Corruption, slow and dull in his Motions, being apt to stumble as often as he attempts to walk, takes no Notice of any other



Horse, or of any Person coming near him. Some Sickneſſes, as Intermittting Fevers, will produce ſome Intervals of Trembling and exceſſive Sweating ; and ſome have Symptoms compounded and made up from complicated Sickneſſes, which exhibit ſeveral of theſe Signs together.

There may be alſo divers Signs taken from the Dung and Urine of a Horſe, but thoſe from the Urine are the moſt certain : When a Horſe in Sickneſs ſtales clear, and when that is preſerved, if there be no Sediment in it, it prognostiſicates a growing Diſtemper ; but when the Urine turns of a reddiſh or yellowiſh Colour, and has either a Cloud ſwimming in it, which is not black and earthy, or a Sediment falling to the Bottom, and begins to have a rank Smell, it is then a Sign the Diſtemper begins to break : But when the Cloud is of an earthy or black Colour, and coheres in a Body without parting, it is a Sign the Diſeaſe will prove mortal. It may be further remark'd, as to Urine, if it be different at different times, ſometimes reſembling that of a ſound Horſe, and ſometimes giving Signs of Sickneſs, it then betokens a great Malignity in the Diſtemper proceeding from an Inequality in the Blood's Compoſure, which cauſes alſo an Inequality in its Motion.

There might be alſo Signs taken from the Pulse, which is plainly enough to be felt on the Temples and Fore-legs of a Horſe ; but as that Method has never as yet obtained among Farriers, I ſhall therefore paſs it over.

The *Sieur de Solleysſell* obſerves, when a Horſe piſſes without ſtriding, and without putting forth his Yard after long Sickneſs (unleſs he has been accuſtomed to do ſo in a State of Health) it is a mortal Sign ; and likewiſe that it is a no leſs fatal Prognostiſication, when the Hair of a Horſe's Skull or Tail may be eaſily plucked off. The ſame Author obſerves further, That it is alſo a dangerous Sign when a Horſe lies often down, but ſtarts up again immediately, not being able to breath freely in a lying Poſture ; and on the contrary, that it is a very promiſing Sign, when a Horſe lies quietly  
in



in the Decline of Sickneſs. But more particular Notice ſhall be taken of thoſe things when we come to treat of the Diſeaſes themſelves.

## C H A P. III.

*Of the Method of Cure.*

**W**HEN the Farrier has diligently enquired into the Nature and Cauſe of a Diſeaſe, his Buſineſs is in the next place to adminiſter ſuch things as are proper to reſtore Health; and that he may the better ſucceed therein, I ſhall lay down the following general Directions.

Fiſt of all, a particular Regard is to be had to thoſe Symptoms that are the moſt urgent, and any ways endanger Life; and therefore if the Signs diſcover a Horſe to have an Inflammation in the Lungs, or *Pleura*, which may be gueſs'd at by his being ſuddenly ſeiz'd with Difficulty of Breathing, and an Inability to continue in one Poſture; or if a Swelling ſhould ariſe on his Throat, which might hinder him from getting down his Food, or render him liable to Suffocation, ſuch Evacuations or other Means as are proper to remove thoſe Symptoms, muſt immediately be uſed, ſetting aſide all other Conſiderations of Sickneſs. And in like manner if a Horſe ſhould be ſeiz'd with a violent *Hæmorrhage* of Blood, the fiſt Intention muſt be to ſtop it; for the removing of thoſe not only preſerves Life, but in ſome Caſes puts an End to the Diſeaſe.

Regard to  
be had to  
the moſt ur-  
gent Symp-  
toms.

*Secondly*, If in any Diſtemper the Indication is taken chiefly from Crudities lodging in the Stomach and Guts, then ſuch Medicines only as clear thoſe Paſſages are to be adminiſter'd, without Regard to any other; but if this be accompany'd with any other Diſeaſe, then all the Medicines that are to be given in ſuch a caſe, muſt not be levell'd at the Diſeaſes of thoſe Parts directly, but at others in Conjunction with them.

*Thirdly*,



*Thirdly*, If the Indication is taken from the Blood, it is then to be considered, that all its Disorders depend upon its circulatory Motion being increased or diminished; and that all the Changes in the Texture and Quality of the Blood, as also in its Quantity, are attended either with a Diminution or Increase of the Blood's Velocity; and therefore if the Quantity of the Blood is augmented, Bleeding and other Evacuations are necessary; but if the Quantity thereof be diminished, then Restoratives, Rest and nourishing Food may be required: And if this last proceeds from any Error in the Stomach, causing Loss of Appetite, in such a Case those things are to be administered which create Hunger, and help Digestion. If the Texture of the Blood be chang'd, as is usual in a continued Course of Sickness, then it may be necessary, besides other Intentions, to administer such things as may correct the vitiated Mass.

*Fourthly*, When a Disease proceeds from an Increase or Diminution of some Secretion, the Cure ought, for the most part, to be perform'd by such things as enlarge the Secretions that are too sparing, and restrain such as are too liberal: And the safest Way to restrain an augmented Secretion, is by the Increase of some other Secretion. And indeed, this Method of Revulsion has been safely practised among all Physicians; and if it could be rightly understood by Farriers, it would be of the greatest Importance in their Practice.

But here it is to be remark'd, that when we speak of an augmented Secretion, we understand that as a Disease, and not as a Remedy; for sometimes a Secretion augmented becomes a Cure; and in such a Case it is not to be stop'd immediately, but rather somewhat assisted, when any ways imperfect. As for instance, if a Horse be lax, and has a Scouring upon him; when this proceeds from a Disorder of the Guts only by a Putrefaction of the Excrements too long detained, it may be very proper to administer some moderate Purge, provided it be of such a Nature as will not too much relax the intestinal Glands. But if its Cause proceeds



proceeds from an obstructed Transpiration, as is very usual, then such things as promote Sweat, and a breathing through the Pores, must be likewise administred. The like Method is to be observ'd in most other Secretions, as in Sweat, Urine, running at the Mouth and Nose, which may be often observ'd among Horses in the Decline of Sickness.

*Fifthly*, In the Cure of all Diseases Nature is the best Guide, and therefore the Farrier must diligently follow her. Whenever she finds herself oppress'd, she endeavours to throw off the Load, and tries all the nearest and properest Ways for her Relief; and it is for the Conservation of Health, or recovering it when lost, that she is so abundantly furnish'd with Drains and Out-lets, for such are most or all the Glands, by which Secretion is perform'd; but tho' Nature is to be carefully observ'd and follow'd in all her Motions, and to be assisted when her Operations are too weak and imperfect, or restrain'd when too powerful; yet she is not to be compell'd, but must herself be the Beginner, and very often the Finisher of the Work also. And therefore whenever the Practitioner finds her own Efforts fruitless, while she is endeavouring one while by one Secretion, and at other times by another, to give vent to that which oppresses her; he is not to be over forward in assisting her in her restrain'd Inclinations, but conclude with himself, that the Matter is not as yet render'd of such a due Magnitude or Smallness, as to be carried along the Canals, and discharg'd by the Vessels which are appointed for that Purpose; so that his Business is only to help her in such things as will thicken or attenuate, &c. as he shall see occasion, waiting with Patience until her more sensible Operations become permanent and lasting, and that she becomes free and easy in all her Exertions; and this Change is what Physicians call the *Crisis*, or Turn of a Distemper.

But when her Operations are too violent and powerful, if Life is thereby at Stake, as in the Instances above-mention'd, by an excessive Hemorrhage

Nature to be  
carefully ob-  
serv'd.



morrhage of Blood, or an Influx into some Part, occasioning a Suffocation; or, in Case of an augmented Secretion continuing too long, then the Rules already laid down must be follow'd. But if it happens, as may be often observ'd in imperfect *Crises*, that an Hemorrhage of Blood proceeds only from a Rupture of Vessels that are very small, or that the Blood, by reason of its abated Heat, flows but moderately; or if a Tumor arise, or an Abscess be found in any Part of the Body, by which Life is not in Danger. These are not to be prevented, but manag'd in a way that is suitable to the Nature of such Accidents.

#### C H A P. IV.

*Discovering some Errors in the Methods usually taken to prevent Diseases in Horses, with the properest Means to preserve Health.*

Phyick unnecessary to Horses while they are in Health.

**N**Othing is more frequent among Farriers, than the administering Phyick to Horses that are sound and healthful, in order to prevent their falling into Diseases; with this Notion most People, as well as they have been prepossess'd, insomuch that they have ty'd themselves up to Times and Seasons, believing a Horse can never keep sound if he is not bled at this time, purg'd at that, and at another time rowel'd; some have cordial Balls, or Drinks, which they keep as Secrets, and which they affirm will prevent all manner of Infection and Sicknefs. But I shall endeavour to shew what manifest Abuse there is in all those Things, and lay down some general Rules which may truly be of Service to the Preservation of Health.

Tho' Health, in its best Estate, is only relative, yet all Creatures may be properly said to be in Health, when they sleep, eat and digest, when they move without Pain; and all this depends upon a regular and uniform Motion of the Blood;

now



now whatever contributes to keep up that uniform and regular Motion, must be the Means to preserve Health; but it is very certain, the Means that are used in time of Sicknes, to restore that Regularity in the Blood's Motion, must be prejudicial in a State of Health, because they must effect some Change in the Animal Oeconomy, which was not wanting. Thus bleeding and purging may be of use to put a Check to a Disease, if a Horse be pletorick and full of Blood; or if a Horse has any other Signs that require Evacuation; but then it is to be consider'd that these are Diseases actually begun; and if a Horse has none of these Signs, the Effect that any such Evacuations can have upon him, must be a lessening the Quantity of his Blood, which is often of bad Consequence, because the lessening the Quantity of the Blood gives it a different Motion from what it had before.

If any one should plead that these Evacuations are made to bring a Horse into a better State of Health, and thereby to strengthen his Body, and enable him the more to resist Diseases. I answer, there is a certain State of Health which is natural and agreeable to every Horse, and consists in the Requisites above-mention'd, to wit, in a Life free from Pain, or any sensible Imperfection; and, no doubt, as among Men, one Horse may, comparatively speaking, enjoy a more perfect Degree of Health than another is capable of; and this is owing to some Difference in their Original Structure and Make, whereof we are ignorant; so that they may as well turn a black Horse white, or a white Horse black, as to pretend to make a Horse strong, who is naturally of a weak and delicate Constitution. All therefore that can be expected from tampering with Horses that are in their best Estate, is either little or no Alteration at all, if a Horse has Youth and Vigour to overcome the Shocks given to Nature by Physick, or else an Alteration for the worse, because the strongest Horse may thereby be brought into an habitual Weakness, which becomes a Disease; and a Horse that

An Objec-  
tion  
answered.

is



is weak, may become yet much weaker; and these Accidents frequently happen by such unskilful Management, tho' they are generally attributed to some other Cause.

The Cause  
of several  
Errors in the  
Practice of  
Farriers.

But what has led Farriers into those Errors, is a confused Notion many of them have of all Diseases proceeding from corrupt Blood, and therefore, as if the Blood of Horses was like Pond or Ditch-water, which gathers Mud and Filth at certain Times, they think it should be often cleansed. And because the Blood of those Creatures (as most of them are used to toil and labour) is generally of an unpleasant Aspect, they seldom or never take Blood from any Horse but they think him full of bad Humours, not considering that this may be the natural State of his Blood; and for that Reason they do not often miss telling the Owner that his Horse wants purging as well as bleeding.

Another thing which seems to have given Encouragement to those Methods, is, because some Horses have been observ'd to eat plentifully and not thrive, till after Evacuations were made pretty largely; whenever any such thing happens, there is the sign of a Disease, probably proceeding from some Obstructions in the Mesentery, or from some viscid sloughy Matter lodg'd in the first Passages, which may hinder a sufficient Quantity of Chyle entring into the Mass of Blood. But I don't mean any such, but those, who, upon full Experience, are found to be in as sound a State of Health, as they have ever been known to be in at any time, but are bled or purged, or have Cordials given them at such times as are prescrib'd in Farriers Books, or have otherwise obtain'd by Custom.

But that I may not be thought too peremptory on this Head, or to deviate too far from a Method that has been so universally receiv'd; I shall therefore lay down some few Cases wherein Bleeding, or other Evacuations, may be made, even when there are no Indications to be taken directly from Sickness; but these too are discretionary, and to be gone about with Caution; as for Instance,

if



if Bleeding be moderately and sparingly us'd, it may be of service to young Horses, especially after hard Exercise, or after a Journey in a hot Season, because either the one or the other is apt to augment the Blood's Motion too much, which, before it has any ill Tendency, may be thus remedy'd. But yet this may not be often necessary to Horses that are accusom'd to constant Exercise, as hunting, or those that travel all the Year, as Stage-Horses, or Post-Horses; but only to such as are more habituated to Ease. *Secondly*, A Horse that has been much us'd to standing in the Stable, and has but seldom Exercise, may also have a Vein opened, upon suspicion of the Blood's growing too viscid and stagnating for want of due Exercise; because, while he is thus kept, a Disease may insensibly, and by degrees, be creeping upon him, while there is yet no Indication given from sensible Signs. *Thirdly*, If a Horse has stumbled into a Pit of Water, or a deep Ditch, and has continued some time therein, tho' he does not immediately give Signs of Sicknes, yet such Accidents are a sufficient Indication both for bleeding and other Remedies, because the Adstriction of the Pores, occasion'd by the Coldness and Pressure of the Water, may cause a Fever, or a violent Cold, that may end in the Glanders, or some other fatal Distemper.

The same Cautions may be also observ'd as to purging, and that should never be gone about barely at a Venture, but when the Farrier or Owner may have some Suspicion at least, as for want of Exercise, eating unwholsome Food, or drinking bad Water, or the like, whether that proceed from Carelessness or Necessity. In these, or such like Cases, bleeding or purging may be us'd by way of Prevention; and I should the rather so far give into those Methods, with respect to Brute Creatures, because several of their Diseases may actually have some footing before they can be well discern'd. But yet as there is even in all these Cases an Indication given, at least, from foreign Causes, what has been here advanc'd, will not  
justify



justify the Conduct I am censuring, which is only administering Things at random, and which therefore often prove prejudicial.

I shall therefore venture to affirm, that unnecessary Evacuations cannot be the way to prevent Diseases in Horses, but that may be better effectuated by a due Care in their keeping.

A due Care  
in keeping  
the properest  
way to pre-  
vent Sick-  
ness.

All Evacuations lessen the Quantity of the Blood, but most immediately Bloodletting; and when that has been frequently repeated, or been taken away in a large Quantity, it often becomes languid in its Motion, by a lesser Quantity of Spirits, deriv'd from a lesser Quantity of Blood, that what remains has not Force enough from these Spirits to reach the Passages of the Skin, so as to make a Secretion there; and from hence, instead of preventing Diseases, it becomes the Cause of many. Purging has also the same Effect, tho' after a different manner, and may be of worse Consequence to Horses, as all such Evacuations act more directly against Nature, and in such a Manner, that the whole animal Frame, when the Medicines happen to be of any Strength, is discomposed by them; and thus a Horse that was in Health, is exposed to all the Injuries that can proceed from any Element. But in good and proper keeping all these Accidents are avoided, and the same thing effected.

The best way therefore to prevent Horses being diseased, is, in the first Place, to have no kind of Food given them but what is wholesom, and their Drink should be Rain-Water, or that of the running Brook, if such are to be had.

*Secondly*, The next Thing to be regarded is Exercise, especially since the Health of all Animals depend so much upon the Blood's regular Motion, for without that it is impossible but it must be apt many times to stagnate; whereas if the Body is often kept moving, the Blood is not only forc'd thro' the smallest Veins and Arteries, by the several Contractions of the Muscles, but all the little Glands and Strainers throughout the Body are thereby forc'd to discharge their several Contents,



tents, which must be a great Means to preserve Health.

*Thirdly*, The Exercise of a Horse ought to be proportion'd to his Strength; and likewise to his Feeding; for a Horse that is of a weak, delicate Make cannot bear much Exercise, neither must that be violent, but gentle. In like manner, a Horse who has but short Feeding, cannot bear so much, nor such hard Exercise as if he was kept high.

*Fourthly*, A Horse should be gently us'd when he is full, because at that Time, besides the Prejudice done him by the Weight of his Stomach, the Blood receiving from thence fresh Supplies, will be apt to cause a Plenitude and Fullness of the Vessels, which may either occasion a too great Rarefaction, or a Stagnation, especially in the Lungs, by reason of their near Communication with the Heart, and their frequent Distention with Air; and Horses that are of a large and heavy Make ought to be rid more gently at all times, than those that are light and nimble.

*Fifthly*, No Habit should be broke suddenly, but by degrees; for Instance, if a Horse has been us'd to travel, he ought to be walk'd out and rid more or less for some time thereafter; because, during the Time of Exercise, the Blood must have acquir'd a more than ordinary Appetite to Motion; and therefore it will be ready to stagnate in some remote Parts, where the Vessels are small. The same Rule is also to be observ'd with respect to Horses newly taken up from Grass, because they have been us'd both to Exercise and Air while at their Liberty in the Fields. Neither must a Horse that has been us'd to feed plentifully be suddenly reduc'd to a low Diet, because he will be apt to grow faint, and oftentimes sink in his Spirits, which may occasion very great Disorders by reason the Quantity of the Blood is of a sudden render'd too small, in proportion to the Capacity of the Vessels. And, on the contrary, a Horse that is low must be fed but gently, and brought to good Keeping by degrees.

*L*

*Sixthly*,



*Sixthly*, A due regard ought to be had to dressing, because rubbing and combing is a sort of Exercise, especially to a Horse of Metal, it promotes the Motion of the Blood in the extreme Parts, and greatly helps the cuticular Discharges; and therefore a Horse that has been us'd to good Dressing, should never go without it, lest the Pores of the Skin become suddenly obstructed, which must unavoidably cause some Disorders. But if a Horse has never been us'd to any Regularity, as to his Feeding, &c. which is the Case of some Drudges, the best way is to continue in the same want of Method with respect to them; because we often observe the bringing any such into regular Keeping at first, proves generally of ill Consequence to them; and that for several Reasons which I need not here mention.

From these general Directions the Reader may be able to form such other Rules, as may be of Use, not only to prevent Sicknefs, but may also be the Means of bringing Horses to a better State of Health, without hazarding their Constitutions with the repeated Use of Physick, as is very customary in this Kingdom, and proceeds from those Persons, who are usually intrusted with the Health of our Horses, not being acquainted with the Mechanism and Oeconomy of animal Bodies. I have been the more encourag'd to make such Observations, because some of the most judicious Farriers have been from Experience convinc'd of those Errors, and are able to call to mind many Instances of Horses they have known to be prejudic'd by an unreasonable and unnecessary Use of Physick; and methinks it would be a common Benefit to Mankind, so far as Horses are serviceable to us, if those Prepossessions could be banish'd, and all such superfluous Practice quite disus'd and laid aside.



## C H A P. V.

*Some general Rules to be observ'd in Bleeding and Purging.*

**H**AVING, in the foregoing Chapter, taken Notice of some of the Errors committed in bleeding and purging; I shall in this lay down some general Rules to be observ'd in these Operations.

And *First*, Concerning Bleeding, there is not any Operation more ready; or indeed more useful; as nothing can, in many Cases, give such immediate Relief; for by Blood-letting the Heat of the Blood; and, consequently, its Velocity, proceeding from whatever Cause, may be thereby abated; and not only its Velocity and Heat, but also its Viscidity, whether from an Acid, or from any other coagulating or thickning Matter, may in a great Measure be destroy'd; and therefore, in all Cases where the Blood is too much agitated and in motion, or where it is too much thicken'd, Blood-letting is requir'd.

But we shall lay down some of the particular Indications, which chiefly call for that Operation; and in doing thereof we shall not tie any one up to Times and Seasons, or particular Influences, which we find so much observ'd in Books of Marshalsy, and in old physical Writers; for, according to their Doctrine, some Part of the animal Body must have been diseased every Month. All the Caution, therefore, that is to be had in that Respect, is only to avoid it as much as possible in the Extremities of Heat and Cold, excepting when some urgent Necessity requires it.

Now the Signs that require Blood-letting, are first, an over Plenitude, or Fullness, which may be discovered in a Horse, because such a one will be apt to be purfive when he is put to any kind of Exercise, and his Stomach will somewhat

The Signs  
that require  
Blood-let-  
ting.



abate, in such a Case bleeding cools and refreshes a Horse wonderfully.

*Secondly*, Blood-letting is proper in the Beginning of almost all Fevers, whether simple or complicated; that is to say, whether the Fever consists simply in an Augmentation of the Blood's Motion only, or when the Blood is besides that vitiated. But care must be taken, if the Distemper takes its Origin from the want of Blood, as very often happens after large Hemorrhages, or after long scouring, or after a too plentiful Use of Evacuations, or when a Horse has been some Time in a declining Condition; in such Cases, tho' some Indications may, perhaps, require Bleeding, yet it is to be us'd sparingly.

*Thirdly*, A Horse ought to be bled for all Swellings and Impositumations, when they happen to be situated on any Part of the Body, so as to endanger a Suffocation, or any other ill Accident; but if there be none of those Appearances, and at the same time have a Tendency to Suppuration, Bleeding ought not to be perform'd, because that would be manifestly to oppose Nature, who herself is endeavouring to throw off what is hurtful to her in another way; but in Swellings of the Legs, occasion'd by the Grease, Blood-letting is not only safe in the Beginning, as it may make a Revulsion, but necessary before they are much inflam'd, or come to break; because this Distemper at first proceeds chiefly from a Stagnation of the Blood in the extream Parts, from the Smallness of the Vessels, &c. and not from any manifest Disorder in the Blood itself. But of this in its proper Place.

*Fourthly*, Bleeding is necessary in all violent Pain, whether that proceeds from an internal or external Cause, as Wounds or Bruises, and in case of inward Pains, as from an Inflammation of the Lungs and *Pleura*, or the Liver, when they can be discover'd; and then the Operation may be once or twice repeated; but in Pains of the Stomach and Guts, proceeding from slimy or viscid Matter lodg'd in them, unless the Farrier could also be assur'd



affur'd these were accompanied with Inflammation of those Parts, it is better to forbear it; because, in such a Case, if a Revulsion be made, the Blood may be too much divested of its Spirits, and Nature balk'd of her Design of expelling what she finds hurtful to her.

*Fifthly*, Blood-letting is moreover necessary in Vertigoes, and most Disorders of the Head; and in the beginning of all Colds, by which Defluxions are apt to fall on the Lungs, and Rheums into the Eyes. And here I cannot omit taking Notice of an Error in the *Sieur de Solleysel*, who forbids bleeding in Diseases of the Eyes. It is not improbable that Author may have observed some ill Consequences from this Operation, but it has been in such Cases as proceed from *Exinanition*, that is, when the State of the Blood is very low; for then that which is carried into the extreme Parts very often stagnates, from the want of a sufficient Force in the Heart to drive it forwards into those Parts; and when the succeeding Fluid has not Force enough to impel the antecedent Blood; so that if a Disease happen in the Eyes from any such Cause, the lessening the Quantity of the Blood, which is already too small, must needs occasion some very great Disorder in those Parts, if not absolute Blindness. But in all such Cases as proceed from an over-fullness, or from hard Riding, which drives the Blood faster into the outward Parts, than can be readily return'd by the small capillary Veins; or if these Disorders proceed from the Blood's being too viscid, by which means it loiters in the small Vessels of the Eyes, Blood-letting must then do very great Service, and is often practised among Horses to very good Purpose. For the same Reasons it may be useful in the Farrin, the Itch, and all Diseases of the Skin.

*Lastly*, There must be constant Care taken of the Age, Strength and Constitution of all Horses, A young Horse, tho' he be more subject to Diseases, as has been already observ'd, will, however, much sooner recover the Loss of Blood than a Horse that is full aged, and a full aged Horse sooner than an



old Horse, because all young Animals are vigorous in their Appetite and Digestion; but yet a full aged, or an old Horse, if either be hardy and strong, may overcome all Losses of this kind better than some young Horses, who are of a washy and delicate Make. But I shall now proceed to Purging.

In what Cases Purging is chiefly necessary.

I need not offer to explain what is meant by Purging, since every one knows that it is the discharging of Humours and Excrements thro' the common Passages of the Belly. The Way this Operation is perform'd, is with such Medicines as by their Irritation stimulate the Membranes of the Guts, whereby their *Peristaltick* Motion is quicken'd, so as to shake off their Contents. But if the Dose or Potion happens to be large, or if it be made of such things as abound much with those stimulating Particles, or, to express it after the common way, if very strong Physick be given, it not only carries off what is contained in the Guts, but likewise causes such frequent and reiterated Twitches, as derives a more than ordinary Quantity of Blood into those Parts, whence is separated and discharged abundance of *Serum*, which is thrown off by the common Passages above-mentioned. And hence it is evident, that Physick may be so ordered, as to carry off more or less of the Substance of the Blood, according as the Dose is enlarged or diminished, or as it abounds more or less with those purging Particles; and consequently that it may be rendered either profitable or hurtful, according as it is managed.

I shall not here detain the Reader with the Manner of preparing the Body for this Operation, neither shall I lay down Rules for rendring this or that sort of Humour fit for a Discharge by Medicines, which have been ignorantly, but with much Industry, devis'd to prepare Choler, Flegm or Melancholy, that sort of Practice being now justly expos'd as uncertain and ridiculous, since it is very plain, that all purging Physick differs only in the Degrees of Strength, and works no otherwise on different Humours, than as it is able to reach only those that are near, or such as are more remote  
from



from the Guts, where its principal Scene of Action lies. What particular Regard is to be had to those things, will be sufficiently shewn hereafter. I shall therefore only in this place lay down some general Directions, which, I hope, will be of Use to all who practise among Horses.

*First of all*, Purging may be necessary in most or all *Plethorick* Cases, especially after an Evacuation has been made by Blood-letting, and the Body rendered somewhat cool and lightome; for if a Horse be purged when his Body is very full, it may, unless the other Secretions are also free, occasion, during the Operation, a too great Hurry in the Blood's Motion, bred from too great a Quantity of Blood; or by deriving too much Blood into the Intestines, may occasion an Inflammation of the Guts. For the same Reason Horses that are *Plethorick* and full of Blood, ought only to have mild Purges given them.

*Secondly*, Because a Horse can seldom or never disgorge himself by Vomit; gentle purging may therefore be allowed in Disorders of the Stomach, before other things are administered.

*Thirdly*, Purging is the most necessary Remedy for all Foulness in the Guts, for the Expulsion of all viscid roapy Matter, and in all Cases where a Horse is infested with Worms.

*Fourthly*, It is a great Relief in Costiveness, especially after suitable Clysters have been first administered. And it is moreover useful in all Scouring and Looseness of the Belly, when perform'd by such Medicines as afterwards constringe the intestinal Glands. But in this Case many of the Tribe of purging Medicines may be very hurtful, and occasion either a too great Relaxation of those Glands, or an Inflammation of the Guts, by their too violent and harsh Operation.

*Fifthly*, In all Cases where there is a gross Habit, with a Tendency to Swellings in the Limbs, or any other Part of the Body, Purging is necessary: As also in humid and watery Diseases. In Disorders of the Liver, causing the Jaundice, and in many of the Diseases of the Eyes it does manifest Service



vice by the Revulfion it makes from those Parts, and in most Ailments in the Head, where there is no Fever, but only a Stagnation in the Blood in some of the small Capillary or Hair-like Arteries. For Purging, in such Cases, not only drains off Part of the superabundant Matter, but also by putting the Blood into a brisker Motion, causes a Separation of its grosser Parts, so that it moves with more Freedom and Easiness in all its Canals, and is thereby brought more readily to the Secretary Offices.

In Bleeding and Purging the Strength of a Horse to be regarded.

But in this Operation, as well as in Bleeding, a particular Regard ought to be had to the Strength of every Horse, because the Irritation that this kind of Physick makes in the Stomach and Guts, when it is powerful, occasions such disorderly Agitations in the Blood and Spirits as cause violent Sicknes, attended with cold damp Sweats, and sometimes convulsive Motions: And all this I have seen frequently happen to Horses while under this Operation; and therefore they ought not only at that time to be carefully look'd after, but their Physick should be qualify'd with such Mixtures as will prevent it from adhering too closely to any Part of the Guts.

But what relates to this, and all other Operations, will, I doubt not, be perform'd to the Farrier's Satisfaction in the Sequel of this Treatise, where all those general Rules shall be justly and methodically apply'd.

## C H A P. VI.

### *Of the Fevers of Horses in general.*

The *Sieur de Solleysell's* Opinion concerning a Fever.

**M**OST of those who have treated of the Diseases of Horses, have defin'd a Fever to be a præternatural Heat of the Blood: And the *Sieur de Solleysell* has compar'd it to the "Ebullition of Wine in a Cask, where the Liquor being agitated, heated, dilated, and fermented, and having

" no



“ no Vent, breaks impetuously through all Ob-  
 “ stacles, spreading its Steams and Vapours all  
 “ around, and appears so muddy, that we cannot  
 “ discern the least Drop of Wine in the Vessel.  
 “ But after these disorderly Motions, all the Im-  
 “ purities that were in the Wine are separated;  
 “ the Lees fall to the Bottom, a sort of Scum  
 “ floats on the Top, and the Concavity of the  
 “ Vessel is covered with a sort of crusty Substance.  
 This Comparison between the State of the Blood  
 and Wine, thus pent up in the Cask, is, according  
 to that Author, a true Idea and Representation of  
 a Fever, which, as it is obvious to Sense, will, no  
 doubt, satisfy a good many Readers; but yet as  
 the Agreement is only in some few Circumstances,  
 and not in the whole; I shall therefore give a short  
 Account of a Fever, as it is founded on the Struc-  
 ture of the Blood, and the Vessels in which it  
 flows.

But, first, it will be proper to distinguish be-  
 tween a Fever that is simple, and that which is  
 complicated and accompany'd with some other  
 Disease. A simple Fever consists only in the In-  
 crease of the Blood's Velocity; that is to say,  
 when it runs more swiftly through all its Chan-  
 nels than is usual, but preserves an Uniformity in  
 its Motion: Whereas a complicated Fever has, be-  
 sides the Increase of Motion in the Blood, several  
 other Symptoms; and these Diseases, which are the  
 Concomitants of such Velocity in the Blood, are  
 often the Cause of those Fevers, in which the Mo-  
 tion of the Blood is not regularly and uniformly  
 augmented, but is disorderly, admitting of divers  
 Periods.

The Blood, as all other Fluids, being made up  
 of liquid Parts, is therefore capable of being put  
 into a more than ordinary Degree of Motion, both  
 by external and internal Causes; when the Cause  
 happens to be simple and external, as for Instance,  
 when the Blood is violently agitated and put in  
 Motion by the Heat of the Sun, or by violent and  
 excessive Exercise, then the Fever will be only  
 simple: In such a case the Blood is melted, and,  
 like

A Fever  
 explain'd.



like Wax, requires more Space in the Vessels, than when in its ordinary State ; and likewise as it becomes more thin and fluid its Motion increases, which is obvious enough ; because all thin Liquors will move with more Velocity and Swiftness than those that are thick ; and because a Liquor that is of a thin Texture will pass through the smallest Vessels as well as through those that are more large, without any Opposition ; therefore all such Fevers are regular and uniform. But when a Fever proceeds from any ill Quality in the Blood, as for Instance, if the Blood be too thick or viscid, so as to occasion Obstructions in those Vessels that are the most minute and small, the Blood being obstructed there, and meeting with Opposition, must needs occasion great Disorders, while it flows in greater Quantity than ordinary into particular Parts, and while it endeavours to find out proper Vents and Passages for itself. Now in both these Cases the glandular Discharges must, in a great Measure, be hurt. But in those Fevers that are complicated some of those Vents may be too much obstructed, while others are too free and open. And hence it is that Nature is so much put to it in all Fevers ; for in those that are the most simple she is overpower'd by a too great Quantity of Blood, occasion'd by its too great Rarefaction, whereby it takes up more Space than usual in all the Blood-vessels, and moves with so much Rapidity as to discompose the whole Body. And in those Fevers that proceed from vitiated Blood, and are the Effects of some other Disease, she is oppress'd by violent Impulses and irregular Discharges, before the Blood can become of such a Texture and Make as to render it fit to pass equally into all Parts.

All Fevers have for their immediate Cause, either a too great Thickness or Thinness of the Blood, or an Inequality of its Substance.

And therefore it is to be observ'd, that whatever Changes the Blood undergoes in all the different kinds of a Fever, so long as the Disease lasts these Changes must have a Tendency either to an overgreat Rarefaction or Thinness, or else to an overgreat Thickness, or to an Inequality of the Substance of the Blood, whereby some Parts of it will pass



pass more easily than others through the smallest Vessels; all which may at one time or other produce the Symptoms common to all Fevers, to wit, a violent and excessive Heat, and beating of the Arteries, &c. This is so clear and evident, in case of an over-great Rarefaction and Thinness of the Blood, that it needs no manner of Proof, since Heat must always be the Effect of Motion. And on the other hand, when the Blood happens to be too much coagulated and thicken'd, and when it is rendered of too adhesive and gluey a Nature, whatever be the Figure and Size of its Particles, or whatever other Qualities may be in it, it must certainly be obstructed in the smallest Passages; and these Obstructions in the smallest Passages must give it a more than ordinary Degree of Motion in those Vessels that are large enough to receive it, and consequently its Heat must also be augmented.

But this will be the more easily understood, if we consider that the Arteries which carry the Blood into all Parts, grow gradually smaller the further they advance from the Heart; and that there is a proportionably less Distance between their Branches and towards their Extremities, the Distance between these capillary Branches grows still smaller, resembling the little Filaments on the Leaves of Trees. It is also to be taken Notice of, that, according to the latest Discoveries, the Sum of all the Orifices of the succeeding Branches of every Artery is larger than the Trunk from whence they arise, which must be so great a Benefit to Nature, that unless those Vessels had been of such a Texture, it would have been impossible for any animal Body to have been supported under the least Disorder. But notwithstanding this wise Contrivance, the Blood is still very liable to Obstruction whenever it happens to be too thick or viscid. And as all such Obstructions must rationally happen in those Parts where the Vessels are of the smallest Texture, that which flows in those that are larger must of consequence move with greater Rapidity; because, as has been already hinted, when it meets with Opposition in its Course forwards, it

In what manner the Blood will cause a Fever when it is too thick.

must



must deviate in greater than ordinary Quantity, and with greater Force, into the nearest lateral Branches.

An Obser-  
vation taken  
from Water  
running in  
Pipes, &c.

Nature furnishes us with few Similitudes that would be of any Service to illustrate this sort of Mechanism, unless a general Resemblance could be sufficient. Neither does Art assist us otherwise than by Mathematical Experiments, which would not be easily understood but by those who have some Insight into them. But that this may be made as plain as possible, we shall suppose an Artery to be like a Pipe, which grows gradually smaller according to the Number of Branches it sends forth. We must also suppose this Pipe and all its Branches to be constantly filled with Water from some Fountain, and this Water perpetually running from the main Trunk into all these Branches : We must in like manner imagine the Extremities or Endings of those Branches to be so small as to be easily choak'd up with Sand or Clay, or any other kind of Matter ; and therefore when any such Matter happens totally, or in part, to obstruct one or more of these small Passages, the Water meeting with Resistance is forced back again, and is taken up by those Branches that are the nearest ; so the Branches, which are antecedent to those that are thus obstructed, receive not only a more than ordinary Quantity of Water, but this Water is also increased in its Motion in Proportion to the Force by which it is repuls'd ; and likewise by that of the Water, which is antecedent to it, which being also in Motion, must resist its returning the same Way it came ; and by giving a new *Impetus* to the Water thus repulsed, must drive it with the greater Force into the lateral Branches. And this will appear still more manifest from the Instance of a large Stone thrown into a very small Brook or Rivulet, which taking up some Space, and dividing the Stream in the middle, the Water that runs on each side will move with greater Rapidity than that which is either before or behind.

From all which it is evident, that Obstructions in the small Capillary Arteries, as they are the Cause



Cause of a greater and more violent Motion of the Blood in those that are larger, must occasion a Fever; but especially as such Motion may bring on a subsequent Rarefaction in the Blood; because whatever agitates the Blood, and puts it in a more than ordinary Degree of Motion, must occasion more frequent Contractions of the Heart, and also of the Arteries, whereby the Blood must, without doubt, be comminuted, and its Parts render'd more small. In like manner an over-great Rarefaction may be the Cause of a Coagulation of the Blood; that is, when the Blood happens to be too much rarefy'd, as in the beginning of a legitimate Fever, the thin *Serum* being expended in a greater than ordinary Quantity, will leave the remaining Mass thicker, and more unapt to Motion, whereby several Changes and Alterations may be reasonably expected: And now since the Extremities of the Veins which communicate with those of the Arteries, are but little different from the Arteries themselves, save only that they take a contrary Course, and that the Blood moves in them backwards towards the Heart; whereas in the Arteries it moves from the Heart towards the Extremities: And as the Motion of the Blood in these small communicating Branches of the Veins is chiefly owing to a continual Succession of Blood from the Arteries; when once therefore it gets into them, its Motion cannot be easily retarded, unless in the Extremities of the Limbs, where its Ascent upwards must, no doubt, be a great Hinderance to it. And this is the Reason why, in several kinds of Fevers, especially in those where the Blood happens to be of unequal Composition, *viz.* when it is thicker in some Parts than others, the Pulsation of the Arteries must also be unequal; because while its grosser parts are detain'd in the smallest Veins and Arteries, the Blood must move with more Velocity in some of the other Vessels, for the Reasons already alledg'd; but as soon as this Lentor has work'd itself into the more capacious Veins, which grow wider the nearer they approach the Heart, and that a thinner and  
more



more attenuated Blood supplies its place in those small Branches, then the Pulsation becomes more moderate and uniform, and the Fever is remov'd at least for that Season.

But in all Fevers whatsoever it is manifest, that the various Changes made in the Blood, whether these are caused by an over Rarefaction and Thinness, or an over Thickness, must affect the Secretions; but in those that are complicated, they must occasion some of them to be too liberal, while others are too sparing; and may also occasion one Secretion at one time to be too open, and at another time too sparing.

How the  
Secretions  
may be af-  
fected in Fe-  
vers.

And thus far we may here advance concerning the Secretions, That in all such Fevers as proceed from an over Rarefaction, the serous part of the Blood being then render'd more than ordinarily thin, must needs go off in too great a Quantity, while the grosser parts may be detain'd by the larger Vessels, which compose the solid parts pressing upon those that are smaller, especially towards their Entrance into the Glands; so that by Virtue of a superior Weight in the larger Vessels, nothing but the thinner parts of the *Serum* can pass through them, and that Expence of the thinner parts of the Blood, if it is not stop'd in due time, will leave the remaining Mass too thick, whereby other Symptoms will be engender'd, and such as are common to Fevers of a more complicated kind: And when such a Change happens, the Blood must lose its regular and uniform Motion, and the Disease will no longer constitute one continued Fever of one Period only, but admit of divers Periods.

Now when such a Change happens in any simple and continued Fever, or if this has been the State of the Fever from the beginning, the Secretions must be irregular; for seeing the Entrance into all the Glands is not the same, but that these Passages are of divers Capacities or Sizes, the parts of the Blood and *Serum* not being sufficiently comminuted, and render'd so small as to enter into the smallest Secretory Offices, must therefore, when they meet with Opposition, and are deny'd Ad-

~~mitting~~



mittance into them, enter in an over-great Quantity into those that are large enough to receive them. And thus we may easily form an Idea how several Ferments may be engender'd in the Body during the Continuance of such Fevers, especially if it be consider'd, as was observed in another Place, that a Liquor consisting but of few Principles may, by their various Combinations, produce a great Variety of different Liquors. And therefore since the Blood is a Fluid consisting of different Principles, and undergoing so many different Changes, while its Secretions are thus distemper'd and irregular, it may, no doubt, be so fermented by its various Mixtures, as to occasion all those evil Symptoms, which are discovered in the Animal Body, while Nature is endeavouring to throw off what is offensive and burdensome to her.

After this short Account of Fevers in general, it follows that we take Notice of their several kinds, as they have been distinguished by their different Names and Appellations, wherein we shall deviate as little as possible from the Method of those who have gone before us, that such as have been used to the Writings of *Solleysell*, *Markham*, or any other of that Tribe, may not be too much bewilder'd by the Perusal of what they shall here find new upon the Subject.

We have already divided a Fever into that which is simple, and of one Period only, and that which is complicated and accompany'd with some other Disease. Under which Division may be reduced all sorts of Fevers, but a simple Fever stands singly by itself, and is that which, properly speaking, constitutes a true Fever; and therefore all Fevers may be termed, more or less, *Simple*, as they are made up of fewer or more Symptoms; for the fewer Symptoms there are in any Fever, any such Fever will be the more simple, and will approach the nearer to that which consists only in the regular Augmentation of the Blood's Motion: And on the other hand, the more Symptoms there are in any Fever, it will be the more complicated, and participate the more of other Diseases. All therefore that

The different kind of Fevers.



that shall be said concerning the particular Fevers of Horses, shall be reduced to those that are termed *simple* and *continued Fevers*, *Hætick Fevers*, *putrid Fevers*, and those that are called *Pestilential Fevers*; and lastly, all such as are intermitting, whether these be *Quotidian*, *Tertian* or *Quartans*. As for those proper to the Seasons, viz. the Autumnal and Vernal Fevers, &c. which *Markham* has taken Notice of, they may be reduced to one or more of the above-mentioned kinds, though perhaps not with respect to their whole Complex Symptoms, and indeed in that Sense there is no Fever directly the same, but may vary in some Circumstances: For seeing the Bodies of all Animals are compounded and made up of Vessels which are infinitely numerous, and are infinitely different in Size and Magnitude; and as the Fluids contain'd in these Vessels are capable of different Changes and Modifications, it cannot therefore be expected but the same kind of Fever may have different Symptoms in one Horse from what they are in another; and this Variation may be in Proportion to the Size and Make of the constituent Vessels of different Horses, &c. But if the Farrier will only endeavour after a competent Skill in the Animal Oeconomy, he will be the better able to suit his Methods of Cure to the several Indications that may proceed from any such Variety.

---

## C H A P. VII.

### *Of a simple continued Fever.*

A simple legitimate Fever.

The Causes thereof.

**T**HIS sort of Fever is not the least common among Horses, neither is it very difficult, but may be easily cured, especially in the Beginning. It consists in an equable Augmentation of the Blood's Velocity, as has already been observ'd, and may proceed from divers Causes: As first, from Riding in very hot and dry Weather; for by that means the Blood being once set in Motion, it



it thereby becomes rarefy'd, and the external Heat contributes to keep up both the internal Heat and Rarefaction thereof.

*Secondly*, This Fever is sometimes brought on Horses by turning them out to Grass in hot and dry Weather, and into small Inclosures, where there is but little Air, and where there is not some convenient Shade to cover them from the scorching Heat of the Sun.

*Thirdly*, The eating of hot and spirituous Herbs, or other Food, that communicate too great a Heat and Warmth to the Blood (especially until a Horse has been habituated to such Feeding) will be the Cause of such a Fever.

*Fourthly*, This sort of Fever is sometimes caused by bleeding Horses in the Heat of the Sun in the hot Season, without housing them; because, during the time of the Operation, the Blood is put into a greater Motion than before; and that new Motion is further increased and kept up by the additional Heat of the Weather, as has been observed: And this may be illustrated by the common Effects of Fire under a Pot or Kettle, where the Heat of the Water increases more in the same spaces of Time, according to the Degrees of its Motion, tho' the Fire be not increased.

*Fifthly*, External Cold will sometimes bring on such a Fever by hindring Perspiration, especially when its Effects are sudden; for in such a Case the Quantity of the Blood must be suddenly increased, and that Increase will be followed by an immediate and speedy Rarefaction of the Blood.

And here it may be observed, with respect to Causes and Effects, that the same Cause will sometimes produce different Effects; and the same Effect will often proceed from different Causes, as in the Instance last mentioned: For Cold, when its Effects are sudden and universal, will cause a sudden Rarefaction in the Blood, by obstructing most of the Passages of Perspiration; but when it is partial or gradual, it will have a different Effect. But the different Effects which we observe from the same Cause, or the same Effect,

*How Causes and Effects are to be distinguished.*



proceeding from seemingly opposite Causes, may only arise from the different Degrees of Efficacy in the Causes themselves, whereof we cannot be exact and competent Judges, especially as they are exerted on the animal Body, which is infinitely various in its Composition and Structure; and moreover as these Causes are also complicated; and therefore when we speak of different Effects, proceeding from the same Cause, and *Vice versa* of the same Effect, proceeding from different and opposite Causes, we are to be understood, not in an abstracted philosophical Sense, but as this is most obvious to our common Apprehensions of Things, which Difference we shall endeavour to account for in the most rational Way we are able, and that as often as we shall find occasion.

But, *Lastly*, If the Affections of Horses can be enough permanent and lasting, so as to bring on Diseases, according to some Writers, such a Fever as this we are treating of, may take its Beginning from Rage and Fury, since nothing contributes more to the Rarefaction of the Blood, and the Increase of its Motion. And therefore those Horses who have felt the Pleasures of Love, and have been afterwards restrain'd from Copulation, but yet have had Mares frequently expos'd to them, must be most in danger from such Causes.

The Signs  
of a simple  
Fever.

But we shall now proceed to the Signs, which in a simple and continued Fever are violent Heat and Fullness of the Vessels, which will even appear to the Eye. A beating of the Heart and Flanks without Intermission, a Driness on the Roof of the Mouth and Palate, with a Roughness on the Tongue, continual Watchfulness and Restlessness, insomuch that if a Horse be seiz'd in the Field, he will be perpetually moving from Place to Place, going often to the Water, but not being able to drink, he will smell at the Ground in many Places without Feeding, but discovering a great Delicacy from the want of Appetite: And if a Horse in such a Condition happens to be in the Stable, the same Signs will also be apparent; and he will, moreover, be apt to strike at any one that comes



comes near him, tho' at other times tractable and easy.

But here I must also take Notice, as concerning the Signs, that nothing is more to be carefully look'd into than they, because the same common Signs are often exhibited in Diseases that are different, and require a different Method of Cure. But this is not so conspicuous in other Distempers as in Fevers, for which Reason the Farrier must always have Recourse to the Causes, whereby he will be the better able to form a right Judgment; and that this may become the more easy to him, we shall go over those Signs more particularly, as they arise from common Effects, but are produc'd of their proper Causes, and may therefore be distinguish'd from the same Appearances in more complicated Fevers.

In what  
Manner  
these are to  
be distin-  
guish'd.

*First* then it may be observ'd, that Heat, and beating at the Heart and Flanks, is a Sign common to all Fevers. But in a Fever that is simple, the Heat is permanent and the Pulsations regular; whereas in a Fever that is complicated, neither the Heat nor Pulsations are regular, but are sometimes more, sometimes less observable; and in some, as in intermitting Fevers, the Disease goes quite off, and only returns at certain Times.

*Secondly*, In a simple Fever, the Driness on the Roof of the Mouth and Palate, and the parch'd Roughness of the Tongue, are perceivable from the first Appearances of the Disease, as they proceed from an over-great Expence of the thinner Parts of the *Serum*; but in other Fevers these Signs are not so suddenly exhibited.

*Thirdly*, Tho' other Fevers may be accompanied with want of Appetite, yet this Sign seems more peculiar to simple Fevers, being the constant Effect of an over-great Rarefaction and Thinness of the Blood, whereby it takes up more Space in all the Vessels of the Stomach, even so as sometimes to occasion Inflammation; and this Distention of the Vessels must take off the Sensation of Hunger, and create a Loathing, which is also the Reason why, notwithstanding that the Heat and Parchedness



makes a Horse thirst often in this kind of Fever, yet he drinks but little at a time.

*Fourthly*, The same Plenitude of the Vessels in the Stomach, as also in the circumjacent Parts, viz. the *Pleura* and *Midriff*; and moreover in the Lungs themselves, is the Cause of the heaving of the Flanks, whereby the Lungs are press'd too close on all Sides, upon which the Passages of Respiration become obstructed; whereas in other Cases the same Signs may be exhibited from the want of Spirits, by which Means the Action of the Muscles, which elevate and depress the *Thorax*, must be hinder'd; but this may be easily distinguish'd, by an Insensibility and Listlessness to Motion; as may also an Inflammation of the Lungs or *Pleura*, from the manifest Signs of insupportable Pain, as shall be observ'd in its proper Place.

*Fifthly*, Albeit Pain is a Sign common to several kinds of Fevers, yet it is more violent in this than in any other, as the Pain proceeds from an over Plenitude and Fullness of the Vessels; and therefore when we observe a Horse apt to shrink or strike, as often as any one comes near him, but especially upon offering to touch his Back, we may suppose this to be occasion'd from Pain in the Back and Loins, arising from an over Distention of the *Aorta*, or great Artery, that Vessel lying open and unguarded, and having no Store of Muscles to inviron and support it. The Farriers oftentimes, in this sort of Fever, when they observe a Horse unwilling to have any one lay Hands on his hind Parts, believe it to be the Sign of a sway'd Back, and make their Applications accordingly. But we shall have an Opportunity of putting them right in this Particular hereafter.

*Lastly*, The constant Watchfulness and Restlessness, which is so observable, and seems, in a great Measure, peculiar to a simple Fever, is also the result of a very great Rarefaction and Thinness of the Blood, the animal Spirits will therefore be the more easily separated from so loose a Texture, and the Vessels being at the same time full, must therefore press upon the Nerves, causing a continual



tinual Flux and Reflux of the said Spirits, from whence must undoubtedly proceed Watchfulness and Restlessness. But in Fevers of another Kind, these Signs seldom or never go together; but if a Horse be watchful, he is, perhaps, at the same time sluggish and heavy; or if a Horse be restless, and sometimes in a moving Posture, he does not continue long so, but becomes dull and unactive by Intervals, especially if the Blood is of unequal Fluidity; for in such a Case, when the viscid and tenacious Parts are got into the small Hair-like Vessels of the Brain, there must at that time be a very small Quantity of animal Spirits separated from it; but when the more fluid Parts take Place in those Vessels, perhaps an over-great Quantity may be secern'd, and then the Disease will resemble that of a simple and continued Fever, excepting only that these Symptoms are not, as in a simple Fever, of any long Continuance, but soon change into others. And therefore since the same Disease will often put on different Appearances, the Farrier can never be too careful in examining into every Circumstance, that he may not rashly administer his Cures upon every slight Observation, as is too common, but wait till the Distemper gives Indications of what is truly necessary to be done.

Having thus laid down the Causes and Signs of a simple and continued Fever, together with the Way and Manner by which it may be distinguish'd from other Fevers, it remains that we go on to the Method of Cure, wherein we are principally to observe, that since there can be no Accidents in this sort of Fever, but what depend upon the Augmentation of the Blood's circular Motion; and while in this State, the Blood is not suppos'd to be any wise, or, at least, but little vitiated; those things are only to be done, or administer'd, that will lessen the said Motion, and bring the Blood to a more quiet and sedate State; and, in order thereunto, Bleeding is, in the first Place, to be prefer'd. After Bleeding, recourse must be had to Clysters, and to all such Things as will just

The Cure  
of a simple  
Fever.



keep the Body cool and open, for by this Method alone a simple Fever is to be cured.

*First*, As to the Bleeding, if it be in Summer, while the Horse is at Grass, he ought to be hous'd; and if the Symptoms are not very urgent, the Cool of the Morning is the best and properest Time for the Operation, because the external Heat contributes very much to the Increase of this Distemper, or may be the principal Cause of it after Bleeding, as we have already observ'd, because of the Blood's being put into a quicker Motion during the Operation: But this ought not to deter the Practitioner, for if a Horse be kept cool after it, any Symptoms that can arise from it will soon cease, and will be quickly follow'd by a slower Motion in the Blood; and this is manifest, because we often observe such Fevers, especially in Horses of a rare and delicate Make, terminate in an Hemorrhagy of Blood.

His Feeding must be moderate, during the whole Course of his Sickness; for, indeed, nothing contributes more to the lessening of this Distemper than Abstemiousness; and what Food is given him, should be mix'd with the Leaves of Vines, Strawberries and Sorrel, and such other Things as are cooling; for if the Fever be very strong upon him, nothing will relish but what has a grateful Coldness in it. The same kind of Things may be also boil'd in Water, with a little Oatmeal strow'd upon it, for his ordinary Drink; and sometimes two or three Drams of *Sal Prunelle*, or purify'd *Nitre*, may be dissolv'd in his Water, which, during the Fever, ought to be always warm.

For the Heat and Driness of the Mouth, so much Vinegar or Verjuce, mixt with some Water, as will give it a grateful Sourishness and Roughness upon the Palate, sweetned with Honey, will be very proper. The best way to use it, is by dipping a Rag ty'd round the end of a Stick into this Liquor, with which the Tongue and Roof of the Mouth may be cool'd and gently rub'd several times in a Day. A feverish Horse will hereby

be



be much refresh'd and dispos'd to Rest and Quiet ; but if those Parts are become crusty and very hard, the Vinegar or Verjuice may be used without the Mixture of Water.

If the Practitioner observes the sick Horse to be costive, which is very common in this Kind of Fever, and proceeds from the same Cause that occasions Heat and Driness of the Mouth ; the Horse's Body must then be open'd by some Emollient Glyster, for purging Drenches are in this Case of dangerous Consequence ; because, while the Blood is thus violently in Motion, a *Stimulus* made in the Guts, by a Medicin of rough Operation, will be apt to determine the Blood into those Parts in an over-great Quantity, so as either to occasion a Superpurgation or an Inflammation, which may be follow'd with a Gangrene.

But in all such Cases, before Clysters are administer'd, the Farrier should first (his Hand and Arm being anointed with Oil or Hog's-lard) rake the Horse, and bring out as much of the harden'd Excrements as he can conveniently come at, after which he may inject his Glyster, for which Purpose every Farrier ought to provide a large Syringe, a Horn being but of little Use, as it seldom conveys the Glyster further than the streight Gut ; and because the Guts of a Horse are not only very large, but of considerable Length, even from the undermost Valve downwards, the Quantity ought at least to be two Quarts, for otherwise it must have but little Efficacy, unless it be made up of such Things as are of very powerful Operation, which are but seldom to be meddled with, and then in some very uncommon Cases.

And therefore the Clysters that are to be made use of in simple Fevers, ought to be compos'd of emollient Herbs or Flowers, some few Seeds that are proper to rarefy and expel the Wind, by which means the Dung becomes loose, and falls off the more easily from its Adhesions. A moderate Quantity of Oils, or any other greasy Substance, which contributes also to the same purpose, by lubricating those Passages, and rendering them glib



and slippery; and when a *Stimulus* is requir'd, a purging Medicin of more or less Efficacy may be mixed with it, as shall be judg'd necessary, according to the following Method.

“Take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each  
“a large Handful, Camomile, half a Hand-  
“ful, Fennel-Seeds bruis'd, three Drams, or  
“half an Ounce, boil them in three Quarts of  
“Water till one Quart be consum'd, strain the  
“Decoction thro' a Sieve, and dissolve it in three  
“Ounces of Lenitive Electuary, and a quarter of  
“a Pound of Hog's-lard, Oil, or Butter.” This  
must be given Blood-warm, holding the Tail close  
to his Fundament. If there be Signs of Inflamma-  
tion in the Guts, which may be suspected when  
the Fever is very strong, the Excrements ex-  
ceeding hard and black, and when the Horse  
strains often to dung, and is in miserable Pain  
withal; in such a Case may be added an Ounce  
and a half, or two Ounces of the *Sal Polychrestum*,  
which will dissolve in the Decoction; or an Ounce  
of *Cream of Tartar*, and two Drams of *Salt Petre*,  
or *Sal Prunellæ*; these will not only allay the Heat,  
but make the Clyster somewhat more purgative.

This Clyster may be repeated once a Day, or, at  
least, until the Fever abates, or that the Horse be-  
comes orderly in his Body.

It may be observ'd, as to the Composition of  
such Clysters, that any of the emollient Herbs, as  
*Pellitory*, *Mercury*, &c. or the Flowers and Leaves of  
Melilot, the Leaves of Violets, and in the Room of  
Fennel-Seeds, those of Dill, Anise and Carraways  
may be substituted, and will suit the same Inten-  
tions. Broths may be also substituted in the  
room of such Compositions, especially when these  
Ingredients cannot be had in due time.

But if a Clyster of more immediate Efficacy be  
requir'd, a Handful of common Salt may be  
added; or instead of the *Lenitive Electuary*, three  
or four Ounces of the vomiting Wine, known by  
the Name of *Vinum Benedictum*, may be mix'd with  
the Decoction; but these Alterations will seldom  
be necessary, unless to Horses who are very hard

to



to be work'd on ; there being nothing further requir'd by Clysters in a simple Fever, than keeping the Body moderately open, that Nature may have her free Course, and not suffer by Obstructions in the first Passages.

Care must also be taken to keep the Pores open by constant dressing, tho' that ought not to be more than what is usual at other times ; neither should his clothing be augmented, or any thing be given that will suddenly promote Sweat ; because most, or all such things are apt to cast off the thinner Parts of the *Serum* only ; and a Fever, that is truly simple, seldom ends by any of those Discharges, but wears off insensibly by a gradual Abatement ; and it is to be observ'd, that a simple Fever, as such is but of short Continuance, and in a few Days either begins to wear off in the Manner just mentioned ; or else it puts on other Appearances ; and if it gives Signs of Concoction, either by Urine, or by a Tendency to sweat, it is no more to be treated as a simple Fever, but as one that is more or less complicated ; and then Medicines that promote Sweat are very proper, such as will be prescrib'd in the ensuing Chapter.

---

## C H A P. VIII.

### *Of a putrid Fever.*

AS the Fever we have treated of in the foregoing Chapter is simple and uniform, that which comes here under our Consideration is of a complicated kind, and, for the most part, proves fatal to Horses ; for as in a simple Fever there is only a Rarefaction of the Humours, in this there are, besides the Augmentation of the Motion of the Blood, some evil Qualities ingender'd in it, which require a considerable time before they can be removed, and during the Continuance thereof, Nature oftentimes sinks under her Burden ; and the greater must be the Danger in Brute Creatures, as they are not under the Guidance of Reason.

Putrid



The Cause  
of a putrid  
Fever.

Putrid Fevers, and all Fevers of a complicated kind, are more incident to young Horses than those who are advanc'd to their Prime; and to some more than others even in their Colt-Age, which, according to the best Authors, is, by reason the Blood of all young Animals is apt to be of unequal Fluidity, as not having been sufficiently comminuted by frequent Circulations thro' the Lungs; and therefore it will be the more ready, upon any Change, either to putrify, or, at least, to put on the Appearances of Putrefaction. And as the Appetites of young Horses are strong and vigorous, they are apt to over-gorge themselves, and oftentimes too with unwholsome Food, begetting Crudities in the Stomach, by which means the Chyle is contaminated, and the Blood, for the most part, render'd more gross and viscid. This alone is sufficient to bring on a putrid Fever; but more especially if a Horse happens to be put to violent Labour, or hard Riding, before his Body is prepar'd for it, either by moderate Feeding, moderate Exercise, or proper Physick; for when the Blood is once put into a more than ordinary Motion, while in this unactive State, any one must then easily conceive what great Disorder must needs happen to that Animal.

Cold taken abroad in the Night, or in unwholsome foggy Weather (when a Horse has been us'd to warm and delicate Keeping) will, by stopping the Passages of Perspiration, bring on such a Fever, especially where there is a gross Habit; for in such a Case the Blood cannot be so suddenly rarefy'd, as to constitute one of a more simple kind; and the same may happen from several other Causes, which I shall not detain the Reader with at present.

The Signs.

The Signs are those which it has in common with all other Fevers, to wit, inordinate Heat, a calminess and parchedness in the Mouth, a heaving and beating of the Flanks; but this is not regular, as in a simple Fever, but is sometimes more, sometimes less, according as the Fever is more or less upon him; and whereas in a simple legitimate  
Fever



Fever a Horse is watchful and restless, in this he is, for the most part, unactive and dull, hangs his Head, takes no Notice of any one that comes near him, his Body shakes and quivers, and he reels as he offers to walk; and this proceeds from a Paucity or Oppression of the animal Spirits.

In order to the Cure, the same Evacuations are to be made as is usual in a continued Fever; viz. Blooding, and Purging by Clysters; for as in a simple Fever the Blood may be render'd more thick by lessening the Quantity thereof; so in a putrid Fever also the Blood becomes more attenuated and thin, by having more Room given it in the Vessels, whereby its Motion becomes also more uniform; so that somewhat must, of consequence, be abated from the Distemper; but yet as it is gross and viscid for the most part, it will be apt to require more frequent and repeated Circulations, than, perhaps, can be perform'd without wasting and destroying the Body, to bring it into such an equable Mixture as is necessary to Health; and therefore besides these Universals, such things ought also to be administer'd as may conduce to the attenuating the Blood, and help to bring it to such a Texture and Make as will render it fit to pass equally into all its proper Channels, and from thence to have its morbidick Matter thrown off in such Proportions, and by such Secretions, as are most agreeable to Nature.

The Cure of  
a putrid  
Fever.

For which purpose all such things as promote the Discharges by Sweat and Urine are very proper; and therefore when a Horse labours under this Fever, purify'd Nitre or *Sal Prunellæ* should be dissolv'd in his Water, or that so much recommended by the *Seiur de Solleysell*, which he calls a *Febrifuge*, may be given him to drink, viz.

“ Put a Quart of Water, with two Ounces of  
“ Salt of Tartar, in a Brazen Pot, with a Cover,  
“ and set it over the Fire till the Salt be dissolv'd,  
“ then pour the Water into a Pail, and after the  
“ same manner dissolve an Ounce of *Sal Armoniack*  
“ beaten to Powder in another Quart of Water;  
“ mix this last Solution with the former, and fill  
“ up



“ up the Pail with common Water ; and if your  
 “ Horse refuse to drink it, add a little Barley-  
 “ Flower to qualify the unpleasant Taste.” This  
 will not only help to allay the excessive Heat, but  
 contribute to promote both Sweat and Urine.

But if there be Signs of Concoction, which  
 may be discover'd by an Increase of the Fever, and  
 by a Cloud or Sediment in his Urine, which may  
 be preserv'd in a glaz'd Pan for that purpose ; then  
 the following Cordial may be given him.

“ Take of the distill'd Waters of Carduus,  
 “ Scabious and Marigolds three Pints ; or instead  
 “ of them, the same Quantity of Milk-Water,  
 “ which may be had of any Apothecary, and will  
 “ answer the End as well ; dissolve in it an Ounce  
 “ of Mithridate, and give it in a Horn, after  
 “ which let him be well cloth'd ; and when he be-  
 “ gins to sweat plentifully, let him have a Draught  
 “ of warm Water, with a small Mixture of White-  
 “ Wine in it.

During the whole Course of the Fever, a Horse  
 ought to be well rub'd, that the Passages of Perspi-  
 ration may be kept as free and open as possible ; and  
 that the Blood, which is apt to languish in the  
 small Vessels towards the Skin, may be forwarded.  
 Care ought also to be taken of his Mouth, to  
 keep it clean and moist, according to the Method  
 already laid down.

And because a Horse cannot vomit by convul-  
 sive Throws, as some other Animals, yet as Vo-  
 miting is proper, not only in this, but in most or  
 all complicated Fevers, those Helps which the  
 Practice of experienc'd Farriers have substituted  
 may be made use of ; and therefore half an Ounce  
 of *Assa Fetida*, and the same Quantity of Savin, put  
 up in a Rag, may be ty'd to his Bit, Pollipody of  
 the Oak, green Juniper-wood, Horse-radish, or  
 any thing else that is of a hot and ungrateful Taste,  
 fasten'd to his Bit, will have the same Effect.  
 This may be done for the Space of an Hour once a  
 Day, especially in the Beginning of the Fever,  
 which will answer some of the Intentions of Vo-  
 miting. For by straining to cough, vomit, and  
 sneeze,



sneeze, which happens on the use of such things, the whole Body is actuated and shook, and thereby a great deal of the Lentor may undoubtedly be squeez'd thro' the smallest Vessels, which cannot but be a great Relief, and may often bring the Disease to a more speedy Solution. But altho' chewing Balls, &c. may be thus useful in a Fever, where there is a Lentor and Slowness of the Blood in the small Arteries, yet they cannot be proper in a simple and legitimate Fever, notwithstanding they have the Authority of *Solleysell* to support their Use, because such straining may have a Tendency to stir the Blood too much, which is suppos'd to be in an over-great Hurry already.

*Lastly*, If the Fever ends with a Defluxion of Rheum from the Mouth and Nose, as is not very uncommon in such Cases; " Boil a Handful of  
" Red-rose Leaves in a Quart of Water; and  
" when the Decoction begins to cool, dissolve in  
" it an Ounce of Diascordium, to be given as a  
" Drench. This being repeated for two or three  
" Days successively, will digest that Humour, and  
" dry it up by degrees.

## C H A P. IX.

*Of pestilential Fevers.*

**U**NDER this Title may be included all those kind of Fevers that have a high Degree of Malignity in them, and of such are many of the Sickneses peculiar to some Seasons. But when they amount to a Plague or Murrain, the whole Mass of Blood becomes so suddenly vitiated, that they generally prove Mortal before any Helps can be given them, there being no time left for the due Operation of the common Means.

Those which are of the ordinary Kind differ only in degree from other Malignant Fevers, having in common with them the same Lentor of Blood, and oftentimes proceed from the same Causes,

*The Cause  
of Pestilential Fevers.*



Causes, as the eating of unwholsome Food, but especially such Herbs as are of a cold viscid Nature, and are therefore apt to beget Crudities; or from the Excess of Exercise upon a full Body, and the like, which, in the Process of the Disease, brings on Symptoms that bear an Affinity to those which are observable in the Plague. But when the Plague actually seizes Horses, the Effects are so sudden, that it can be attributed to no other Cause than some Distemperature in the Elements, or Infection from those who are already seiz'd with the Distemper; and whatever be the Nature of those Infections, whether they proceed from corrosive Ferments, or from any other Cause, their Operations are so sudden, that they seem to bring the Blood into an immediate, and almost universal Stagnation, which Effects may be accounted for in the same Manner as is usual in the Operation of Poisons; and, excepting in some few Circumstances, require the same Method of Cure.

The Signs.

As for the Signs, they are not unlike those of putrid and malignant Fevers, only that there is a greater Stupidity, and, for the most part, a swelling and Inflammation of the Kernels about the Throat, proceeding from a Stagnation of the Juices in those small Vessels; and when the Disease is very violent, a vast Quantity of Water runs from the Eyes, and a yellowish Matter distills from the Nose, and sometimes from the Mouth also, being sometimes ropy and mix'd with Blood; the Eyes are likewise inflam'd, and a clammy Sweat hangs on his Ears.

The Cure.

As to the Cure, because this Distemper, for the most part, proves mortal, and that of a sudden, proceeding from an over Distention of the small Blood-Vessels of the Brain, causing apoplectick Disorders; therefore the Neck-Vein must immediately be open'd, and soon after a Clyster is to be administer'd, and such an one as will be of some Efficacy, for which purpose we recommend the following.

“ Take of Marsh-mallows two Handfuls, Rue  
 “ one Handful, one bitter Apple, boil them in five  
 “ Pints



“ Pints of Water to two Quarts ; mix with the  
 “ Decoction two Ounces of the Powder, or Species  
 “ call’d *Hiera Picra*, with four Ounces of Oil or  
 “ Hog’s-lard.

This may be once or twice repeated ; but if the morbidick Matter happens to be cast out by Impostumation upon any Part that is safe, the use of Clysters may then be laid aside, unless the Oppression and the other bad Symptoms continue, and that there are not to be seen in the Horse’s Piss the Appearances of a Change and Solution of the Disease ; in this Case milder Glisters, such as may be made of Broth, or Water-gruel, with three or four Ounces of common Treacle, may be of no small Service, as they will be the Means to lessen that Oppression.

But besides these Evacuations, there must be a constant use of Internals (for such are very much requir’d in all pestilential Diseases) and for this Intention the most powerful Counter-poisons are esteem’d the most proper, such as *Venice-Treacle*, *Mithridate*, *London-Treacle*, Pills or Powders made of the Roots of Gentian, white Dittany, Bistort, Tormentil, *Virginia-Snake-Root*, *Zedoary*, *Contra-yerva*, and the like ; but those things not being always in readiness, I shall therefore take another Opportunity to give some Directions concerning their Preparation ; and therefore we shall in the mean while content ourselves with such things as may be had at any time.

“ Take the distil’d Waters of Carduus, Queen  
 “ of the Meadows, Water Germander and Mari-  
 “ golds, of each a Quart ; or instead of the dis-  
 “ til’d Waters, take a large Handful of each of  
 “ these, infuse them in four Quarts of boiling  
 “ Water. Give your Horse two Pints of this In-  
 “ fusion every Day, with half an Ounce of *Venice-*  
 “ *Treacle* or *Mithridate* dissolv’d in each Pint ; and  
 “ if you add camphorated Spirit of Wine, it will  
 “ be yet more efficacious, which may be done in  
 “ the Manner following.

“ Take Spirit of Wine rectify’d, or *French*  
 “ Brandy, half a Pint, dissolve in it two Drachms  
 “ of



“ of Camphire, let two or three Spoonfuls of it be  
 “ mixt with each Dose of the Cordial-Infusion,  
 “ and it will be a great Means to overcome the  
 “ Malignity of the Distemper.

The sick Horse must be kept in warm Clothing, and his Body often rub'd; but if the Distemper proceeds from Infection, the Sound ought to be remov'd from the Unsound, and the Stable perfum'd, by burning Pitch, Frankincense, Olibanum, Green-Juniper-Wood, and the like.

If the Distemper goes off like the Glanders, by a Discharge of stinking corrupt Matter from the Nose, as is not uncommon in such Cases, Diascordium, dissolv'd in a Decoction, or Infusion, of Red-rose Leaves, as in the preceding Chapter, may be given him for several Days; the like may be done in Case of any Impostumation.

A Medicin  
 of the *Sieur*  
*de Solleysell*.

I shall put an End to this Chapter, by inserting a Medicin of the *Sieur de Solleysell*, which he recommends in pestilential Fevers, and with which that Author perform'd a considerable Number of Cures in *Germany*, when there happen'd to be a great Mortality among the Horses in that Country. The Medicin was this.

“ Take Treacle not above three Months old, and  
 “ Aloes *Hepatica* in Powder, of each an Ounce,  
 “ Confection of Hyacinth and Alkermes without  
 “ Musk or Ambergrease, of each half an Ounce,  
 “ dissolve them in a Decoction of Scabious, *Carduus*  
 “ *Benedictus* and Speedwel, of each a large Hand-  
 “ ful. The said Author observes, that the distilled Waters of those Herbs were more effectual than the Decoction; but that might be accidental: For he must have had a vast many Instances before he could be sure of their different Efficacy. But we shall proceed to his Method, because it is better than what we have hitherto met with in any Author, or known practis'd by any of our Farriers.

The next and the following Day after this Medicin was exhibited, he injected Clysters; and if the Violence of the Distemper was not abated, the Remedy was again repeated only with half the  
 Quantity



Quantity of the Treacle, Aloes and Confections ; but the Quantity of the Decoction was the same. This he affirms to have cured all the Horses to which it was given. I shall here observe, that the chief Efficacy this Medicine can have against the Plague, lies in the Decoction and Treacle, the Confections of Alkermes and Hyacinth being very costly ; and yet the one will scarcely be found to excel our common Syrup of Clove-Gilly-flowers ; and as the other is chiefly proper in a Lax or Looseness, it may perhaps have check'd the Operation of the Aloes, and chang'd it into an Alterative, which may still be better done by a due Mixture of Salt of Tartar.

## C H A P. X.

*Of a Hectick Fever.*

**T**H O' the above mentioned Author has taken no Notice of this sort of Fever in his Treatise of Diseases, yet as most other Writers have given it a Place in their Performances, and likewise since it is a Distemper that is not uncommon in our Islands, where Horses are not so well us'd as in *France*, we have therefore in like manner given it a Place here.

A *Hectick Fever* is very often accompany'd with an internal Ulcer in the Lungs, or sometimes with an Infirmary in the Liver, and then it is often attended with the Yellows or Jaundice ; but there being little or no Hopes of Recovery in either of these Cases, we shall consider it only as the Effect of some other Disease, where the solid Parts are wore and abraded, but not much broken.

The Cause is from Weakness first brought on the Body of a Horse by some Mismanagement ; as bad Keeping, or other hard Usage ; or it is often the Effects of some previous Sickneſs, which has gone off by some imperfect *Crisis*, or by the Excess

The Causes  
of a Hec-  
tick Fever.



or Suppression of some usual Evacuation. But there is nothing contributes more to bring on *Hectick* Disorders than an unskilful and injudicious Use of Physick; for by this means many Horses, from a Presumption of carrying off foul Humours, have their vital Spirits so far wasted, as to be insufficient to answer the common and usual Functions of Life.

The Signs.

And from hence the Signs of this Distemper are manifest; for tho' there are many of the common Symptoms of a legitimate Fever accompanying this, as Heat, Driness of the Mouth and Tongue, and few or no Intermittions of the Disease, excepting after Feeding, that the Fever is a little more rais'd, and the Spirits more active than at other times; yet the least Exercise brings them again to their dejected State, and the Horse is scarcely able to move, but looks tir'd and jaded, as if he had undergone some violent Exercise; his Flesh becomes flabby, and while he stands in the Stable, he breaks out into frequent and repeated Sweats, which still add to the Decays of Nature, and consequently administer to this sharp and lingering Fever. If the Disease be accompany'd with an internal Ulcer of any kind whatsoever, it may be distinguished by its Extremes; for wherever there is an internal Ulcer, it will be sometimes choaked up by Inflammation; and until a fresh Discharge be made, or that the Blood by a more free and easy Perspiration has room to disperse itself into its proper Channels, the Horse will then discover the Signs of violent Pain in some particular Part, with a more than ordinary Augmentation of the Fever. But of this more particularly in another Place; for here we suppose the inward Parts, if at all, to be but slightly touch'd.

The Cure.

The Cure consists in a due Administration of all those things that are proper to recover Nature, and whatever does that, will by degrees remove the Distemper; and it must therefore be a very good Token of Recovery, when a Horse improves and mends upon an Augmentation of his Feeding; whereas



whereas the contrary will always be of bad Prognostication.

But what is more particularly to be done in this Case, conſiſts, firſt of all, in the diſpenſing of ſuch things as are proper to abate the Heat and feveriſh Symptoms; for which purpoſe Recourſe may be had to thoſe Helps, which have already been given for the Removal of a ſimple and legitimate Fever, only with this Caution, That Bleeding is not altogether ſafe, but when there is a Suſpicion of Pain and Inflammation in the Lungs, or other internal Parts, which is diſcoverable by an Oppreſſion, and unuſual heaving of the Flanks, &c. Neither are Clyſters profitable here, but will rather prove hurtful, unleſs when the Symptoms are increas'd by an over-great Coſtiveness; and in ſuch a Caſe thoſe of the moſt eaſy and mild Operation are only to be exhibited.

*Secondly*, Becauſe Reſtoratives are proper in *Hectick* Diſeaſes, theſe ſhould be ſo contriv'd, as to come, as much as poſſible, into the Diet of a Horſe; and for that Reaſon Mallows, Mercury, Agrimony, Melilot, Horehound, and the like, or ſuch others of the ſame kind as are not of nauſeous Taſte and Smell, may be mixed with his Hay, at leaſt upon Trial, becauſe ſome Horſes will eat thoſe things. The Powder of *Diapente*, which is ſufficiently in the Acquaintance of all Farriers, may be very profitably given in this Caſe; not ſimply, as it is a Reſtorative, but as it contributes to ſtrengthen the Stomach, and helps Diſteſtion. And in fine, all pectoral Balls, ſuch as ſhall be ordered in broken-winded conſumptive Caſes, may alſo be exhibited with Succeſs. His Corn ought to be given him only by handſuls at a time, but pretty often: And if the diſeaſed Horſe has been uſed to eat Bread, Loaves made of Barley and Flour mixed together, will make up one convenient part of Diet for him. As for his Drink, two or three good handſuls of *French-Barley* ſhould be boi'd in it; for Barley thus uſed makes a very good Reſtorative, and helps to abate the Acrimony that is ſo conſtant a Concomitant of thoſe Diſeaſes.



Thirdly, Moderate Exercise is also very necessary, and therefore he should be walked out gently every Day when the Weather permits, and that may be increas'd according as he recovers Strength.

And lastly, his Cloathing ought not to be heavy, nor his Dressing more than is usual at other times; because in all such Disorders there is already too great a Propensity to sweat.

## C H A P. XI.

### *Of Intermittent Fevers.*

**A**LL Fevers are said to intermit, that have any sensible Space between the *Paroxysms* or Fits free from the Disease; and therefore under this Title are included *Quotidians*, viz. those which return once, or oftner, every Day: *Tertians*, those that return only once every other Day; and *Quartans*, such as seize a Horse only every third Day: But these proceed from one and the same Cause, and admit of the same Method of Cure.

The Cause  
of intermit-  
ting Fevers.

Now all those things that can any ways weaken and destroy the natural Tone of the Stomach, may very readily bring on intermitting Fevers; and therefore they are oftentimes the Effect of some Fever, Surfeit, or Cold, taken in low marshy Grounds, which have never been clearly carried off, but by their long Continuance have left a Debility and Weakness behind them; the eating Herbs that are of a cold viscid Nature, and which grow plentifully in some Seasons, may also give Origin to intermitting Distempers. But nothing contributes more to the bringing on of such Disorders, than an unskilful and frequent use of Physick, for as the Stomach is usually the first Scene of Action for all such things, it is easy enough to conceive how the Tone of its Fibres may be relax'd or broke, so as to render it unfit to perform Digestion as it ought to do; and therefore as the Aliment is not sufficiently comminuted in the Stomach, a great deal of  
its



its gross and viscid Parts must be transmitted into the Mass of Blood, and thereby retard its Motion in the small Vessels of the Extremities.

The Signs are first a Coldness, with Trembling, The Signs. accompanied with a Debility and Lassitude, which is succeeded by an extreme Heat and Drought, that suddenly terminates in a plentiful Sweat, and as soon as that is over, the Horse will feed and appear as if he was quite recover'd, untill another Fit overtakes him.

But in order to the Cure, it will be necessary to remember that the Blood, in all intermitting Fevers, is render'd thick and viscid; and therefore to bring the Distemper to a Solution, it is necessary that those Viscidities should be broke; and this happens during the hot Fit, so that a great deal of that *Lentor* is thrown off in Sweat; but because the Stomach continues still in its weak and debilitated Condition, there is therefore a constant Supply of fresh Viscidity communicated to the Blood, for which Reason the Disease returns. But if there be no Alteration in the Habit of the Body, the Disease will be apt to return at certain times, and the Intervals between the *Paroxysms*, or Fits, will be equal, because while we suppose near the same Quantity of the common and usual Food to be eat, and that there is the same Capacity of Digestion left in the Stomach; and moreover, that all the common Discharges are the same, or near the same, in any given Space, *viz.* in 48 or 72 Hours (which constitutes the Intervals in Tertians and Quartans) therefore the Blood will probably in that time acquire a Degree of Viscidity equal to what it had before the beginning of that Space, that is, immediately before the Solution of the preceding Fit, and therefore another Fit will be apt to return at the same distance of time. But if any Alteration happens, whereby the Stomach may be render'd yet more weak; or if a Food of harder Digestion than what is usual happens to be eat in that time; or if the common Discharges happen to be more than ordinarily obstructed; or if a more than ordinary Quantity of the thinner Parts of the



Blood be exhausted, then the Fits will, probably, return oftner, by reason the same Degree of Viscidity will be sooner ingendered in the Blood. But if between the Intervals the Stomach gathers more Strength, and the Blood becomes more attenuated and thin, whether those Changes happen by the use of proper Exercise, Diet, or Physick, then the Fit will not return at its usual time, but, if at all, its Return will be later, for the Reasons already alledg'd; and if the same Oeconomy of Diet and Physick be continued, the Blood must yet become more attenuated, and the Stomach will acquire its wonted Tone; so that of Consequence there will be no further Return of the Disease.

From all which it is evident, that the Cure of intermittent Fevers consists not in those things that are necessary barely to remove the Fit, for that happens naturally by a determin'd Increase of the Quantity of viscid Blood, distending the small Vessels, and an habitual Aptitude in the sudorifick Pores to cast off the *Lentor* by Sweat; but that Aptitude constitutes Part of the Disease, and is rather to be cur'd than encourag'd; and therefore such Medicaments are to be us'd as will be of Efficacy, not only to break those Viscidities which obstruct the Capillaries and small Vessels, but also to draw up the Solids into such a Tensity, and recover their Vigour to such a Degree as is necessary to prevent the Increase of such Matter for the time to come, for it is by this last Intention that Digestion and a due Communion of the Juices is to be perform'd.

The Cure.

Therefore if a Horse labouring under this Distemper be young, and has not been too much wore out by the Continuance of his Sicknes, a moderate Quantity of Blood may be taken from the Neck-Vein; but this must be done with Discretion, for if the Horse be old, or much wore with the Distemper, it will do him more hurt than good.

Immediately after the Fit is over, give your Horse an Ounce of the following Powder in red Wine and Water, and let the Dose be repeated  
three



three or four times a Day, that if possible the Return of the Fit may be prevented.

‘ Take Gentian Root, two Ounces, Camomile Flowers, Gallangal, Zedoary, of each one Ounce, Myrrh, and Gum Gujaicum, of each an Ounce and a half (or if he be a Horse of small Value, two Ounces of the Bark of Sassafras, or an Ounce of Oak-Bark, may be substituted in the room of the Gum) make these into a fine Powder.

But if there be a Tendency to a Lax or Looseness, in such a Case every Dose of the Powder may be made up into a dry Pafle with Diascordium, and given him either whole, or dissolv’d, in any convenient Liquor, for a Looseness is above all things to be prevented, because in all aguish Distempers it contributes to the Diminution of a Horse’s Strength.

I knew a Horse once cur’d of an intermitting Distemper by repeated Doses of *Diapente* given in Ale; and an Eminent Farrier told me he had cur’d two or three Horses of Agues only with the Juice of Rue given them in a Morning fasting; but the Efficacy of this Herb seems to be more adapted to Diseases of greater Malignity; as for the *Diapante*, it is compos’d of the Powders of the Roots Gentian, Birthwort, Myrrh, Bay-Berries, Shavings of Hart’s-horn, or Ivory, of each an equal Quantity. These Ingredients (the Hart’s-horn only excepted) are the same with those of the *Electuarium Diatesseron* of the London Dispensatory, which claims a very antient Father in Physick for its Author, and are not improper in the intermitting Diseases of Horses, especially when there are things of more Efficacy join’d with them.

But since the Virtues of the Jesuits-Bark are sufficiently known, and its Effects manifest in the Cure of those Distempers in humane Bodies, it may, no doubt, be given with good Success to Horses, as the Oeconomy of both is in many Respects the same; and I am the more ready to introduce this Medicine into the Farriers Practice,



because I knew it given with Success to a fine young Horse, that was so much addicted to sweating, that he became very weak, and his Flesh grew exceeding flabby; and indeed it cannot but do singular Service in all Cases where the Stomach is weak, and the solid Parts relax'd; and I am of Opinion, had the Virtues of this celebrated Drug been known in the *Sieur de Solleysell's* Time, he had, without doubt, given it a Place in many of his Cures, and would have found its Use preferable to that of the Liver of Antimony in most of the same Intentions where that was found successful.

Now as the most simple Preparations of the Bark, for the most part, prove more efficacious than those that have more Time and Labour bestow'd on them, it may be the better comply'd with; and therefore if the sick Horse be of any Value or Service, and has got such a Fever as we are now treating of, take a quarter of a Pound of this Drug made into a fine Powder, and divide it into six Papers, for so many Doses. Give one, as soon as the Fit is quite gone off, in any common Liquid that is not purgative; and let two more be repeated in the space of twelve Hours, and a fourth two Hours before the Return of the next Fit. And if the Fit returns but once in two Days, then the Bark may be repeated in the same manner the Day following; but if there is no return of the Fit at its usual time, three or four Doses more will go nigh to make a Cure. If a Looseness happens it may be given in *Diascordium*, as the Powder above prescrib'd, untill such time as that Symptom goes off, because during the Looseness the Medicine loses much of its Efficacy, as also if it be given in time of the Fit.

And because every thing is proper in this Case, that may any wise contribute to forward the Circulation of the Blood in the Capillaries and small Vessels, therefore a chewing Ball ought to be ty'd to his Bit, for an Hour, or half an Hour, every Morning, excepting when the Fit is upon him; and he will, doubtless, recover much the sooner,



sooner, if he be rid out gently for two Hours every Day, there being nothing that contributes more to invigorate the Stomach, and strengthen all the solid Parts, than a moderate and continued use of Exercise.

His Oats should be clean and nourishing; and tho' he should have but little Feeding at a time, yet that should be often; and if he has been accustomed to Bread, the finest will agree with him, but nothing that is harsh and scouring.

Good rubbing will be of great Service to him, especially when the Distemper begins to wear off, because that also keeps a Horse in a sort of moderate Exercise; but if he be empty, or was but newly reliev'd of his Fit, in that Case he ought not to be over-much fatigu'd.

## C H A P. XII.

*Of SURFEITS.*

**B**Ecause this is a Term frequently us'd among Farriers, and all sorts of People, to signify a Disease, we have thought convenient to conclude this Discourse of Fevers with a short Account of those Disorders that go under that Denomination.

By a Surfeit is principally understood all such Maladies as proceed from excessive and immoderate Feeding, but especially upon unwholsome Provender, from Cold, or hard Riding, &c. whereby the Horse comes to forsake his Food, grows lean, and sometimes will be infested with hard Swellings, which, if they happen to fall upon the Joints, will, in Process of time, occasion Lameness, and many other Disorders.

What is generally meant by Surfeits.

Now whatever be the original Cause of Surfeits, whether they proceed from Cold, Excess of Feeding, or Labour, or from any Disposition of the Air or Climate; it is very certain, that what goes under the Notion of Surfeits, is no other than that



that which follows the imperfect Solution of any Disease; but those which proceed only from a glut of Provinder, and the like, being the most simple, are easy to be cur'd, as their Cause is the most simple; whereas those on the other hand proceeding from more complicated Causes, are often the Effects of Chronick Distempers, and therefore must be hard and difficult, and oftentimes prove incurable.

But this will be better understood, if we examine somewhat more narrowly into that kind of Surfeit which proceeds from Feeding, for by the Knowledge thereof, all that is necessary concerning Surfeits will be the more intelligible, as it is that alone which truly and properly speaking constitutes a Surfeit.

A Surfeit  
describ'd.

We are then to suppose, that while the Stomach is constantly receiving Food, and as constantly transmitting fresh Supplies of Chyle to the Mass of Blood, that all the Blood-Vessels must become distended and full, insomuch that the superfluous Moisture cannot be carried off thro' the Pores of the Extremities in such Quantity as is necessary, by reason that these Pores are not of sufficient Capacity and Magnitude, that is to say, they are not wide enough to give vent to so much Matter; and therefore the Distention of the Vessels will still be more increased; and as the grosser Excrements must also be augmented, from the constant Supplies of Food, the Guts must thereby receive more than can be discharg'd in the usual and natural Way; but this will be easily apprehended by any one who considers the slow Progress of the Dung in the intestinal Tube, which is of very great length from the Stomach to the Fundament, and is wound up into many Circumvolutions and Turnings, as is visible when the Belly of any Creature is laid open; and therefore when the first Passages, and likewise all the Blood-Vessels, are thus cram'd, a Fever must be created; but because the Oppression is so very great, that Nature cannot support it long before she discharges herself of the Burden; therefore wherever the *Nisus*, or *Impetus*, is most, there



there she breaks forth sometimes like a Flood, and if that happen to be in Sweat, the sudorifick Pores are open, and stretch'd to such a Degree, that the Distemper will be quite solv'd, and all the other Passages made glib and easy, so that the Excretions of another Kind begin all to loosen and fall off thro' their proper Ducts; but if the Solution happens not to be universal, tho' the Fever be in a manner abated and quite gone, yet because the internal Glands, but particularly those of the Guts, for this is most to our present purpose, are not at all, or at least sufficiently open'd, therefore the harden'd Excrements are no ways loosen'd from their Adhesions, but continue fastned by a sort of glutinous and viscid Matter to the Sides of that Canal. But while the Dung is in this manner pent up, it ingenders a more than ordinary Degree of Putrefaction, and its Acrimony and Sharpness becomes a Stimulus to the Guts, and by its Vellication occasions a more than ordinary Quantity of Liquor to be drain'd from the intestinal Glands, so that the Excrements are at length cast forth by a Looseness, and are discharg'd in a very great Quantity; and now Nature being more at Liberty by a plentiful Discharge of the Dung, the Blood is thereby put into a brisker Motion, by which it dilates itself, and flows with more Ease and in greater Quantity into the small Vessels towards the Extremities of the Skin, so that if its Texture be thin and moveable, it will either cause an Hemorrhage at the Mouth or Nose, by a distraction of the small Fibres, or will otherwise break out in little Pustules among the Hair, which will also be accompanied with Sweat; and then the Disease will probably come to a speedy Issue; but if the Blood has acquir'd a more than ordinary Viscidity, during the Lentor and Continuance of the Dung in the Guts, which is most likely, and what usually happens in such Cases; it will then be apt to stagnate in some places more than others, and cast off the Remainder of the Disease in Boils and Swellings, such as we often observe after Surfeits.



In what  
Manner Sur-  
feits are to  
be distin-  
guish'd.

We may therefore determine all such Tumours, or other Excrescences, as are the Effects of an over Plenitude and Fullness, to be, properly speaking, what belongs to a Surfeit; and when the like Symptoms proceed from the imperfect Discharges of any Cold, whereby the Passages of Perspiration have been suddenly obstructed, they then bear a near Affinity to the former, as a Lentor of the Bowels is oftentimes previous, or, at least, a Concomitant of such a Cold. And if such Swellings be the Result of a putrid or malignant Fever, that has not been of long Continuance before the Disease was brought to a Solution, tho' these may undoubtedly be worse than the other, yet they only differ in Degree, and require the same Method of Cure; and with these may be class'd all such as happen after any kind of violent Exercise that has not been of long Continuance, and which proceed from some slight Disorder arising from thence. But if the same outward Symtoms, or rather Symptoms, having the same outward Appearances, proceed from long continued and hard Labour, by which the Machine is, as it were, broke and quite disorder'd; or if they be the Effects of hecick or intermittent Fevers, or any other internal Malady, that has been of such Duration as to waste and decay the Body, and pervert the natural Juices, they are in this Case not to be deem'd Surfeits, or the immediate Effect of Surfeits, but to be look'd upon as what will constitute Ulcers of the worst kind; but as we have allotted a particular Place for the Cure of all sorts of Tumours and Ulcers, which the Reader may consult at his Leisure, we shall therefore only in this Place take notice of Surfeits, and the Accidents that are more especially peculiar to them.

The Cure.

When the Farrier observes a Horse to be surfeited, and under a heavy Oppression from the want of the common and usual Discharges, he ought, in the first Place, to take Blood from the Neck Vein, and after raking him with his Hand, give him an emollient Clyster, with a larger than ordinary Quantity of Oil or Hog's-Lard in it, the better  
to



to lubricate the Passages ; after which, if he has no Fever, or, at least, but a slight one, he may give him the following purging Drench.

‘ Take of Sena, one Ounce, Sweet-Fennel Seeds, Coriander, or Carraway Seeds, of either half an Ounce, Salt of Tartar, one Dram, infuse them in a Quart of boiling Water, pass the Infusion thro’ a Sieve, or pour it off by Inclination, and when it is cold, add to it an Ounce of the Powder of Jalap.” This must be given in the Morning, and the Horse kept fasting for the Space of four Hours before and after it ; and as soon as his Drench begins to work he must be walk’d gently, till the most of its Operation is over ; His Water should be warm and strew’d with Oatmeal or Barley Flower, and nothing should be given him that is cold. And here I cannot but take Notice of a ridiculous Custom that has of late been practised both among Farriers and Grooms ; and that is, giving a Horse his Belly full of cold Water to promote the Operation of purging Physick ; the Effect of this must be by creating cholic Disorders in the Guts, as I have often observ’d, and afterwards it never fails to operate to Excess ; but if Horses of Strength and Vigour can scarcely overcome such Shocks, it must go very hard with those that are weak and infirm, all which is demonstrable ; but I should think common Reason sufficient to dissuade People from such palpable Folly, therefore we shall say nothing further about it, but return where we left off.

The Day after the Physick, chewing Balls are to be us’d for an Hour in the Morning, and then he ought to be rid out for Air and Exercise, and at his Return he may be permitted to eat a few boil’d Oats with Bran, his Water should be warm all that Day, because the Effects of the Physick may not be quite wore off ; and the Day following his Physick may be repeated, with an Addition of two Drams of *Diagridium*, provided he be a Horse of Strength. But if after all this he breaks out into Boils, and inflam’d Swellings, which, as has been observ’d, happen, for the most part, after an im-

A Caution  
against cold  
Water when  
a Horse has  
taken a  
purging  
Drench.

perfect



perfect Solution, then the use of purging must be laid aside, unless he turn very costive, and in that Case mild Glisters may be injected, and because Nature must always be assisted in her own way, therefore let him have plenty of warm Water, strew'd with Oatmeal, and acidulated with *Sal Prunellæ*, purify'd Nitre, or the like, to promote Urine, and to dilute and ripen the Humours; and if he be a Horse of Value, he may have a Pint of Milk-Water, with half a Pint of Treacle-Water, given him, and repeated the Day following; but this is more especially to be comply'd with, if the Tumors be the Result of a putrid and malignant Fever; for in this, and all other such Cases, if any Evacuation be made otherwise than by such things as are proper to excite a gentle Breathing through the Pores, and promote the Secretions by Urine, &c. Nature will be very apt to alter her Course into that which is not so agreeable to her; so that not being able to make a full Discharge, the Relicks of the Disease will be still left behind; and those things that are made use of with an Eye to assist her, will, probably, instead of that, weaken her yet more; and it is from such contradictory Methods that so many Horses lose their Appetite, or if they be able to eat plentifully, they notwithstanding look lean and jaded, and are unable to do proportionable Service; and it is from such Mismanagement that the Mange, Farein, Lameness, Blindness, and the whole Train of chronical Diseases very often take their Origin.

---

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *Of the Diseases of the Head.*

General Observations concerning Diseases of the Head.

**W**E find in Books several Diseases rank'd under this Title, that are seldom met with in the Farriers Practice, at least, not distinguish'd, unless it happens that some honest well meaning Person may take it upon trust, from those Signs which



which have been attributed to them by his favorite Author. But yet it is very certain, that a Horse is often subject to Diseases, which in a more especial manner affect that Part; and if his Food was not more simple and agreeable to Nature, he would undoubtedly be more subject to such Diseases than Man, because of the prone Position of his Head, which must occasion a greater Influx of Blood into the Brain, and also forward, upon the Eyes, Mouth, and Nose.

Markham has in his Catalogue enumerated all those Diseases that are peculiar to Man, but in Horses they are very hard to be distinguish'd, because of the Similitude of the common Symptoms; neither has the *Sieur de Solleysell* mended the Matter very much, having confusedly scatter'd them here and there in his Writings, excepting only that he has classed some together which were the Concomitants of a great Sickness that happen'd in *France* and *Germany* in his Time; but these were improperly term'd Diseases of the Head, being only the Attendants of that Sickness. We shall therefore go on a little more methodically in explaining those Disorders, as they seem most agreeable to the State and Condition of that Animal; and that we may avoid all useless Divisions, we shall take them in the Method which seems to be the most natural.

---

C H A P. XIV.*Of the Headach.*

THIS has had a particular Place among the Diseases of the Head, both by the *Physicians* and *Farriers* in all Ages; the last have made no Distinction, but the *Physicians* have distinguished between a Headach, which they term *Idiopathick*, as it proceeds from a Cause without the Blood-vessels, and that which they call *Sympathetick*, being the



the Concomitant of some other Disease: But our Business here is only with the first kind, since the other is but a Symptom, which must of Course wear off with the Disease to which it belongs.

As to the Cause, it is believed to proceed from a Distraction of the Fibres of some Blood-vessels in the Brain or Membranes thereof, occasioned by some of the smallest Particles of the *Serum* being struck into the Pores or *Interstices* of the said Vessels, by the frequent Occursions of the Blood.

The Signs are, according to *Markham*, the hanging down of the Horse's Head and Ears, dropping of his Urine, Dimness of Sight, swollen waterish Eyes: But these are common to divers other Diseases; and I am truly of Opinion such a Headach cannot be easily distinguished in brute Creatures, that want the Faculty of Speech, and therefore cannot declare their Infirmities: But however, if a Horse has such Symptoms without a Fever, and if it be observ'd that he often puts his Head against the Stall or Manger, it will be very proper to have Recourse to some Remedy; for which purpose we recommend Bleeding, Purging and Rolling, as also the Use of chewing Balls, &c.

## C H A P. XV.

### *Of the Stavers or Staggers.*

*Apoplexy.* **I**N order to the Knowledge of this Distemper, it will be necessary first of all to enquire into the Nature of an *Apoplexy* and *Vertigo*, for without some Insight into these, the other can never be rightly understood.

First then, as to an *Apoplexy*, that is usually defin'd a Privation of Sense and Motion, excepting only a weak and languid one in the Heart and Breast; and this proceeds either from a Cause without the Vessels, viz. when the Blood or any other Fluid happens to break out of some Vessel within the Brain, or when there happens to be  
preter-



preternatural Bones or Tumours bred and contained within the Skull, or any other extraneous Matter that may in any sort press upon the soft Substance of the Brain causing those deadly Disorders. But this is a *Species* that is incurable, and for the most part seizes suddenly, without any foregoing Tokens and Warnings; but the other proceeds from some Cause within the Vessels, whereby the Arteries, which are woven into the *Pia Mater*, or innermost Membrane of the Brain, or that part of it which involves the Trunk of all the Nerves, becomes over-much extended; so that by the Pressure of these Vessels upon them, Sensation is intercepted, and Motion lost.

Thus in an *Apoplexy* Sense and Motion are in a manner quite lost, because of the Pressure that is made upon the Origin of all the Nerves that arise from the Head: But in a *Vertigo*, Objects that are at rest appear as if they were turning round, and by that means occasion any Creature to reel and stagger: And this proceeds from the Vibrations and Tremors of the Optick Nerve, whereby the Images falling not directly, but successively upon the different Parts of the *Retina*, an Object that is at rest, will therefore appear as if it was turning round; and this may be occasioned, either when an Animal is fearful of falling, or from a Repletion and Overfulness of those Arteries which are situated near the Optick Nerve, which, by pressing upon the Brain, will cause a shaking in that Nerve. But our Business is only with the last.

Now if we examine a little carefully into all the different Appearances of that Distemper, which Farriers call the *Stavers* or *Staggers*, we shall find them reducible to one of these Maladies above described.

For, first of all, if we consider that sort which is the most simple, viz. when a Horse suddenly falls down upon the Road in a very hot Day; or when he falls upon hard Riding, we shall find nothing in the Cause of this Disorder, but what is in one of the former; and the Reason of this is easy enough to be conceived, and will happen to a Horse, whether

The Staggers reducible to the one, or the other, prov'd by Instances taken from the various Appearances of that Disease.



ther he be in good or bad Case ; for when the Blood is put into a more than ordinary Motion by any hard Exercise, it will easily flow into the Brain of a Horse in greater Quantity than can be readily return'd by the Veins ; and therefore the Origin of the Nerves will be press'd upon by the distended Vessels, so as to intercept the Animal Juices, or otherwise these may be sent forth in such disorderly manner as to occasion a Horse's falling down ; but in this kind, when a Horse has lain some little space, and that the Impulse of the Blood ceases, it then flows more regularly thro' the Veins, by which the Arteries become less distended, and the Horse recovers his Senses, and rises up as from Sleep. Thus the Head is affected the same manner as in an *Apoplexy* ; but as there is little or no Fault supposed to be in the Blood, the Horse soon recovers, and oftentimes without the Assistance of any Application.

There is another kind of Staggers which resembles the former, and also affects the Head in the same manner as an *Apopleck* Disorder, and that is when a Horse falls down while at Grass : And this sort I have observ'd happen to Horses the first or second Day after they were turn'd out ; for while they feed with a more than ordinary Intensity with their Head constantly down towards the Ground, the Blood must flow in a more than ordinary Quantity to the Brain ; and while the Head is in this dependent Situation, the Blood in its Return must ascend upwards : So that if a Horse's Head be kept long in that Posture, but especially if the Blood be viscid, and unapt to Motion, it will undoubtedly obstruct the small Arteries, and cause a Horse to fall by the Pressure of those Arteries upon the Nerves.

But that kind of Staggers whereby a Horse falls down in the Stable, or when he is newly brought out into the Light, or when his Exercise is but moderate, it is either a true *Apoplexy*, or a *Vertigo*, or perhaps both ; but when a Horse reels and runs round, being some time under the Disorder before he falls, that is plainly a *Vertigo* : And if after a  
Horse



Horse has thus fallen down, he immediately rises up again, but looks stupid and blind, reels and falls again, knocking his Head against the Boards or Walls, these are also for the most part Signs of a *Vertigo*; for what sometimes happens of that kind in a Frenzy, comes not properly under this Denomination (though most of our Authors confound them together) unless it be that sort of Frenzy, which may proceed from extraneous Matter lodg'd on the Brain or its Membranes. But all these Symptoms we have now mention'd, may, and for the most part, do arise from a *Vertigo*; for here Sensation is not quite obstructed, but, as we suppose, a Vibration and Shaking of the Optrick Nerve, the Stable and every thing about him must seem to run round; and if he rise in this Condition, he must certainly fall, and that instantly.

Having thus given a short Account of the different kinds of *Staggers*, and the Causes thereof, we shall in the next place proceed to the Cure. And first of all, whether they arise from an *Apoplexy* or *Vertigo*, or only from an over-Repletion of the Blood-vessels of the Head by hard Riding, &c. the Method to be observed, as to the first Intentions, will be much the same; because even in the most simple kind we suppose the Blood to be somewhat faulty, therefore Blood must be taken pretty plentifully both from the Neck-Vein, and likewise from the Spavin or Flank-Vein, or from any other towards the hind Parts; but first from the Neck, because by opening that Vein, as it drains the Blood immediately from the Head, that Portion of the Blood, which is in the small Arteries in the Brain, as these are empty'd into the small Branches of the Vein that is opened, must undoubtedly give sudden Relief, and by that means take off from the Pressure upon the Nerves: But because the Head of a Horse is not in an erect Posture as that of a Man, but many Horses have the Position of their Heads only a little higher than their Shoulders, but especially as in all such Disorders a Horse is apt to flouch and hang his Head, a Revulsion is also to be made by opening a Vein behind, and

The Cure  
of the Stag-  
gers.

The Me-  
thod of  
bleeding  
Horses for  
Diseases in  
the Head.



this ought particularly to be observ'd in all Diseases of the Head; for although Blood taken from the Neck-Vein is very proper to give immediate Relief, yet a greater Quantity must thereupon flow into the Brain, since it is sufficiently known, that all inclosed Liquids will run towards a Vent; but when a Vent is made soon afterwards behind, then a greater Quantity of Blood will flow into the descending *Aorta*, and from thence backwards; so that a lesser Quantity will flow forwards towards the Head.

For which Reason, unless the Horse be weak, take immediately a Pint of Blood from the Neck; and when that Operation is over, open one of the Veins behind, and from thence let him Blood a full Quart. This alone will cure any stagger'd Horse, if so be his Disease is simple, and only of the first kind, and that he is afterwards kept to a moderate cleansing Diet, and is for some time thereafter hardened with proper Exercise.

But if the *Staggers* are the Result of a true and genuine *Apoplexy*, he must be exercised every Day with chewing Balls made of *Assa fœtida*, *Savin*, and the most noisome things that can be got; for those Smells will put him upon constant Action, and help to forward the Motion of the Blood in the small Vessels where it is obstructed.

After this, Recourse must be had to Clysters, to strong Purgatives; for which purpose we recommend the following Clyster out of *Salleyfell*.

“ Boil two Ounces of the *Scorie* of Liver of  
 “ Antimony, made into a fine Powder, in five Pints  
 “ of Beer; after five or six Warms remove it from  
 “ the Fire, adding a Quarter of a Pound of the  
 “ *Unguentum Rosatum*, inject it lukewarm. Instead  
 “ of the *Unguentum Rosatum* may be used Butter  
 “ or Hog's Lard. Or the following Clyster may  
 also be used.

‘ Take two bitter Apples, boil them in five  
 ‘ Pints of Water; pour off the Liquor, and mix  
 ‘ with it three Ounces of the Juice of the Buck-  
 ‘ thorn Berries, or four Ounces of the Syrup,  
 ‘ the same Quantity of Oil or Butter, as in the  
 ‘ former.



‘ former. These may be repeated two or three times; after which the following purging Drench may be given.

‘ Boil one bitter Apple in a Quart of Beer, and  
‘ after it has been strained out, and is become  
‘ almost cold, add to it an Ounce and a half  
‘ of the Powder of Jalap, and two Drams of  
‘ *Digridium*. This may be repeated two or three  
‘ times, if the Horse has Strength to bear it.

He ought also to be exercised and rub’d very well; and while he is under such Courses of Physick, his Water should be warm, and sprinkled with Oatmeal.

But that kind of Staggers, which is occasion’d from a *Vertigo*, requires a milder Method; and therefore a Clyster made of an Ounce of *Sena* boil’d in five Pints of Water, with four Ounces of common Treacle, with the usual Quantity of Oil or Lard, may be injected: And this may be also repeated for two or three Days: After which he may have a Drench of Beer given him, wherein Roots of Piony, *Angelica*, Rue, Rosemary, Flowers of Lavender, and the like, have been steep’d according to the following Prescription.

The Cure of  
a *Vertigo*.

‘ Take of the Roots of Male-Piony one Pound,  
‘ Roots of *Angelica* half a Pound, *Gallangal* bruised  
‘ four Ounces, Flowers of Lavender, Tops of  
‘ Rosemary and Rue, of each two Handfuls;  
‘ let them be infused in eight Gallons of new  
‘ Wort, and when it has sufficiently work’d, give  
‘ your Horse two Quarts every Day, keeping him  
‘ bridled an Hour before and after.

But if this Disorder happens to continue obstinate, and there are frequent Threatnings of a Relapse, such things must be used as will effectually eradicate the Cause; for which purpose we recommend the following Balls, viz.

‘ Take of *Cinabar* and the cleanest *Assa fetida*, of  
‘ each half a Pound; Bay-berries four Ounces,  
‘ *Castor* two Ounces:” But if the Horse be of small Value, and not worth the Expence of the *Castor*, it may be left out, though the Medicine will not perhaps be of such immediate Efficacy. ‘ These



‘ must be pounded in a Mortar until they are reduced into Powder ; after which they are to be made up into a Mass or stiff Paste, adding by degrees as much Oil of Amber as is sufficient for that purpose : Make them into Balls weighing an Ounce and a half each, whereof one is to be given every Morning in a Quart of the medicated Ale, standing bridled as above directed. The *Cinabar*, as all other Minerals, but especially as it abounds with Quick-silver, is therefore a most efficacious Remedy for opening Obstructions in the smallest Vessels : But the Reader may turn to that Part where we have treated of the *Farcin*, where its Virtues are taken Notice of at more Length.

But here it is to be remarked, That the last prescribed Remedies are not only proper in that kind of *Staggers*, where the Horse reels and turns round, but also in the other kind, when he falls on a sudden : For as in an *Apoplexy* Sense and Motion are taken away by a Pressure on all the Nerves, so in a *Vertigo* the Pressure is either in part, or else the nervous Juice is render’d more viscid and unapt to Motion than it ought to be, so as to occasion those Tremors, which are the more observable in the Optick Nerve, as they affect the Sight ; and therefore the chief Difference in the Cure lies only in this, That in *Apoplectick* Cases things of the greatest Efficacy must be used, even in the common Way of Evacuation, because Sense is so much destroyed in all Parts of the Body, that things of a milder Nature will do but little Service ; whereas in *Vertigo’s* Sensation not being altogether obstructed, at least in the Beginning, but render’d disorderly, the Purgations need only be such as will make moderate Evacuation, and these not long continued.

The common Way of curing the Staggers.

Most of our Farriers cure the *Staggers* by making Applications of things, that are of a hot and pungent Nature, to the Ears ; as Garlick, Rue, *Aqua vite*, Cloves, Ginger, Bay-Salt, and the like, which being stich’d up within the Ear, may, no doubt, be sometimes efficacious in those Cases that are simple (and which are indeed the most common) as they



they stimulate the tender and sensible Membrane, which covers those Parts, and thereby rouse the Blood to a quicker and brisker Motion; but these ought to be us'd with Caution and Circumspection, for I have seen Horses run stark mad when those Applications have been too strong; and it was with much ado they could be kept from knocking out their Brains against the Walls; and sometimes that violent Agitation, instead of giving Relief, makes the Fits return the oftener upon them, by deriving too much Blood into the Arteries of the Brain.

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of a Palsy.*

THE ancient Farriers, and many of the Country People to this Day, when they see a Horse or a Bullock have his Limbs suddenly taken from him, and not being able to think what should be the Cause of such an unexpected Change, believe him to be either *Planet-struck* or *Shrow-run*; but most or all those Accidents are owing to the *Palsy*, and therefore we shall include them under that Denomination.

A *Palsy* is an Inability to Motion, arising either from a Fault in the Blood or Animal Spirits, or from both together; and it seizes sometimes the whole Body, sometimes one Side, and sometimes a particular Part only.

A P. lfy  
defin'd.

When the Cause happens from the Animal Spirits, then Sensation is in a manner lost; and sometimes with an Inability to Motion also; and because the nervous Fluid is render'd thick, and unapt to Motion, and the Nerves themselves relax'd and moist, and consequently unfit for lively Vibrations. There will also be sometimes a Numbness and Insensibility to the Touch, but yet a Capacity of Motion may be preserv'd. But when a Palsy arises from a Fault in the Blood, viz. from an over-



great Humidity, or when it is render'd too thick : In the first Case the Muscles are stretch'd out in Length, and their Fibres relaxed, and by losing their Tone they become incapable of Contraction; and therefore though there may be a Distribution of the nervous Juice, yet Motion is lost by reason of that over-Relaxation, while at the same time Sense may remain; and in the other Case, though there be a Concourse of Spirits, yet the Blood is so thick, that it cannot be suddenly enough rarify'd to produce Motion. But, lastly, when the Blood and Spirits are both affected in a Palsy, then Sense and Motion will both be lost : And if the Nerves or Blood be affected within the Brain, then the Palsy will be accompany'd with an *Apoplexy* or *Vertigo*.

The Causes  
of a Palsy.

And therefore the Causes of a Palsy are all those things that may induce an over-great Humidity into the Blood and Spirits, so as to occasion a Relaxation and Looseness in the Canals or Fibres; or when the Blood alone is render'd so thick, that it cannot be suddenly rarify'd, by which means the Nerves and Animal Juices become also affected; and this is usually brought about either by a moist Temperament, Climate or Season, or the eating of cold viscid Herbs, but especially when a Horse goes in a wet marshy Pasture, and lies frequently on the cold wet Ground. The same Effects are also produced from things of an opposite Nature, as the internal Use of hot things; but our Business is only with that sort of Palsy which proceeds from Humidity, &c. the other seldom or never happening to Horses.

Its Cure.

In order to the Cure, the Horse should be exercised with chewing Balls made of Savin, Rosemary and Lavender-Flowers made into Powder and beat up with *Assa ferida*, and a sufficient Quantity of Oil of Amber; after which to be ty'd in a Rag, and fasten'd to the Bit, as usual: And at proper Intervals Clysters should be injected, such as have been ordered in an *Apoplexy*. But, as we suppose the Cause from an over-great Humidity and Relaxation of the Vessels, Bleeding is not necessary, but



but may rather prove hurtful, unless there should also be the Signs of an *Apoplexy*, and in that Case it will be very needful.

All hot things, as Mustard, Ginger, Pepper, and other Spices, but especially Mustard infus'd in Ale, will be proper to recover the Tone of the Fibres, and these may be given alone, or added to the Ale above directed in an *Apoplexy* and *Vertigo*. But as the external Parts are so sensibly affected in this Distemper, therefore Embrocations of hot and penetrating Oils and Spirits are to be rub'd wherever Motion is lost or impair'd, such as the Oil of Petre, Oil of Amber, Oil of Sassafras, and the like, mix'd with the Soldiers Ointment or Ointment of Marsh-mallows, with a small Quantity of Spirit of Sal Armoniack, or other volatile Spirit.

Sweating in a Dunghil, or with very warm cloathing, will likewise be of great Service; as also frequent Drinks of the Decoction of *Guaiacum*, *Sassafras*, &c. such as is prescribed for the Farcin.

Lastly, a Horse ought, in all Paralytick Cases, to be rowl'd in one or more Places; for by that means a great deal of the moist or viscid Matter will be discharg'd, and the Nerves and muscular Fibres strengthened.

## C H A P. XVII.

### *Of the Falling Evil and Convulsions.*

THE *Falling Evil* is that which, in the Physicians Terms, comes under the Denomination of an *Epilepsy*, and seems to be no other than an *Apoplexy* or *Vertigo*, accompany'd with Convulsions, either as the Cause or Effect.

In the *Falling Evil* a Horse drops down of a sudden, his Teeth and his Eyes become fix'd, but his Head and Body is shook and extremely agitated; Froth bubbles out of his Mouth, his Flanks heave and



and labour, and sometimes there is an involuntary Excretion of the Dung and Urine : All which arise from an involuntary and disorderly Motion of the Blood, and Animal Spirits rushing with greater Impetuosity into a Muscle of one side than that which is its Antagonist, so as to occasion a Vellication and Contraction of that Muscle ; and because there is not an equal Quantity of Blood and Spirits detached into the opposite Muscle, therefore that Member cannot be extended as well as contracted, but drawn one way, and the Part affected will continue immoveable, excepting in those violent Shocks and Agitations.

The Cause  
of Convul-  
sions.

The Cause of Convulsions are, *first*, whatever wastes or exhausts the Body or any of its Parts, as the taking away too much Blood, violent Purging or hard Labour, long Sickness. *Secondly*, Whatever fills the Body too much, and gives Origin to Obstructions in the Blood-vessels or Nerves, or brings a Debility and Weakness into the Stomach : And, lastly, Wounds, or whatever else causes Pain and Inflammation.

As to the Cure, it is the same with that of an *Apoplexy* or *Vertigo* ; only this general Rule is to be observed, That when it proceeds from Lowness, Evacuations by Blooding and Purging are to be laid aside, excepting where some Circumstances may make a moderate Use of them necessary, but as our *British* Horses are seldom troubled with these Disorders, excepting when they are occasioned by Wounds or other Things inducing exquisite Pain and Vellications in the more sensible Parts ; and because these will be taken Notice of in their proper Places, we shall therefore omit saying any thing further about them here.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Lethargy or Sleeping Evil.*

**T**HIS Distemper is as seldom to be met with as the former, yet because it has been treated



treated of by some of our Authors, we shall say as much concerning it as is needful.

*Markham* observes that it proceeds from Flegm, and that white and dun Horses being of a flegmatick Disposition, are most subject to it. But a *Lethargy* as near ally'd to those that have been the last describ'd, as possible, and is oftentimes their Companion, and is produced by the same Causes which bring on an *Apoplexy*, or any of the other Distempers peculiar to the Head. For in a *Lethargy*, tho' a Creature is not absolutely depriv'd of Sense and Motion, yet by a Pressure of the small Arteries upon the Nerves, and an over Thickness of the nervous Juice, both the external and internal Senses become dull, causing a perpetual Inclination to Sleep, which at length, as it impairs the Animal Faculty, weakens and decays the Body.

The Cure is in the Beginning to take a moderate Quantity of Blood, if your Horse be in good Case; but if he be very poor, and that the Disease has taken its Origin from *Exinanition*, then your Horse, if at all, is to be but sparingly bled or purged. The Cure.

But chewing Balls of the most foetid stinking things imaginable are to be us'd every Day, so far as the Horse's Strength is able to bear the Action; for these will help to rouse his Spirits, and put the Blood into a brisker Motion. And for the same purpose volatile Salts or Spirits, as those of *Armoniack* or *Harts-horn* may be sometimes held to his Nose. The *Cinabar* Balls, directed in an *Apoplexy* and *Vertigo*, ought also to be given him every Day, and continued for a considerable time, and Rowels or other Issues ought to be put into his Belly, but particularly a Hair-rowel put thro' his Skin behind the Poll of his Head, which alone will suffice, if the Horse be weak. In which Case also he must be well kept, by having Food often, though but little at a time. By this Method your Horse may be recovered, if he is not wore out with Age, or very much broke by the Continuance of his Disease.



## C H A P. XIX.

*Of the Frenzy and Madnefs in a Horfe.*

**A**LTHO' we are very well affur'd that our *British* Horfes are not often fubject to Madnefs, yet becaufe the *Italian* Authors, and likewife fome of our own, have rank'd it among the Difeaſes of the Brain, &c. we ſhall therefore, in obedience to Cuſtom, before we leave this Subject, take Notice of thoſe things that are the moſt likely to produce frantick Diforders.

The Cauſes  
of a Frenzy.

*First* of all then, a Frenzy may be caus'd by the exceſſive hurry of the Blood in a legitimate ſimple Fever; but that Symptom will very readily abate, by thoſe things that are proper to aſſuage the Violence of that Diſeaſe.

*Secondly*, Blood or Matter collected upon the Brain, or the Membranes that involve it, may occasion a Frenzy, whether that proceed from Wounds or Bruiſes, or from a Diſtraction or Rupture of the Veſſels, when they have been over-full and diſtended beyond Meaſure, or when there is any foreign Subſtance grown within the Skull; but then a Frenzy ariſing from ſuch Cauſes will probably end in ſudden Death.

*Thirdly*, A Frenzy may follow upon the bite of any venomous Creature; but this will affect the Head as a peſtilential or other malignant Fever; and, as to Internals, muſt be treated after the ſame manner; what relates more eſpecially to the Wound, ſhall be taken Notice of in its proper Place.

But *Laſtly*, That ſort of Frenzy, which in a more particular manner deſerves the Name of Madnefs, is what may happen without the Concurrence of any other Diſeaſe, and is moſt likely to proceed from exceſſive Luſt, occaſion'd by full Feeding, either in a Horſe or Mare, and when they are reſtrain'd from Copulation; for by this means many lively Images may be preſented to the Imagi-



Imagination, without any Certainty or Order, and like a Dream delude the Fancy; so that they will be apt to tear and rend every thing that comes before them. But this may also be cur'd by Bleeding and Purging, with the Concurrence of a low Diet, &c.

*The Stallion snuffs the well known Scent afar,  
And snorts and trembles for the distant Mare;  
Nor Bits nor Bridles can his Rage restrain,  
And rugged Rocks are interpos'd in vain;  
He makes his Way o'er Mountains, and contemns  
Unruly Torrents and unforded Streams.*

Dryden's Virgil. Georg. Book III.

*But far above the rest the furious Mare,  
Bar'd from the Male, is frantick with Despair;  
For when her pouting Vent declares her Pain,  
She tears her Harness, and she rends the Rein:  
For this when Venus gave them Rage and Pow'r,  
Their Master's mangled Members they devour,  
Of Love defrauded in their longing Hour.*

ibid.

## CHAP. XX.

### *Of the Diseases of the Eyes.*

THERE are no Diseases whereunto Horses are more liable than those that happen to the Eyes, the Reason of which will not be very difficult to any one who is acquainted with the Oeconomy of a Horse, but particularly with the Structure and Mechanism of the Eye, which is such a tender Part, and so sensible to the Touch, that the least foreign Matter from without, as a Grain of Sand, or a little Dust, will put any Creature into exquisite Pain, and the least Determination of Blood and Spirits from within, more than ought to come into those Parts by the common Course of Circulation, will have the same Effect. But when we consider the natural Activity of a Horse, and that the



the common Services requir'd of him, exposes him more to Heats and Colds, and to all manner of Fatigue and Toil, than any other Creature; and that of Consequence he is render'd more liable to Sicknefs, and such as is of the worst kind; he must therefore be more subject to Infirmities of the Eyes, and such as without a great deal of Care will be apt to end in absolute Blindness.

All Diseases of the Eyes proceed either from external or internal Causes, or from an ill Conformation of the Eye.

Now all the Diseases of the Eyes proceed either from external Causes, such as Wounds, Bruises, Dust, or other foreign Matter getting within the Eye-lids, or from internal Causes, such as are the Effect of Sicknefs, or any Indisposition of the Blood. And *Lastly*, A Horse may be render'd obnoxious to Diseases in his Eyes, from an ill Conformation of the Eye itself; as for Instance, when the Eye happens to be too large or too small, or when the *Pupil*, or clear transparent Part of the Eye is narrow, and somewhat longish, as is observable in many Horses; for in this Case the *Crystalline* Humour seems to be over-much compress'd by the circumambient Parts; and if any Rheum, or Flux of Humours happen to fall into an Eye that has this Defect in it, the Infirmary will readily increase, and in time the *Retina*, or Bottom of the Eye will be quite hid, so as to produce Blindness. Yet notwithstanding all these Imperfections, a Horse's Eyes may be very good if he be otherwise of a hearty Disposition; and they may continue good during his Life, if there be proper Care taken of him, and that he meets with no Accident; however, as all Diseases are the worse the more they are complicated, therefore when any Accident happens to the Eyes, its Cure will be the more difficult, where there is, besides the Disease, a natural Defect and Imperfection in the Eye itself.

Having thus distinguish'd between those Diseases of the Eyes that proceed from external Accidents, and those that arise from internal Causes, or from an ill Conformation of the Eye itself, or when there is a Complication of those Causes, we are in hopes, by this general Division, the Diseases incident



dent to the Eyes of Horses will be much the better understood, because all the different sorts of Blindness, and all other Accidents whatsoever happening to the Eyes, are reducible to one or other of these general Causes, which not being sufficiently attended unto by Farriers, has made those Cures hitherto very imperfect.

C H A P. XXI.

*Of a Wound or Blow on the Eye, as also of other external Accidents.*

**T**HE Diseases which are caused by outward Accidents become more or less dangerous to the Eyes, according as the Cause is more or less violent, but especially as the Horse happens to be in a good or bad State of Health when such Accidents befall him.

When the Cause is simple, as for Instance, proceeding only from Dust, or any other extraneous Matter blown into the Eyes, or when they are hurt by sharp frosty Winds, or the like, if these Disorders do not wear off immediately upon Rest, as is usual, then the Eye ought to be look'd into; and if there be any bit of sharp Sand or Gravel sticking to either Angle, it should be wip'd out with a bit of very fine Sponge, cut small at the Point, and ty'd with a wax'd Thread to the End of a Stick; if there is nothing to be seen, the most simple and easy Things in the beginning will go nigh to relieve them, and recover them to their usual Strength and Vigour, as a little Plantain and Red-Rose Water, or the Leaves of Plantain and Red-Roses boil'd in Water, washing the Eyes with the Decoction three or four times a Day blood-warm.

Small Accidents on the Eyes how cur'd.

But when a Horse receives a Wound or Blow on the Eye, or so near as to cause an Inflammation in the Eye. The first thing to be done in this Case is to open the Neck-Vein, taking from thence a moderate Quantity of Blood; and this I rather chuse than opening that near the Eye, be-

The Cure of a Wound or Blow.

cause



cause when the Neck-Vein is open'd, it will not cause so great a Derivation towards the Eye, as when the Eye-Vein is open'd, for when an Orifice is made too near the affected part, the Blood is apt to flow in an over-great Quantity towards that part, as we have already observ'd in another Place; and the Eyes being in a dependent Position, as they are situated in the lower Part of the Fore-head, the Blood therefore falls by a very easy Descent into them.

After Bleeding the Eye may be look'd into, but if it be so much swell'd that it cannot easily be open'd, as it often falls out, because of the immediate Flux of Blood into the Eye-Lids; then the following Application may be made, viz.

' Take Conserve of Red-Roses, spread it pretty  
' thick on a Pledgit of fine Flax or clean Hurds,  
' and lay it over the Eye, applying at the same  
' time above the Eye-pits, and about the Temples,  
' Flax dip'd in a Charge made with Vinegar, the  
' White of an Egg and Bole-Armonick; this, by  
' allaying the Heat, will put a check to the Blood,  
' and hinder it from flowing too fast towards the  
' Eye.

The whole Dressing ought to be cover'd with a Bandage of about four or five Inches broad; this may be made of pretty thick, but soft Canvas, stitch'd to the upper part of the Collar, so as to cover the half of the Face; when the Sorance is but in one Eye, it ought to reach to the Middle of his Nose, and to have a piece of strong Tape fasten'd to each of the lower Corners to tie behind; but this must be so easy as not to hinder the Action of the lower Jaw.

Bath or moisten the Edges of the Eye-lids with warm Honey of Roses and red Wine two or three times a Day. There will be no Occasion of torturing him too much, by forcing Medicines into the Eye, for in all such Cases those harsh Methods do more Harm than Good, for as the Eye is a tender sensible Part, it is to be us'd with all the Gentleness imaginable.

But



But because an Increase of the Quantity of Blood must certainly be prejudicial where the Eye is bruised or wounded, and has a great tendency to Inflammation; therefore, besides the opening of a Vein (a Method of dressing being now set on foot) some other Evacuations may be encourag'd, for which purpose he may have purging Clysters, or every now and then some kind of Physick that is very moderate; for strong purging, by putting the Blood in too great an Agitation, would be apt to make it flow over-readily into the diseased Part, which is to be avoided as much as possible; and therefore I prefer the use of Clysters to other Purging, in this Case especially, as we don't suppose any Fault in the Blood.

And therefore seeing the Body is only to be kept cool, so far as relates to Internals, a soluble Diet must also be very proper, giving him, instead of Oats, scalded Bran, as also now and then a Mash of Malt; and in his Water may sometimes be dissolved half an Ounce of purified *Nitre* or *Sal Prunellæ*, which will also contribute to the same End.

His Exercise ought to be gentle, such as will not excite too great a Heat, but rather cool and refresh his Body, and create an Appetite.

If there be the Appearance of proud Flesh upon the Wound, take Powder of Tutty finely levigated; and lay a little of it on the Excrescence once a Day; or thus, Take Tutty prepar'd, Burnt-Alum and Sugar-Candy in fine Powder, of each equal Parts, take a small Quantity of this Powder between your Finger and Thumb, and apply it upon the Fungus.

A Wound or Blow may be thus easily cur'd, if the Eye is not very much bruised, or if the Wound be but superficial and clear from the *Pupilla* of the Eye; but when it is otherwise, Death or Blindness may be expected.

When a Horse's Eye happens to burst somewhat out of its Socket, by the Violence of a Blow or Wound stretching or cutting the Muscles, the first thing to be done is to reduce it, and put



it carefully in its Place, applying the Charge as above directed; and after the same Method of keeping the Horse's Body cool and open has also been comply'd with, and that it begins to matter, it may be dress'd with the following Digestive, viz.

' Take Honey, four Ounces, Oil of Roses, one Ounce, and the Yolks of two Eggs, mix them together, by stirring them with a Knife, or wooden Slice; and when the Digestive has been made a little warm before the Fire, dip a Pledgie of Flax into it, and apply it over the Eye." This may be done once or twice a Day, and the restrigent Charge continued over the Dressing, until the Cure is perform'd, tho' in reality the Issue will be very doubtful, if the Muscles are much relax'd or wounded.

*Note,* In all Accidents where the Eye is bruise'd or wounded, a Horse ought to have no Oats given him but what are boil'd soft, until the worst Symptoms are gone; but especially in this last Case, where it is protruded and thrust out of its Socket, for then his Food ought to be only scalded Bran, now and then with a mixture of Oats; because the Action of the Jaw, in chewing hard Food, would be a great Means to hinder the Cure.

## C H A P. XXII.

### *Of Rheums and Inflammations in the Eyes.*

Rheums and  
Inflammations.

**T**H O' Rheums and Inflammations, for the most part, accompany the slightest Disorders in the Eye, yet if after a Wound or Bruise has been heal'd, the Eye continues weak and indispos'd, a Horse will become much subject to those Disorders for the future, especially upon every Change of Air or Diet, or as often as he chances to be rid harder than ordinary, or put upon any uncommon and unusual Exercise.

The like will also happen from any other Cause inducing a Weakness into the Eye, as after a Cold,

or



or other Sickness affecting the Eyes, and where there has not at first been sufficient Care taken to put a check to the Influx of the Humours, or to take off their Acidity and Sharpness; for by this means the Eye becomes injur'd, and is render'd liable to Rheums and Defluxions, and to many other Accidents, notwithstanding the Horse may, in all other Respects, be recover'd to a good State of Health.

Sometimes those Symptoms do accompany, or are the Effects of an ill Habit of Body; whether that be induc'd at first by an over Plenitude, or if it arises from Debility and Lowness, or from any other Cause whereby the Blood becomes vitiated; for as the Eyes are very tender, and of exquisite Sense, they must therefore be as sensibly affected in all such Indispositions, as any other Part of the Body.

And therefore, in order to the Cure, the Farrier The Cure. ought to examine diligently both into the past State and present Condition of the Horse. If he finds him under any Indisposition, then his first and chief Care must be to remove that; as for Instance, if he be Hide-bound, or if he has got the Farcin or Mange, &c. such things as are hereafter order'd in those Cases, must be administred to him at the same time that proper Applications are made to the Eyes; but if a Horse be otherwise in a tolerable State of Health, the Farrier may conclude that there is either some natural Infirmary in the Eye, disposing it to those Disorders; or else that the Eye is render'd very weak and diseased, by a continual Defluxion upon it; in either of which Cases it will not be very needful to burthen him with Medicines; but yet if the Horse be full of Flesh, lest the Distemper should be over-much fed, a moderate Quantity of Blood may be taken from him, and he may be purg'd gently every Week; or have now and then a Clyster given him; and the other Rules of Diet and Exercise, which have been laid down in the foregoing Chapter, may also be observ'd.



After these general Directions, we shall conclude this Chapter, by inserting such Remedies as the Practice of the best Marishals has warranted to be the most effectual in all outward Intentions, where the Eyes have been troubled with sharp Rheums and Inflammations.

If the Eyes are only inflam'd without a Defluxion of *Serum* upon them, they may be wash'd once or twice a Day with a little Wine, Red or White; or Wine wherein the Leaves or Tops of the common Briar have been boil'd; or if these are not in Season, the following may be us'd.

‘Take Camomile and Red-Rose Leaves, of each half a Handful, boil them in a Pint of Water, till a fourth Part be consum'd, strain the Decoction, and add to it a Drachm of Camphire, first dissolv'd in a Spoonful of Brandy.’ Let your Horse's Eyes be moisten'd therewith two or three times a Day.

Or the following Remedies may be us'd, which will be of equal Service in all Cases where there is a Defluxion of Rheum, as where there is only an Inflammation.

“Take white *Vitriol*, two Pounds, *Roch-Alum*, three Pounds, fine *Bole-Armonick*, half a Pound, *Litharge* of Gold or Silver, two Ounces; reduce all the Ingredients to Powder, and put them in to a new glaz'd earthen Pot, with three Quarts of Water, boil them very gently over a small Fire without Smoke, set equally round the Pot, till the Water be evaporated, and the Matter at the Bottom perfectly dry, then remove the Pot from the Fire, and suffer the Matter to cool, which ought to be hard, and will still grow harder the longer it is kept. This is call'd the *Lapis Mirabilis*, or wonderful Stone.

“Put half an Ounce of this Stone in a glass Bottle, with four Ounces of Water, it will be dissolv'd in a quarter of an Hour, and make the Water white as Milk when you shake the Bottle; you must wash the sore Eye Morning and Evening with the Water or Solution. A Solution thus made will keep twenty Days.

This



This I have taken from the *Sieur de So'leyfell*, who gives the following Account of it; and, doubtless, it must be very good.

“Some Apothecaries (says he) keep this Stone in their Shops, and make use of it for Men; and as for me I use it for Horses, nor ever seek any other Remedy for Rheums, Blows, or Moon-Eyes. Every Man that is Master of a Horse ought to keep some of it by him, for it will keep very good long; and there are few Remedies for the Eyes that are not inferior to it.

Many of this kind might be added, but we shall content ourselves in this Place, by inserting one more, which has been us'd with equal Success both to Man and Beast; and has been recommended for such Intentions by one of the best Judges: And is as follows.

‘Take Roman-Vitriol and Bole-Armonick, of each two Ounces, Camphire, half an Ounce, and powder them together; of this Mixture sprinkle half an Ounce at a time in two Pound of boiling Water, in which stir it well about, then take it off the Fire, let it settle, and decant off that which is clear by Inclination.” This is an excellent Remedy, not only for Rheums and Defluxions of the Eyes, but for many Purposes externally. It may be made stronger or weaker as the Practitioner shall see occasion.

## C H A P. XXIII.

### *Of Lunatick, or Moon-Eyes.*

W H E N a Defluxion of Rheum has continu'd so long as to cause an obstinate Stagnation in the small Arteries of the *Tunica Adnata*, or outermost Coat of the Eye, and a Relaxation of the small Kernels that are seated at each of its Angles, it becomes then very hard and difficult to be cur'd; but by the *Lentor* and Corrosiveness of the Matter, it at length destroys the Transparency and Clearness of the *Cornea*, so as to cause Blindness; and

What meant  
by Moon-  
Eyes.



when this happens to a Horse, he is said to be Moon-blind.

Now the Distemper, which goes under this Name, does not always make one continued Progress; but oftentimes the Rheum, in a great Measure, dries up, and when that happens, unless the Matter has been so sharp as to corrode the *Cornea*, a Horse's Eye will again look clear and transparent; but because those Parts have been so much weaken'd, and the Glands so much relax'd, every little Error committed either in Feeding or Exercise, and every slight Cold, or even the Sharpness of the Air will cause a Return of the Humors, which Vicissitudes have occasion'd Farriers, in antient Times, when, thro' Ignorance, much was ascrib'd to the Influence of Planets, to attribute this Disorder to the Moon, insomuch that even the *Sieur de Solleysell* being prepossess'd with the same Notions, very gravely says; "That the Eyes of those Horses, which are troubled with this Distemper, are darken'd with a Rheum at certain times of the Moon, whereas at other times they appear so bright, that you would conclude they were perfectly sound." And afterwards he adds, "That some enjoy an Interval of six Months, others are troubled with a Return of the Distemper once in three Months, and some grow lunatick every two Months." But according to the strictest Observation I have been able to make, this Distemper seems to bear a near Affinity with that which in Man is called an *Epiphora*, resembling it both in its Signs, Cause, and Effects, only that in Horses it is more fatal to the Sight, because of the prone Position of a Horse's Head, which gives the Humors a stronger Tendency towards the Eyes.

The Cause.

It takes its Origin, generally speaking, from the want of the common Discharges by the Pores of the Skin, and by Urine; and from all those things that may occasion a too great Accumulation of *Serum* in the Blood, whether they proceed first of all from a Cold, or from any other Cause.

The Signs are also manifest, for in this Distemper the Eyes appear hot, swoln, dark, and troubled with



with a continual Rheum and Weeping, and according to the last mention'd Author, with a faint Yellowness under the Apple, which, as he rightly observes, is the surest Sign, as it must be the constant Effect of excessive Heat and Moisture in those Parts.

The Cure must, as to Internals, be chiefly perform'd by purging Medicines, and such as are of the greatest Efficacy to fuse and melt down the ferrous Parts of the Blood; for Phlebotomy is needless, and oftentimes proves hurtful in this Case. And therefore if the Horse be costive, after you have open'd him with a Clyster or two, let the following Balls be given him.

‘ Take of the clearest shining Aloes, two Ounces,  
‘ Turbith Root, in fine Powder, half an Ounce,  
‘ Diagridium, two Drachms, Liquorish Powder,  
‘ four Ounces. Make them into large Balls with a  
‘ sufficient Quantity of fresh Butter.” Let these be  
given in Wine, or any other Liquid, to wash them  
down; and for a Change the following Purge may  
be sometimes exhibited, viz.

‘ Take Aloes and Jalap in Powder, of each an  
‘ Ounce and a half, Cream of Tartar, three  
‘ Ounces, Diagridium, one Drachm.” Let this  
be given in a Quart of White-Wine, Ale, or  
Beer, without warming it; because if it be hot,  
some of the Ingredients, as the Aloes and Diagridium;  
and even the Jalap, if it be resinous,  
will be apt to run into Lumps.

But if it be hard to get down this Medicin, because of the nauseous Bitterness of the Aloes, the Jalap, Aloes and Diagridium may be made into a Paste with Liquorish Powder, and a sufficient quantity of Butter as the other, and the Cream of Tartar dissolv'd in the Liquor with which it is to be wash'd down, or in some warm Water, after it begins to work.

The Purging must be repeated twice every Week, or according to the Horse's Strength, walking him for half an Hour after his Physick, as is usual; during which time his Food ought to be moderate, but yet what is necessary to sustain Nature;



ture ; for the strongest Horse will suffer by purging, if his Food is not in some measure proportioned to it.

And while this Method is comply'd with, as to Internals, his Eyes ought to be constantly wet Morning and Evening with one or other of those Waters, which are the last inserted in the foregoing Chapter ; and three or four times a Day let them be bath'd with the following Decoction made warm every time it is used.

‘ Take Leaves of Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each a handful, Red-Rose Leaves and Melilot Flowers, of each half a handful ; the Heads of two white Poppies sliced, and two Ounces of Fenugreek-Seeds : Boil them in two Quarts of Water to three Pints.’ This will greatly contribute to blunt the Acrimony and Sharpness of the *Serum*.

The same Ingredients boil'd with five or six Crab-Apples, and afterwards beat in a Marble or Stone Mortar, and pulp'd thro' a Sieve, will make an excellent Cataplasim to lay over the Eye, in order to allay the Heat, and put a check to the Influx of the Humours.

The Corners of your Horse's Eyes may be also touch'd now and then with a little of the following Ointment, *viz.*

‘ Take fresh Butter four Ounces, white Wax one Ounce, Tutty finely prepar'd half an Ounce, Sugar of Lead two Drachms, white Vitriol one Drachm, Camphire two Scruples : Mix and make an Ointment.

How a  
Moon-ey'd  
Horse is to  
be manag'd  
in the De-  
cline of his  
Distemper.

As soon as you observe the Symptoms begin to abate, let him be moderately rid every Day in some shady Place ; for the Exercise will contribute to mend the Faults of his Constitution : But if you ride him too much in the Sun, or where the Light is too strong, you'll be apt to create fresh Trouble ; for though the serous Part of the Blood may be render'd more thin and fluid, and its Acrimony much abated by the Use of Exercise, and the Help of proper Remedies, and consequently the Moisture lessen'd, yet as the Eyes themselves must be impair'd



impair'd by a long and continued Defluxion ; they must therefore have time to recover that Weakness. For the same Reason the Use of fit Applications must not be too soon laid aside, but such things constantly provided as will comfort and strengthen those Parts, tho' they ought to be of more gentle Operation than what were us'd during the Violence of the Distemper. Wherefore we very much recommend Decoctions of Red Rose-Leaves, Plantain, Ground-Ivy, or their distill'd Waters, with those of Eyebright, Celandine, Chervil, and the like, for outward Use ; and these to be continued for some considerable Time : And if there be the least Appearance of a Return, a small Quantity of white Vitriol, or the white Troches of *Rhasis* may be dissolved in either of these Waters, viz. half a Dram of the Vitriol, or a Dram of the Troches to four Ounces of the Water : And by following this Method, any Horse may certainly be cured, unless there be some natural Defect in the Eye, or that it has been too much injured by the Corrosion of the Distemper.

Most Farriers, when they find this Disease obstinate, rowel a Horse near the Eyes, and take up the Eye-Veins ; but in taking up a Vein, I prefer *Solleysell's* Method, because he does not make Incision into the Vein itself, but ties it with a Wax-thread, and by that means the Communication is as effectually stop'd. But whatever Success may have been attributed to the taking up of Veins for Infirmities in the Eyes, there can be but little said to countenance that Operation, since by tying up those Veins, the Return of the Blood is hindered ; and therefore it can only be supposed to do Service where the Eye is shrunk, and like to perish for want of its proper Nourishment. As to roweling, that may indeed, and often is of Service, because by it many small Vessels, both Veins and Arteries, are opened. And as the Arterial Blood moves with a greater *Impetus* than that of the Veins, the greatest part of the Discharge must therefore be from the Arteries ; so that a lesser Quantity

What Methods are generally us'd when the Distemper proves obstinate.



Quantity of Blood must be derived towards the Eye.

Some make their Rowel at the side of each Eye, which is not amiss, when upon the Muscles on the Flat of the Cheek bone. Others make a Seaton under the Poll, which is also very proper, and will not disfigure a Horse, so much as the other. The Way to perform this is by passing a large three-edg'd Needle under that part of the Horse's Neck where his Mane begins; or if you would rather chuse to do it without Blood, make use of a sharp Iron almost red hot; when you have pierced the Flesh, have a large Probe-Needle in Readiness, with a plaited Hempen Cord, or one of Hair dip'd in Wax or *Basilicon*, to follow the Iron: This may be moved once or twice a Day, and every now and then fresh Ointment put upon it to keep it running.

But there are, besides the taking up of Veins and Roweling, several other Operations made by Farriers for the Cure of Lunatick Eyes; as the giving the Fire, and cauterizing the upper Part of the Forehead; and some when the Case has been desperate, have had Recourse to a very desperate Cure, and to save one Eye have put out the other, by running a Needle across through the Eye-ball: But we can say very little in favour of these Operations, not only as they are both excessive painful and uncertain, but also as they have had but small Approbation by those who have been the best Judges. But there is one other, which, in some Cases, may be necessary; and if it does not make a Cure, yet if it be well perform'd, it sometimes affords Relief, and that is *cutting out the Haw*, which is only some part of the kernelly Substance that lies at the Corners and Bottom of the Eye, which being very much relax'd, and, as it were, soak'd by the continual Influx of the Rheum, at length enlarges to such a degree, that, like a piece of Sponge, it thrusts out the under Eye-lid, and thereby occasions both Pain and continual Weeping.

Now when you have apply'd all things that are proper to harden and constringe that glandulous  
Sub-



Substance, and so to make it contract itself, but without Success; and when you observe the Excrescence grown so large that it cannot be easily destroy'd by any Application, that would not at the same time hazard the Eye, then Recourse must be had to cutting, which ought to be gone about in the following manner.

The Horse being cast, and so secur'd that he cannot move, you are to take a Needle arm'd with a wax'd Thread, and having pierc'd the under Eye-lid below the Gristle that surrounds it near the Corner towards the Nose, you are afterwards to give the Thread to some skilful Person to hold, that the Eye-lid may be kept open; and by this means the Excrescence will fairly appear. The Operator must then by the Help of a fine Hook take hold of the upper part of the Excrescence, and draw it upwards, that he may see all parts to which it adheres, and with a very fine Instrument separate first above from the Eye-ball, and then below from the under Eye-lid; and if it grows pretty far backwards towards the outer Corner of the Eye, another Thread ought to be drawn through the under Eye-lid about its middle, passing the Needle also under the Gristle, that by holding back the Eye-lid, it may be the more easily separated from thence: And when it has been in this manner freed from all its Adhesions, both above and below, it must be cut as near as possible to the inner Corner and Bottom of the Eye, drying up the Blood and Moisture with a soft Sponge.

This Operation is perform'd by the *French* and some *Italian* Farriers, but seldom or never by the *English*, unless when there is an *Unguis*, which is a hard membranous, or rather cartilaginous Substance, growing to the inner Corner of the Eye, which almost every Smith can take off by passing a Needle through the upper part of it; and when they have pull'd it gently out by the Thread, they cut it off with a sharp Instrument or Scissars, and that is what our Farriers call *cutting out the Haw*; and is indeed a more easy, and perhaps a more necessary Operation than the other.

How to cut  
the Haw  
out of a  
Horse's Eye.

After



After the Operation has been thus perform'd, the Eye may be washed with red Wine or *Aqua vite*; and to prevent a fresh Inflammation, which will readily enough happen after cutting, a restringent Charge made with Vinegar, Bole-Armonick, &c. may be apply'd over the Eye and Temples, until such time as it comes to be in good Temper; and a little Honey of Roses may be sometimes dropt into the Eye warm, which will bring the Matter to a good Digestion; but if there be the least Appearance of a fresh Excrescence, which is not uncommon in those moist Parts, and especially where they cannot be kept down by the Application of Bandages, then Recourse must be had to the Vitriol Water, or the Solution of the *Lapis Mirabilis* inserted in the foregoing Chapter; and in the mean while the Eye must be as little as possible expos'd to the Light. By all which Means a great Check will be put to the Humours, and their Conflux will be much less for the time to come.

Most People are of Opinion, that this Distemper is hereditary, as well as govern'd by the Moon; and therefore that it is never to be cured. It is very true, a perfect Cure is very hard to be effectuated, especially when it has been of long Continuance; but I am very sure, and so must every one who is the least acquainted with the Animal Oeconomy, That tho' a Horse may naturally be of such a Constitution as will dispose him more particularly to this Distemper; yet the same may proceed from many other Causes. We shall therefore put an End to this Chapter, by inserting an Observation of one *Taquetus*, as it is recited by the *Sieur de Solleysell*, because it may be of Service to Gentlemen who breed Horses; since it is more easy to prevent Diseases by proper keeping, than it is to remove them when once they have got sure footing. *Solleysell's* Words are these:

An Observation of  
*Taquetus*  
out of *Solleysell*.

“ This is an hereditary Distemper, and therefore great Care must be taken to chuse Stallions  
“ that have good Eyes; it may also be occasion'd  
“ by the Foal's eating Oats with his Dam when  
“ he is but one Year old, or younger; for by their  
straining



“ straining and endeavouring to chew the Oats,  
 “ the Veins above and about their Eyes are stretch’d  
 “ and distended, and consequently draw too much  
 “ Blood to those Parts, which by the too great  
 “ Quantity of Nourishment are heated and ren-  
 “ der’d obnoxious to Defluxions, either to that  
 “ kind which follows the Course of the Moon, or  
 “ to the other, which wastes and destroys the  
 “ Eye. I have borrowed this Observation from a  
 “ Treatise concerning Horses, compos’d by one  
 “ John Taquet, who expressly affirms, That the  
 “ Loss of the Foal’s Eye is not occasion’d by the  
 “ Substance of the Oats, which may be suppos’d  
 “ to heat them, but only by their straining too  
 “ hard in chewing that hard sort of Food; and  
 “ to prevent those fatal Consequences, he advises  
 “ those who have Foals, to cause their Oats to be  
 “ ground or stamp’d; by which means, he says,  
 “ they will grow strong and lusty, without the least  
 “ Danger of Rheums, or any other Infirmary in the  
 “ Eyes.

I shall only add to what *Taquet* has judiciously  
 observed, That over-much Feeding of whatever  
 kind, as it easily causes an over Plenitude in young  
 Horses, who eat heartily, may therefore very readi-  
 ly bring Defluxions and other Weaknesses upon the  
 Eyes: And many of our *English* Colts suffer by an  
 Excess of this kind, as others do by being put too  
 early to hard Labour, and owe their Diseases in the  
 Eyes more to these Errors, than either to the Moon,  
 or to their Sire.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of Films, Webs, and other Diseases of the Eyes  
 of Horses, causing Dimness or Loss of Sight.*

**W**E often observe, after a Horse has been some  
 time troubled with a Defluxion of Rheum  
 or other Disorders in his Eyes, little thin Sub-  
 stances grow over them, so as to obscure the Sight,

External  
 Blindness  
 from Films  
 and Scars  
 on the Cor-  
 nea.

and



and these sometimes adhere so closely to the Eye, that it is very hard to remove them: Sometimes from the same Causes, or from some slight Wound, the *Cornea* or horny Coat of the Eye is render'd obscure, that the Light cannot pass through it; for when it is fretted by the Corrosion and Sharpness of Matter, and its Substance abraded and wore; or if that happens by any outward Accident, its Re-union may easily become imperfect, because of its exquisite Fineness, which cannot be again equally united, but, like a Darn in a Piece of fine Lawn, will appear with a visible Blemish, and become more or less injurious to the Sight, according as the Eye has been more or less hurt.

The internal from the Humours, or innermost Parts of the Eye.

Sometimes the Causes of Blindness or Dimness are more internal, and, according to some, may proceed from a Condensation or curdling of the Humours of the Eye; which, though they be naturally clear and transparent, yet by excessive Heat they become thick and opaque, like the White of an Egg when it is boil'd. Sometimes Blindness is occasion'd by some foreign Substance gather'd in the watry Humour of the Eye, which at length increases so as to hinder the Light from passing through the chrystalline and glassy Humours into the *Retina* or Bottom of the Eye. This Defect in a Humane Eye is called a *Cataract*; and is the same which the Farriers distinguish by the different Names of a *Speck*, *Pearl* or *Dragon*, according to its different Appearances, or according to the Progress it makes on the Eye. When it is very small, and shows itself only in the Bottom of the watery Humour, it is then called a *Dragon*; if more towards the Surface, a *Speck*; and when it comes to its Maturity, and covers the whole *Pupil* or *Apple* of the Eye, or when it is grown pretty large, it is called a *Pearl*. But there is one sort of Blindness, which is as common and usual among Horses as any other, and that is where there is no visible Defect in the Eyes, but the outward Coat and Humours appear transparent, and without Blemish; and this sort is as difficult to be removed as any; because the Fault  
lies



lies in the Compression of the *Retina* or Optick Nerve, by an over-great Distention of the Vessels that are interwoven in it.

When the Eye is only covered with a Film or membranous Substance, unless that has its Origin from a Scar made on the clear transparent Part of the *Cornea* or horny Coat, it may, and is often cured by external Applications only, and such as are very easy and simple; as the Juice of *Celandine*, *Eyebright*, and the like, dropt into the Eye; but when there is a Scar, or if the Film adheres very close to the Substance of the Eye, things of a more powerful Operation will then be required; as the Camphorated Water, or the Water made by a Solution of the *Lapis Mirabilis*, as directed in the 21st Chapter; or the following Eye-water, which I have often experienc'd to be most effectual, not only to clear the Eye from Films, &c. but do the greatest Service in all Rheums and Defluxions, and even cure those where there has been an apparent Defect on the *Cornea*.

The Cure of  
external  
Blindness.

‘ Take unslak’d Lime four Ounces, and pour  
‘ upon it a Quart of boiling Water; after it has  
‘ settled some time, and grown clear, pour it off  
‘ gently from the Lime, and then filter it through  
‘ brown Paper, and put it afterwards into a clean  
‘ Brass or Copper Pan, and dissolve in it one Ounce  
‘ of crude *Sal Armoniack*, letting it stand in that  
‘ Vessel until it turns to a very beautiful blue Co-  
‘ lour, then filter it as before, and keep it for  
‘ Use. Let four or five Drops of this Water be in-  
‘ still’d into the Horse’s Eye every Day, once or  
‘ oftner, as there shall be Occasion.

This Water will keep a long while, and is not only useful to the Eyes, but to wash all old obstinate Ulcers; and therefore may at any time be made in a larger Quantity.

If your Horse’s Eyes be also hot and swoln at the same time these outward Defects are apparent on them, he ought to be bled, purg’d and rowel’d, according as you find him in Case to bear it; and by these means his Sight may certainly be preserv’d, unless the *Cornea* be very much injured.

There



There are many other Remedies to be met with in Authors, which may be outwardly used with Success, as those composed of the *Vitriols*, crude *Sal Armoniack*, *Camphor*, and the like, and are enough in the Acquaintance of most Farriers; but such as are made of Shells, Powder of Glass, and the Powder of Flint, or of *Turkish* Whetstone, can only be successful, as their sharp Points may tear the Substance of those Bodies that grow over the Sight, while they roll about in the Eye; yet as these cannot be dissolv'd, but often stick in the Corners, and in the soft Flesh in the Bottom of the Eye, and thereby cause violent Inflammation, they are therefore not to be meddled with, unless when the Case is desperate; for it may be often observ'd, that the Use of such harsh things, while the Defect is only in one Eye, brings it into both, by reason of the constant Sympathy there is between them.

But we shall now proceed to those Defects which are more internal; and though we do not propose a Cure for such as are obstinate, or out of the Reach of common Applications, yet we shall lay down the most certain Signs whereby they may be distinguished, and at the same time administer those Helps that are the most rational in such Cases.

The Signs  
of internal  
Blindness.

First then, if one or more of the Humours of the Eye should be coagulated and thicken'd, as above-mentioned, this must be apparent to any one, because the Bottom of the Eye, which is plainly visible in a Horse, or any other large Animal, must then be hid, and nothing can be seen but the Colour of the condens'd Humour through the *Cornea*; but this kind of Blindness rarely happens, unless it proceed from a Wound or Bruise, and then it becomes incurable.

The next inward Imperfection, so far as it affects the watery Humour of the Eye, is somewhat akin to the former, and is very frequently to be met with among Horses, insomuch that some have been foal'd with *Cataracts* or *Pearls* on their Eyes: But as this Defect also lies within the *Cornea*, it is not to be cured in Horses; for nothing apply'd outwardly can



can reach it, but what would at the same time destroy the Eye ; and therefore it is in vain that Farriers use corrosive Medicines to eat off *Cataracts*, as is commonly practised among them. Neither would internal Means, or any Operation avail much towards removing it, tho' that has also been essay'd by Mountebanks ; for after a *Cataract* has been couch'd, as those Creatures are unmanageable, it generally grows again, and the Horse remains blind.

*Cataracts* are of different Colours, yellow, black and white ; yet those to which Horses are chiefly subject, are either whitish, or of a Pearl Blue, or inclinable to green, and are easily known, because in the Beginning they are but very small, but grow larger, as that Matter which forms them is continually falling into the watery Humour. But there is one Sign whereby to know a *Cataract*, especially before it is ripe ; and that is by rubbing the outside of the Eye ; for by that Means it will a little shift Place.

The Signs  
of a Cata-  
ract.

There have been other Signs taken Notice of by all Physical Writers ; as when there is the Appearance of Flies, Dust or Hairs floating before the Sight. And Mr. *Shape*, in his third Book of the *Anatomy of a Horse*, Chap. 13. speaking of the watery Humour, has apply'd these Signs to Horses which are apt to start without Cause. His Words are these :

“ It is observ'd in Men, That if any clotted and  
“ coloured Bits or Motes swim in this Humour,  
“ the Shapes of several Insects, as Gnats, Flies,  
“ Spiders, and the like, will seem to be flying be-  
“ fore their Eyes, as hath been often declared by  
“ Men who have had this Affection. I am therefore  
“ apt to believe that many Horses are not without  
“ such kind of congealed Bits floating in this Hu-  
“ mour, that without any evident or external  
“ Cause to occasion it, are much given to start,  
“ especially with their Head, the Representation  
“ of the foresaid Insects moving before the Chry-  
“ stalline Humour, which makes them fear some-  
“ thing or other is still flying into their Eye.

“ Yea, it is in humane Bodies further observ'd,  
“ That oftentimes several of these coloured Par-

Q

“ ticles



“ ticles in the watery Humour do gather together,  
 “ and unite so close, that they grow, as it were,  
 “ into a Skin or Film, spreading before the Sight  
 “ of the Eye, which causes an absolute Blindness,  
 “ and is that Disease which Physicians call a *Cataract*;  
 “ which Disease the Animal we are treating  
 “ of is much subject to, though we have not so  
 “ proper a Term for it as this is.

But a late eminent Physician has observed, that these Representations cannot be occasion'd by any kind of Matter floating in the watery Humour, because the Position of the *Retina*, and Convexity of the *Cornea* is such, that all Bodies must be placed at a greater Distance from the Eye than the *aqueous*, Humour or the *Cornea*, to cause such Appearances; and therefore he says those Signs can only be exhibited when the Parts of the *Retina* are overmuch compressed by a Distention of the Arteries. And this may happen, and is oftentimes the Cause of a *Gutta Serena*, which is the last sort of Blindness which we mentioned, *viz.* where the Eye seems to have no visible Defect in it. And therefore as that Author has observ'd, whenever those Signs appear with a *Cataract*, any such *Cataract* must at the same time be accompany'd with a *Gutta Serena*; for a *Gutta Serena* is often the Concomitant of other Diseases of the Eyes, but is only distinguishable as such, when the *Cornea* and Humours are transparent.

A *Gutta  
Serena.*

The Signs. Now I am apt to believe there are but very few who have bought many Horses, and have not had Experience of this sort of Blindness to their Cost. And the Signs that Mr. *Snape* has attributed to a *Cataract*, when a Horse starts with his Head, if that is not the Effect of Fear, it is, no doubt, to be suspected as a Token of bad Eyes, and to denote that Imperfection which we are now treating of: But there is one, which is the most infallible, and more to be depended on than any other, *viz.* when a Horse moves his Ears backwards and forwards, and often points them towards his Eyes, as if he wanted to drive away Flies when there are none near him: And if he renews this shaking of his Ears, as often



as he is turned to a new and different Light, it may be then with very good Reason suspected his Eyes are defective, though nothing appears outwardly upon them; and this I have oftentimes observ'd in Horses that were ill sighted, and have known it sometimes the Forerunner of absolute Blindness.

These being the Signs of a *Gutta Serena*, and the immediate Cause being a Distention of the small Arteries pressing upon several Parts of the *Retina*, as was observ'd; whatever therefore be the *Procatartick* Cause (as Physicians term it) whether from Colds, Surfeits, or from any Fault in a Horse's Feeding, &c. it is very certain the Cure must consist in all those things that are proper to open Obstructions in the smallest Passages; for by that means those in the Bottom of the Eye may be remov'd.

Wherefore if your Horse has Strength enough to bear it, he ought in the first place to be bled, and afterwards purged two or three times with the Remedies prescrib'd in the preceding Chapter; but Rowelling must by no means be neglected: And because the mineral Kingdom affords us with Medicines of the most powerful Operation in all such obstinate Cases, Recourse may be had to the Antimonial Balls directed in the Farcin, or to the *Cinabar* Balls in the same Chapter, or those appointed for the Staggers; which being continued for some time, will, no doubt, prevent Blindness: But if the *Retina* be so much compress'd as to lose all Sensation, the Case will be very desperate; for this sort of Blindness is seldom or never to be cured, but in its Infancy.

The Cure.

## CHAP. XXV.

### *Of a Cold and Morfounding.*

AFTER we have said so much in another Place concerning Fevers and Surfeits, we need not take up much of the Reader's Time, in

A Cold and imperfect Fever.

Q 2

explaining



explaining the Nature of a Cold; since a Cold, as such, is no other than an imperfect Fever, and affects the Body in many Circumstances, as we have describ'd a Surfeit, only we thought it might not be improper to transpose it to this Place, because the Diseases of the Lungs, which we are to treat of in the following Chapters, tho' they often proceed from divers other Causes, yet they have a greater Dependency on a Cold than any other Distemper, as a Cold more especially affects the Lungs and the Parts appertaining to them.

*The Cause  
of Colds.*

Now the Causes of a Cold are sufficiently known to every one, being produc'd of all those things that cause a sudden Stagnation of the Pores; as when a Horse has been very much heated, and in this Condition expos'd to the sharp Air, without being at some Pains to cool him by degrees, and neglecting to rub off the Sweat, which strikes a Chilliness and Damp over the whole Body; permitting a Horse to drink cold Water, while extremely hot; exposing a Horse that is tender and well kept to the Night Air: And sometimes many of the same Symptoms will happen when the Air is too much rarify'd and thin; for by that means its Pressure is not sufficient to force the Blood thro' the small Vessels of the Lungs, but will occasion a Stagnation there, and cause a difficulty of Breathing, which will be accompanied with a Cough; and this sort, if it is not speedily cured, is the most dangerous, both as to its immediate and future Effects.

*The Signs.*

The Signs are Dullness, want of Appetite, a Cough, and running at the Nose, and sometimes it affects the Eyes, as we have already observ'd; and, in most young Horses, causes Swellings about the Kernels of the Throat.

The Cough proceeds from a Distention of the Lungs, which freights the Passages of Respiration, or it proceeds from a Defluxion of Rheum, from the Kernels of the Wind-pipe being then relax'd and distended; and when the Discharges from thence happen to be pretty considerable, it is by Farriers said to be a wet Cough; but when  
a Horse



a Horse coughs without any great Matter of Discharge, it is then call'd a dry Cough, and is look'd upon as an ill Prognostick.

But a dry Cough is not always a bad Prognostick, as they imagine; for in the beginning of a Cold it often happens only from the Oppression of the Lungs, when the small Vessels, towards their Extremities, are over-charg'd, insomuch that the Air which a Horse draws in is not able to penetrate through their whole Substance, so as to enter into all the little Bladders, but is suddenly repuls'd back again, and occasions him often to cough, while it meets with a Portion of the same Air, before the Action of Respiration is begun; and we may oftentimes observe the same Symptom in Horses that are narrow chested, upon a very slight Cold; because in that Case, when the Blood-Vessels are full, they have not room for a sufficient Elevation. But if a dry husky Cough continue after the common Symptoms of a Cold are past, it is then to be very much suspected as a thing that will be of ill Consequence, as being the Fore-runner of a Consumption. But we shall shew the Reason of this in its proper Place; and in the mean time proceed to the Cure of a Cold, while it is unattended with any other Accidents than what are common.

The first thing to be done in a Cold, is to take a pretty large Quantity of Blood from the Neck-Vein, if the Horse is otherwise in good Case and full of Flesh; but if he be low and poor, the loss of too much Blood may be prejudicial to him: But yet as all Colds, for the most part, affect the Lungs more or less, Blood ought, in the Beginning, to be drawn away, tho' the Quantity be but small; for here it is necessary, as in all other Cases where the Blood is too viscid, to give it more room in the Vessels.

If he labours and breaths with Difficulty, and at some times appears to be in much Pain, he may be bled a second time; and if his Blood looks of a florid red Colour, and has little or no *Serum* in it, and the Pain still continues, after the space of



twelve Hours he may be bled a third time, to prevent an Impostumation in his Lungs, or sudden Death; for it sometimes happens that Horses are seiz'd in the Beginning of a Cold with a *Pleurisy*, or *Peripneumony*, when no one near them knows the Cause of their Agony.

After Bleeding, if your Horse be costive, as is not uncommon in the Beginning of a Cold, let him have the following Clyster.

‘ Take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each  
‘ three Handfuls, Mercury and Pellitory, of each  
‘ one Handful; boil them for the Space of half  
‘ an Hour in three Quarts of Water, and to the  
‘ strained Decoction add half a Pound of Treacle,  
‘ coarse Sugar or Honey, and the same Quan-  
‘ tity of Oil or Butter, to be injected Blood-  
‘ warm, and repeated as often as needful.

If a Lax or Looseness happens, it must not be too soon stop'd, for sometimes the Disease terminates that way, especially if he has been surfeited; but if it continues too long, and causes sore and painful Gripes, it must then be treated according to the Method laid down for the Cure of that kind of Looseness which is accompanied with a Cholick.

To recover lost Appetite, which is a Symptom that attends every violent Cold, he must be exercis'd every Day more or less with chewing Balls, and kept to very moderate Feeding: The following *Arman* may also be made use of, which I can promise to be much the best of its kind.

‘ Take Honey of Roses, half a Pound, the in-  
‘ side of a white Manchet finely crumbled, Cina-  
‘ mon and Nutmegs, of each one Ounce, Gallan-  
‘ gal, Zedoary, and Calamus Aromaticus, of each  
‘ an Ounce and a half. Let all these be made into  
‘ a fine Powder, and incorporated with the Honey  
‘ of Roses, adding Syrup of Lemons, as much as  
‘ is necessary to make it into the Consistency of a  
‘ thin Paste;” and let him now and then have the  
Quantity of a Wall-nut given him upon the End  
of a Bull's Pizzle, first soak'd in Water, and then  
beat soft; his Tongue must be pull'd to one Side,  
and



and the Pizzle put up to the back part of his Mouth, letting him chew upon it afterwards.

For his Cough let the following Drench be given him.

‘ Take Hyfop-Water, one Pint, diffolve in it  
 ‘ four Ounces of the Juice of Liquorish, otherwise  
 ‘ called *Spanish-Juice*, and two Ounces of brown  
 ‘ Sugar-candy, take the Roots of Elicampain, round  
 ‘ or long Birthwort and Gentian, of each half an  
 ‘ Ounce, the Seeds of Fœnugreck and Lintseed,  
 ‘ of each three Drachms, Gallangal and Cinamon,  
 ‘ of each two Drachms. Let all these be made  
 ‘ into a fine Powder, and mix’d with the Hyfop-  
 ‘ Water and Liquorish, after which add to it a  
 ‘ Pint of White-Wine or Ale, and give it in a  
 ‘ Horn.

Let this be repeated once a Day, until the Cold be loosen’d, and that your Horse begins to feed plentifully, and his Eyes look brisk and lively, and the Matter from his Nose (if there be a running from thence) grows thick and well digested. But the following will be still more efficacious, and, indeed, inferior to none that can be given in this Case.

‘ Take three or four Heads of white Poppies,  
 ‘ two Handfuls of Coltsfoot, four Ounces of Lint-  
 ‘ seed, boil them in three Pints of Water till one  
 ‘ is consum’d, add to it four Ounces of the Juice  
 ‘ of Liquorish, dissolv’d in the Hyfop-Water, as  
 ‘ above directed, adding also the Powders as in the  
 ‘ former Prescription.

The following Powder out of *Solleysell* may be made and us’d upon Occasion, which I believe will not be the less acceptable, that it has all the Ingredients of the Diapente in it.

“ Take Bay-berries, Gentian, round Birthwort,  
 “ Myrrh, Flower-de-luce, Shavings of Harts-horn  
 “ and Elicampain, of each four Ounces, Zedoary,  
 “ Cummin-Seeds, Aniseeds, and Savin, of each  
 “ two Ounces, Cinamon, half an Ounce, Cloves,  
 “ two Drams, Flowers of Corn-Poppies dry’d,  
 “ two Ounces.” The Dose is two Ounces infus’d  
 all Night in Wine.



The celebrated Horse-Balls of *Markham* may also be given one in a Morning for several Days together. They are thus made:

*Markham's  
Balls.*

“ Take Aniseeds, Cummin-Seeds, Fœnugreek,  
“ Carthamus-Seeds, Elicampain-Root, Flower  
“ of Brimstone, and brown Sugar-Candy, of each  
“ two Ounces, beaten and searced very fine.  
“ Then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquorish,  
“ and dissolve it in half a Pint of White-Wine,  
“ which done, take three Ounces of the Syrup of  
“ Coltsfoot, of Sallet Oil and Honey, of each  
“ half a Pint. Let these be mix'd with the for-  
“ mer, and with as much Wheat-Flower as will  
“ bind and knit them all together, work them in-  
“ to a stiff Paste, and make them into Balls as  
“ big as a large *French* Wall-nut, or as big as a  
“ Hen's Egg.

Some use, instead of the Syrup of Coltsfoot, two Ounces of the Coltsfoot dry'd and made into Powder, others add an Ounce of the Chymical Oil of Aniseeds, which is very proper, as Horses are much subject to Wind and Flatulencies in their Bowels; and many other Alterations I have seen which are not material.

*Their Vir-  
tue.*

The chief Virtue of these Balls consists in their mollifying and softning Quality, whereby they take off from the Acrimony and Sharpness of the Rheums, which occasion tickling Coughs, by which Means they also fatten some Horses. But if it should, upon any Occasion, be necessary to make them more deterfive and cleansing, the Quantity of the Flower of Brimstone may be increas'd, and the Honey proportionably, or there may be added to them the Powder of the Roots of Smallage, dry'd Hyssop and Horsemint, the Tops of Fir, and the like, which will make them a most excellent and safe Scouring for Horses, by breaking those Viscidities which obstruct the small Passages of the Lungs, the Liver, and other principal Bowels, causing Purfiness and difficulty of Breathing.

But in extemporaneous, or off-hand Applications, those Cleansers which are sufficiently known  
to



to all Farriers, viz. Garlick, Onions, Brimstone, Honey, *Barbadoes-Tar*, or common Tar, when rightly adjust'd, and when a Horse is not over-much cloy'd with them, may be of Service; and as they are exceeding powerful in their Operation, they often succeed, and that very soon.

But in the Cure of a Cold, nothing is more material than a due Care of a Horse's Feeding and Dressing, and likewise of his Exercise; and therefore besides Moderation in his Feeding, which we have already observ'd to be necessary, whatever Food is given him ought to be somewhat opening, as scalded Bran, or Barley instead of Oats; and in his Water those things that are diluting, and will promote the Discharges by Sweat and Urine, as the *Sal Polychrestum*, *Sal Prunellæ*, crude Tartar, and crude *Sal Armoniack*, already prescrib'd in putrid and malignant Fevers; for a violent Cold comes the nearest to Fevers of a malignant kind, and is often the Fore-runner of such Fevers, as we may sometimes observe; and therefore all those things are necessary that help to carry off the grosser Parts of the *Serum*, for by that means a due and uniform Circulation of the Blood is the sooner recovered.

And this is also greatly forwarded by moderate Exercise, &c. by rubbing and dressing; and if you find your Horse of himself inclinable to Sweat, which often happens in the Beginning of a Cold; or if he lies under a heavy Oppression, those Discharges may be then easily promoted by warm Cloathing; and, if necessary, may be yet more forwarded by giving him an Ounce of *Venice-Treacle* in a Pint of White-Wine or Treacle-Water. And Lastly,

If the running at the Nose be likely to continue too long after the other Symptoms are in a great measure gone off, let him have once a Day, for some time, a Decoction made with three or four Handfuls of Red-Rose Leaves, an Ounce of Pomegranate-Bark, and an Ounce and a half of *Diafcoridium* dissolv'd in it, and let his Nose be often syring'd with some of the same Decoction,

To prevent  
the running  
at the Nose  
turning to  
the Glan-  
ders.



or with common Honey of Roses, which is much the same; and by following this Method you may prevent it turning to the Glanders, unless your Horse be also consumptive, in which Case it will be very hard to put a Stop to it.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Of Chest-Foundering, &c.*

Chest-Foundering bears an Affinity to a Pleurisy.

**T**HE Disease, that goes under this Denomination in Horses, comes the nearest of any to that which in a humane Body is called a *Pleurisy* or *Peripneumonia*, which is an Inflammation of the Lungs or *Pleura*, accompanied with Pain and difficulty of Breathing.

The Cause.

The Cause is from all the same things that produce a Cold, as exposing a Horse when he is hot to the cold Air, riding him at that time into cold Water, or letting him have cold Water to drink; and therefore it is sometimes introduc'd by a Cold.

Sometimes it proceeds from a Horse's eating unwholsome Hay and bad Provinder, or his feeding on cold frozen Grass in Winter, especially if he has not been us'd to it; but the most common and ordinary Cause, is the over-riding a foul-body'd Horse that has not been accusom'd to Exercise, for then his Blood being agitated, and put into a more than ordinary Degree of Motion, passes forward into the Lungs or *Pleura* in great Quantity, and very much distends the small Vessels there, but because of its Viscidity it suddenly stagnates and occasions Pain and Inflammation, with the other Symptoms we have already mention'd. And therefore young Horses, as their Bodies are the most apt to be foul, and their Blood of unequal Fluidity, are the most liable to Chest-foundering.

The Signs.

The Signs are, an excessive heaving of the Flanks, starting with Pain as often as he offers to move; when violent, it is always accompanied with



with a Fever; but as the Fever is only an Effect of the Inflammation, it goes off as soon as that is removed.

But a Horse is often said to be Chest-founder'd and founder'd in his Body, when there is no visible Symptoms of much Pain, only an Oppression; but as this even proceeds from the same Causes, and as it produces many of the same Effects, as breaking of a Horse's Wind, melting his Grease, and all other Diseases that follow such an Oppression on the Lungs, and other Bowels, it ought, in the Cure, to be treated much after the same manner as if there was Pain and Inflammation, only that Bleeding may be more sparingly us'd; for when there is such an Oppression that a Horse cannot breath, but is like to be suffocated, then Bleeding must be repeated as the lesser Evil.

The Cure of Chest-Foundering, and foundering of the Body.

And in this Case I would always recommend opening the Flank-Veins, or those of the inside of the Thigh, to make a Revulsion, which will be found much more safe, and answer the End much better than bleeding in the Neck or Plat-Veins, as is usually practis'd in such Cases, for this often causes a greater Derivation upon the Lungs or *Pleura*.

And because a Chest-founder'd Horse has oftentimes a great inward Heat and Costiveness, especially in the Beginning, he ought to have an emollient Clyster given him, as that inserted in the preceding Chapter for a Cold, which may be repeated as often as there is occasion; and if there be no Symptoms of Pain, but only Heaviness and Oppression, which does not hinder a Horse from lying down, nor keeps him altogether from Feeding, the Method we have laid down for the Cure of a Surfeit is to be follow'd. And if he be also addicted to a Cough, the Remedies for that Intention are likewise to be made use of.

But if you find him in Pain, and full of Agony, after he has been bleed and had a Clyster injected, let the following Drench be given him to promote Sweat.

Take



‘ Take Milk-Water one Pint and a half, Treacle-  
 ‘ Water half a Pint, dissolve in the Treacle-  
 ‘ Water six Grains of Camphire, afterwards add  
 ‘ an Ounce and a half of *Venice-Treacle*, or Mithri-  
 ‘ date, or two Ounces of *London-Treacle*, mix all  
 ‘ together and give it your Horse thro’ a Horn.

Afterwards let him be walk’d a little, and well  
 cloath’d; and when he is inclinable to drink, let  
 him have warm Water strew’d with Oatmeal.

When those things are done, let one of the fol-  
 lowing Balls be given him twice a Day, one in the  
 Morning and another in the Afternoon, an Hour  
 before watering Time.

‘ Take Conserve of Red-Roses, two Ounces,  
 ‘ *Sperma Ceti*, one Ounce, Linseed and Fœnugreek-  
 ‘ Seeds in Powder, of each an Ounce and a half,  
 ‘ Liquorish Powder, two Ounces. Let these be  
 ‘ made into four Balls, with as much sweet Oil,  
 ‘ or Oil of sweet Almonds, as is sufficient.

The Use of these must be continued for several  
 Days; and when the violent Symptoms are abated,  
 he may, by degrees, be inur’d to Exercise, which,  
 with a cleansing Diet, will perfect the Cure.

## C H A P. XXVII.

### *Of Purfive, Broken-winded, and Consumptive- Cases.*

Consump-  
 tive and  
 Broken-  
 winded  
 Cases pro-  
 ceed from  
 some Dis-  
 order of  
 the Lungs,  
 &c.

**I**T is sufficiently known to any one who is the  
 least acquainted with the animal Oeconomy,  
 that whatever causes an over-great Influx of Blood  
 into the Lungs, and other Parts administering to  
 Respiration, will occasion a heaving of the Flanks,  
 and difficulty of Breathing; and therefore there  
 are very few Diseases of any kind, but what are  
 accompanied more or less with those Symptoms.  
 But the Diseases that come under our present Con-  
 sideration, are such as have their chief and princi-  
 pal Seat in the Lungs, proceeding from an Ulcer,



or some inward Wasting, whereby the small Vessels are wore and abraded, by the Acrimony and Sharpness of the common Discharges, or from some obstinate Stagnation, hindring the Air from penetrating, so as to elevate and lift them up in the Action of Respiration, or when there is tough mucilaganous Matter separated in the Branches of the Wind-pipe, for all such things will occasion a very great Disturbance in the Flanks of a Horse; and when a Horse has any of those Infirmities upon him, he may justly be term'd purfive or broken-winded.

The Cause is from Colds, Surfeits, and other Diseases that have never been thoroughly carry'd off, but chiefly obstinate Colds, for by them the Lungs are in a more especial manner affected; and therefore whatever brings on a Cold, or other Diseases affecting the Lungs, may be look'd upon as the *Procatartick*, or remote Cause of broken Wind or Purfiness. The eating of unwholsome Food, and feeding in a bad Air, will also bring on these Disorders: But many Horses have their Wind broke by ill Usage, as hard Riding when they are full, for by that means their Blood is thrown into the Lungs with so much Impetuosity, and in such Quantity, that it suddenly causes Foundering and Inflammation, which is oftentimes followed with an inward Abscess or Ulcer, which proves incurable.

Caus'd by Colds, and other Diseases affecting the Breast; and from hard Riding.

The common and usual Signs are a heaving and beating of the Flanks, sometimes a wheezing and rattling; and, in some desperate Cases, a swelling of the Kernels about the Throat, and a glander'd running at the Nose.

The Signs.

But here it is to be observ'd, that some Horses may be purfive and short-winded, and exhibit several of these above-mention'd Signs, and yet their Case not dangerous, nor properly to come under the Denomination of a broken Wind or Consumption; for some Horses are naturally thick-winded, especially those that are great and foul Feeders, for by that Means their Blood is, for the most part, gross and viscid, and passes with some

Several Cases where in a Horse may be purfiv, and exhibit other Signs of a broken Wind, and yet be free from that Distemper.

Difficulty



Difficulty thro' the small Vessels of the Lungs, which being also frequently press'd by a full Stomach, will not only occasion Purfiveness, but sometimes a Cough; yet as such are very apt to turn broken-winded, they should be kept to spare and clean Feeding, or have constant and daily Exercise.

Most young Horses, that have been habituated to Ease, will blow upon the least Exercise, especially if they be fat; and that proceeds also from a thick and plentiful Blood; but it is very well known, that if such Horses are not over-labour'd while in this Condition, but by degrees harden'd and inur'd to Exercise, those Symptoms will soon vanish; and if the Helps of Physick are requir'd, their Disorders may speedily be remov'd by Bleeding and very moderate Scouring.

Horses that are poor and in a low Condition, when they are exercis'd beyond their Strength and Feeding, will also heave and labour, as if they were broken-winded; as also those that have been sick, or lie under some Distemper that wastes their vital Spirits, tho' their Lungs are perfectly sound; or if a Horse has had any immoderate Discharges by Blood or Dung, any of those will cause a Horse to heave and labour for Breath as if he was broken-winded: But as in all these Cases, this seeming Oppression proceeds only from a Scarcity of Blood and Spirits, there not being what is sufficient to actuate and elevate the Lungs and Chest, the Symptoms wear off by good Care and Feeding.

And *Lastly*, We may observe some Horses that have no inward Infirmary blow and wheeze, from an Imperfection in the Passages between the Mouth and Nose, which happens the more readily to Horses, as they draw in and expel their Breath chiefly at the Nose; but that Imperfection is easily distinguish'd, for albeit his Flanks move like a broken-winded Horse, while he is in Action, yet as soon as he is stop'd, that Agitation goes off, and nothing further is to be taken notice of in his Breathing but what is natural. And there are some Horses short-winded from the Narrowness of  
their



their Chest, which is plainly discernable as often as they are put to gallop, or to any Labour. But where that Defect proceeds from some Imperfection of the Lungs, it is easily enough distinguish'd, because in all Cases where the Lungs are hurt, tho' a Horse's Flanks will heave and work most impetuously upon Exercise, yet even when he stands in the Stable, there is no Interval free from that Agitation, but he still labours more or less.

Now a Horse is said to have his Wind touch'd or broke, according to the Nature and Degree of Efficacy in the Distemper; for some Horses will last a great while with Infirmities of this kind, and continue at the same paces and do abundance of Service, and yet be absolutely incurable; some waste and decline gradually, and others very suddenly, all which we shall endeavour to explain.

What Horses are properly defective in their Wind.

The Disorders that affect the Wind of a Horse, yet not so as to cause a sudden Waste and Decay, are chiefly of two kinds.

In the first, tho' a Horse has no Intervals free from a working and agitation of his Flanks, yet if he coughs but seldom, and has no Moisture proceeding from his Nose, nor does waste in his Body, it is a Sign that his Infirmary proceeds from some obstinate Obstructions in the small Vessels of the Lungs, or from chalky Matter ingender'd in them, which hinders the Air from passing into all the little Air-Bladders, so that they cannot be fully inflated and distended; or it may be caus'd by some Adhesion to the *Pleura* and Ribs, for then the Lungs cannot be sufficiently depress'd; and a Horse in this Condition must have his Nostrils frequently contracted in sucking in the Air, but will never breath out freely.

The next is different from the former, and shews itself by other distinguishing Signs; for, as in the first Case, a Horse seldom coughs but when in Exercise, or when his Stomach and Guts are full; in the last a Horse will cough pretty often, but especially upon every slight Cold, and at the same time is frequently troubled with a wheezing and rattling in his Pipes; all which proceeds from a  
thick



thick mucilaginous Matter sticking in the Branches of the Wind-pipe, that not only must occasion frequent coughing, but also cause a constant heaving and working of the Flanks.

The Disorders that cause a total Decay, and which may not improperly be said to constitute a Consumption, are also reducible to two kinds: The first is, when there is a Waste, occasion'd by an over-Relaxation in the glandulous parts, and a too great Discharge of the Juices, which are only allotted to keep the Lungs moist; and the second is, when there is an Ulcer form'd in them. And these are distinguishable from the former in this, that wherever there is a Decay, either by an Ulcer, or by such a Waste as we have been speaking of, a Horse will be able to bear no manner of Exercise without a sinking and lowness of his Spirits; and as his Distemper continues, he loses Flesh, turns flabby, and is subject to hectic Disorders; whereas in the other Cases a Horse will go through a Journey, or perform any other Exercise, if he be well us'd, without any considerable Infirmary, excepting that of his Flanks. However, as this Distinction is not so easily made in a beginning Consumption, while a Horse as yet retains some Strength and Vigour, his Cough ought therefore chiefly to be observ'd; for if that be short and vehement, or hollow and sounding, it is then very much to be doubted; for such Coughs as these generally attend where there is an Ulcer in the Lungs, or where there is a constant Waste by the Superfluity of the common Discharges.

*The Cure.*

But we shall now proceed to the Cure. And first of all, as to those Defects in the Wind of a Horse, which are caus'd by obstinate Obstructions in the small Arteries, or chalky Matter, &c. though we do not propose any absolute Relief in such Cases, as we scarcely imagine any thing can be exhibited, either to penetrate through hard and obstinate Obstructions, or dislodge foreign Matter ingender'd in the Lungs, or remove Adhesions that perhaps have been begun before the Horse was foal'd; yet because a Horse may still be of Service notwithstanding these Infirmities, he should now  
and



and then have such things given him as are gently opening, and are fit to lubricate all the Passages, and render them glib and easy ; for which purpose we recommend *Markham's Balls*, or any Composition of the like Ingredients : He may also sometimes have a little clean Antimony given him.

But the principal thing to be observed, is the common Feeding and Exercise of such Horses ; though I need not lay down any Method for it, because every one knows that the ordinary Rules are to be observed in the strictest Sense, with respect to broken-winded Horses. For albeit Exercise be as necessary to them as to any other, yet when it is in the least immoderate, or if it be given upon a full Stomach, its Effects are, for the most part, very bad , and he that would give such an Horse much Water to drink, or keep his Rack constantly full, must be but a very young Groom : For when the Stomach is full of Hay or Water, as it lies upon a Level with the Lungs in all such Creatures, it is the more apt to press forwards upon the Midriff, and hinder the Action of the Lungs, which cannot but be very troublesome in all Cases where they are any wise defective, as we daily observe in purr-five and broken-winded Horses.

Feeding  
and Exer-  
cise.

As to those Horses who have thick mucilaginous Matter obstructing the Pipes, and whose Lungs must also be very humid, and, as it were, more relaxed than natural ; albeit the same Rules are to be observed in their Oeconomy of Diet and Exercise, as in the former Case ; and though the same Remedies are also very proper, yet because this Distemper is sometimes more violent by Fits than at other times, and may therefore require Medicines of more powerful Efficacy ; besides Bleeding, which is necessary, when the Oppression is upon him, the following Balls may be given with good Success.

‘ Take *Galbanum* and Gum *Ammoniacum* of each a  
‘ Quarter of a Pound, Bur-dock Root half a Pound ;  
‘ first beat them well in a Mortar with two Ounces  
‘ of the Flowers of Benjamin ; then add by de-  
‘ grees sweet Oil, until you bring them into a Paste

R

‘ fit



‘ fit to be made into Balls, weighing two Ounces  
 ‘ each. Let your Horse have two of these every  
 ‘ Day, one in the Morning, and another in the Af-  
 ‘ ternoon, two Hours before Water, keeping him  
 ‘ ty’d up to the Rack all that while.

The following Balls may be also given with good  
 Success, and may be easily procured at all times,  
 and almost in all Places.

‘ Take four Heads of Garlick, an Ounce of  
 ‘ Horse-Radish, stamp them in a Mortar; then  
 ‘ add an Ounce and a half of Flowers of Brimstone,  
 ‘ and work them into a Mass with as much sweet  
 ‘ Oil as is sufficient: Let these be made into two  
 ‘ Balls, one to be taken in the Morning, and the  
 ‘ other in the Afternoon, as above directed.

All the Remedies prescribed in a Cold, are also  
 profitable and useful in this Case; and he may have  
 sometimes scalded Barley instead of Oats, and no-  
 thing will be more proper than Barley boil’d in his  
 Water with Liquorish, which he will drink with  
 pleasure, after he has been us’d to it.

We now proceed to the Cure of those Horses that  
 are broken-winded and consumptive, which is only  
 to be attempted in the Beginning, and before they  
 begin to fall much away; for Horses in this Con-  
 dition will often eat to excess, and keep up their  
 Body that way, if they are not put to daily Labour;  
 and because a proper Diet in this Case is the most  
 likely to succeed, he should, in the first place, be  
 restricted from eating too much Hay, and from  
 drinking too much Water, especially at a time, and  
 that for the Reasons already alledged; for what  
 he wants in this, may easily be made up another  
 way.

Therefore let a Mixture of Linseed and Fœnu-  
 greek Seeds be given him frequently in his Corn, and  
 sometimes a few of the greater hot Seeds, as those  
 of Fennel, Carraways and Anise; in his Water  
 may be boil’d three or four handfuls of Barley with  
 a little Liquorish or Honey dissolved in it; but he  
 must not be us’d constantly to the Liquorish, espe-  
 cially if he appear to waste very much; for it may  
 in that Case prove over deterfive.



He ought to have Exercise more or less every Day; but that must be moderate, and only when the Weather is clear; for by this means the Toughness of the Blood is broke, and all the Discharges kept free and open.

If he be at any time seized with an Oppression, and a more than ordinary Difficulty of Breathing, he ought to have a Vein opened in his Flank, or on the inside of the Thigh, from whence may be taken a small Quantity of Blood; but this must be only gone about when there is an absolute Necessity for it.

The following Balls may be given and continued with good Success, viz.

Take of Myrrh and Gum Benzoin of each four Ounces, Gum Arabick, the Roots of Orrice, round Birthwort, and the Shavings of Hartshorn or Ivory, of each two Ounces; Galangal and Zedoary of each an Ounce, Fennel-Seeds, Cummin-Seeds and Fenugreek, of each an Ounce and a half: Let these be beat into a fine Powder, and made up into a stiff Paste with Honey or Syrup of Colts-foot; then work into the whole an Ounce of the common Balsam of Sulphur, and let them be made into Balls the Bigness of a large Wall-nut, whereof one is to be given every Morning and Afternoon, an Hour before watering Time.

All pectoral Herbs, as Maiden-hair, Colts-foot, Rocket, Scabious, and the like; all healing Balsams and Gums, and all the Remedies directed in this and the two preceding Chapters, may be profitably given in broken-winded consumptive Cases. But if your Horse, notwithstanding these Helps, turns poor and emaciate, low in his Spirits, and addicted to sweat, heaves to his Chine, and, with a reduplicated Motion, farts much and often, coughs and rattles, sounds hollow, and looks ghastly, with his Eye-pits fallen, you had better give him to the Crows than be at the Expence of his Keeping, for his future Services will never be answerable to it.



## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Of the Glanders and Mourning of the Chine.*

**T**HE *Glanders* is a Flux or Running of corrupt Matter from the Nose of a Horse, which is of different Colours, white, yellow, green or black, according to the Degree of Malignity, or according as it has been of a long or short Continuance.

Concerning the Nature and Cause of this Discharge Authors have given very strange and unintelligible Accounts; some have ascrib'd it to the Lungs, some to the Spleen, some to the Liver and Kidneys, and some to the Brain; and when it has continued so long that the Matter becomes of a blackish Colour, as is usual in its last Stage, they have imagin'd it to come from the Spine; and from thence have called it the *Mourning of the Chine*. But Mr. *Snape*, in his Anatomy, has taken Notice of the Farriers Mistakes concerning this Distemper; and although there are some things in his Account of it that are liable to Exception, yet because it is much more rational than any thing has hitherto been advanc'd upon the Subject; and likewise because the Authority of so eminent a Farrier may, no doubt, weigh with most Readers, we shall therefore give it a Place here.

Mr. *Snape's*  
Account of  
the Glanders  
and Mourning  
of the  
Chine.

That Author having in the 5th Chapter of his 3d. Book shewn the Use of the *Glandula pituitaria*, and that there can be no Discharge from it into the Nose, falls into the following Digression concerning the Glanders; wherein he observes, That the Matter, which issueth so plentifully out of the Noses of Horses that have got great Colds, or are glandered, falls not, as he himself had some time believed, from the Brain, but that it was separated from the Arterial Blood by the Glands or Kernels of the upper part of the Inside of the Nose, which, he says, is the more readily to be believed, because the other Glands are swell'd at the same time, and particularly



particularly those under the Horse's Jaws, that being one of the most certain Signs of a Horse's inclining to the Glanders. But he goes on in the following Words : " And this may serve to convict of Error all our Ancient Authors, who did hold (and our Practitioners, who at this Day do hold) That the Glanders proceed from a Defect and Wasting in the Brain ; and that all that snotty Matter comes from thence, which issues out of the Nose ; which, were it so, all the Brain in the Horse's Head would not be sufficient to supply it with Matter for three Days, according to the Quantity I have seen come from one in that time. It is therefore a very false Opinion taken up meerly upon Guess, without inspecting into the Parts, that our Practitioners do commonly entertain concerning this Disease.

" Neither is there such a Disease as *the Mourning of the Chine*, as they do to this Day hold ; for it is impossible any Creature should continue so long alive, as till all his Brain be so far wasted by this Disease, that it comes to reach the Spinal Marrow without the Skull, which is that, I suppose, they call the *Chine*.

" But this Disease, by them called the *Mourning of the Chine*, is distinguished into a different Disease from the former, from the Matter's altering its Colour ; for it is generally observ'd, that after a Horse hath had this Disease running on him for some time, the corrupt Matter or Snot changes by degrees from an indifferent white to a more dull Colour, inclining at first to a little redish, but after a longer time, especially when a Horse begins to grow towards his End, it will be very black, and very nauseous both to see and smell.

" From this Alteration of the Colour, as I have said, I do believe they give the Disease this proper and distinguishing Name of *Mourning of the Chine* ; whereas it is only a greater Degree of one and the same Disease, in which the *Chine* is not at all affected, at least no more than any other Part of the Body, all of which languishes away



“ by this inveterate Distemper. By what Steps  
 “ it proceeds, and how the Matter comes to alter  
 “ its Colour, I will give you my Opinion.

“ The Mass of Blood being depraved, either by  
 “ unwholsome Food, or by great Colds, or, lastly,  
 “ by Infection from the Air, and from other Hor-  
 “ ses (for this Distemper is catching) this Fleg-  
 “ matick Matter collected in it is spued out of the  
 “ Ends of the Arteries in the upper Part of the  
 “ Nostrils, about the spongy Bones chiefly; for in  
 “ an Horse there is little of this Matter comes out  
 “ of the Mouth, but it still descends by the Nos-  
 “ trils. This Humour, I say, distilling out of the  
 “ Arteries by the spongy Bones continually, doth  
 “ in process of Time so fill the said Bones with  
 “ filthy Matter, that, like a Sink or Channel, be-  
 “ ing choaked up with Filth, there is not so free  
 “ a Passage for the Humour as when the Disease  
 “ first began; so that the Matter by that means is  
 “ there stay'd, and by its Continuance there it ac-  
 “ quires so bad a Quality, that it corrodes and can-  
 “ kers those Bones, and indeed ulcerates and gan-  
 “ greens all the Passages of the Nostrils, till it has  
 “ mortify'd and consum'd them (as happens some-  
 “ times to venereal Persons) and at length destroy'd  
 “ the Beast; for indeed it is seldom or never cu-  
 “ rable when it is once, come truly to be a Can-  
 “ ker.

“ Now by the Foulness of these Bones (as I have  
 “ said) that Matter or Snot which doth descend by  
 “ these Passages (which indeed doth at length  
 “ drivel down in a greater Quantity than before,  
 “ by reason of the Passages being widened, from  
 “ the Parts being gnawn asunder by the cankered  
 “ Humour.) I say, that Matter or Snot, which doth  
 “ descend after this, is of a contrary Colour to what  
 “ it used to be; for it is become more black and wa-  
 “ terish, mixed with a little Red, and hath a ve-  
 “ ry ill Smell; but this Alteration happens not  
 “ from the Matter's flowing from a new Part, but  
 “ is caused by reason of the Foulness of the Parts  
 “ through which it passeth; for from thence it  
 “ hath its Dye in a great Degree.

“ Not



“ Not but there is yet another Cause of it,  
 “ which is the greater Foulness of the Blood; for  
 “ as the Beginning of the Distemper did proceed  
 “ from the Corruption or Depravation of the  
 “ Blood, which was become, as it were, degene-  
 “ rate from its spirituous, balsamick and volati-  
 “ lized Condition into a flat and vapid State, like  
 “ to dead Wine; so in process of Time, for want  
 “ of the Spirits to quicken it, and cause the Fer-  
 “ mentations necessary in the proper places of the  
 “ Body; where the excrementitious Parts of the  
 “ Blood should be thrown off, such Excrements  
 “ are collected every Day in greater Quantity, and  
 “ acquire a greater Degree of Malignity, being  
 “ hardly any part of them discharged any other  
 “ Way but this, which is preternatural, and most  
 “ times becomes destructive to the Beast after the  
 “ Disease hath arriv’d to this Height.

But we shall here subjoin; to what Mr. *Snape* has  
 said concerning the Glanders, some few Conside-  
 rations that will make this Matter yet more intel-  
 ligible; and in order thereunto the Reader would  
 do well to consider; that an Ulcer, or an Abscess  
 form’d in any Part, from whence there may con-  
 stantly be deriv’d a very large Discharge of Matter,  
 will soon bring the Body into a weak and debili-  
 tated State, by depriving it of its necessary Suste-  
 nance and Support; and this we find by daily Ob-  
 servation, both in humane Bodies, and in brute  
 Creatures.

Some fur-  
 ther Obser-  
 vations con-  
 cerning the  
 Glanders,  
 &c.

Nor does this happen by reason of the Quantity of  
 Matter alone that issues from those Parts; but as it  
 causes an over-great Determination of the Blood to-  
 wards the ulcerated Part; which lessens the com-  
 mon and ordinary Discharges by the Glands and  
 Pores of the Body; for by this means the Blood is  
 rendered more viscid, and unapt to Motion; and  
 (as the above-mentioned Author observes) it loses  
 its Spirits; and therefore it very readily stagnates  
 in the soft Parts, and where the Blood-vessels are  
 very small, as in the Lungs, Kidneys, &c. forming  
 Ulcers in them also. And for this Reason it very  
 often falls out, that glandered Horses turn con-



sumptive, and consumptive Horses turn glandered. And this has brought Farriers into different Opinions concerning the Glanders, because most glandered Horses, after they were opened, have been found defective in one or more of their inward Parts.

But to understand the Nature of this Distemper aright, it will be necessary to consider, that it takes its Beginning, and has its chief Seat in a little soft spongy Flesh, which is easily dilated by the least Influx of Blood; and therefore we sometimes observe a Running at the Nose in some Horses from a very slight Cold; but when this Substance happens to be very much relaxed, any one may, without much Difficulty, imagine how the Running will be apt to increase.

The Glanders considered in all its Stages.

But that this may yet be the more readily apprehended, we shall consider it in all its different Stages. *First*, as it is a simple Running; *Secondly*, as it becomes an Ulcer: And under this Head it may be also considered in a twofold Respect, as it is an Ulcer in the fleshy Parts, and as it becomes an Ulcer in the bony Parts. And though this be only an advanced Degree of the same Disease, yet we have made this Distinction in Compliance with those who, in its last Stage, have called it the *Mourning of the Chine*.

Now this Disease at first is no other than a Superfluity of Matter proceeding from the soft spongy Flesh in the upper Part of the Nose, and that is caused by an over great Plenty of Blood from the Arteries in those Parts; for by this means that glandulous Flesh becomes enlarged: And whereas in its natural State there is nothing separated from it, but a little Moisture, which, in Horses, is hardly perceivable, and serves chiefly to refresh those Parts which are the Organs of Smelling; yet now that the Glands are dilated and swell'd, there is a considerable Quantity of Matter continually discharged from their excretory Ducts.

And whether this proceed from a Cold, or from the Strangles, or from Infection, or an inward Waste and Decay, it will soon degenerate into



into an Ulcer; and the Matter being pent up within those Passages, must easily acquire a more than ordinary Degree of Putrefaction, whereby it turns corrosive, wastes and destroys the Vessels; so that instead of that superfluous Discharge, which was in the Beginning of the Distemper, from the common Passages of the Gland, the Matter now proceeds from the ruptur'd and torn Vessels; and therefore if the Horse lives until the Glanders turn to an Ulcer, the Matter is frequently streaked with Blood.

But in the last Stage of this Distemper the intolerable Stench, and a discolour'd Corruption denotes the Bones to be ulcerated, as well as the Flesh; and how this may happen, is not difficult to be conceived, especially if it be remembered, that the Bone, in which the spongy Flesh is seated, is also itself very spongy. Now as this Bone is open and full of Pores, it must easily become a fit Receptacle for a more than ordinary Quantity of the common Juices; and when these are perpetually falling into it, changing its Nature from that of a Bone, it turns into a *Caries*, and becomes like dead mortify'd Flesh; so that all the Matter that comes from thence is of an ashy or black Colour; and when it has been of some Continuance, it also wastes, and destroys the Passages of the Nose, as Mr. *Snape* has observ'd.

No wonder then that the Cure of the Glanders becomes difficult, as it is thus circumstanced; for besides the inward Waste and Decay, which is sometimes the Cause of it, and is for the most part, or always the Effect of it, as it is seated out of the Reach of proper Applications, and in such Parts as we have observed to be of a very loose and open Structure; therefore the least Running from the Nose of a Horse, unless he be otherwise in good Order, is very much to be feared, but especially if it be remembered what we have elsewhere taken Notice of concerning the dependent Position of a Horse's Head, whereby he is render'd liable to many sudden Disorders, as the *Vertigo*, *Staggers*, &c. and to frequent Diseases of the Eyes; we may up-  
on



on the same footing easily imagine how he may also become glandered; if once the Blood happens to be determin'd in an over-great Quantity into the soft and glandulous Substances about the Nose and Throat.

But although the Cure of the Glanders is hardly to be attempted in its last Stage, or even when it is turn'd to an Ulcer, or indeed in any Circumstance, where a Horse is inclinable to be consumptive; yet that we may not be thought wanting of those Helps that are necessary for so common a Disease, we shall lay down such Rules as are to be observed, and prescribe such Remedies as are the most appropriated to every Degree of it.

The Cure.

And therefore in the Beginning, if the Running be simple, such as may proceed from a Cold, and continues too long, if the Horse has Strength, he may be purged once or twice, or oftner, with the following Drench.

‘ Take the Roots of common Burdock sliced, one  
 ‘ handful of *Guaiacum* and *Sassafras* Wood, of each  
 ‘ half a Pound, Monk's Rhubarb four Ounces, *Send*  
 ‘ one Ounce, Jalap bruised two Ounces, Sweet-  
 ‘ Fennel-Seeds or Aniseeds an Ounce and a half.  
 ‘ Boil the Burdock-Roots and the Woods in two  
 ‘ Quarts of Water for the Space of a whole Hour;  
 ‘ after which, put in the other Ingredients; and  
 ‘ to a Quart of the strained Decoction add a Quar-  
 ‘ ter of a Pound of Honey: Let this be given in  
 ‘ the Morning, with the usual Precautions; and let  
 ‘ his Water also be warm, and sweetened with Ho-  
 ‘ ney. Or this:

‘ Take Jalap and Aloes, in fine Powder, of each  
 ‘ ten Drains, Salt of Tartar half a Dram. Make  
 ‘ them into two Balls, with a sufficient Quantity of  
 ‘ Wheat-flour and Butter, to be given as the former.

‘ After the Operation of the Physick, let him  
 ‘ have a Decoction of Red Rose-Leaves, with an  
 ‘ Ounce and a half, or two Ounces of *Diascordium*  
 ‘ dissolved in it, which will greatly contribute to a-  
 ‘ bate the running at the Nose; and while it is only  
 ‘ in this first Stage, a little of the same Decoction,  
 ‘ without the *Diascordium*, but sweetned with Ho-  
 ‘ ney, will be sufficient to inject into the Nose.

And



And because all those things, that are proper to promote a Breathing thro' the Pores, will also conduce to the same End, therefore one Pound of Gujacum, half a Pound of Saffafras, with four Ounces of Liquorish, may be boil'd in his Water for his ordinary Drink.

But if you cannot bring him to drink this Decoction, the Woods may be given in the Way *Salleyfell* uses them for the Farcin, which is thus.

“ Infuse ten Ounces of Gujacum-wood, or for  
“ want of that, that of Box-wood, in nine Pints of  
“ Water; and after they have stood twelve Hours  
“ in Infusion in hot Ashes, boil them with a gentle  
“ Heat in a covered Vessel, to the Consumption  
“ of a third Part of the Water, then strain out  
“ the Liquor, and give your Horse a Quart a Day  
“ for eight Days together, keeping him bridled three  
“ Hours before, and three Hours after every Dose.

But there is no need to keep a Horse so long bridled after this Decoction, but he may be fed within an Hour, or an Hour and half; and before his Corn he may drink Water, wherein Liquorish has been boil'd, or Honey dissolv'd.

If the Running does not abate, or if you observe the Kernels under his Jaws to be very hard and swell'd, you may apply the following Cataplasim.

“ Take half a Pound of Linseed, four Ounces  
“ of the Seeds of Fœnugreek, reduce them to a  
“ fine Powder, and boil them over a clear Fire in  
“ a Quart of Vinegar, to the Consistence of a  
“ Poultice, keeping constantly stirring, and when it  
“ begins to thicken add half a Pound of Ointment  
“ of Marsh-mallows, and apply it hot to the Ker-  
“ nels, covering the Part with a Lamb's-Skin.

This must be done for several Days; and if the Horse be not far gone in the Distemper, it will either dissolve the Kernels or break them, which will be of very great Service, as the swelling in those Parts is occasion'd by a sort of Sympathy, and proceeds from the same Cause that brings on the Glanders; and as they must therefore constantly help to feed the Distemper. But if they can-

Breaking of  
the Kernels  
under the  
Jaws some-  
times neces-  
sary.

not



not be mov'd by emollient or suppurative Medicines, I should think it might conduce very much to the Horse's Safety to open them with a Caustick, it being much easier to heal an Ulcer in those Parts than in the Nose; neither can it be attended with such bad Consequences as when those Kernels are extirpate, as is sometimes practis'd, because in the Operation some part of them is generally left behind, from whence Nature supplies that Want by new, but imperfect ones, which are more liable to Swelling and Inflammation than the first; so that instead of giving Relief it often makes the Distemper worse.

But if those Swellings continue with the other Symptoms, the Horse ought to be rowel'd, unless you perceive him to waste, and in that Case any kind of Issue will only help to shorten his Days.

And here, as concerning Roweling, that will be of greatest Service when made on the inside of the Thigh, in order to make a Revulsion; and this method of Roweling is supported by the same Reasons as bleeding in the hind Parts for Diseases of the Head; for as we find the Blood to move in a more than ordinary Quantity towards the Head of a Horse that is glander'd, therefore a Vent to the Humors backwards, at so great a Distance, will, no doubt, be of Service, for by that means the Blood will be brought to flow more towards the hind Parts than before such an Issue was made, and a check will be thereby put to the Distemper.

Injections to  
be us'd.

But when the Parts, from whence the glandered Running proceeds, are become ulcerated, which may be known by the clamminess and viscosity of the Matter, and by its sticking to the inside of the Nostrils like Paste; in this Case Injections must be made use of, and such as are of the greatest Efficacy, and for that purpose the Farrier ought to provide a Syringe, with a Pipe that is of a convenient Length. But first of all it will be necessary to purge and cleanse the Horse's Nose, by burning Brimstone or *Auripigmentum* under it,  
which



which may be sent up his Nostrils thro' the small End of a Funnel; and when he has sneez'd, and thrown out a plentiful deal of Matter, syringe his Nose with Brandy or red Wine, and then inject the blue Water prescrib'd in the 24th Chapter, to take off Films and Webs from the Eye, for nothing will conduce more to the cleansing and healing the ulcerated Parts. The Water made of the Lapis Mirabilis, in the 23d Chapter, will also conduce very much to the same Intention; or the following, which is also exceeding proper where there is a very great Foulness.

Take a Pint of White-Wine, one Quart of Plantain-Water, two Handfuls of Red-Rose Leaves, half a Dram of Orpiment, one Dram of Verdegrease, Myrrh and Aloes, of each a Dram and a half.

The Rose Leaves are to be infus'd in the White-Wine for the space of forty-eight Hours, and then the Wine to be pour'd off and mixt with the Plantain-Water, and the Orpiment, Verdegrease, Myrrh and Aloes, are to be beat to a fine Powder before they are mixt with the Infusion.

A small Quantity of the *Unguentum Egyptiacum* dissolv'd before the Fire in a little Oil of Turpentine, may be also injected thro' a pretty large Pipe, which will also be very assistful in cleansing the ulcerated Parts.

If your Horse begins to waste, and turns flabby and subject to hectick Disorders, the Method laid down for such Cases is also to be follow'd; and if the Matter proceeding from the Nose denotes the Bones to be also ulcerated by its Colour and rank Smell, you may then very justly begin to give over Hopes of his doing well, tho' I know there are several Farriers who have Assurance enough to boast of curing Horses in this Condition: However, his Nose ought to be syring'd with Brandy, or Spirit of Wine, and with those things above-recommended, that he may become as little noisome and offensive as possible.

A Tincture drawn from Euphorbium is extremely serviceable in all Cases where the Bones are  
foul



Forcing  
Matter from  
the Nose  
with too  
much Vio-  
lence not  
very com-  
mendable.

foul and ulcerated; but yet we cannot recommend its Use in Injections, because when it is given that way, it must wash the Parts that are sound as well as those that are putrify'd; and as it must be frequently us'd before it can produce the desir'd Effects, it may, no doubt, in so sensible a Part as the Nose, by its excessive stimulating Quality, derive a much greater Influx into the Parts, and, consequently, be the Cause of a greater Foulness; and for the same Reason, the cleansing the Nose by Fumigation, with Brimstone and the like Combustibles, is not to be too often attempted, because any such violent Agitation will be apt to have the like Effect. I should, therefore, in most Cases of this Nature recommend moderate Exercise, while the Horse has Strength, or the Use of Chewing-Balls of *Assa Fœtida*, and other fœculent stinking Ingredients, for these will, for the most part, purge the Nose as much as necessary; nor can such a Method easily be attended with any ill Consequence.

Of the  
Glanders  
which comes  
by Infection.

But it may, no doubt, be expected, while I am upon this Cure, that I should make some Distinction between that kind of Glanders which comes by Infection, and that which proceeds only from the common and usual Causes; but as this cannot differ from that otherwise than in such Circumstances as may happen in different Constitutions, the Method of Cure, as to Generals, must therefore be the same. But when the Glanders becomes like a Plague among Horses, as it sometimes happens, it is then only to be consider'd as a Symptom and a critical Discharge, which contributes to the Solution of some reigning Distemper. And in this Case, all those things that we have recommended for the Cure of malignant or pestilential Fevers are proper, and ought to be made use of internally.

We shall conclude with the general Precaution given by all Farriers, and that is to separate the Sound from the Unsound, tho' I believe this formidable Name of Infectiousness has been chiefly owing to the last mention'd kind of Glanders, which



which is Epidemical, for I have known glander'd Horses stand some Months with those that have been sound, without any ill Effect; yet I must needs say, it would be pity to run any such Hazard with a good Horse, when it may be so easily avoided.

## C H A P. XXIX.

## Of the Strangles.

**T**H E Strangles is a Swelling under the Throat between the two Jaw-bones, and seems not to differ very much from that which in a humane Body is call'd the *Squinasy* or *Quinsy*; its Seat is not so much upon the Glands as on the Muscles, and therefore it comes the more readily to an Impostumation; neither is there so much Danger in Horses as in humane Bodies, because in a true Quinsy the Muscles of the *Larynx* or Throttle are for the most part affected; whereas in the Strangles the Muscles of the Tongue seem only to be touch'd, and therefore the Disease comes naturally to have an external or outward Discharge.

The Strangles ally'd to an external Quinsy.

Young Horses are most liable to this Distemper, and for that Reason the *Sieur de Solleysell* compares it to the Small-Pox, and has observ'd that few Horses are troubled with it above once, unless the Matter of the Strangles has been imperfectly cast off, and then he says it generally returns, when they are about the Age of six, ten or twelve; he further takes Notice, that the Matter sometimes casts itself off from the Limbs, and other Parts of the Body, especially from those Members that have been any ways hurt or weaken'd.

Compar'd to the Small-Pox by Solleysell.

It has been a Loss to that Author, who was so diligent an Observer of all manner of Accidents incident to Horses, that he was not better acquainted with their inward Structure and Make, otherwise his Notices might have turn'd much more to his own and the Readers Account; for altho' this Distemper be near ally'd to an external Quinsy, as to its Situation, and also in many other Respects; yet no doubt,



doubt, as it mostly happens to young Horses, it may therefore, in its Effects, also bear an Affinity to the Small-Pox.

For as the Blood of young Horses may reasonably enough be suppos'd unequally fluid, having not as yet been sufficiently comminuted by frequent Circulations; therefore, while they are in this imperfect State, they are render'd liable to Diseases, as we have already taken Notice in another Place; and when these happen, they fuse and melt the Blood, or purify it from its Viscidities and grosser Parts, by some Discharges, which are answerable to the Small-Pox in humane Bodies. But as the Small-Pox breaks out in little Pustules all over the Skin, wherever the Vessels are the smallest, and where the Blood must of consequence be most apt to stagnate; yet because the Blood-Vessels in Horses are considerably thicker and stronger than in humane Bodies, therefore these Impurities cannot so readily be discharg'd in that manner, but fall out into Boils and Swellings in all those Parts that are the weakest or the most dependent; and this may, no doubt, be the Reason why Horses are more subject to the Strangles, and other Impostumations, while they are Colts, than when they are grown up to a more mature State.

But tho' this may be the true Reason of that Disease, and therefore that it may require some different, or, at least, some necessary Helps, which are not altogether needful in common Boils and Inflammations, yet the Cure must be much the same as to Universals.

The Cure.

And therefore if the Swelling has a tendency forwards between the Jaws (as is most common to Horses, proceeding from the dependent Situation of their Head) so that the Passages of the Throat are not in danger of being choak'd up by it, the safest way is to ripen it and bring it to Suppuration, and for that End the most simple easy Methods may first be put in Practice, as anointing the Parts with Ointment of Marsh-mallows, and covering them up warm, for Nature oftentimes gives the greatest Assistance in such Diseases. Or

you



you may take Oil of Bays and fresh Butter, of each a like Quantity, Ointment of Marsh-mallows the Weight of both; or the Poulrice in the preceding Chapter may be apply'd warm twice a Day.

After the Swellings are ripe, and that you perceive Matter within them, but that they don't break, which perhaps may be hinder'd by the Thickness of the Skin, you may open them with a Lancet; but if they do not ripen as you could wish, you had better make use of a hot Iron, and sear the outside pretty deep; but whether you open them by Incision, or by the Application of the Iron, you must be sure to make your Operation in the lowermost dependent Part, for by that means the Matter will the more easily run off; whereas if you open them in the upper Part, if they happen to be large, you will have them constantly fill'd with Corruption; and also while you observe this Method, your Incision need be but small, for the Matter will find itself a Passage thro' a very small Orifice, when that happens to be rightly disposed.

As soon as the Matter has fully discharg'd itself, you may press out what remains gently with your Thumb, and then make a Dossil of fine Flax, and when you have dipt it in warm *Basilicon*, which is the properest Digestive in all such Intentions, you may introduce it into the Orifice, but not too far, neither must that be continued above three or four Days, in any common Case; for the keeping the Orifice too long open, will derive too great a Quantity of Matter upon the Parts; and will cause them also to ulcerate, and sometimes to turn fistulous. And for the same Reason the use of Tents must be very prejudicial, as they most commonly have that Effect.

And therefore when the Running begins to lessen, you need only apply smooth flat Pledgits of Lint, arm'd with the same Ointment over the Orifices, and above them a thick Compress of soft Canvas, in several Doubles, to fill up all the vacant Space between the Jaws, that the divided Parts



may again be united; and if you find little hard Lumps remain after the Sores are heal'd up, you need not be much surpriz'd, neither will they be of any ill Consequence, for these may be remov'd by a defensive Plaister, for which purpose we recommend the following, which is easy to be made, and is very good.

' Take common Diachylon and Red-Lead  
' Plaister, of each four Ounces, common Pitch two  
' Ounces, dissolve them in a Gallipot, or Iron  
' Ladle, over hot Ashes, or over the Embers, with  
' a sufficient Quantity of Oil or Hog's-Lard; then  
' take Bole, in fine Powder, an Ounce and a half,  
' and stir it into the Mixture, and make it to the  
' Consistency of a Plaister; if it be too hard, you  
' may dissolve it again with a little more Oil; and  
' if it should chance to be too soft, you may add  
' a little more of the Diachylon.

This must be spread on Leather, or a piece of thick Dowlis; and after the Hair has been clip'd off very close, it may be notch'd and apply'd all under his Chops, where it is to lie as long as it will stick on; and by the help of this all the little Hardnesses will be dissolv'd.

The Basilicon, which we have recommended for dressing the Sores, may be had ready made at any Apothecary's; but it will be the more appropriated to Horses, if half an Ounce of Turpentine be mixt with every Ounce of it; or the Farrier may make it himself in the following manner.

' Take yellow Wax, Rosin and common Pitch,  
' of each half a Pound, Oil or Hog's-Lard nine  
' Ounces, common Turpentine one Pound, melt  
' them together over a gentle Fire, constantly stir-  
' ring, or else the Pitch will be apt to burn; then  
' strain it through a coarse Canvas, and keep it for  
' use.

But if this Ointment should incarnate, or make the Flesh grow too fast, you may mix with it a little of the Powder of Verdegriase, made very fine, or the Powder of red *Precipitate*, which will keep that under; but further Directions shall be given herein when we come to treat of Ulcers;



we shall therefore go on to observe what is necessary to be done internally.

If you find your Horse hearty and well, notwithstanding those Tumors, there will be no great need for any thing but to give him plenty of warm Water, mixt with Oatmeal, to drink, keeping him, in every other Respect, to his usual Diet; but if you observe him to be feverish, and to forsake his Meat, it is a Sign Nature is over-much oppress'd, and requires some Assurances; and therefore to relieve that Oppression, you may give him once or twice, or oftner, as you shall see Occasion, a few Broth, by way of Clyster, or a Decoction made with two or three Handfuls of Marsh-mallows, mixt with a quarter of a Pound of common Treacle or Molossus.

And if you observe the Swellings to continue hard, but have little or no Tendency to a Suppuration, those things which have already been recommended for the Cure of putrid and malignant Fevers, may, in that Case, be given with Success; or if those things are not in readiness, you may give him the following cordial Drench.

‘ Take Gentian-Root and Gallangal, in fine  
‘ Powder, of each half an Ounce, Cloves and  
‘ Cinamon, of each one Dram, Saffron one  
‘ Scruple, Powder of burnt Hart's-Horn two  
‘ Drams; let this be given in a Mixture of Milk-  
‘ Water and White-Wine, or in a Pint of Ale.  
‘ After which give him moderate Exercise for half  
‘ an Hour; and when you bring him into the  
‘ Stable, let him be ty'd up another half Hour;  
‘ and then you may permit him to eat some fresh  
‘ Hay.

An Ounce of *Venice-Treacle* dissolv'd in a little Milk-Water, or warm Ale, and given once or twice a Day, will be of great Service to assist languid Nature, and will either help to bring those Swellings to Maturity, or will dispose them to perspire and go off in a kindly manner.

Sometimes the Strangles are cast off chiefly by the Nose, and sometimes they break inwardly about the Roots of the Tongue, and when that



happens, most of the Matter issues from the Nose also. In either of these Cases the Horse should be moderately rid, for that will help him more effectually than any thing else to expel the Matter, and will not be attended with such ill Consequences as Fumigation, and the injecting of hot things, or the putting of Feathers up the Nose; for by this means you do not assist Nature, but constrain her, which is no ways agreeable to sound Practice. But if the Swellings break inwardly, it will be very proper to wash his Mouth sometimes with Red Wine mixed with Honey of Roses, for that will keep it clean, and prevent Ulcers; but if the Sores be like to continue, which can only happen when the Horse is in a bad State of Health, you may dissolve a Quarter of an Ounce of crude *Sal Armoniack* in a Pint of Water, and wash his Mouth with it once or twice a Day.

If the Discharge be plentiful, and the Matter well digested, there will be but little Occasion for after-Helps, as Bleeding and purging; but if any Accident happens, either from the State of the Body, or from bad Management, that the Cure seems imperfect, and the Horse does not thrive upon it, then Recourse may be had to Purging: For which purpose I chiefly recommend the Preparations of Aloes, because these are the most effectual to work upon the Blood, and to break it of its Viscidities. And after Purging has been three or four times comply'd with, one of the following Balls may be given every Day, and continued for some time.

‘ Take Gentian, Zedoary and Gallangal of each  
 ‘ four Ounces, Cloves, Nutmegs and Cinamon, of  
 ‘ each half an Ounce; Myrrh six Ounces, calcin’d  
 ‘ Harts-horn half a Pound. Let all these be made  
 ‘ into a fine Powder, and incorporated together  
 ‘ with Gum Arabick dissolved in Water, and made  
 ‘ into Balls weighing two Ounces each.

But if your Horse be of small Value, the following may be given, which perhaps will answer the End, and be little inferior to the other.

‘ Take



‘ Take the Powders of Gentian and Gallangal  
 ‘ of each six Ounces, Antimony finely prepared eight  
 ‘ Ounces, Lawrel-Berries, Coriander and Carraway  
 ‘ Seeds, in Powder, of each an Ounce; the Powder  
 ‘ of calcin’d Harts-horn ten Ounces. Let these be  
 ‘ made into Balls weighing two Ounces, as the for-  
 ‘ mer; one of which may be given every Day for  
 ‘ the Space of a whole Month, and they will con-  
 ‘ tribute very much to rectify your Horse’s Con-  
 ‘ stitution, and to cleanse his Blood from all Im-  
 ‘ purities.

I have insisted the longer on this Subject, as the Method here laid down, is not only to be observed where there has been an imperfect Discharge of the Strangles, but also in all other Impostumations and inflam’d Swellings, where the Endeavours of Nature seem to have been insufficient; and to this we shall constantly refer in all such Cases.

---

## C H A P. XXX.

### *Of the false or bastard Strangles.*

**T**HE last mentioned Author accounts for this Distemper after a very strange manner, and in a way that is directly contrary to Nature. He says, When the Strangles have not been thoroughly discharg’d at the usual Time, a latent Ferment will remain in the Body, which, in its proper Time, will agitate the Humours, and cause them to fall into the same place where they should have been cast off at first. And this, he says, will sometimes happen five or ten Years after, when a Horse is ten or fifteen Years old. But besides that there is no such Ferment in the Body of any Animal, there is no such Regularity in Nature; and that may be plainly proved by his own Observation, where he takes Notice of the Matter of the Strangles falling off sometimes upon other Parts of the Body that have been previously weakened; and this is truly

A Mistake  
 of Solleyfell.



the way of Nature. And therefore when Swellings happen to old Horses about the Jaws, and among the Kernels, it is an infallible Sign of a crazy Constitution in them, and is oftentimes the Fore-runner of the Glanders, unless that has been occasioned by some Violence. And we may even observe in humane Bodies, in all tender and delicate Habits, the same Disposition to Swellings in the glandulous and kernelly Parts, but especially in those that are consumptive; and as in humane Bodies the Humours have chiefly a Tendency towards the Groins, &c. in a Horse they move towards the Head and Jaws, forming Swellings in those Parts, as they are dependent in a Horse, according to our repeated Observations.

Therefore in all such Cases, instead of being too busy to ripen and draw away such Kernels, unless they be influm'd, and have a Tendency to Suppuration, the Horse ought to have Plenty of good Feeding, with the Help of some Restoratives, and a continued Course of the *Cinabar-Pills*, as directed in the *Farcin*, to attenuate and open those hard Obstructions; and these will be the most likely means to recover him.

And this Method ought chiefly to be followed in all imperfect Strangles, whether a Horse be young or old; only that to young Horses Restoratives will not be necessary, unless he be also consumptive. But the Reader may consult the preceding Chapter.

## C H A P. XXXI.

### *Of the Vives.*

The Vives,  
a Swelling  
of the Pa-  
rotid Glands.

**T**HE *Vives* has a very near Affinity to the Strangles, and seems chiefly to differ in this, that as the Strangles for the most part happens to young Horses and Colts while they are at Grass, and while they feed with their Heads downwards, the Swelling and Inflammation has therefore the greater



greater Tendency forwards between the Jaws, but the Vives will happen to a Horse at any time, and is more particularly seated in the Glands or Kernels under the Ears. When the Disease is violent, all the Parts about the Throat will be inflam'd, and the Passages of the Windpipe and Gullet so much press'd upon, that a Horse in this Condition being unable to swallow, of necessity leaves his Food; and that does not proceed from the Imperfection in those Parts alone, but also from the Violence of the Pain, which affects the Nerves to such a Degree, that all other Sensations are, as it were, lost in that.

The Cause is chiefly from Cold, and from all those things that induce and bring on a Cold; as riding in the Night Fogs, when a Horse has not been us'd to it; drinking cold Water while he is warm, or suffering a Horse to cool too soon after hard riding, &c. The Cause.

The Signs are apparent in the outward Swellings, which, when the Inflammation is violent, are accompany'd with Restlessness, and sometimes with a Fever; sometimes he lies down, but immediately starts up again, being uneasy in every Posture. Sometimes the Pain is less violent, and then he not only lies down quietly, but will also feed.

As to the Cure, it is necessary to consider, that although the true Method of carrying off inflam'd Swellings is by suffering them to come to Maturity and Ripeness; yet when these happen upon any Part that may endanger Life, then Nature ought to be somewhat restrain'd, as we have observed in the beginning of this Treatise. And therefore when you observe him under violent Pain, you may freely venture to take away some Blood from his hind Parts to make a gentle Revulsion. The Cure.

After Bleeding, because Horses are, for the most part, costive, in all such Affections he may be kept moderately open, with such Clysters as have been directed for the Strangles; and these may be repeated once or twice a Day, while the Horse is in violent Pain.



And because in all such Cases it is proper to keep the Secretions at liberty, he ought to have plenty of warm Water sweetened with Liquorice, and sharpened with *Sal Prunellæ*, or purify'd Nitre, or Salt Petre ; or the following.

‘ Take two Ounces of White Wine Tartar, beat  
‘ it to a Powder, and dissolve it in a Quart of warm  
‘ Water, and dissolve in the same Liquor half an  
‘ Ounce of crude Sal Armoniack, and pour it into  
‘ his Water, which ought also to have a handful  
‘ of Oatmeal boil'd in it.

The frequent Use of those things will promote the Discharges by Urine and insensible Transpiration, so that the Swellings will sooner ripen, not only as there must by this means be a lesser Derivation towards them, but also as the Matter will become more attenuated, and fitter for a speedy Suppuration.

*Venice Treacle* or *London Treacle*, with the other Medicines above prescrib'd for the Strangles, may also be given, observing the same Precautions, not only as to Internals, but likewise in Externals ; for softning Poultices are absolutely necessary, but those of Yeast, and Meals made of common Grain, are apt to draw too violently, and therefore to be rejected, especially while there is already an overgreat Inflammation. But those, which are the best fitted for the Swellings of the Kernels about the Head and Neck, are such as are frequently made of the Pulps of emollient Herbs, as Mallows, Marshmallows, Agrimony, Mercury, and the like ; the Flowers of Violets, Melilot and Elder, and the Roots of white Lillies, the fat and unctuous Seeds, as Linseed, Cummin Seeds and Fœnugreek ; and these should also be quicken'd with a Mixture of penetrating Oils or Ointments, as those of Marshmallows, Earthworms ; or with some spirituous Mixture, as the rectify'd Spirits of Wine, or Brandy, or a small Quantity of Camphire in fine Powder stir'd into the whole Composition over warm Ashes, or before the Fire ; for by this means a moderate Perspiration will be still maintain'd in the diseased Part, which might otherwise be over-  
much



much obstructed by the Relaxation that might follow a continual Application of emollient softening things.

And it will be here necessary, as well as in the Strangles, after the Swellings are opened, to apply little Bolsters in all the hollow Parts between the Jaws and under the Ears, that if there should chance to be a more than ordinary Quantity of Matter continually falling into the Hollowness, it may not have room to make any other Lodgment for it self but what is proper.

Sometimes those Kernels continue hard and swell'd without Inflammation, and sometimes Adventitious or bastard Kernels grow out in those Parts, and are of little or no Use, but rather to be accounted Excrescences; these may be extirpated and cut off, taking care to avoid hurting the Branches of the *Jugular* Artery; and if there chance to be an Effusion of Blood from the smaller Branches, which are often enlarged after continued Swellings in those Parts, that may be stop'd by searing with an Iron moderately heated, according to the Directions hereafter laid down for Cauterizing and giving the Fire.

But if these Kernels continue hard and swell'd, without Inflammation, and have an Appearance, as if they might be resolv'd, it is then much the best way to use such Applications as are proper to discuss them; because Swellings and Inflammations in the glandulous kernelly Parts are troublesome, whether the Issue be good or bad.

Therefore the same Plaister, that was already directed to remove the remaining Hardness of the Strangles, may be apply'd all over these Kernels, and the same Method us'd internally to promote the Passage of the Blood through their compact Substance; but the Reader may receive further Satisfaction on this Head, by consulting that Part where we have made some Observations concerning Tumours.



## C H A P. XXXII.

*Of the Anticor.*

The *Anticor*,  
an Inflammation of  
the Gullet.

**M**OST Authors have been mistaken as to the Nature of this Disease; the greatest Number attribute it to the Heart; and *Solleysell* calls it a Swelling of the *Pericardium* or Purse of the Heart. But they are all plainly in an Error; for an *Anticor* is an Inflammation in the Gullet and Throat, and is the very same which in Man is called an *Angina*.

The Cause.

It proceeds from the same Causes that bring on infinite Diseases on Horses, to wit, hard riding, exposing a Horse to the Cold, and giving him cold Water to drink when he is hot, full feeding, and whatever else may cause a sudden Stagnation in the Blood.

The Signs.

The Signs are, first all those that accompany a Fever; for an *Anticor*, while it is internal, never wants a Fever to attend it; but when it shews itself externally, the Fever begins to abate, unless it continue to be both external and internal.

So long as the Inflammation continues in the Gullet, the Horse forsakes his Food; and though he has frequent Inclinations to drink, and albeit his Water be made moderately warm, the first Gulp deters him from meddling with it again, until he has forgot the Pain and Agony it put him into. And the Pain of the Gullet is yet more manifest from this; and I believe every Farrier must have made the same Observation, that whenever a Drench is given him he staggers, and seems as if he would fall down, and makes several short interrupted Groans or rather Gruntings, and sometimes will break out into a cold damp Sweat about his Ears.

The Cure.

The Cure must be begun by Bleeding, and that needs not be very sparing; for this Disease seldom happens to Horses that are poor and low. And here



here we also approve of striking one or other of the Veins on the hind Parts to make Revulsion.

After Bleeding the following Clyster may be given.

“ Take two Handfuls of Barley, two Ounces of  
“ *Sal Polychrest*, reduc'd to a fine Powder, boil them  
“ in two Quarts of Water for the Space of a quar-  
“ ter of an Hour, add to the Decoction a Pint of  
“ Urine, a quarter of a Pound of fresh Butter, and  
“ two Ounces of Oil of Rue. Let this be given  
“ Blood-warm, and repeated twice a Day, or  
“ oftner.

If he takes to Food, nothing must be given him but moisten'd Hay and scalded Bran; and what else, must be chiefly such things as are proper to keep down Heat and Inflammation, and abate the feverish Symptoms, for which purpose we recommend, after Bleeding, those Remedies that are proper to promote Sweat. Therefore let the following Drench be prepar'd for him.

‘ Take Treacle-Water and Carduous-Water of  
‘ each one Pint, dissolve in these two Ounces of  
‘ old *Venice-Treacle*, and after this has been exhibi-  
‘ ted, cloath him well, and give him a little warm  
‘ Water to drink; or instead of the Treacle and  
‘ Carduous-Waters, a Pint of stale Beer, mixt with  
‘ small Beer, may be us'd.” Nothing is so effec-  
tual to remove Inflammations, especially after  
Bleeding, as Sweating; and therefore, if you find  
it difficult to promote Sweat, you may give him  
the following Ball.

‘ Take of old *Venice-Treacle* two Ounces, volatile  
‘ Salt of Hart's-Horn fifteen Grains, *Matthews's*  
‘ Pill one Dram, Camphire, in Powder, six Grains,  
‘ Powder of Liquorish, or Sassafras in Powder,  
‘ what is sufficient to make it into a Paste; let this  
‘ be exhibited after the Operation of the Clyster is  
‘ over.

And if the Symptoms begin to abate, you may venture to give your Horse a gentle Purge, for which purpose the *Pulvis Cornachini*, commonly call'd the Countess of *Warwick's* Powder, takes Place beyond all others; and is thus made.

‘ Take



‘ Take Scammony prepar’d with the Fumes of  
 ‘ Brimstone four Ounces, *Diaphoretick* Antimony  
 ‘ two Ounces, and the same Quantity of the  
 ‘ Crystals, or Cream of Tartar, make them into a  
 ‘ fine Powder.

The Dose is two Ounces made up into a Ball with Butter and Flower, to be given with the usual Precautions.

This Medicine not only purges the Belly moderately, but also keeps the Pores open, and carries off a great deal by Sweat and insensible Transpiration.

If the Swelling appears outwards, and at the same time the other Symptoms abate, you may then leave off Purging, for what is intended by that Evacuation, is chiefly to disperse the inward Disorder; and then you are only to apply ripening Cataplasms and Poultices, allowing him at the same time *Sal Prunellæ*, Saltpetre, or the *Sal Polychrestum* dissolv’d in his Water.

The Cataplasm for this purpose may be made of the following Ingredients.

‘ Take Linseed and Fœnugreek Seeds, of each  
 ‘ two Ounces, Camomile, Melilot, or their  
 ‘ Flowers, of each four Handfuls, boil them over  
 ‘ the Fire till most of the Moisture be evaporated,  
 ‘ then pass them thro’ a Sieve, and add a Quanti-  
 ‘ ty of Cows Dung, equal to the other Ingre-  
 ‘ dients, with a sufficient Quantity of Ox or  
 ‘ Sheeps Suet to keep it moist.” Let this be ap-  
 ply’d twice a Day pretty warm.

Or instead of this compounded Poultice, Cows Dung alone apply’d warm to the Part, with a sufficient Quantity of Suet or Ointment of Marshmallows, may be sufficient to bring the Swelling to Maturity.

When it grows soft, and the Matter seems ready for a Discharge, it may be open’d in the dependent lowermost Part, by the Application of a hot Iron, keeping a Dossil in the Mouth of the Wound, until the Running abates; and likewise applying Compresses and convenient Bandage to keep the elevated Skin close to the subjacent Flesh,  
 that



that it may be the sooner united ; but if the Cavity of the Impostumation be large, it will not be amiss to lay it open with a hot Knife an Inch or more ; or if you would chuse to avoid a Scar, with a cold sharp Instrument, or with a Pair of Scissars.

The Cure may be finish'd with applying only the *Unguentum Basilicon*, or a Digestive made with Turpentine, the Yolks of Eggs, or Honey, with a moderate Mixture of Brandy, or Spirit of Wine, and if any Foulness appears, or if it heal too fast, or spongy soft Flesh arise, Pledgits dipt in Copperas-Water, or a Solution of blue Vitriol may be apply'd, which will keep it smooth and even.

But if the Swelling increase very fast, which oftentimes happens, and that there is no tendency to Digestion, but that it arises up towards the Neck, affecting all the Muscles in those Parts ; the Horse will then be in danger of Suffocation, and unless speedy Relief be given, he must soon be strangled.

Therefore, besides repeated Bleeding, if he is not too much wore out, it will be convenient to take a hot searing Iron, and apply it to five or six Places on the lower part of the Swelling, cauterising those Parts, that they may be speedily brought to Matter, which may also be dress'd with Flax or fine Hurds dipt in Tar and Turpentine mixt before the Fire, and apply'd warm ; for by giving Pain in those dependent and inferior Parts, you cause the Humors to flow downwards from the Swelling, and by making Vents that are sufficient to discharge them, you anticipate the Pain, and take off from its excessive Violence, which is also an Extream to be avoided ; neither need you be afraid of the Swelling that may casually happen in the Fore-legs ; and, perhaps, even in his Limbs, by cauterising, for that cannot be of such ill Consequence, as when it is upon the Neck and Throat, neither will it be of any Continuance, if due Care be taken of the Issues.

The *Sieur de Solleysell* recommends the making of small Incisions with a Fleam or Lancet in eight  
or



or ten Places on the Swelling, and to thrust into the Holes, between the Skin and the Flesh, pieces of the Root of black Hellebore, of the Bigness of the Tag of a Point; and if the Tumor be very large, he recommends the use of white Hellebore, at the same time chafing the Part with the Ointments of Agrippa and Marsh-mallows. The Roots, by their hot burning Quality, draw down and increase the Swelling, and the Ointments are to ripen the inclosed Matter and fit it for a Discharge.

The same Author also recommends the use of *Retioires* or *Ruptories*, for drawing an immediate Flux of Moisture from the diseased Part. These are Ointments of the same Nature with those which are made to draw Blisters on the humane Body, and are composed of the like Materials; and because they may be used with much Safety, we shall insert two or three that are easily made, and will be found of no less Efficacy than those that are more compounded.

‘ Take of Basilicum four Ounces, black Pepper  
‘ and Ginger of each half an Ounce, *Spanish-*  
‘ Flies two Drams. Let the Flies, Pepper and  
‘ Ginger be made into a fine Powder, and incor-  
‘ porated with the Basilicon.” The following is  
yet more powerful.

‘ Take a quarter of a Pound of Basilicon, one  
‘ Ounce of red Precipitate in Powder, half an  
‘ Ounce of Euphorbium, and two Drams of the  
‘ Flies. Or the following, which is yet more effi-  
cacious than either of the former.

‘ Take Oil of Bays four Ounces, Euphorbium,  
‘ in Powder, two Ounces, *Cantharides*, or *Spanish-*  
‘ Flies, half an Ounce.

These may yet be made stronger or weaker, according to the use they are put to. The way they are apply’d, is by spreading them by little at a time upon the Part affected, holding a hot Bar of Iron to make them sink in; and this Operation may be repeated as often as the Case requires, but especially until they have drawn out a plentiful  
deal



deal of redish Water, but they must be sparingly us'd on some Parts, as we shall more particularly observe hereafter.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of the Diseases of the Stomach; and first, of the loss of Appetite, and of a depraved Appetite.*

AS the Food of Horses consists of the most simple Productions of the Earth, they cannot be liable to many Diseases in their Stomachs; and therefore when we observe a Horse lose his Appetite, we may very readily suspect that Disorder to be a Symptom of some other Disease, or to be the Effect of some sudden Accident or Mismanagement. For it is very certain, whatever causes the Blood to flow in an over-great Quantity into the Stomach, must be the occasion of a Plenitude and Fullness of the Vessels, which, according to its Degree, will lessen the Appetite and Inability of Digestion: And if it amounts to an Inflammation, or if those Vessels be very much distended, it must needs cause not only a want of Appetite, but a Loathing also.

And thus we observe in all Fevers and violent Colds a Horse forsake his Food; and sometimes we may take Notice in him the same Dislike to eating after immoderate Exercise, or after drinking cold Water when he has been heated; or after a long and tedious Day's Riding in hot Weather; and, in fine, after all those Errors that may be the Cause of Fevers, and most other Sickneffes. And because such Disorders very often go off without any other visible Symptom than the Loss of Appetite, they are therefore very often attributed wholly to the Stomach.

But the Diseases of the Stomach, which, properly speaking, produce the want of Appetite, have not their immediate Dependence upon any other Disease, but proceed either from the Quantity

The Want of Appetite distinguished from that which accompanies a Fever, or other Sickneffes.



tity or Quality of what is contain'd in it; and in this Case the Signs are different from the former; for in the one the Horse wholly forsakes his Food, and in the other he is dainty, yet he eats, tho' it be but little, and is capable of doing proportionable Service.

*The Cause.*

And this Imperfection, for the most part, proceeds from a Lentor in the Bowels, and Costiveness, when a Horse has stood some time in the Stable, has had full Feeding, without proportionable Exercise; for by that means the Stomach is not only too full, but the Juices turn corrupted by their Stagnation, and acquire some evil Qualities that may take away the Appetite, or cause a Horse's Appetite to be vitiated; and when the last happens to Horses, we often observe them, by a sort of Instinct, crave after those things that are very different from their natural Food, as the eating of Mud or Clay out of the Walls.

*The Cure.*

But in handling the Cure, we need say but very little concerning that Species of want of Appetite, which is often the sudden Effect of some sudden Accident, or ill Management; for this is frequently cur'd by Blood-letting alone, as it is, for the most part, no other than a Symptom of a beginning Fever, and of such a one where the Blood, if at all, is but little vitiated.

Wherefore, in any such Case, a quart of Blood may be taken from the Neck-Vein, after which may be administred such things as are cooling and fit to keep down a Fever.

His Diet ought to be scalded Bran, and his Water sharpen'd, as has been directed in such Cases, and, with the Assistance of moderate Exercise, his Stomach will soon come to him.

But when the want of Appetite proceeds either from a constant Fullness, whereby the Action of the Stomach is hinder'd, that its Sides cannot meet together so as to excite the Sensation of Hunger; or if it proceeds from an evil Quality in its Contents, as for instance, if there be slimy Matter ingender'd in it, either from raw indigested Food, from the want of a free Discharge of the  
Dung,



Dung, or if any sharp corrosive Matter be in it, causing a deprav'd Appetite, or a Sensation of Hunger by Fits, as we oftentimes observe, the most rational Method in all these Cases, is, in the first place, to evacuate and purge the Stomach, by such things as are appropriated either to sweeten the Juices, or attenuate the viscid Flegm.

And this Method seems to be the most reasonable, with respect to Horses, because, as we have elsewhere observ'd, they are no ways disposed to vomit, or throw any thing out of the Stomach that has once enter'd into it, and that seems to be owing to the Figure of the Gullet, which is contracted more than in some other Creatures, and has a spiral Direction, a little above its Insertion, into the Stomach; for had it been otherwise, tho' a Horse might have vomited as well as some other Animals, yet, as he feeds much with his Head downwards, he would then, perhaps, have lain under the Inconveniency of having his Food fall sometimes back again into the Gullet, which would be very troublesome to him; and we may likewise observe from frequent Experiments, if there be never so large a Quantity of any vomiting Medicine given to a Horse, it has no Effect that way, but either works by a Discharge of the Dung, or insensibly upon the Mass of Blood as an Alterative.

And therefore purging Medicines are, no doubt, the most appropriated to give immediate Relief in all such Foulnesses of the Stomach as are of this kind. But if a Horse be costive, no purging Physick ought to be given him but what is very moderate, unless the Bowels are first cleans'd by the use of Clysters; for if the Guts be very full of Dung, and if that be harden'd when purging Medicines are administer'd by the Mouth, they sometimes prove fatal to Horses, for when the Physick cannot make its way downwards, it flings a Horse immediately into Convulsions, because he wants that Benefit of Nature which Men and some other Animals have of throwing upwards. But we shall lay down the Method that is proper to be used in those Disorders.



And first, if the Horse be costive, the following emollient Clyster may be given, after he has been rak'd by some Boy, or one that has but a small Hand.

' Take of the Roots of Marsh-mallows sliced half  
' a Pound, the Leaves of common Mallows three  
' Handfuls, Linseed and Fœnugreek Seeds, of each  
' two Ounces, boil them in three Quarts of Water  
' for the space of half an Hour, strain the Decoc-  
' tion thro' a coarse Cloath, while it is hot, and  
' dissolve in it four Ounces of Honey, two Ounces  
' of common Treacle, and six Ounces of Oil or  
' Butter." Let this be injected lukewarm, hold-  
ing his Tail close to his Tuel as long as possible,  
and let it be repeated for two or three Days, or  
until the Horse's Body is open enough, and that  
there is a way made for purging; after which he  
may have the following Drench given him.

' Take of the Roots of Gentian and Zedoary  
' sliced, of each two Ounces, Hyfop and Rue, of  
' each two Handfuls, the Leaves of Senna two  
' Ounces, Aniseeds or Fennel Seeds bruis'd an  
' Ounce, boil them in three Pints of Water to the  
' Consumption of one Pint, dissolve in the Decoc-  
' tion two Ounces of Lenitive Electuary." To be  
given in the Morning, keeping him fasting two  
Hours before and one Hour afterwards, then he  
may be rid or walk'd gently for an Hour more;  
and when his Physick begins to work, he may be  
permitted to drink warm Water strew'd with Oat-  
meal. Or the following purging Balls may be  
given.

' Take of the best Aloes one Ounce and a half,  
' Diagridium two Drams, Gallangal, in Powder,  
' half an Ounce, Cloves half a Dram. Make  
' them into Balls with Flower and Butter.

These Balls, or the preceding Draught, may  
be given with Success, to recover lost Appetite;  
and may for that purpose be repeated as often as  
there is occasion, which needs be but seldom, un-  
less the Horse has been some considerable time  
without a good Appetite, and in that Case he may  
be purg'd twice a Week, for a Fortnight or three  
Weeks



Weeks successively; and the Days he does not purge, the following Powder may be given him in a Decoction, wherein a Handful or two of Rue has been boil'd.

‘ Take Gentian in Powder two Drams, Gallan-  
gal, Zedoary and Calamus Aromaticus, of each  
‘ a Drachm and a half, Cinamon and Bay-berries,  
‘ of each a Drachm.’ Let these be pounded to-  
gether, and be given in the Decoction, or in a Pint of  
White-Wine.

If the Horse be of a delicate washy Constitu-  
tion, and unable to bear much Purging, all that is  
necessary in that Intention may be answered by  
Clysters, with the use of scalded Bran now and  
then. The preceding Powder ought also to be  
given every Day, or what our common Farriers  
oftentimes administer to restore Appetite, *viz.*  
Garlick and Rue champt and pounded with Butter  
and Flower, may be very serviceable, especially to  
strong robust Horses.

But above all things, the use of chewing Balls  
and constant Exercise is absolutely necessary, and  
with the concurrence of a few of those Helps  
above directed will soon recover a Horse to his  
Appetite.

If you observe your Horse mangle his Hay, and  
continually nibbling Mud and Dirt; you may then  
very reasonably suppose his Stomach to be foul  
and out of order; nor is it improbable that this De-  
sire after Earth and Mud proceeds from an Acidi-  
ty and Sourness of the Juices; for those Creatures,  
by a sort of Instinct, very often, of their own ac-  
cord, take to such things as are proper to relieve  
them of troublesome and uneasy Sensations: And  
this is very observable in Dogs and Cats, who are  
led by the same Instinct to swallow rough Blades  
of Grass, in order to make themselves vomit when  
they find their Stomachs oppress'd. These are In-  
stances that are familiar and known to every one;  
but natural History abounds with an infinite Num-  
ber of the like Instances in other Creatures; so  
that we are not to doubt but an Animal of the  
greatest Sagacity, as a Horse certainly is, and as



he is also as much exposed to Diseases, if not more, than any other Creature, must therefore, when at liberty, oftentimes be led to his own proper Remedies. I could give some very odd Instances of this in Horses from my own Observation, but I shall only here take notice of what relates to the present Case.

They must needs have but little Acquaintance in Physick, who do not know that Earths have a Virtue in them, not only to dry up a Superfluity of Moisture, but some of them to imbibe and take off the Acidity of sour Liquors; and it is, no doubt, from such a Depravity in the Stomach, that a Horse leaves his ordinary Food to eat dry'd Earth or Mud; and this he is forc'd to do from the Cravings of his Appetite, and is often compell'd to take up with the worst for want of something more efficacious.

When I attended the Army, I once took an Opportunity of gratifying a Horse in a very ardent Desire of this kind, who had suffer'd very much from his Keeper, and had been often beat for eating Clay out of the Wall. I brought him a piece of Chalk the bigness of a Man's Fist, and laid it into the Manger, he turn'd it over with his Nose several times, and at last broke off some of the Corners and eat them, whereupon I took up the Chalk to break it into small pieces; and because he thought I was going to rob him of it again, he push'd his Head towards me with all the Eagerness imaginable, and when it was broke he eat the greatest part of it, and fell immediately to his Hay. The Dragoon, who kept him, told me he gave him more Chalk afterwards, and observ'd he eat his Hay the better for it; but being commanded to march soon after, he was perfectly cur'd by the Exercise, and had no further Cravings of that kind.

This Remedy is very easy, and may be had every where, or instead of it burnt Hart's-horn in Powder, which is yet much better, may be given, but those Remedies will be still the more efficacious, if previous to them, purging be administer'd, and afterwards constant Exercise be given, there being



being nothing contributes so much to wear off those Disorders as Exercise, when it is moderate. But the Remedies prescrib'd in the following Chapter will also be useful in this Case.

C H A P. XXXIV.

*Of the hungry Evil.*

**T**HIS Distemper generally proceeds, at first, from bad Keeping or excessive Purging; but there are some Horses who seem to be incurable, because albeit they feed plentifully, their common and natural Discharges seem at the same time to be more than what is proportionable to their Feeding.

The hungry Evil generally at first proceeds from Emptiness.

Most Horses that have this Infirmary upon them are but Jades, and therefore we shall spend but little time about it; however, since there may be some very good Horses that have a voracious Appetite after such Causes as we have mention'd, and may be recovered, we shall lay down the properest Means that can be made use of for that purpose.

And therefore since the hungry Evil in them proceeds from Emptiness, they ought, besides plenty of Food, to have those things administer'd to them that are proper to lubricate and soften the Fibres of the Stomach, and to lessen that Sensation, for which purpose the Leaves of Mallows, and Roots of Marsh-mallows should be boil'd in their Water with Liquorish, and their Corn should be mixt with the fat mucilaginous Seeds, as Fœnugreek and Linseed, &c.

The Cure.

But if he cannot be easily brought to the use of those things in the way of Diet, they may be given him after the following Method.

‘ Take the Roots of Marsh-mallows two Pounds, Linseed and Fœnugreek Seeds, of each four Ounces, first pound the Seeds, and then the Roots to a Mash; and afterwards make them into Balls, with a Mucilage of Linseed or Fœnugreek, as big as a Pullet's Egg, one of



‘ which may be given in the Morning, one about  
‘ Noon, and another in the Evening.

*Markham's Balls* may also be given in this Case, especially if the *Brimstone* be kept out of them; and in fine, all fat unctuous Medicines, for those not only help to fatten a Horse, but take off these violent Sensations of Hunger that cause him to eat so voraciously, as is usual in such Disorders.

## C H A P. XXXV.

*Of the Diseases of the Guts; and first of the Cholick.*

The Cholick not so properly a Disease, as a Symptom that may attend all Indispositions of the Guts.

**T**HE Cholick, Fret, or Gripes, which, in the Farriers Terms, tho' very injudiciously, is meant to signify most of the Diseases of the Guts, is no other than the Pain that accompanies all the particular Disorders those Parts are liable to; and therefore, when a Horse is troubled with Cholick Pains, the Farrier ought diligently to enquire into the true Causes thereof; for as no Part is more sensible than the Guts, any thing retain'd too long in them, or any thing ejected and thrown out in an over-great Quantity, will, on some Occasions, bring a Horse into exquisite Torment; we shall therefore take particular Notice of the different Causes of such Disorders, and suit the Method of Cure according to their several Exigencies.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Of the dry Gripes and Adstriction of the Bowels.*

From whence Constiveness and dry Gripes proceed.

**H**ORSES are seldom or never troubled with any other Adstriction in their Bowels, excepting what proceeds from the Dung hardening and obstructing those Passages; and therefore we shall have the less to say upon that Head, having spoken



spoken to it already, in that Chapter where we have treated concerning Surfeits, only we shall here add, that when the Matter is pent up in the first Passages, to wit, in the Stomach and Guts, and putrifies there, the Juices turn sour, viscid and ropy, and fret the tender Membrane which covers the inside of the Guts; by the Viscidity also the Wind is intangled, which creates a Swelling and Distention, so that the Belly becomes hard like a Drum; and if the Excrements be very much harden'd in the great or streight Gut, they cause a Pressure upon the Neck of the Bladder, and hinder the Passages of the Urine, that a Horse cannot piss; sometimes the Fundament swells, and all towards the Sheath, which is very dangerous.

A Horse in this Condition must needs be in great Pain, and even in danger of his Life, if a speedy Relief is not had; therefore, in order to the Cure, after he has been rak'd, and that with a great deal of Caution, the following Clyster ought to be injected.

‘Take the Leaves of Mallows, Marsh-mal-  
‘ lows, and Mercury, of each three Handfuls, The Cure.  
‘ boil them in three Quarts of Water for the  
‘ space of half an Hour; to the strained Decoc-  
‘ tion add Lenitive Electuary four Ounces, Spirit  
‘ of Wine or Brandy half a Pint, Oil or Butter  
‘ half a Pound.’ Let this be injected lukewarm,  
and retain'd as long as possible.

Four Hours after the Operation of this Clyster, if the Horse is not very much reliev'd, the following may be given.

‘Take Leaves of Mallows and Marsh-mallows,  
‘ of each three Handfuls, as above directed, Lin-  
‘ seed and Fœnugreek Seeds, of each two Ounces,  
‘ Coriander Seeds, Cummin Seeds, and Aniseeds,  
‘ of each two Drams, Bay Berries, Cubebs and  
‘ Jamaica Pepper, of each one Dram. Let these  
‘ also be boil'd for the Space of half an Hour, or  
‘ be infus'd in boiling Water for the Space of two  
‘ Hours; and to the Decoction add one Pint of  
‘ Emetick Wine.’ Let this be given as the former;



and by the help of these, the Adstriction of the Bowels, or the Costiveness, may be remov'd: The Reader may also consult that Chapter concerning Surfeits, where there are other things prescrib'd which will also be of Service.

But if the Horse has, along with his Costiveness, violent Cholick Pains, proceeding from Wind and Flegm; after the grosser Excrements are discharg'd, the following Clyster may be given.

' Take Red-Rose Leaves two Handfuls, Tops  
' of Centaury the Less and Wormwood, of each  
' one Handful. Boil them in two Quarts of Water  
' to three Pints; and in the Decoction dissolve two  
' Ounces of Diascordium, and half a Pint of  
' Treacle-Water, or Spirit of Wine.

This will infallibly take off the Pain, and lie in the Bowels like a Cordial, without giving him the least Motion to dung, but compose and lull his Spirits, and in a Minute take off the violent Gripes; if the Pain should chance to return, the same may be repeated; and, if necessary, the Dose of the Diascordium may be enlarg'd to three Ounces or more; and there is hardly any kind of Cholick Pain but what may be carry'd off by it; and I have, by my own Direction, cur'd Horses that have been in the greatest Misery imaginable, and have seen them in a quarter of an Hour rise up to feed, that before were like to dash out their Brains against the Walls.

Cholicks and griping Pains in the Bowels of Horses become suddenly mortal, that without any regard to other Circumstances, they ought immediately to be remov'd; and if Costiveness happens to continue upon the use of the Remedies that are prescrib'd for that Purpose, that Symptom will of Course go off in the Sequel of the Cure; for after the most urgent Symptoms are remov'd, the next Intention must be to destroy the Cause of the Distemper, otherwise it may return again.

Wherefore we recommend gentle Purging, with the use of such things as are hot and penetrating; and this we do contrary to the Opinion,  
tho'



tho' not altogether to the Practice of most Farriers, who believe Costiveness to proceed from inward Heat; whereas that Heat is only the Effect of Costiveness and not the Cause, as is easily demonstrated, and is occasion'd chiefly from cold phlegmatick tough Matter in the Stomach and Guts, which binds up the Excrements; which, when the Guts are full and press'd upon, cause Heat; therefore as all hot spicy things are proper to cut and destroy those Viscidities which cause the Lentor, and harbour Wind, they ought more or less to be exhibited in all Intentions that are requisite to the Cure of Costiveness. The following Purge may for that reason be given, and will be found very profitable, after the Violence of the Cholick Pains are over, and the obstinate Stoppages of the Bowels are remov'd.

' Take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each  
' one Handful, Roots of Marsh-mallows six  
' Ounces, Leaves of Senna two Ounces, Bay Berries  
' and Juniper Berries, of each an Ounce. Boil  
' them in three Pints of Water to one Quart,  
' strain out the Decoction thro' a Sieve or coarse  
' Cloath, and add two Ounces of Syrup of  
' Buckthorn. Or this:

' Take Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each  
' two Handfuls, Senna one Ounce, Jalap in gross  
' Powder half an Ounce, Carraway Seeds, Cori-  
' ander Seeds, or Fennel Seeds, of either an Ounce  
' and a half. Boil them in the same Quantity of  
' Water as above directed, to the Consumption of  
' a third Part; and in the strain'd Decoction dis-  
' solve four Ounces of Manna. Or the following:

' Take eight Ounces of Manna, two Ounces of  
' Cream of Tartar, dissolve them in a Quart of  
' sweet Whey, and add eight Ounces of the Oil of  
' Olives.

Either of these may be made use of after Clysters have been injected, the Horse being kept from Feeding two Hours before and two Hours thereafter. He may then be walk'd abroad for the Space of an Hour; and upon his Return it would not at all be amiss if there was Tripe-Broth prepar'd



par'd for him ſtrew'd with Oat-meal; and if he ſeems unwilling to drink them, he may have two or three Quarts adminiſter'd thro' a Horn, and the ſame Quantity repeated two Hours thereafter.

Theſe will help the Operation of the Phyſick, looſen, and waſh down the viſcid ſlimy Matter, which not only fetters the Excrements, but intangles the Wind, which cauſes violent and exceſſive Pain, by its Preſſure and Diſtention of the *Colon*: But if the Horſe be of ſmall Value, and that it is not worth while to be at all this Expence and Trouble about him, the following purging Drench may be made uſe of.

' Take Mallows and Maſh-mallows, of each  
' two Handfuls, or four Handfuls of common  
' Mallows (if Maſh-mallows are not eaſy to be  
' had) Jalap in Powder two Ounces, Aniſeeds or  
' Fennel Seeds an Ounce. Boil them as above  
' directed, and add to the Decoction four Ounces  
of common Treacle. Or this:

' Take half an Ounce of the bitter Apple in  
' Powder, three Drams of Aloes, and one Dram  
' of Diagridium; make them into a Ball with  
' Flower and Butter. To be given as the former.

If your Horſe's Fundament be ſwell'd, which ſometimes happens to that Degree before Raking and Clyſters are adminiſter'd, that he cannot ſtale, becauſe when the Excrements are harden'd and pent up in the great or ſtreight Gut, that being full, it preſſes upon the Neck of the Bladder, ſo as to hinder the Paſſage of his Urine; and if this Symptom does not wear off ſoon after thoſe Means have been uſed, Recourſe muſt be had with all ſpeed to thoſe things that are proper to keep down Inflammation, for which purpoſe we recommend the uſe of the following Decoction.

' Take of Red-Roſe Leaves two Handfuls, boil  
' them in a Quart of Water for the ſpace of half  
' an Hour; add to the Decoction a ſmall Quanti-  
' ty of Brandy, Spirit of Wine, or Rum, and  
' with a Sponge bath his Fundament and Sheath  
' often.

This



This Decoction should always be made as warm as he can bear it, and the Spirits mixt with it as often as it is us'd, viz. to every two Parts of the Decoction one of the Spirits.

His Yard ought also to be kept up to his Belly with a gentle Bandage, because the Humours fall into it with a very easy Influx, as it is both a soft and dependent Part, by which means the Swelling and Inflammation are often kept up, after the first Cause is, in a great Measure, remov'd, and sometimes proves the Occasion of a Gangrene; and therefore to keep that suspended, the Farrier or Groom may take a piece of Canvas, six or eight Inches broad, and fixing two Straps to each Corner forwards, they may be brought one on each side over his Flanks, and fastned upon his Reins, the hind parts should have the Corners cut off, according as the Swelling happens to be more or less on the upper part of the Yard, with one single piece of strong Tape fixt to it, which coming thro' between his Hips, is to be brought over the Croup, and ty'd to the other two; and when this Accident happens to a Stone-Horse, his Stones ought also to be suspended in a Bag of soft Flaxen Cloath, which may easily be fixt to the other.

The Yard  
to be kept  
up when the  
Fundament  
and Sheath  
are swell'd.

By these means the return of the Blood will be render'd very easy, and the Swelling will thereupon assuage, which, for want of such a Method, has sometimes been the Cause of sudden Death.

But since we have ascrib'd the Cause of Costiveness and dry Gripes to viscid slimy Matter ingender'd in the first Passages, it will be very necessary, after the preceding Means have been comply'd with, and the most urgent Symptoms are remov'd, to administer such things as are necessary to destroy the Remains of those Viscidities; for which purpose the following Powder, to the Quantity of a Spoonful, may be given every Morning.

'Take Gentian and Birthwort Roots, of each  
' four Ounces, Galangal, Zedoary, and Calamus  
' Aromaticus, of each one Ounce, the Tops of  
' dry'd Wormwood and the lesser Centaury, of  
' each



‘ each an Ounce and a half, Nutmegs, Ginger,  
 ‘ Black Pepper and Bay Berries, of each half an  
 ‘ Ounce. Make them into a fine Powder, and  
 ‘ keep it in a Glass or Gallipot close cover’d.

This may be given in White-Wine, Ale, or in a Decoction wherein a Handful of Rue has been boil’d, letting him fast two Hours before and one thereafter; and if your Horse be of small Value, you may give him every Day, among a few Oats, an Ounce of Antimony, and two Ounces of Flower of Brimstone; or you may make it up into a Paste, with a little Flower and Butter, continuing its use for the space of one Week.

Champt Rue and Garlick is also very serviceable in this Case; but all Remedies will prove the more successful if you give your Horse Exercise; and, indeed, that alone oftentimes proves sufficient; for by Exercise the whole Body is shook, and the Lentor in the Bowels and the Excrements readily fall downwards to their Expulsion out of the Body.

Two Instances of  
Costiveness.

I shall put a Period to this Subject, with an Account of two Horses that were seiz’d with violent Costiveness, and where the Issue prov’d very different.

The First.

The one belong’d to a Gentleman, who, while travelling, was stop’d upon the Road the second Day of his Journey; his Horse was in great Pain shrunk up his Belly, often endeavouring to dung, and as often to piss, but could do neither. I was told he had been taken up from Grass a Week before he set out, and was observ’d to be very costive all that while; but because he was to have some Fatigue, they thought it unnecessary to tamper with him, which, no doubt, was very reasonable, had he not been more than ordinarily costive. The first thing done to recover him was raking, and afterwards he had a Pipe of Tobacco given him at his Fundament; the Smoke of the Tobacco prov’d a gentle Stimulus, and made him oftentimes essay to dung, but without Effect; so that at last, being in excessive Pain, hanging his Head, and turning it frequently towards his Belly, the Owner thought



thought fit to send for a Farrier, who at first Sight said he would die; however he went and prepar'd him a comfortable Drink, as he term'd it, which, by the Smell, seem'd to be some hot Aromatick Seeds boil'd in Ale.

After this he became much worse, for there being no free Vent upwards or downwards, and the Wind being now more rarify'd by the hot spicy things, and consequently taking up more space in his Bowels, he often lay down, and immediately started up again, shewing as much Pain and Agony as any Horse could possibly be in.

I advis'd the Gentleman to have him rak'd once more, by a Boy that had a small Hand and Arm; who being satisfied with the Reasons which I gave him, had it done accordingly, tho' it was not without some Difficulty, for the Horse shrunk very much, and endeavour'd constantly to lie down. But at last, when he had been thoroughly rak'd, he began to throw out several hard Balls of Dung of his own accord, and at the same time stal'd a little, whereupon we had the Entrance into his Fundament done with Soap, which made him dung very plentifully, and he piss'd so long that the Stable was all afloat about him: After this a Clyster of Broth wherein Beef had been boil'd was given him, with a Handful of Salt and half a Pound of Butter dissolv'd in it, which brought away a great deal of Dung and abundance of slimy Matter. He eat nothing that Night, which was pretty late, but towards the Morning he began to feed very plentifully, and was quite recover'd of his Indisposition.

Had this Disorder continued upon him a little longer, without a Vent to the hard Excrements, which were so firmly impacted in the streight Gut, a violent Inflammation of that Gut, and of the Neck of the Bladder must have soon happen'd, which, without the utmost Diligence, would have brought him suddenly to his End; for in that Case it would have been very difficult to have fetch'd out the Dung, which was the only means to preserve him from those Accidents.

But



The second.

But this will be clearly illustrated in the other Instance, which was of a Dragoon Horse in the Regiment to which I belong'd; who, after a full five Weeks March, coming to stand at his Ease, grew exceeding costive, and had his Fundament and Sheath very much swell'd.

He was committed to the Care of one who was tolerably well skill'd in many of the common things, but being wholly unacquainted with the Structure and Mechanism of that Creature, who was the Subject of his Art, committed a grand Mistake, in giving him a strong Dose of purging Physick; there being no Vent for the Passage of the Excrements downwards, and the Horse having no Capacity to vomit and disgorge himself upwards, was put into the most violent Agony imaginable, and at last dy'd in strong Convulsions.

Perhaps this Person may, by such a Method, have succeeded in Cases of less Obstinacy, and where there was little or no swelling of the Fundament; and if there had been a possibility of making the Horse vomit, he might have succeeded even in this, for then the Physick would have gone off that way; and after several Discharges by the Mouth, the remainder might have gone downwards, as it oftentimes happens to humane Bodies, because the straining to vomit makes a strong Compression of the Muscles of the lower Belly, which greatly forwards the Dejections by the Fundament; and therefore, in some obstinate Cases of this Nature the best Physicians have order'd Vomits with Success. But as it is quite otherwise with Horses; and that their Stomachs are not otherwise to be mov'd with the strongest *Stimuli*, than to create Sicknes, and cause them flaver a little, Purging is not to be attempted in any stubborn Costiveness but by Clysters.

And if this Method had been taken in the Instance now before us, and due Care observ'd to keep the Swelling of his Fundament at under, as he was a young Horse, and not much impair'd in his Strength, he might have easily overcome that Disorder.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XXXVII.

*Of the Lax or Scouring.*

**F**OR the better understanding of those Disorders, we shall rank them under four different kinds. We have elsewhere observ'd, that when the Excrements have lain some time in the Guts, the Juices, by their Putrefaction, turn sharp and corrosive; and by that means stimulate the Intestines to shake off what is contain'd in them. But this does not always follow such a Stagnation of the Excrements, as may be observ'd from what has been said in the preceding Chapter; for sometimes, before such a Discharge can happen, a Horse will be endanger'd of his Life; and therefore we may reasonably ascribe this Difference sometimes to the different Constitutions of Horses, and sometimes to the Difference of their Food, there being some Kinds more liable to Corruption than others. But however that be, it is very certain that the Lax and Scouring in Horses is oftentimes the Effect of a preceding Costiveness; and therefore we shall account this, and all critical Loosenesses which tend to the Solution of any Disease, to be of the first kind.

Divers kinds  
of Loosenesses.

The second kind of Looseness is that which proceeds chiefly from want of Digestion; for by that means a Scouring may happen without any previous Symptom of Costiveness; and when it is so, a Horse suddenly falls away and loses his Flesh, and likewise his Appetite; but this may be further known by the Discharge, for many things that he eats will come away whole, and his Dung will be full of Shreds of Hay, and sometimes accompanied with slimy Matter.

Thirdly, A Looseness and Scouring often happens when the Pores of the Skin, the Urinary, or other Discharges are obstructed, for by that means, when the Excrementitious Parts of the Blood have not a free Vent thro' the common Passages, they are derived



derived in a more than ordinary Quantity into the Apertures of the Guts, but particularly into the Gall-pipe and *Pancreatick* Duct; so that they may be of different Colour and Consistency, according to the Predominancy of the Juices that flow into them. When most of it is deriv'd from the intestinal Glands, the Matter will be clear and watry, or clear and glassy, not unlike that which *Solleysell* observes in his third kind of Cholick; but when it proceeds mostly from the Gall-pipe and *Pancreatick* Duct, it will be then tinged with a yellowish Colour, and if there happens to be a very great Quantity of the Gall discharg'd with the Excrements, whatever is voided from the Fundament, must of consequence be of a deep reddish Colour, and is the same which the above-mention'd Author terms the red Gripes, which constitutes his sixth kind of Cholick.

Lastly, A Lax or Scouring sometimes happens from viscous slimy Matter hindring the *Chyle* from entering into the lacteal or milky Vessels; and in this Case the Excrements are usually of a pale light Complexion, as they consist chiefly of *Chyle*.

Molten  
Grease.

But all these are only different Species of a *Diarrhœa*; and when the Scouring is large, as it happens to some full-body'd young Horses, a white greasy Matter like Fat comes away in the Dung; and this is what Farriers call *Molten Grease*, which is of the same Nature with the greasy *Diarrhœa*, which sometimes happens to Men of gross Habits as well as to Horses, and seems to be occasion'd when the Glands of the Intestines are more than ordinarily open'd, whereby that Matter is evacuated from the Blood into the Guts, which should otherwise be deposited among the Fat.

The Cure  
of a Lax  
or Scouring.

But in order to the Cure it ought to be observ'd, that in all those Scourings that are of the first kind, and are only the critical Discharges of some Disease; there are seldom or never any bad Accidents attending them, unless the Disease has been of such Continuance as to waste and attenuate the Body; and therefore when the Sicknes abates by  
any



any such Discharge, the best way is not to be over-hasty to stop it, but it ought rather to be encourag'd when it proves imperfect; and that must be done by Medicines that are moderately purging. But because all Discharges that proceed from the Intestines may degenerate into the worser sort, care ought to be taken not to let it run on too long, but it may be stop'd by the Methods hereafter laid down for the Cure of the other Species of a *Diarrhœa*; we shall therefore proceed to the next kind, where a Horse loses his Appetite; and when the want of Digestion is manifest from an imperfect Comminution of the Dung, that is, when some part of the Food comes away whole as it is eat.

In this Case all those things that we have already laid down for strengthening the Stomach are to be us'd, for which purpose we also recommend the use of *Diapente*, to those that like it; but it is not one Dose that will answer the End, but it ought to be repeated every Day, and so must any other Stomachick Medicine, before any extraordinary Effect can be wrought.

And because this Disease is both in the Stomach and Guts, the following Clyster may be given as soon as you perceive him begin to recover his Appetite, unless the Looseness begins also to abate with the other Symptoms, and in that Case it may be let alone.

'Take of Red-rose Leaves two Handfuls, the  
'Roots of Gentian and round Birthwort, of each  
'one Ounce, Gallangal half an Ounce, Bay  
'Berries, Aniseeds and Fennel Seeds, of each two  
'Drams. Let the Roots, and other hard Ingre-  
'dients, be bruis'd; afterwards boil the whole in  
'three Quarts of Water for the space of half an  
'Hour; or let them be infus'd four Hours in  
'boiling Water; then pour off the Liquor, and  
'dissolve in it three Ounces of the Oil of Rue,  
'which must be injected into the Horse's Funda-  
'ment lukewarm.'

This may be repeated once or twice, but if the Looseness still continue, and the Horse grows  
V weak,



weak, it is a very bad Sign, especially if he refuses to feed.

The Cure  
of the second  
kind of  
Looseness.

The next kind is that where the Excrements are tinged yellow, or of a deep redish Colour, proceeding, as we have observ'd, from a too great Profusion of the Gall and *Pancreatick* Juice, &c.

In this a Horse may be first of all purg'd with the following Drench.

' Take Red-Rose Leaves two Handfuls, Monk's  
' Rhubarb four Ounces, *Turky* Rhubarb three  
' Ounces. Let these be sliced and boiled with the  
' Rose Leaves, in three Pints of Water, for the  
' space of one Hour; and in the strained Decoction  
' dissolve an Ounce and a half of *Diascordium*. Or  
this:

' Take of the best Rhubarb, in Powder, two  
' Ounces, Cream of Tartar one Ounce, *Diapho-*  
' retick Antimony half an Ounce. Let this be  
' given in a Pint of Red-Wine.

If the Horse be of small Value, two Ounces of the *Pulvis Cornachini* may be us'd, which the Reader will find prescrib'd in a preceding Chapter, and to it may be added half an Ounce more of *Diaphoretick* Antimony; for after Purging has been once or twice repeated, those Medicines which promote Sweat, and the other Secretions, are to be us'd, as they make a Revulsion, and consequently lessen the Discharges by Dung; wherefore we recommend *Diascordium*, *Mithridate* and *Venice-Treacle*, or *London-Treacle*, which may be exhibited in the following manner.

' Take Treacle-Water one Pint, *Venice-Treacle*  
' or *Mithridate* two Ounces. Let the Mixture be  
' stir'd well about, and given thro' a Horn.' Or this:

' Take one Handful of Water Germander, Red-  
' Rose Leaves and Rue, of each half a Handful,  
' *Virginia* Snakeweed and *Scorzonera*, of each two  
' Ounces. Boil them in a Quart of Water half an  
' Hour, and to the strained Decoction add two  
' Ounces, or two Ounces and a half of *Diascor-*  
' dium.' Or,

' Take of *Diascordium* three Ounces, dissolve  
' it in a Decoction of Red-Rose Leaves, and give  
' it



‘ it thro’ a Horn; two Ounces of *Venice-Treacle* or  
 ‘ *Mithridate*, or three Ounces of *London-Treacle*;  
 ‘ may be given in the same manner, taking Care  
 ‘ at the same time to keep the Horse well cloath’d,  
 ‘ and to have him often comb’d and rub’d to open  
 ‘ the Pores, the better to promote Sweat and in-  
 ‘ sensible Transpiration.’

The following Drench may also be given with good Success, to astringe and dry up the Stomach and Bowels, &c.

‘ Take Rose-Water and Plantain-Water, or a  
 ‘ Decoction of Red-Rose Leaves and Plantain one  
 ‘ Quart, Treacle-Water half a Pint, Armenian  
 ‘ Bole and Sealed Earth, or Lemnian Earth, of  
 ‘ each half an Ounce. Dissolve in the Mixture  
 ‘ two Ounces of *Diascordium*, and of Roch Alum  
 ‘ six Drachms.

This must be repeated two or three Days successively, and unless the scouring be very violent, it will certainly put a stop to it.

But the Farrier is to observe, that if a Horse has a Fever upon him, which does not diminish, but increases with the Looseness; those things which act more immediately upon the Bowels are then to be made use of; therefore the Clyster prescrib’d in the preceding Chapter, to remove violent Pains in the Guts, may be injected; or the following, which will be yet more efficacious in this Case.

‘ Take of *Gujacum* half a Pound, *Sassafras*  
 ‘ four Ounces, boil them in four Quarts of Smiths  
 ‘ Water wherein they quench their hot Irons, un-  
 ‘ til one half of the Water be consumed; then add  
 ‘ to the Decoction Red-Rose Leaves, the Tops or  
 ‘ Leaves of Brier, and the Leaves of Bramble, of  
 ‘ each a Handful; or instead of these two Hand-  
 ‘ fuls of Plantain, and when it has boil’d a quarter  
 ‘ of an Hour longer, take it from the Fire, and in  
 ‘ the strain’d Decoction dissolve four Ounces of  
 ‘ *Diascordium* without Honey, and of *Opium* half  
 ‘ a Dram. Or this:



‘ Take Henbane and white Poppy Seed, of each  
 ‘ four Ounces, Red-Rose Leaves two Handfuls,  
 ‘ Pomgranate Bark two Ounces. Boil them in  
 ‘ two Quarts of Smiths Forge-Water to three  
 ‘ Pints, dissolve in it four Ounces of Diascordium,  
 ‘ or three Ounces of Mithridate or *Venice-Treacle*,  
 ‘ and half a Dram of Opium.’ Or the following  
 may be us’d in haste, or for a Horse of small  
 Value.

‘ Take a Quart of the foresaid Water, warm it  
 ‘ over the Fire, and dissolve in it two Ounces of  
 ‘ Diascordium, and the like Quantity of Roch-  
 ‘ Alum.

These Clysters are always to be made in a lesser  
 Quantity than those that are purging ; and the  
 Horse’s Tail to be kept close to his Tuel, that he  
 may retain them as long as possible ; and as soon  
 as he flings out the first, which perhaps may not  
 be in the Space of twelve Hours, it must be fol-  
 low’d with another, and so on, until the Looseness  
 is quite stop’d, which may easily be done by the  
 help of these Clysters, unless his Strength be quite  
 wasted, and that he has lost all Sensation in his  
 Bowels.

The last  
 kind of  
 Scouring  
 how cur’d.

We come now to the Cure of the last sort of  
 Scouring which we mention’d, to wit, when the  
*Chyle* is discharg’d with the Excrements ; and as  
 this Indisposition proceeds from slimy Matter ob-  
 structing the Passages into the lacteal Vessels, the  
 properest Method is by purging, for which purpose  
 we recommend the following.

‘ Take *Epsom* Salts half a Pound, Cream of  
 ‘ Tartar two Ounces, dissolve them in a Gallon of  
 ‘ Water, and give the whole thro’ a Horn at several  
 ‘ times. Or :

‘ Take *Epsom* Salts six Ounces, Cream of Tar-  
 ‘ tar three Ounces, Salt of Tartar half an Ounce.  
 ‘ Dissolve them in a plentiful deal of Water, and  
 ‘ let them be given as the other.’

Let Salt of Tartar and *Sal Prunellæ* be also dis-  
 solv’d in his common Drink, for all those Diluters  
 are the most proper to wash off that viscid Matter  
 which adheres so closely to the Guts, and hinders  
 the



the *Chyle* from entering into its proper Vessels, especially when they are us'd plentifully; but if this sort of Flux should proceed from a strumous Obstruction, as it sometimes happens to humane Bodies, it would prove incurable.

As to that which Farriers call *Molten Grease*, it being, for the most part, the Concomitant of every large Scouring, that Symptom generally wears off in the Process of the Distemper, and requires no particular Management distinct from what has been already prescrib'd for the third sort of Looseness, viz. Purging and astringent Clysters, with the assistance of those things that are proper to promote a breathing thro' the Pores; but because in all violent Disorders of the Guts there is, for the most part, a Weakness in the Stomach also, it can never be amiss to exhibit such things as are proper to procure a good Digestion, at the same time that other Means are us'd to carry off the more urgent Symptoms; and these ought to be continued, especially to a Horse of Value; and indeed it is for want of such Helps that many Horses dwindle away, or fall into other Distempers, after the Looseness has in a great Measure been overcome.

Concerning the Food that is to be given in such Disorders, nothing can be more proper than what *Solleysell* recommends, viz. the cleanest and best Hay, Bran moisten'd with Claret, and parch'd Barley. But as all those Disorders have their primary Cause from Colds, ill Usage, but especially from foul corrupt Feeding, and want of Exercise, the Owner can never be at a Loss to keep an Eye over his Horse, and to learn his Constitution, and what he is able to bear, and by that means these Accidents may, in a great measure, be prevented.



## C H A P. XXXVIII.

*Of the Bloody-Flux.*A Bloody-  
Flux.

**T**HIS is only an advanc'd Degree of a *Diarrhœa*, especially of that sort which proceeds from a Profusion of the pancreatick and bilious Juices; for when the Discharge from those Parts is very much enlarg'd, it causes still a greater Influx of Blood and Humors towards them, which being more than can be converted into the proper Juices, forces itself thro' the Interstices of the Vessels, and is discharg'd with these Juices into the Guts.

Its different  
Appearan-  
ces.

Sometimes it resembles the washings of Flesh, sometimes there is a mixture of purulent Matter or Corruption along with it, and sometimes little or nothing comes away but pure Blood; but this last kind proceeds, for the most part, from an Aperture of the Internal *Hemorrhoidal* Vessels.

But it is to be observ'd a Bloody Flux very seldom happens to Horses, insomuch that *Solleysell* has given it no place among other Diseases of the like Nature, and for my own part I cannot say I have ever seen Blood come from a Horse's Fundament, otherwise than by the Pressure of hard Dung upon the great Gut, which by that means has only squeez'd out a very small Quantity from the Vessels thereof; yet because that Distemper may, without doubt, seize some Horses, as it is not inconsistent with the Oeconomy of that Animal, and as most Authors I have perus'd, besides *Solleysell*, aver they have met with it in all its different Appearances, I shall therefore give such Directions as are necessary for the Cure.

The Cure.

And in order thereunto, because a Bloody Flux happens, for the most part, before the Body has been very much wasted by the Looseness, it is proper, in the first place, to make a Revulsion, by taking a moderate Quantity of Blood from the Neck Vein. This is convenient in all Fluxes of Blood

from



from the inferior parts, unless the Horse be exceeding weak.

If there be a Mixture of purulent corrupt Matter after Bleeding, moderate Purging will be very proper, with such things as have been prescrib'd in the preceding Chapter, all the other Medicines recommended to make a Revulsion by Sweat and insensible Transpiration, are also to be comply'd with; as also the astringent Clysters there recommended, which in most Cases will answer the End, I shall therefore only add one more.

'Take a Quart of Forge-Water and boil in it  
'four Ounces of Oak-Bark, two Ounces of Tor-  
'mentil Roots, Balauftines and Red-Rose Leaves,  
'of each a Handful. To the strained Decoction  
'add three Ounces of Diascordium, one Ounce of  
'Mithridate, and half a Dram of Opium.' Let  
this be injected warm, and repeated as often as  
there is occasion; and if you be provided with a  
Syringe that has a pretty large Pipe, you may  
sometimes add two Ounces of Bole in Powder, or  
sealed Earth.

But above all things you are to avoid mixing  
Oil or Butter, or any other greasy Matter, with  
Clysters that are of this Intention, as is common  
among Farriers; for these things are directly con-  
trary to the Nature of those Applications, and will  
not only render their Operation ineffectual, but  
increase the Disease, and instead of astringing and  
fortifying the Bowels, will weaken them, by  
causing a greater Relaxation of their Fibres.

## C H A P. XXXIX.

### *Of Worms, Bots and Trunchions.*

T H E R E are several kinds of Vermin bred in  
the Bodies of Horses, which go under the Deno-  
mination of Bots, Worms and Trunchions. The  
Worms are of divers Colours and Shapes, some re-  
semble Earth-Worms, others are small and white,  
sharp at both Ends like Needles. The Trunchion

Worms of  
divers kinds  
bred in  
Horses.



is thick and short, and the Bot is not unlike a small Caterpillar; the last are commonly found in the streight Gut, especially of some Horses when they are first taken from Grass.

*Solleyfell* has taken notice of another kind which resemble Wood-Lice, only that they have fewer Feet, are of a deep redish Colour, velveteed on the Back like a Bot, and made up of several Folds. These he says are bred in the Stomach, and abide in it and devour all the Nourishment; so that a Horse, if he be never so great a Feeder, cannot thrive while they are in his Maw. The same Author observes further, that those kind of Worms are oftentimes the occasion of a Horse's Death, by eating Holes in the Stomach; and says he has seen thousands of them in the Stomachs of dead Horses.

But that Author might be easily impos'd upon by such an Inspection; for it is very certain, as soon as an Animal dies, those Parts that turn first to Putrefaction, as the Aliment in the Stomach, which is kept under close Cover, will soon breed Vermin, and that of different kinds, since it is reasonable enough to believe that the Seeds of divers Insects may be deposited among the Food of most Animals, and be thus convey'd into the Stomach, and may be brought to Life very suddenly after the Animal is dead; but that Worms, or any other kind of Vermin, can either be bred or subsisted in the Stomach of any living Creature, is as impossible as for a Mouse to live under a Millstone while it is grinding; for it is very well known, that the muscular Action of the Stomach, by which it is kept in constant Motion, would much sooner destroy any such Creatures, if it was possible for them to breed there, than the common Food which they eat, that being harder and more difficult to be broke than they.

No Worms  
can be bred  
in the Sto-  
mach while  
the Horse  
is alive.

A false Af-  
sertion of  
*Markham*.

And therefore *Markham's* Assertion must be as false as ridiculous, and only taken upon trust, from the Speech of some Mountebank; where, speaking of the red Worms, he says: "He has seen Horses, whose Stomachs have been eaten quite through  
" with



“ with them, so that the Meat which they eat  
 “ could not abide in their Stomach, but fell, upon  
 “ the swallowing, into the Body, making the  
 “ Body swell like a Tun, so that they dy’d with  
 “ huge Torment.”

Neither will the Histories we have of Worms being voided at the Mouths of Men and Women, however authentick, avail any thing to prove their subsisting in the Stomach, since it is very certain they have been thrown upwards like the Gall or Excrements in the *Iliack* Passion, when the *peristaltick* Motion of the Guts has been very much inverted; and these have been but a very short while in the Stomach before their Ejection.

We may therefore very reasonably affirm, since All Worms bred in the Guts. the modern Discoveries have shewn us the true use of the Stomach, that this sort of Vermin can only be bred and subsisted in the Guts of any live Animal, and not in the Stomach; and when they are found there at any time, it is either after the Animal is dead, that the Action of the Stomach ceases, or else they are brought into it in the manner we have already mention’d.

Now the Cause of Worms is from foul Feeding, The Cause of Worms. and very often from a bad Digestion, for that will have the same Effect as corrupt and unwholsome Food. For the Aliment, when it is not sufficiently broke and comminuted in the Stomach, turns to Crudities, and is render’d the more liable to putrify in the Guts, so that a proper Matter is furnished for the Production of Vermin; and therefore we may often observe, that as Children, even so young Horses are more liable to be infested with Worms than those that are grown to Maturity. And this may probably proceed from the Weakness and Flexibility of the solid Parts, whereby, tho’ their Appetites are at that time sensible and vigorous, yet the Stomach must act less forcibly upon the Aliment, than when they are arriv’d to a more advanc’d State; so that of Consequence they may be render’d more liable to the Production of those Animals.

The



## The Signs.

The Signs are all those that appear in a Cholick, for besides that those Insects occasion a Titillation in the Guts, the viscid gross and putrify'd Matter, whereby they are ingender'd, causes a Vellication and frequent Twitches, and withal so much Pain, that a Horse appears to be in all the Agony imaginable, lying down and starting up again by Fits, oftentimes striking his Belly with his hind Foot, and oftentimes rubbing his Fundament against any Wall or Post that happens to be near him; and when there happens to be many of those Creatures, especially when they are harbour'd in the great Gut, they appear plentifully in the Dung.

## The Cure.

The Cure consists in all those things that are proper to destroy the Viscidities in the Bowels, and at the same time to strengthen the Stomach; for by that means a Horse digests his Hay and Provinder, and nothing but the grosser Parts go downwards into the Guts, so that of consequence those Creatures cannot easily be ingender'd there.

And because Purging is of the most immediate Efficacy in all such Cases, it is therefore the most proper to begin the Cure that way; and for that purpose, if there be no Obstructions in the streight Gut, which may first require the use of Clysters, we recommend the following.

'Take Tansey Flowers and Coraline, of each a Handful, Sena one Ounce, Jalap in gross Powder half an Ounce: Boil them in a Quart of Water, and to the strained Decoction add two Ounces of Syrup of Buckthorn. Or:

'Take two Ounces of the *Pulvis Cornachini*, or Countess of Warwick's Powder, and give it in a Decoction wherein Rue has been boil'd. Let your Horse be kept from feeding two Hours before and two Hours thereafter, giving him moderate Exercise to help the Operation of the Physick; and at Night he may have scalded Bran to eat.

But these are the properest Purgers to destroy Worms and wormy Matter, that have *Mercurius Dulcis*, or *Æthiops Mineral* join'd with them, as follows.

'Take



‘ Take of the best Aloes one Ounce, *Mercurius*  
 ‘ *Dulcis* half an Ounce, Diagridium two Drams.  
 ‘ Make these into a Ball with Liquorish Powder or  
 ‘ Flower, and as much Butter as is sufficient. Or  
 ‘ this :

‘ Take of the best shining Aloes one Ounce and  
 ‘ a half, *Æthiops Mineral* one Ounce, Diagridium  
 ‘ and Diaphoretick Antimony, of each two Drams.  
 ‘ Make them into one or two Balls, as above direc-  
 ‘ ted, and let them be given fasting.

Either of these being three or four times repeated, will destroy all manner of Worms, and carry off that slimy and corruptible Matter in which they are ingender’d, and without the least Danger.

The *Mercurius Dulcis* may be had at any Chymist’s or Apothecary’s ; as for the *Æthiops* it is made of equal Parts of Quicksilver and Brimstone, rubbing them in a Mortar till they are incorporated and turn to a black Powder.

After your Horse has been sufficiently purged with one or other of the above-mentioned Remedies, the following Powder out of *Solleysell* may be given for a Week or a Fortnight, and it will be of great Service to destroy all the Remains of the Distemper.

“ Take the Roots of Masterwort, the Leaves  
 “ and Roots of Radishes, greater Centaury and  
 “ Tansey, dry them in the Sun in the Summer,  
 “ and in an Oven, with a moderate degree of  
 “ Heat, in the Winter ; then take a Pound of  
 “ each Germander, Ground-pine, Roots of Ange-  
 “ lica, and Elicampain, all dry’d in the Shade, of  
 “ each half a Pound, Coraline or *Sea-Moss*, and  
 “ Liver Aloes, of each four Ounces, Gallangal,  
 “ Nutmeg and *Sal Prunellæ*, of each two Ounces.  
 “ Reduce all the Ingredients to Powder separately,  
 “ then mix them and keep them in a leathern  
 “ Bag, or in a glass Bottle close stoppt. The Dose  
 “ is an Ounce for small Horses, two Ounces for  
 “ those of a middle Size, and two Ounces and a  
 “ half for large Horses ; mix it with half an  
 “ Ounce or three Drams of old Treacle, or an  
 “ Ounce of Treacle *Diatefferon* or Mithridate ;  
 “ then



“ then give it the Horse in a Pint of White-Wine,  
 “ and afterwards walk him in his Cloaths.”

But this Powder will be much better if the first Ingredients be wholly left out, and instead of them be substituted four Ounces of the Flowers of Brimstone, and two Ounces of the Powder of Myrrh; neither is there occasion to be much scrupulous about the Dose, for the smallest Horse may take two Ounces of this Powder, and it will be little enough.

There are many other Remedies appropriated to destroy Worms, which are all very good, when rightly apply'd, as Rue, St. John's Wort, Tops of Broom, Male Fern, Savin, Citron Seeds, Wormwood and Wormseed, Garlick, Onions, and such like things, but none can come up to *Mercurius Dulcis*, or the *Æthiops Mineral*, for immediate Efficacy.

Most Farriers, for Cheapness, make use of Alum, black Soap, burnt Vitriol, and such like things; some exhibit corrosive *Sublimate*, or red *Precipitate*, as much as will lie upon a silver Penny; but as these last Medicines, viz. the *Sublimate* and *Precipitate*, cannot be us'd internally without great Danger, especially to brute Creatures, who can never be brought to take such things as are proper to carry off their ill Effects, they ought therefore not to be given in any Case; for albeit they may, by Virtue of their powerful Efficacy, succeed in some Circumstances, where a Horse happens to be robust and strong; yet when it is otherwise, if they are not the occasion of sudden Disorders, they will lay the Seeds of a bad Constitution, and render a Horse unserviceable for the future.

## C H A P. XL.

*Of Pain in the Bowels caused by sudden Accidents.*

WE have already taken notice that most of the Diseases of the Guts will cause cholick Pains, when they come to an Extremity; but  
 Horses,



Horses, who are oftentimes under the Direction and Management of bad Tutors, and are themselves only guided by Instinct, must therefore be render'd liable to many Inconveniencies, and to none more than those which shew themselves immediately in the Bowels; for the drinking cold Water when a Horse is hot, or if at that time he be rid deep into the Water, or if he be suffer'd to cool of a sudden when he has been at hard Exercise, any such Mismanagement very frequently brings on the most intolerable Disorders, as we daily observe.

Pain caused  
by drinking  
when hot,  
&c.

And this is easy to be accounted for, because when the Body is hot and the Pores open, any sudden Cold causes them to be immediatly shut up, so that all the common and necessary Discharges are in a great measure hinder'd, by which means the Vessels of the *Colon*, and sometimes of the Stomach and other Bowels, are also cram'd and distended; and this is the true Cause of the Pain, and likewise of the Wind and Flatulency that is observable in such Cases, for altho' Wind may often proceed from other Causes, as from the Viscidity and Sliminess of the Matter that is sometimes harbour'd in the Bowels; yet in this Case it is chiefly occasion'd by their over-great Relaxation, whereby they lose their Tone and *peristaltick* Motion, which is absolutely necessary to the Expulsion of the Wind as well as the Excrements.

As for the Signs of these sudden Disorders they are sufficiently known to every one, we shall therefore proceed to the Cure.

And first of all, if the Horse be hot and feverish, as it sometimes happens, a moderate Quantity of Blood may be taken from the Neck-Vein, after which a Clyster ought to be injected, and such a one as will stimulate the Guts, and promote their peristaltick Motion, for by that means the Excrements and Wind will not only be ejected, but the stagnant Blood must also be forwarded, for which purpose nothing can be more serviceable than a Quart of Emetick Wine given lukewarm; but because this is not to be had without Expence, it would

The Cure  
of those sud-  
den Dis-  
orders.



would therefore be worth any Gentleman's while to make it and keep it by him, and that is easily done, only by infusing four Ounces of the *Crocus Metallorum* or Liver of Antimony, in a Gallon of White-Wine or Ale, for several Days, and it will give it an emetick Quality.

But instead of the emetick Wine the following Clyster may be used.

' Take of the Decoction of Mallows and Marsh-mallows, or of Broth that is not too fat, two Quarts, dissolve four Ounces of Syrup of Buckthorn, and two Handfuls of common Salt. Or this:

' Take two Quarts of warm Water, and dissolve in it half a Pound of *Epsom* Salts, and two Handfuls of common Salt. Or the following:

' Take of the Decoction above-mention'd two Quarts, Aloes in Powder two Ounces, Gambuge one Ounce. Let these be stir'd into the Decoction when it is about Blood-warm, adding at the same time a Handful of bay Salt, or common Salt.

Let either of these be given, taking care to keep the Horse moving until the Operation is quite over; and this Method will be the more necessary if the Horse has been full fed; but if it be otherwise, that he was empty when this Accident happen'd to him, a Clyster of Broth, or of the emollient Herbs and brown Sugar, or Molossus, will suffice.

After the purging Clyster has finish'd its Operation, Sweat ought, as soon as possible, to be promoted, and that very plentifully; wherefore,

' Take of old *Venice-Treacle*, or of *Mithridate*, three Ounces, *Matthew's Pill* two Drams, Camphire six Grains: Mix them well together, and then dissolve them in a Quart of warm Beer, and give it thro' a Horn, cloathing him very warm.'

And, to comfort his Bowels, the Clyster prescrib'd in a preceding Chapter to ease violent Pains in the Guts may be given, or the following, which is of like Efficacy, and will also help to promote the Sweat.

' Take



‘ Take Red-Rose Leaves two Handfuls, dry’d  
 ‘ Mint and Sage, of each one Handful, Gallangal  
 ‘ bruis’d one Ounce, Bay Berries six Drams.  
 ‘ Boil them half an Hour in three Pints of Water,  
 ‘ and to the strained Decoction add Spirit of Wine  
 ‘ or Brandy one Pint, and also dissolve in it four  
 ‘ Ounces of Diascordium.’ Let this be given  
 Milk-warm, keeping his Tail close to his Funda-  
 ment, until he has no Motions of throwing it  
 out.

But a Horse is sometimes so restless with the  
 Violence of those Pains, that there is no keeping  
 him on his Legs, but he throws himself down  
 every Minute; and some Horses kill themselves  
 by striking their Heads against the Walls, who  
 otherwise might easily be recover’d if they could  
 be manag’d. These ought to be buried in a Dung-  
 hil, all but the Head, there being no Case that re-  
 quires that kind of Sweating more than this, for it  
 is very much to be suspected, that the giving of  
 cold Water to a Horse when he is hot, and wash-  
 ing him about his Breast and Belly, may often  
 cause an immediate Foundering in the Chest, and  
 this seems reasonable enough from the extraordi-  
 nary working and heaving of the Flanks, which is  
 observable all of a sudden in some Horses after such  
 Accidents. But the Reader may have recourse  
 to what has been already said under that Head.

## C H A P. XLI.

*Of the Yellows or Jaundice.*

**T**HERE is no Distemper that happens more  
 frequently to Horses than the Jaundice or  
 Yellows, and proceeds from Obstructions either  
 in the Gall-pipe, caused by Slime or gritty Mat-  
 ter, or when the Roots of those little Ducts that  
 open into that Pipe are stop’d by the like Matter,  
 or compress’d by a Plenitude and Fullness of the  
 Blood-Vessels that lie near them.

The Nature  
 of the Yel-  
 lows and its  
 different  
 Causes.

Some-



Sometimes that Distemper proceeds from or accompanies hard and *schirrous* Obstructions in the Liver, and sometimes the Blood will be tinctur'd in malignant and pestilential Sicknesses, as the Disease mention'd by *Solleysell*, which he terms the *Spanish Evil*, and which he observed to be predominant among the Horses in his time for several Years together, and to many prov'd mortal; sometimes the same Symptoms will also happen upon the Bite of an Adder, or any other venomous Beast.

In these last Cases of Poison and Infection, the Liver no doubt is inflam'd and swell'd, and by that means bears its Proportion, from which the Yellowness no doubt happens; but as this is only a Symptom, which may be removed by all those things that are proper to carry off the Fever; and as we have already laid down such Methods as are proper in Cases of Malignity, we shall only here consider it as any other Secretion that is obstructed, and provide such means as are proper to open the said Obstructions.

When the Gall-pipe, or rather when the Roots of its common Ducts are any ways stop't up, the Matter which should be converted and turned into Gall, is taken up by the Veins, and carry'd back again into the Mass of Blood, giving it a yellow Tincture; so that all the Parts of a Horse that have a Capacity of shewing the Colour, as the Eyes, the inside of the Lips, and even the Slaver from the Mouth, will appear yellow. But as this Disease is contrary to that sort of Scouring where there is a Profusion of the Gall, and there being little or none of it transmitted into the Guts, the Excrements will therefore look of a light pale Green, as if the Aliment was only washed in the Guts.

It is also to be observ'd, when a Horse has the Yellows, he turns dull, heavy and sluggish, low in his Spirits and faint, especially when he is put to the least Exercise; and when the Distemper has continued some time upon him, he loses his Appetite, and becomes poor, lean and jaded.

While



While the Obstructions are only in the Gall-Passages, it is easy enough to be cur'd, but when the Liver is indurated and harden'd near those Passages, as it sometimes falls out; or if there happen Impostumations or Ulcers, the Cure will then be very doubtful; for in this last Case it will have all the same Effects as any other internal wasting Ulcer: And in the other Case, where the Liver is *schirrous* and hard, these Obstructions must also be difficult, because they lie out of the reach of manual Operation, and also of external Applications.

But in the Cure we shall begin with its first Stage, when we only suppose the Gall-passages obstructed as above mention'd; and to remove those, Purging must, in the first place, be necessary, with those things that are moderately opening, for unless there be Pain and Inflammation in the Liver, Bleeding will do but little Service; however, much it is in vogue in such Cases.

The Cure.

Therefore let the following Infusion be made, viz.

' Take of Senna one Ounce, Madder Roots and  
' Turmeric, of each half an Ounce, the Leaves  
' of Strawberries, Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of  
' each one Handful, Salt of Tartar three Drams.  
' Let them be infus'd in three Pints of boiling  
' Water all Night, and in the Morning let it be  
' given with the usual Precautions. This Infu-  
' sion will just keep the Horse's Body open, and  
' may therefore be repeated four or five Days suc-  
' cessively.

Or instead of this, the Horse may be purg'd three or four times with an Ounce, or ten Drams of the best Aloes, and half an Ounce of Turmeric made into a Ball, which, to a Horse of small Value, may be done with less Trouble.

After Purging in the manner we have prescrib'd, the Horse may have now and then a little scalded Bran, and sometimes boil'd Barley to eat, and his Water may have constantly Barley and Liquorice boil'd in it; and a Dose of the following Powder may be every Day given for a Fortnight or three



Weeks together, unless the Purging alone remove the Distemper, as it sometimes happens in the Beginning.

‘Take of the Roots of Madder and Turmerick, of each half a Pound, Earth-Worms dry’d in the Sun, or in an Oven that is but moderately heated, and Myrrh, of each four Ounces, Shavings of Hart’s-horn or Ivory, and crude Tartar, of each two Ounces, crude Antimony six Ounces, the best Saffron and Cinamon, of each two Drams.’ Let all these be made into a fine Powder, and give your Horse every Morning two Ounces in a sufficient Quantity of *Venice-Treacle* to make it into a stiff Paste, letting him at the same time drink a little White-Water or Barley-Water to wash it down.

I have been told that the following Receipt seldom or never misses to carry off the Yellows before it be of an old Standing; and if it succeeds, as I have reason to credit my Informant, it is a very easy way of making a Cure.

‘Take of *Castile Soap* one Ounce, cut it into slices, and dissolve it in two or three Spoonfuls of Whey, or any other Liquid, after that mix with it two Ounces of live Honey and Powder of Turmerick as much as will make it into a Pill or Ball; if it be too big, make it into two, and after you have dipt them in sweet Oil, give them to your Horse, letting him fast two Hours before and two Hours thereafter.’

This must be repeated every other Day for a Week at least. But in this Case the use of chewing Balls, or the Champing on green Juniper-wood, Horse-radish, or any such thing that will be of efficacy to rouse his Spirits, must needs be of great Service to him, and he ought also to have every Day Exercise given him in proportion to his Strength and Ability; for nothing can conduce more to assist the Medicines in their Operation.

An inveterate Jaundice.

But when the Yellows proceed from stony and hard Obstructions in the Liver, which, if they be large, may easily be discovered, because they will render



render him liable to Pain and Inflammation, especially upon the least Exercise; and you may observe him under great Oppression, and will often turn his Head towards his right Side. In that Case he must be bled, and moderately purg'd with the Infusion above prescrib'd; after which the following Fomentation may be used.

' Take of the Leaves of Mallows and Marsh-mallows, of each four Handfuls, Wormwood and Camomile, of each two Handfuls, Leaves of Bawm and Flowers of Melilot, or such of these as can be had, of each one large Handful: Boil them in a Gallon of Water, and add to it a Pint of Spirit of Wine.

The properest way to use this, is by dipping Woollen Cloths into it, and applying it pretty warm and often to the Part affected.

If this Symptom does not wear off in a little time, it will soon cause the Horse's Death; but if that is removed, and the Horse continues still yellow; or if the Distemper has continued obstinate and immoveable, notwithstanding all the proper means have been used, recourse must then be had to Medicines of the most powerful Efficacy, for which purpose we recommend the following Purge.

' Take of Aloes one Ounce, Myrrh and Turmeric, of each half an Ounce, *Mercurius Dulcis* three Drams, or half an Ounce of *Æthiops Mineral*. Make them into Pills, with a sufficient Quantity of Flower and Butter.

These may be given twice a Week, or according as you find he has Strength to bear them, until he has been scoured four or five times; after which the Cinnabar Pills, or those for the Farcin, may be given, and their use continued for some considerable time (if your Horse be worth the Expence) but especially if you observe him rather to mend than grow worse. And this Method, when it is rightly follow'd, will be found the most rational to remove all obstinate Diseases of the Liver.



## C H A P. XLII.

*Of the Diseases of the Reins or Kidneys, &c.*

WE find in the Books of Farriers an Account of all the Diseases of the Reins and Bladder, tho' there are but few who have deliver'd them in any regular Order; and, indeed, some of them, as the Stone in the Bladder, &c. are but seldom met with; we shall therefore make it our Business to spend as little of the Reader's time as possible in things that are uncommon and unprofitable. However, we make no doubt but some rare and unusual Instances of Stones and Slime may happen to those Creatures, yet the most common are only those that proceed from Costiveness, from an Inflammation or Ulceration in the Kidneys, or some Defect in the Bladder, or in the Urine itself; what relates to the Pain or Stoppage of Water caus'd by Costiveness has already been discuss'd under that Head, as it is not to be accounted a Disease in those Parts, but only a Symptom of another Disease, and is removed as soon as that ceases; we shall therefore in the ensuing Chapter only consider a Stoppage or Painpiss in the latter Sense, when the Disease is confin'd to the Reins and Passages of the Urine.

## C H A P. XLIII.

*Of the Painpiss or Strangury.*

THO' this Disease happens most frequently when there is an Obstruction of the Dung harden'd and indurated in the Streight Gut, as we have observ'd; yet when it proceeds from another Cause, it is most likely to be occasion'd either by an Inflammation of the Bladder, or Ulcer in the Kidneys; for when there happens to be an Ulcer in those Parts, the Sharpness of the



the Matter proceeding from thence may no doubt cause Pain, when it passes into the *Urethra* or Piss-pipe, by abrading and carrying off the *Mucus* that should defend that sensible Part, so that a Horse in this Case must piss in Pain; and as this will also cause an Inflammation there, instead of pissing freely, he will often dribble.

An Inflammation in those Parts, arising from any other Cause, as hard riding, too long a Detention of his Urine, has generally the same Effect; but an Inflammation of this kind happens the more readily if there be a Lensor of the Dung.

To remove all such Disorders, it will be necessary to give emollient softning Clysters, made of a Decoction of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Mercury, Camomile and the like, with a mixture of Oils and other slippery things, or Clysters made of fat Broths; and to make them a little purgative, common Treacle or Manna may be dissolv'd in them, to the Quantity of six Ounces or half a Pound. The Cure.

Half an Ounce of *Sal Prunellæ* or purify'd Nitre may be dissolv'd in his Water for two or three Days together; or two Ounces of crude Tartar may be boil'd in it; and among his Provinder may be mixt the Leaves of Strawberries, Radishes and Turnip-Tops.

But if after hard riding you have reason to suspect an Inflammation in the Kidneys, the Bladder or Urinary Passage, which must at the same time be accompanied with feverish Symptoms, it will then be very proper to take Blood from the Neck-Vein, and the use of the Clysters may be repeated as often as you shall see occasion; but if you have a Reason to fear an Ulcer in the Kidneys, in that case all cleansing balsamick Medicines are to be comply'd with, for which purpose we chiefly recommend the following Balls.

' Take Gum Benjamin half a Pound, clean  
' Antimony in fine Powder four Ounces, Flower of  
' Brimstone six Ounces, Seeds of Fœnugreek and  
' crude Opium, of each an Ounce, Salt of Tartar  
' two Ounces, pound these in a Mortar, adding as



‘much Spirit of Turpentine as is sufficient to make  
 ‘them into a Mass, form them into Balls weighing  
 ‘two Ounces each, one of which may be given  
 ‘every Morning an Hour before watering time.’  
 Or the following :

‘Take Turpentine one Pound, boil it in Water  
 ‘till it be brought to the Consistency of Shoe-  
 ‘makers Wax.’ Give your Horse the Quantity  
 of a large Walnut dipt in Oil, or moisten’d with  
 Butter, and continue its use for some time.

## C H A P. XLIV.

### *Of a Flux of Urine and staling of Blood.*

**A**N immoderate Flux of Urine happens when the *Serum* of the Blood is too much attenuated and thin, or when the Pores of the Skin are too much constringed and shut up, or when the renal Ducts, viz. the small Canals that open into the hollow Part or Bason of the Kidneys are too much extended and dilated, whereby the *Serum* is separated in an over-great Quantity from the Kidneys.

The first, to wit, when the serous Parts of the Blood are too much attenuated, is for the most part caused by travelling in hot Weather, or eating hot or spirituous Herbs in the beginning of the Grass Season; and we have already observ’d that the Pores of the Skin are most ordinarily obstructed and shut up by riding in the Night Fogs, or exposing a Horse to the Cold when he has been over-much heated: And the Renal Ducts may be dilated and extended by eating Snow with the Grass in Winter, which is said to abound very much with *Nitre*; or it may be caused by drinking over-much Water of any kind, especially when a Horse is put to hard Exercise, for by that means it suddenly precipitates and falls downwards in an over-great Quantity into the Reins, so that the above-mention’d Ducts become widened beyond their usual Dimensions.

After



After this it will not be difficult to understand how a Horse comes to stale Blood, for albeit Blood may sometimes proceed from an Ulceration of the Kidneys when they are wore and abraded by Sand or gritty Matter, or by the Acrimony and Sharpness of the Corruption that proceeds from the Ulcer; yet the most usual Cause of pissing Blood happens when the Renal Ducts have been over-much distended by any of the Causes above-mention'd, and Blood, for the most part, follows a too great Profusion of the Urine, tho' this is very seldom attended unto by Farriers.

The Cause  
of staling  
Blood.

As to the Cure whether there be only a too great Profusion of Urine, or a Flux of Blood, it is to be perform'd chiefly by Medicines that strengthen and agglutinate, and likewise by such things as will divert the Humours another way by opening the Pores: Only in case of Blood a Vein should by all means be open'd in the Neck or Breast, to make as speedy a Revulsion as possible, because this kind of Hemorrhage proves sometimes fatal to Horses, and that very suddenly.

The Cure.

After Bleeding a cooling Clyster wherein *Sal Polychrest* or *Sal Prunellæ* has been dissolv'd will be very convenient. As the following:

'Take of the Decoction of Mallows and Marshmallows two Quarts, dissolve in it three Ounces of *Sal Polychrestum*, or *Sal Prunellæ*, or Saltpetre, four Ounces of Oil or fresh Butter.' Let it be injected lukewarm.

The following Drench may also be given and repeated for two or three Days.

'Take Plantain Water one Pint, Treacle Water half a Pint, Japan Earth and Bole, of each two Ounces, Sugar of Lead ten Grains, Diascordium or Mithridate three Ounces.' Or the following Balls may be given.

'Take Gum Tragacanth and Gum Arabick, of each four Ounces, dry'd Liquorish, Seeds of Melons and white Poppies, of each an Ounce, Gourds and Cucumber Seeds, of each half an Ounce, Starch two Ounces: Make them into a fine Powder, and with a Mucilage of Roots of

'Marsh-



‘ Marsh-mallows and Fœnugreek Seeds, let  
 ‘ them be form’d into Balls weighing two Ounces  
 ‘ each.

Let your Horse have one of these Balls Morning and Afternoon, an Hour before his Water, until his Urine ceases to be bloody.

But if the Flux of Blood be violent, take two Ounces of Salt or Sugar of Lead, and dissolve it in a Quart of Vinegar or Verjuice, and apply it cold to his Breast, and it will stop it immediately, unless it proceeds from some pretty large Branch of an Artery; and in that Case, unless the Rupture be in the Urinary Passage, where it may be reach’d by a Styptick Injection, it will readily prove mortal.

If your Horse has got a Fever, his Feeding must be but very moderate, if he has no other Accident besides a Flux of Urine, he may be indulg’d to feed somewhat more liberally, and among his Oats may be strew’d the Seeds of Melons, Gourd or white Poppies; three or four of the Heads of the said Poppies, with the Seeds, may be cut to pieces and boil’d in his Water, which will give it no disagreeable Taste: You may also give him now and then half a Pint of sweet Oil, for all those things are very proper, and they will help to blunt the Asperity and Sharpness of the Urine; but Care must be taken not to let him drink too much Water, but rather give it him the oftner, unless it be softned in the manner we have directed.

## C H A P. XLV.

*Of the Colt-Evil, shedding of the Seed, and mat-  
 tering of the Yard.*

The Colt-  
 Evil.

**T**HE Colt-Evil is a continued Stiffness in a Horse’s Yard, and is so called, because it is a Disease incident to Colts, and is brought upon them by having their full Liberty with Mares while they are not able to cover them; but the Disease, which



which generally goes under that Denomination in this Kingdom, is no other than a swelling of the Sheath.

It may be easily cur'd in the Beginning, only by bathing the Sheath with some warm Fomentation made of the emollient Herbs, &c. as Mallows, Marsh-mallows, Wormwood, Camomile and the like, with a Mixture of Spirit of Wine; but if you find the Swelling pretty hard, and that there are the Signs of Heat and Inflammation, he ought to be both bled and purg'd, and his Yard ty'd up to his Belly, making a Hole in the Bandage for the Passage of his Water.

The shedding of the Seed, if a Horse happens to have any such Disease, may be easily known by a Weakness and Debility; but that which the Farriers bring under this Denomination, is only some Weakness of the Reins, occasion'd by a Strain or violent Exercise, or the Solution of a Cold, which is sometimes follow'd by a Running at the Yard.

Shedding of Seed.

But the Cure is the same whether it be Seed or only Matter from the Reins, and may be perform'd by once or twice Purgings, and the use of Turpentine Balls, as directed in the 43d Chapter; or by the use of those strengthening Medicines we have inserted in the preceding Chapter.

The mattering of the Yard proceeds sometimes from the sharp frosty Air causing an Ulceration, but chiefly when a Horse has hurt himself by being too eager in covering a Mare, for as the Yard is of a loose and spongy Substance, if it therefore happens to be bruised, it easily becomes sore and ulcerated; and when the Skin is only fretted off from any part of it, from thence does issue a considerable Discharge of foetid stinking Matter, and may be of ill Consequence, if due Care be not taken, tho' at first it may be cur'd by Blooding only, and bathing the Part with warm Spirit of Wine; but the best way in using the Spirits is to take him out of the Stable, for when these are apply'd to so sensible a part as the Yard, the smarting Pain will be apt to make

Mattering of the Yard.



make him lame himself, unless he has room, but that does not last above one Minute.

If the Ulcer or Excoriation be inwards, which can only be distinguish'd by the Matter proceeding from the Urinary Passage, and not from the Pain in pissing, as the Farriers suppose, for the least Sore outwards, as it is more or less accompanied with Inflammation, will exhibit the same Signs as the Urine passes thro' the inflamed Part. In that Case the following Mixture may be injected three or four times a Day, and it will soon cure him of that Symptom.

' Take a Pint of Plantain or Rose Water, *Venice-Turpentine* two Ounces, the Yolk of one Egg, Honey one Ounce, mix these together in a Mortar, then pour the Water on them by Degrees ' until they are incorporated.' After which add four Ounces of Spirit of Wine or Brandy wherein half a Dram of Camphire has been dissolv'd. Put the whole Mixture into a Phial, shaking it as often as you have occasion to use it.

## C H A P. XLVI.

### *Of the Dropsy.*

ALL our *English* Authors, and some *Italians*, have enumerated a Dropsy among the Diseases of Horses, and some affirm positively that they have cur'd it in all its different kinds; but that which chiefly happens to Horses, is what the Farriers call the universal Dropsy, and shews itself more or less in all the external Parts of the Body, but especially the Legs and Thighs, as they are the most dependent; and I have myself observ'd in Cases of the Grease, when that happens both before and behind, it generally proceeds from a dropfical Disposition.

The Cause  
of a Dropsy.

The Cause is from all kinds of ill Usage, but especially from bleeding and purging Horses beyond their Strength; for these unseasonable Evacuations render the Blood languid and slow in its Motion,



Motion, and for want of Spirits it has not Force enough to reach the Passages of the Skin so as to make the usual Discharge, but its serous parts burst thro' the small Vessels, and are deposited under the Skin or the fleshy Pannicle.

The Signs are a Lassitude and Weariness, Faintness and difficulty of Breathing, loss of Appetite, and a Change of a Horse's natural Colour from Bay to Dun, or from Black to a Duskishness, and from White to an Ashy Complexion, and the like; his Hair will shed with the least rubbing, and the Pits of your Fingers will remain wherever there is a Swelling. It is moreover to be observ'd when a Dropsical Horse lies down, he does not gather his Limbs round together as a Horse that is free from that Indisposition, but because of their Stiffness, spreads them out at their full Length.

Altho' purging to excess is sometimes the cause of this Distemper, by reason it divests the Blood of its spirituous and balsamick Parts; yet to attenuate the Viscidities of its Serum, and to make a Discharge of what is superfluous, Purging must again be made use of; and when that is perform'd with proper Medicines, it is of no small Moment in the Cure; but these must be such, as, besides their purging Quality, are indu'd so as to communicate Warmth and Vigour to the Blood, &c. for which purpose the following is chiefly to be prefer'd.

'Take of Jalap one Ounce and a half, Gamboge two Drams, Seeds of Dwarf-Elder two Ounces, Ginger and Nutmegs, of each half an Ounce: Make all these into a fine Powder, and form them into two Balls, with as much Turpentine as is sufficient for that purpose.' Let these be dipt in Oil and given with the usual Precautions. They must be repeated every other Day for a Fortnight or longer; and on those Days he does not purge, an Ounce or six Drams of Antimony may be given him.

And because Sweating is also of the greatest service, when it can be promoted, the following  
Dose



Dose may be given and repeated as often as there is occasion.

‘Take old *Venice-Treacle* four Ounces, *Matthew’s* Pill two Drams, Camphire and Salt of Hart’s-horn, of each fifteen Grains.’ Mix these well together, and give them in a Quart of hot Ale.

But if this proves insufficient to raise a Sweat, he may be cover’d in a Dunghil.

Some particular Regard is also to be had to a Horse’s Diet in this Case; for altho’ it would be inconvenient to feed him high, yet while he undergoes so much cleansing by Purging, Sweat and other Evacuations, his Aliment should be somewhat proportion’d to it; and therefore he may be allow’d a large Measure of clean Oats every Day after the Operation of his Physick, with an Ounce of the Seeds of Dwarf-Elder, and two Ounces of Carraway Seeds strew’d among them.

## C H A P. XLVII.

*Of a Horse that is Hidebound.*

Various  
ways where-  
by a Horse  
becomes  
Hidebound.

**W**HEN a Horse after Travel, or after any Accident, grows so lean, and his Flesh so much sunk, that his Skin adheres close to his Bones, he is then said to be Hidebound; but this is not properly to be term’d a Disease, while it may be made up by Feeding; but when a Horse, after good Keeping, continues in the same Condition, we may then very reasonably suppose him to lie under some inward Indisposition; and in this respect it may proceed from divers Causes, as when the Excrements by Dung and Urine are over much enlarg’d, and the Pores of the Skin obstructed, or when the Entrance into the Lacteal or milky Vessels are stuffed by adhesive gluy Matter, or from any other augmented Secretion, or any large Discharge, whereby such a Derivation is made as hinders the Blood from reaching the extream and outward Parts, for by that means the Vessels and muscular Fibres become contracted and shrink to



the Bones for want of their due Nourishment; and as the Juices in those Parts become also viscid, the Skin is thereby as it were glu'd to the subjacent Flesh.

And therefore to form a right Judgment of this Distemper, the Farrier ought to examin carefully both into the Quantity and Quality of what a Horse voids from him, for I have known a Hidebound Horse shite often, and his Excrements soft like that of a Cow, and yet not come directly to a Lax or Looseness; and I knew another very costive, but then he had a beginning Glanders, which was the Cause of his Distemper, tho' in the process of the Disease, that the Matter came more plentifully, his Skin grew very loose and thin, which is easy to be accounted for; and a Horse may, no doubt, also become Hidebound from the other Causes above-mention'd.

What Distinctions are to be made with respect to Hidebound Horses.

And since this is properly an Effect of some other Disease, therefore whatever cures that, when it is once found out, will soon loosen a Horse's Hide, as for Instance, when a Horse voids too much Dung, a Stop is put thereunto with proper Remedies, which astringe and dry up the Belly; or when a Horse stales too much, or if the Passages of the Chyle are obstructed, whatever carries off these Obstructions, or puts a Stop to the superfluous Evacuation, will cause the Blood to flow in greater Quantity into its proper Vessels, by which means the shrunk and depress'd Fibres will by degrees be extended to their usual Dimensions. But if the Farrier be at a loss to judge rightly in those Cases, he can hardly do amiss if he administer the same Remedies we have laid down for the Cure of the Yellows, for there are but few Hidebound Horses which they will not recover, unless there be an inward Decay and Waste.

But while proper Means are us'd inwardly, besides good Dressing, Fomentations may be us'd outwardly, such as are recommended by Solleyfell, made of Succory, Hart's-tongue, Agrimony, St. John's Wort, Bay Leaves, Broom, Mint, Pennyroyal, Rue, Sage, Rosemary, Thyme, the Roots  
of



of Grass, Madder, Eringo, or such of them as can easily be had: Let twelve Handfuls be boil'd in two Gallons of Water, or Lees of Wine, and taking as many of the Ingredients in your Hand as you can grasp, rub all his Body with it as hot as he is able to bear; after which take Ointment of Marsh-mallows and Oil of Rue, of each equal Parts, with these chafe his Belly, and all about his Throat and Jaws, or wherever the Hide is much shrunk, then cover him with an old Sheet dipt in the Liquor, being first wrung out, binding over all a warm Quilt or Rug.

This may be repeated for the Space of three or four Days; and as that Author rightly observes, it will help to draw the Spirits and Nourishment to the dry Skin, tho' it will do but little Service unless the inward Obstructions be also remov'd.

How a lean  
Horse is to  
be manag'd.

But as for a tir'd lean Horse, who has no inward Indisposition, I would never advise any one to tamper with him, otherwise than by observing a due Care in his Feeding, Dressing and Exercise; for in this Case, while we only suppose a Horse's Body shrunk and depress'd by the continual Discharges from the Pores of the Skin, and the other Excretions, during his daily and continued Labour, and the want of sufficient Food to make up those Losses, it is very certain these may be repair'd by Food and Ease. But as in this Case the Vessels are contracted and lessen'd in their Bore and Capacity, his Food ought at first to be but moderate, otherwise a larger Quantity of Blood will be transmitted into those Vessels than they are capable at once to receive, which must needs be the occasion of many Disorders, as it will cause an over-plenitude in the extreme Parts, and so by its Redundancy, overburden and load the principal Bowels.

And this is truly the Reason why lean and tir'd Horses, who have been suddenly fatten'd by Jockeys, become such Jades, turn brokenwinded or lame, or lose their Eye sight upon the least Service; for while the main Study of those Persons is (as every one sufficiently knows) only to make them look fat and plump, they soften all their Food,



Food, that it may digest soon, and turn the sooner to Blood, and allow them no manner of Exercise, being sensible that any such Method would soon turn to their own Detriment.

But to apply this more particularly to our present purpose, a lean Horse should have his Exercise and Food increas'd by degrees, and justly proportion'd to the Augmentation of his Strength, and because of the Contraction and want of Capacity, which we have observ'd to be in the Blood-Vessels of such Horses, his Exercise should always be given him so as he may rest some time before he has his Feeding of Oats, because Exercise, by thinning the Blood, and making it take up more space in the Canals, may therefore, besides other Injuries to which it exposes a lean Hidebound Horse, cause a more than ordinary Sense of Fullness, by distending the Blood-Vessels of the Stomach, which are in that part very small, and therefore hurt Digestion; whereas if he be suffer'd to stand some time before an empty Rack, or only to eat a little fresh Hay until the additional Motion of the Blood be decreas'd, and the Vessels become sub-sided by a gradual running off of the Blood; a Horse will then become lightsome and able to digest his Food, so as it may be converted to true and solid Nourishment.

And for the same Reasons a Horse in this Condition ought never to be taken out soon after Feeding, but upon Necessity, and then he should only be walk'd gently, as every Meal makes a fresh Augmentation of the Blood; and, indeed, at all times his Exercise should be gentle and easy, until his Vessels are render'd capacious and strong enough to bear the sudden Sallies of the Blood, and that the Offices of Secretion have also acquir'd a sufficient Aptitude to make their Discharges as regular and as nearly proportionable as may be to the Quantity of his Food.

And this must certainly be the true Reason of fatning and hardning a lean Hidebound Horse; or in other Words, of bringing a lean Horse into good Case, and at the same time rendering him robust  
and



and strong, and able to bear the hardest Labour and Toil, especially if to this be added good Rubbing and Dressing to promote the Discharges of the Skin.

But notwithstanding these Rules are what we can warrant to be sufficiently agreeable to the Laws of Mechanism in all Bodies whatsoever, yet because the Animal System is so much complicated, whereby one Horse also differs vastly from another, every Man's own Discretion must therefore, in the main, guide him as to Particulars. What we have here observ'd in general has been chiefly calculated with an Eye to those Horses that are of a tender and delicate Frame, and not to such as are naturally hardy, tho' these may also, in some Circumstances, require such a Care to be had of them. But the Reader may consult the fourth Chapter, where he will meet with some things that bear a near Affinity to the present Subject.

## C H A P. XLVIII.

### *Of the Farcin.*

**T**H E R E is no Distemper which has try'd the Skill and Invention of Farriers more than the Farcin. The Writers of the lower Rank, as *Markham* and *De Grey*, and those who have borrow'd all their Knowledge from them, have no otherwise accounted for it, than that it proceeds from naughty and corrupt Blood, and that it is the most loathsome and infectious of all Distempers, brought upon a Horse by Infection, or by eating corrupt and naughty Food, or by lying in Swines Litter, and from such like Causes. Neither have those of better Account mended the Matter very much, having only amus'd their Readers with a false and unintelligible Philosophy.

The *Sieur de Solleysell* defines it to be an Ulcer caus'd by the Corruption of the Blood, and that by a certain Poison which is more or less malignant, and consequently makes the Horse's Condition



tion either hopeful, or altogether desperate; and after a short Theory built upon the Writings of some Physicians, but no ways applicable to the Farcin, he has these Words.

“For a brief Explanation of the Nature of that  
 “Poison, ’twill be sufficient to tell you that it is  
 “a venomous Steam, or certain corrupt Spirits  
 “which penetrate the Parts of a Horse’s Body,  
 “as the Light of the Sun passes thro’ a Glass.  
 “These Spirits are a sort of Ferment that breeds  
 “Corruption in whatever part they attack.”

*Solleysell’s*  
 Account of  
 a Farcin no  
 ways agree-  
 able to  
 the Nature  
 of that  
 Disease.

But this Explanation is not only imperfect, but altogether unintelligible, his Comparison being no ways agreeable to his own Ideas and Notions of that Poison; nor, indeed, deducible from those Causes which himself has enumerated as the chief Occasion of the Farcin; for he observes that the Farcin is sometimes communicated by Contagion from an infected Horse, the eating too great a Quantity of new Oats or new Hay, violent Exercise in hot Weather, and even once hard Riding; Hurts and Wounds made by a foul cancerous Instrument, such as Spurs, Bits, &c. The too great Abundance of Blood, and a preposterous and too hasty Diligence in fattening tir’d, lean and over-heated Horses.

But it is very certain none of these Causes will produce such a Poison as can penetrate the Parts of a Horse’s Body in the manner he has describ’d; and, indeed, those Poisons that are of the most volatile and corrosive Nature, tho’ their Effects are sudden, yet their Operations are not fortuitous or at random, but perfectly Mechanical, as may be seen by any one who is able to peruse Dr. Mead’s Essays on Poison, where all those things are clearly and intelligibly explain’d.

We shall therefore endeavour to account for the Farcin in a way that we hope will be thought more rational than what any of our Authors have hitherto advanc’d; and whatever regard be had to the *procatartick* or remote Causes of that Distemper, we may venture to affirm that its immediate Cause is a languid and heavy Motion of the Blood,



and other Juices contain'd in the small Vessels of the extreme and outward Parts of a Horse's Body, and that it has its chief Seat in the Skin and fleshy Pannicle.

But before we proceed further, we shall take notice that most Authors have divided the Farcin into divers kinds, viz. the wet, the dry, the inward, and the flying Farcin, the corded Farcin, the Farcin that puts forth red or yellowish Flesh, and that which is of a livid and black Colour, and resembles a Hen's Fundament.

The wet and the dry only differ as there is more or less Moisture in the Ulcers and Parts where it is seated; the flying Farcin, which makes its appearance sometimes in one Place, sometimes in another; and the inward Farcin, which is said only to be felt on the Breast, but does not elevate the Skin, and is observed often to disappear of a sudden, and become the immediate Cause of Sickness, tho' either of these may degenerate to a true Farcin; yet while they are not fixt, but indu'd with Properties altogether foreign to the Farcin, they cannot rightly be brought under that Denomination, but ought rather to be look'd upon as resembling those Eruptions on the humane Body, which happen in violent Colds or malignant Disorders, and are curable as such. All the other kinds are only different Effects of that which makes its first Appearance like a knotted Cord; and it is this sort alone, which, properly speaking, constitutes a true Farcin. In what manner such a Disorder can happen to a Horse, and produce those Effects we daily observe from it, shall be shewn anon.

We have already taken notice that the Farcin has its chief Seat in the Skin and thin muscular Pannicle which lies under it, and is caused when the Juices in those Parts are become viscid, and, consequently, slow and languid in their Motion. If it be consider'd that there is an infinite number of Vessels in those Parts that are smaller than Hairs; and that those Vessels, howsoever small, have a Capacity, and contain a Fluid within them,  
any



any one may easily imagine, that in the best Estate a Horse can be in, that Fluid can move but very slowly; but when it happens to be too thick or viscid, it may be then easily reduc'd to a State of Stagnation; and when it is deny'd a free Passage thro' those small Canals, as it is constantly press'd upon by the succeeding Fluid, those small Vessels, where there is a Stagnation, will be stretched out beyond their usual Dimensions, and the Part will be elevated and rais'd into a Tumor.

As often as any part is thus elevated, and the Liquid stop'd that it cannot move forwards, because of the Obstructions and the Compressions there is on all sides, the Vessels being thereby fill'd beyond their Capacity, it bursts forth; and being now got without the Laws of Circulation, putrifies, and acquiring a corrosive malignant Quality, it gnaws and festers, until it has form'd a convenient Lodgment for itself.

If the Stagnation be sudden and violent, and accompanied with great Pain and Heat, it will cause so great a Derivation of Blood towards the inflam'd Part, that the subjacent Muscles will also be affected, and by that means the Part will be rais'd into a large Boil and Impostumation; but when the Pain and Heat is moderate, it will probably pierce no deeper than the Pannicle, and as the subjacent Muscles are but little, if at all, affected, the Tumors will be but small, and proportionable to the Vessels of the said Pannicle. And because the Irritation made by those Knots or little Tumors is not of violence to affect and attract the Blood in the larger Vessels; yet, as there is a near Sympathy and strict Communication, at least, between all the adjacent Parts of the Pannicle, any the least Irritation will easily affect those that are nearest, and the Malady will be communicated by degrees from one Part to another, until it spreads over the whole Body. But because of the Closeness of the Skin to the Pannicle, and the Communication there is between them, the Hide must also be affected; yet that



Intimacy and Closeness is the Cause, in so gentle an Inflammation, that these Knots do not rise equally in all Parts, but chiefly follow the Track of the Veins; the Humor therefore has a greater tendency towards the Veins, as it finds a Lodgment under them while they are full, and elevate the Skin; and moreover, as the Veins (being only fill'd with a Liquid) are therefore soft and yielding, and may be much easilier press'd upon than the superior Skin, which is more hard and compact; and it is from hence that a Cord is always form'd by the Humors along the Track of the Vein; and as the Swelling increases, it gathers Strength, and sometimes surmounts the Vein itself, so that the Vein seems to lie under it.

We have shewn how the Humors thus obstructed turn to Matter: But the Matter of the Farcin is generally small in Quantity, as the Knots are form'd in Parts that are dry and adust, and where there is but little Moisture; and as the Vessels which nourish it are also but small; and for this Cause, when the Cure happens to be ill manag'd, the Ulcers degenerate into a *Caries*, and put forth a sort of Flesh which is red, white or yellowish, according to the predominancy of the Humors, or else turn hard and scirrhus, and of a livid Colour; and when the Lips of the Ulcers become inverted, which happens frequently from the Acrimony and Sharpness of the Matter, or the frequent Application of hot or unctuous things, they are then said to resemble a Hen's Fundament.

But all this is reconcileable to what we have laid down as the immediate Cause of the Farcin, to wit, a *Lentor* in the Blood and Juices, whereby they move heavily; but especially in the extream and outward Parts, where the Vessels are the smallest; and it is very certain, that any, or most of those Causes to which *Solleysell*, and the best Farriers have ascrib'd the Farcin, will produce such a *Lentor* and Slowness; or, if there be a previous *Lentor* in the Blood, must increase that *Lentor* either in whole, or in part, by exciting Pain. And this is plain from the Instance of the Farcin being



being caused by the Wound of a rusty Spur, which can act no otherwise as a Poison, than that some of the harsh and pointed Parts of the Rust fret and irritate the tender wounded Pannicle; and even then it must act mechanically, and in the way we have above describ'd, by retarding the Motion of the Juices in those parts; and if, previous to such a Wound, there be a very great Viscidity and Thickness of the Juices, the Farcin may be caused by the Wound of a Spur, or any other Instrument, tho' it be altogether free from Rust.

If the Farcin be caused by Infection from another Horse, it must act in the same manner, for then we must suppose that some *Effluvia*, or poisonable Steams fly off from the Diseased Horse, which, by insinuating themselves into the Pores of a sound Horse, must occasion a Stagnation of the Juices in those outward Parts; but these *Effluvia* are not of so volatile a Nature as to have often such Effects; but when Horses stand together in a Stable, it is rather to be attributed to their eating the same kind of Food, and their being under the same Direction and Management. What kind of Poison may be in Swines Litter, or how far it may be noxious to Horses, is not worth while here to determine, since it is very seldom made use of to Horses; and if it was, it would rather produce the Mange than the Farcin.

The eating of corrupt and unwholsome Hay or Oats may easily cause the Farcin, as such Feeding begets Crudities, which must render the Blood viscid; for when the Blood has once acquir'd that Quality, a Stagnation may be easily induc'd in the extream and outward Parts, where the Juices are naturally viscid, and the Vessels extreamly small.

Too much Feeding, without suitable Exercise, may also be the Cause of a Farcin, as it may induce a gradual *Plethora* or Fullness of the Vessels; but if that be sudden, by a sudden Adstriction of the Pores, it will be more apt to cause a Fever or Surfeit, or a Foundring in the Body, which, in many Cases, is not to be distinguish'd from a



Surfeit: And the same Effects may also be produc'd from Travel, or from once hard Riding, and from many other Errors in the keeping and management of Horses.

It now remains that we take notice of the Signs, but because these are manifest and known to all, we shall only distinguish between those which are said to be good Signs, and those which are of ill Prognostication.

First of all then, that kind of Farcin is said to be easily cur'd, which takes its rise upon the Head and upper Parts; the Reason is, because it can have no deep Root; but if it once come to affect the Emunctories and Kernels about the Jaws, and towards the Ears, it is then to be fear'd, and, if neglected, will be apt to breed the Glanders.

That kind of Farcin which is superficial, and where the Hide is only affected, cannot be of dangerous Consequence, even tho' it be universal, and has over-spread the whole Body; but when it has been originally seated in the Pannicle, or if it be observed to grow deeper and affect the Pannicle, it may be then look'd upon as more difficult and obstinate, tho' even then it will not be very hard to remove it, unless it either affect the glandulous and kernelly Parts, or that the Knots break and degenerate into a *Caries* or *Scirrhus*.

But the most superficial and least rooted Farcin, if it continue long without Abatement, may insensibly, and by degrees, become of ill Consequence, as it disturbs the Offices of Secretion, for while the Humors have a continual tendency towards the Knots and Sores, the Pores of the Skin become obstructed, and for the want of a due and regular Discharge there, the least Error in Feeding and Exercise will cause inward Disorders, wherefore we may often observe Horses that have the Farcin turn also broken-winded and consumptive, and sometimes become liable to the Yellows, and to many other Infirmities, which either render them altogether incurable, or at least make the Cure very difficult.

When



When the Farcin begins on the extreame and most dependent Parts; or if in the process of the Disease, the Humors fall downwards upon the Limbs, it is in that Case very difficult to be removed, as it is generally attended with the Grease; but the Reason will be shewn in the Theory of that Distemper; and a competent Knowledge of the Structure and Mechanism of a Horse will easily enable any one to distinguish in other Circumstances. We shall therefore hasten to the Cure.

And herein the Farrier ought in the first Place to look unto the State and Condition of the Horse, for if he be fat and lusty when the Distemper seizes him, in that Case his Diet should be somewhat abated; but if it be otherwise, that the Horse is lean and out of Heart, and that he has not had sufficient Nourishment, or that his Labour has been beyond his Strength and Feeding, his Diet ought then to be somewhat augmented, for as too great a Plenitude and Fullness of the Vessels is oftentimes the occasion of that Lensor and Slowness of the Juices which brings on a Farcin, the same Effects are oftentimes produc'd by Poorness, because in that Case, the Blood being divested of its Spirits, becomes languid and sluggish, and consequently is render'd the more apt to Obstruction in the extream Parts, where the Vessels are the smallest, as we have taken notice in another Place.

And therefore it will appear to be founded also upon Reason, what *Solleysell* says he has experienc'd from frequent Trial and Observation, that Purging is of no great Service, but oftentimes a Detriment to Horses in the Farcin. This is so plain in case of a Horse that is low in Flesh, that it needs no manner of Proof, and can only be admitted of in such Circumstances as makes it unavoidable, when there happens to be an extream Costiveness, and then laxative Clysters are the most eligible; but on the other hand, when a Horse is fat and full body'd, tho' Purging must in that Case do him less hurt, and may be comply'd with in moderation, yet it is no ways suited to make a perfect Cure of the Farcin,



but has been the Ruin of many Horses, in the Hands of ignorant Smiths, who know no other way of carrying off Diseases but by repeated Purgations, the Discharges made that way being the most apparent to the outward Senses, and the most agreeable to those who are able to frame no other Ideas of a diseased Horse, than by imagining his Blood to be full of Corruption, and that the Medicines they use have some elective Property to drain that off with the Dung.

But a more warrantable Experience has sufficiently taught us, that in all Purgations the good must be drain'd away with the bad, and are therefore seldom profitable, but rather hurtful in Foulnesses of the Skin and outward Parts; but those things can only be successful which work more immediately upon the Blood and Humors, by changing their Contexture, and rendring them thin enough, so as their excrementitious Parts may go off by the nearest and properest Outlets. And it is plainly evident the Medicines hitherto found the most effectual for the Cure of the Farcin have been endu'd with such Properties.

The Cure  
of the Far-  
cin.

But that we may proceed methodically, if a Horse be plethorick and full body'd, such a Habit may doubtless be an Incumbrance to Nature, in which Case there will be Pain and Inflammation in the Knots and Tumors, and yet the Matter may not be rightly disposed to come to a laudable Digestion; when these Symptoms are observable, the Cure may be begun, by taking a small Quantity of Blood from the Neck, but that ought not to be repeated, unless some urgent Circumstance should require it.

After Bleeding, moderate Purging may be once or twice comply'd with, especially with one or other of the following Prescriptions, which we have in a more particular manner suited to the Nature of the Farcin.

'Take Aloes in Powder, and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, Diaphoretick Antimony half an Ounce, Jamaica Pepper two Drams: Make them into  
'Balls



‘Balls with a sufficient Quantity of Flower  
‘and Honey.’

This is so mild that it may be given almost to  
any Horse; the following is somewhat stronger.

‘Take Aloes two Ounces, Salt of Tartar two  
‘Drams, Gum Guajacum and *Æthiops Mineral*, of  
‘each half an Ounce, make them into Balls as the  
‘former.’

No purging Medicine can be better suited to  
the Nature of the Farcin; but if it should be re-  
quir’d stronger, as it may be to some very robust  
Horses, then the following may be given.

‘Take the *Pulvis Cornachini*, otherwise called the  
‘Countess of Warwick’s Powder, an Ounce and a  
‘half or two Ounces, *Æthiops Mineral* one Ounce :  
‘Make them up, as the former, into one or two  
‘Balls.’

Either of these may be given according to the  
Strength and Ability of the Horse, observing al-  
ways that he drink nothing but white Water  
warm’d, until the Physick is quite gone out of his  
Body; which, if he be purg’d three times, will  
be about a Week or ten Days after the first Dose.

If upon this you observe the Knots and little  
Tumors ripen well, you need only give the Horse  
half an Ounce of *Venice-Treacle* or *Mithridate*, or  
an Ounce of *London-Treacle*, twice a Day, in a Pint  
of Ale or White-Wine; and this may be repeated  
every Day until the Matter is all discharg’d; or if  
they terminate in dry horny Excrescences like  
Warts, which sometimes happens, it may be repea-  
ted, after the worst Symptoms are over, viz. the  
Swelling and Inflammation about the Roots, every  
other Day only; and when the Skin becomes so  
well fortify’d, and the Excrescences so much dis-  
engag’d from it, that they begin to fall off in the  
Dressing, or that you can bring them off with your  
Nails without hurting him, you may then leave  
off the use of Medicines, and put a Period to the  
Cure, by giving your Horse due Exercise.

But if the Obstructions be of long standing,  
and that there is a very ill Disposition in all those  
Parts where the Distemper is seated, and that the  
Sores



Sores and Ulcers begin to have a bad Tendency, then recourse must be had to those Medicines which are indu'd with the Qualities we have above mention'd; and first of all, we shall begin with such as are the most simple and easy to be had.

And here it will be proper to observe, that Antimony given to a Horse among his Corn, will sometimes cure the Farcin; and I have known several Instances of it, tho' I have known it also prove many times unsuccessful; but that may not be the fault of the Medicine, but the Keeper, who ought, while the Horse is under a Course of Antimony, to give him daily, but moderate, Exercise, and likewise moderate Feeding.

Therefore when you give your Horse Antimony for the Farcin, let the Dose be two Ounces, which may be mingled with his Oats; and about an Hour thereafter let him be walked abroad for the space of an Hour more, or an Hour and a half; let him be very well rub'd when he is brought into the Stable, but the Comb must be sparingly us'd to a Horse that has the Farcin upon him, because of rankling the Sores; after his Dressing, cloath him moderately warm.

If the Antimony opens his Belly, it will then lose much of its Virtue, and the Horse will become weak; in that Case you may give it in Balls made of *Venice-Treacle* or *London-Treacle*, with a small Quantity of Flower to bring the Mixture into a fit Consistency; continue to give it in this manner till the Looseness abates.

If it be frosty Weather, his Water should be sometimes warm'd and strew'd with Oat-meal; or, at least, it ought to be set sometimes before the Fire, because excessive cold Water will be apt to chill the Body of a Horse, which is kept in a more than ordinary Heat during the Operation of the Antimony. But Antimony may be given more profitably in the following manner.

' Take crude Antimony half a Pound, Quick-  
' silver four Ounces, Flower of Brimstone two  
' Ounces: Rub these two or three Hours in an  
' Iron Mortar, until they are reduc'd into an im-  
' palpable



' palpable black Powder. Then take of the Ras-  
' pings of Guajacum Wood six Ounces, Zedoary  
' and Gallangal, of each two Ounces, Bay Berries,  
' Juniper Berries, Coriander Seeds and Carraway  
' Seeds, of each an Ounce.' Make all these into  
a fine Powder, and mix them in a Mortar with  
the black Powder.

Two Ounces of this Powder made up into a  
Ball or Paste, with a sufficient Quantity of Honey,  
and given every Day to your Horse, will soon cure  
him of the most inveterate Farcin, unless any un-  
common Accident should happen, or that the Horse  
be broken-winded, or labours under some other in-  
ward Imperfection.

The following Drink may also be given against  
the Farcin with very good Success, but then it is  
not once or twice will do the Business, but it must  
be continued a considerable time.

' Take of Guajacum Wood one Pound, Sassafras  
' and Box Wood, of each half a Pound, the Bark  
' of Walnut-tree, and the Roots of sharp-pointed  
' Dock, of each four Ounces, Hog-lice ty'd in a  
' linen Bag as many as will fill a Pint Porringer,  
' Liquorice sliced four Ounces. Let all these be  
' put into six Gallons of new Wort, the Woods and  
' Bark being first rasp'd, and when it has done  
' working, give your Horse a Quart of the Liquor  
' every Morning, and the same Quantity towards  
' the Evening, or oftner.

I have seen a great many Receipts which have  
been somewhat of the same Nature for the Cure of  
the Farcin, but the Owners of them, for the most  
part, boil'd the Ingredients in Ale or Beer, and  
gave it once or twice, and if the Drink did not  
answer the End, they were then greatly disappoint-  
ed; but as all those things have their Operation  
chiefly in the Glands and small Vessels, a conside-  
rable time must be allow'd before their Efficacy be  
much felt, and if they answer their End in two or  
three Months, it is as much as can be expected from  
them.

*Salleyfell* recommends the use of Guajacum, Sassa-  
fras and Sarsaparilla two Ounces of each, made in-



to a gross Powder for three Doses, which (he says) is a Specifick, which, by a continued use, infallibly cures the Farcin. The Roots of *Solomon's Seal*, White Mulein and Queen of the Meadows stand also recommended by him for the same purpose; but any of all these must come far short of our first Prescription, and likewise of the following, which we are assur'd will root out the Cause of any Farcin that is not complicated in the manner we have above mention'd.

' Take native Cinnabar one Pound, Gum Guajacum half a Pound; or, instead of that, to a Horse of small Value, the same Quantity of the Guajacum Wood rasp'd, Zedoary and Gallangal, of each two Ounces, Diaphoretick Antimony four Ounces.' Make all these into a fine Powder, and put it up in a cover'd Gallipot.

Two Ounces of this Powder may be sometimes given in Honey, and sometimes in *Venice-Treacle* or Mithridate, made into a stiff Paste and thrown down like a Ball, repeating the Dose every Day; neither will there be occasion of keeping the Horse bridled, and restraining him three or four Hours from Feeding, for this must digest with his Food, and might be given him among his Oats if he would gather it up clean.

Native Cinnabar, its Virtue.

The Cinnabar, which is the Basis of this Medicine, is a natural Compound of Quicksilver, and some very fine Sulphurs, which render its Operation as mild and easy as it is truly efficacious; and there is no Horse, let him be of never so delicate and washy a Constitution, but may take it with all the Safety imaginable, and it will be so far from hurting him, that he will mend and grow strong upon it.

The Cinnabar of Antimony is also a very good Medicine, and will have near the same Effect as the other, but it is dearer; the Factitious Cinnabar is likewise useful in the Farcin, but the Native is much the best, and may be distinguish'd from the Factitious by its beautiful red Colour, being more splendid and shining than that which is made by the Chymists.

There



There are infinite Remedies to be met with in the Books of Farriers, many of which are affirm'd to cure the Farcin infallibly; but as there are but few of them which are not overloaded with a Number of useless Ingredients; and as those of them which are the most adapted to that Distemper are but trifling and insignificant, we have thought fit not to give the Reader any Trouble with them, looking upon the Cures we have already laid down to be sufficient to answer all that can be propos'd, so far as inward Medicines may be serviceable; and if these be comply'd with in due time, the Farcin will never have that tendency to inflame the glandulous Parts, and to fall out into Boils and Swellings about the Sheath and Belly, neither will it ever degenerate to the Grease, as it often happens when improper Methods are taken.

As to those Cures which are said to be perform'd by putting the Juice of Rue, Beets, and other Potherbs, Bay Salt, Hemlock, Henbane, and the like, and those which are constantly boasted of, by tying insignificant things to a Horse's Mane or Tail, I believe no judicious Person will give much more Credit to them than I am willing to do, there being very little to be said in behalf of the first, and the last being monstrously ridiculous.

But any of these may succeed, if to them be added daily Exercise; and I have myself been Witness to such like Cures, in a very moderate and beginning Farcin; but then it was not the Application, but the Exercise; and nothing is more common among some Country People than to blood a Horse for the Farcin, and send him immediately to plow; and while the Exercise is truly the Cause of the Cure, they generally attribute it to the Smell of the Earth; and agreeable to this is what we find in *De Grey*, in his Second Book, Chap. 9. towards the latter end of the first Section, where, after a great Number of insignificant Recipes, he has these Words.

“But now I will give you for a Close, the best  
“and most certain Cure for this Disease that I  
“ever yet knew, and with which I have perfected

The Farcin  
sometimes  
cur'd by Ex-  
ercise.



“more rare Cures of this Nature, than of all the  
“Residue before inculcated. And thus it is.

“Take of Rue the tender Tops and Leaves on-  
“ly, without any the least Stalks, a good Hand-  
“ful, first chop them small, and then stamp them  
“in a Mortar to a very Ointment, when they are  
“so well pounded, put thereunto, of the purest  
“white tried Hog’s Grease one Spoonful, and so  
“work them together to a perfect Silve or Oint-  
“ment; that done, stop into either Ear this whole  
“Quantity by equal Portions, and put a little  
“Wooll upon the Medicine, to make it keep in the  
“better, and so stitch up his Ears, and let him re-  
“main in the Stable four and twenty Hours at the  
“least, and then unstitch his Ears and take forth  
“the Wooll, and either put him forth to Grass, or  
“else if he be to be wrought, work him, for the  
“more his Labour is, and the more spare his Diet  
“is, the sooner he is cur’d.

“This I recommend to you for the best and  
“most certain Cure that I could ever meet with;  
“for with this Receipt only I assure you on my  
“Credit I have cur’d more than 100 Horses, many  
“of which were by other Farriers holden for in-  
“curable, and sentenc’d to be Food for Hounds.”

An Obser-  
vation on the  
recited Pas-  
sage out of  
*De Grey.*

But it is very plain all that Rue can do, when  
us’d in this manner, is but little, especially in  
the Space of twenty-four Hours, for it is demon-  
strable from the Nature of the Farcin, as it is a  
Disease brought on by length of Time, so it must  
of consequence require time to its removal, and in  
all chronical Diseases and ill Habits it is the same;  
and therefore what this Author has apply’d to the  
Rue was only owing to the Exercise, tho’ I cannot  
approve of his Method of keeping a Horse to hard  
Labour and a very spare Diet too, that being di-  
rectly contrary to the Nature of all Animal Bodies  
whatsoever, which must be enabled to do their  
Work by Food; and I am truly of Opinion, no  
Horse was ever yet cur’d where this Rule was  
strictly put in practice; but how far a Horse may  
be indulg’d in Feeding, while the Farcin is upon  
him, any one, with a little Care and Observation,  
may



may in some measure be a Judge. What relates to putting Rue and other pungent and stimulating Medicines within the Ears of a Horse, for sudden Disorders of the Head, has been already spoke to, where we treated of the Staggers, to which we refer the Reader. We shall therefore go on to the remaining Part of the Cure, which chiefly concerns the Applications made externally.

If due and proper Care was taken in the Beginning of the Farcin, there would be little Need of outward Means, otherwise than by washing the Sores with *Aqua Vitæ*, Brandy, or Wine, or with Urine, and such like Things. But the frequent Mismanagement which Horses have been exposed to in this Distemper, has render'd both the Disease and the Cure the most complicated and perplexed of any that is to be met with in the whole System of Diseases, insomuch that there is scarcely an Herb or Plant but what has been internally used and outwardly : There is no Poison, natural or artificial, that has not had some Share either in killing or curing Horses who have lain under this Malady. But out of those we shall endeavour to make the best Choice ; neither shall we use them promiscuously, and at a Venture, as has been hitherto done by most Practitioners, but by making the proper Distinctions suit them, as near as can be, to the Variety and Difference which is most observable in the Knots and Ulcers.

In some kinds of the Farcin the Skin is but little, if at all, elevated, but only a viscous Matter transudes, and passes through the Pores, and hardens like Corns ; and this sort we have observed not to be very difficult, but may be cured chiefly by Internals, as they are but small and accompanied with little or no Inflammation. Yet, because when they continue long there will be Matter gathered beneath them, the best way is to anoint them with Oil of Bays, with a moderate Quantity of Quicksilver, and they will soon fall off.

When the Farcin makes its Appearance in Tumors that elevate the Skin, if they continue small, they will probably end as the other : And therefore

External  
Applica-  
tions, when  
necessary,  
and how  
they are to  
be apply'd.

the



the Farrier ought not to be too busy to ripen them, but leave them as much as can be to Nature; for in that kind the Matter very often finds a Passage for itself through the Pores of the Skin, and what is not turn'd to Matter is wash'd back again with the refluxent Blood.

But the Knots and Tumors are sometimes so disposed, that without coming to a laudable Digestion, they grow fungous, and open like a Sponge, and transmit a great deal of thin viscid Matter through an infinite Number of little Holes and Interstices in that loose Substance. This is a bad kind of Farcin, and is apt to degenerate into very untowardly Sores. But the best way to manage in this Case, and prevent its having an ill Tendency, is to dress them with the following Ointment.

Take common Turpentine, or *Venice Turpentine*, four Ounces; Quicksilver two Ounces, incorporate them in a Mortar until the Quicksilver is kill'd, and the Ointment turns to the Colour of Lead. Spread this upon Pledgits of Hurds, and apply them upon the Sores.

The Turpentine will suck out the superfluous Moisture, and the Quicksilver will keep the Excrescences at under. This is a most excellent Remedy, and will seldom or never fail making a perfect Cure, if it be made use of in Time; and the Sores be dress'd with it once a Day, or once every other Day.

But the most common and ordinary Case is where the Knots rise pretty high, and are painful to the Touch, but at the same time give no Signs of their coming to Digestion while they continue so: Let the Horse have daily the Antimonial or Cinnabar Balls exhibited to him, that, if possible, the Matter, which forms the Cords and Knots, may be thereby attenuated, so as it may be carry'd along with the Current, or may find a Passage through the Pores; for it is every ones Business, as much as may be, to avoid their breaking, and turning to Ulcers. For the endeavouring unskilfully to digest and break those blind and dry



dry Knots, which, of themselves, have no Tendency to ripen, and turn to Matter, is the Reason why they so often degenerate into those indurated and hard Excrescences, which we daily observe are so difficult to be removed. And therefore, while the proper Means are used inwardly, which must never be neglected till the Disease is quite conquered and overcome, outwardly may be made use of the Camphorated Spirits, viz.

‘ Take rectify’d Spirit of Wine, one Pint; dissolve in it an Ounce and a half of Camphire; and with a Sponge dipt in it, rub all the Knots and Cords five or six times a Day.

But if the Knots grow soft, and yield to the Impression of your Finger, in this Case they ought to be opened as soon as they come to Maturity, especially those that are the largest, to prevent the Matter returning into the Blood. For altho’ a small Quantity of Matter taken up, and wash’d back into the Veins with the refluent Blood, may be of no very ill Consequence; yet when there happens to be much of it, and that its Discharge is prevented by the Thickness of the Skin, as is pretty usual to Horses, it is not unlikely that the Matter, when it returns in this manner, may, by its Acrimony and Sharpness, abrade the small Vessels, and thereby cause fresh Eruptions on other Parts of the Skin; or, if that does not happen, its Stay and Continuance may cause a very ill Disposition of the Part, especially in those Tumors and Knots that are seated near the Glands and Kernels.

Now there are various Ways of opening those little Tumors, some Farriers prick them with an Awl, or with a large Needle, or other sharp Instrument. Some pierce them with a small Iron red hot, and somewhat rounded at the End. But many of our common Farriers pull out the Knots with Pincers. And there are some who use no other Method of killing the Farcin, as they often term it, but by giving the Fire.

No doubt all these Methods may be practis’d in the Farcin, in some particular Circumstances;



but the way of treating those Tumors ought to be suited to their various Disposition : But while they are nothing but small Pustules, full of Matter, neither the Fire, nor a hot Iron, is necessary, but a sharp Instrument, with a keen Edge, particularly a Launcet, or Incision Knife, neither should they be pierc'd or bor'd, and then have Tents thrust into them. But the Orifice made large enough to discharge the Matter for the most simple Sore, may easily be chang'd to an ill disposed Ulcer, by the use of Tents, as shall be shewn in another Place.

If the Sores have no bad Tendency, they need only be dressed with warm Turpentine, or common Tar, keeping your Horse covered with a Sheet ; and if they be sometimes wash'd with warm Brandy, or Spirit of Wine, it will be very proper.

This Method will be sufficient to cure all those Knots that are of a moderate Size, and easily ripen. But when there happen to be some that are pretty large, and can neither be discuss'd, nor brought to Matter, in that Case, if they were to be cut with a sharp, cold Instrument, there would probably nothing issue out but Blood, and the Wound would soon close again ; therefore, to them, a hot Knife, or a hot Iron, is the most proper ; but then the Farrier should know very well upon what Grounds he meddles with them.

We shall now consider the Farcin in its more advanced State, viz. when it becomes attended with ill Accidents. To understand which aright, besides many other *Precognita*, the Farrier ought to be pretty well instructed in the Art of *Chirurgery*. For, as we have already observed, the most simple Knots and Tumors may, when they are ill managed, degenerate into Ulcers, so we find this to be true by daily Experience ; for there is scarcely any Ulcer, or preter-natural Excrescence of any kind, which can grow out upon an Animal Body, but what is often the Effect of this Distemper, and proceeds chiefly, as we have also taken notice, from the want of proper Medicines internally,  
or



or even when the Medicines, though well adapted, have not been continued long enough to do their Business. The compelling Nature in bringing those things to Suppuration, and Matter which in themselves have no Tendency to it. The inducing a bad Disposition into the Sores and Ulcers, by the Application of fat, greasy Medicines, and the inclosing of foreign Bodies within them, as Tents made of the Pith of Elder, and other spongy Things, and even those of Flax. The injudicious Application of hot, caustick, and corrosive Medicines, and of the Fire itself; the exposing the Sores to the sharp Air, and a great many other such like Errors.

But that all these Things may be made as easy and intelligible as possible, we shall reduce the whole Method of Cure in those obstinate Cases to three principal Intentions. The *First* is the cleansing the Ulcers from Foulness; the *Second*, to suppress a Luxuriancy, and false Growth of Flesh; and the *Third*, to destroy any such Excrescences when grown; and in this last there are also several Intentions, as we shall see anon.

Three principal Intentions with respect to external Applications.

As to the *First*, if the Farcin Knots have been opened, and are degenerated into foul Ulcers, if these are not deep, and their Lips grown callous and hard, the *Unguentum Ægyptiacum* made chiefly of Honey and Verdegrease, which is sufficiently in the Acquaintance of all Farriers, will, for the most part, answer that End. Or the Ointment made of Quicksilver and Turpentine, as above prescrib'd; or *Basilicum*, mix'd with red Precipitate, in the following manner.

‘ Take red Precipitate half an Ounce, rub it in  
‘ a smooth Mortar until all its shining Particles  
‘ are destroy’d, then mix it very well with two  
‘ Ounces of *Basilicum* to dress the Sore withal.

The Precipitate is a most excellent Medicine when it is thus prepared; but in the way the Farriers use it, it seldom succeeds, because they apply it in a rough, gross Powder, as it comes from the Laboratory of the Chymists, and that also in a very large Quantity; which, instead of bringing



an Ulcer into a good Disposition, makes the Sore rankle, and become ten times worse. I know this is also practis'd by some Surgeons, and one of considerable Name and Practice approv'd of it in my hearing; though I must needs say it is contrary to my frequent Experience. And it is likewise contrary to the true Intention of that Medicine, which is only to cause a purer Digestion, by insinuating its finer, and more subtile Parts, into the little Canals and Pipes, thereby forcing thro' their Obstructions; whereas, when it is applied in a gross Powder, as it is indu'd with many sharp Points, it only increases the Influx of Matter, by wounding those tender Fibres, and thereby causes a greater Derivation of Humours to them, which ought to be avoided by every good Surgeon and Farrier. But those who love to see a great Quantity of Matter follow their Dressings, may have their Expectation very near answered by the Application of Glass Powder, the Sand of an Hour-Glass, or any thing else that is sharp-pointed and cutting.

But in some Ulcers a milder Medicine than Precipitate may even be used, as the dulcify'd, or sweet *Mercury* made into Powder in the same manner as the former, and it will answer the End with equal Success. As soon as they become clean and smooth at bottom, and that they begin to fill up, they need only be dress'd with Honey mix'd with Spirit of Wine, which will both cleanse and heal them; or, to make the Dressing fit on the better, it may have Turpentine added to it.

The *Second* Intention, or the suppressing and keeping down proud and fungous Flesh may be done by the Use of all gentle Caustick Medicines, as washing the Sores with blue, green, or white Vitriol-Water; but the Blue is the strongest, and may be made by putting an Ounce of *Roman* Vitriol to a Pint of fair Water, and letting it stand till it is all dissolved. The way of applying this is by dipping Flax into the Solution, and when you have squeez'd out the Moisture, apply it as dry



dry as may be to the Ulcers: And if Bandage can conveniently be apply'd over them, it will restrain the Growth of proud Flesh, unless the Horse be inwardly disorder'd, which must be carefully look'd into, that your Applications may be suited accordingly.

If the proud Flesh rises very fast, you may apply the Powder of Blue Vitriol alone; and if the Part will not admit of Bandage, you are to supply the Want of it, as much as you can, by applying dry Lint over the Powder to a pretty good Thickness, and above that a Plaister of *Burgundy Pitch*, or some other Plaister that will stick very fast; and if you can inclose a thin Plate of Lead wrapt up in the Flax, it will be very convenient, because the Weight and Pressure upon the Part will contribute very much to this Intention.

There are many other Medicines of this kind that may be us'd with good Success, as the Vitriol Water prescrib'd for Rheums in the Eyes; and likewise the blue Water, and the Solution of the *Lapis Mirabilis* out of *Solleysell*, or the Powder of the said Stone, all which may be seen in their proper Places, and many other things may likewise be met with in the Books of the best Farriers, which may be us'd in the like Case, which we have not room here to insert; we shall therefore proceed to the last Intention which we mention'd in the Cure of the Farcin, viz. by laying down a proper Method whereby to destroy all manner of Excrescences, which have either been occasion'd by ill Management, or have baffled the common and ordinary Means us'd to prevent them; and herein we have undertaken a very hard and difficult Task.

And such are those pieces of imperfect Flesh, which we have observed to shoot forth from the little Ulcers in various Aspects, some resembling a Hen's Fundament, and some (as is not uncommon to Excrescences of that kind) having no distinct resemblance to any thing in Nature; but as they all agree in their Compactness and Solidity,



whereby they have seldom any great tendency to waste, after they have once acquir'd such a Disposition; the Method propos'd in this Intention may therefore be put in practice, so as they may be altogether rooted out, and this is to be done either by cutting or burning, or both, according as different Circumstances may require.

The Knife is the most expeditious in all Cases where they are loose, and not firmly seated with a large Adhesion to the Flesh, and when they lie off from the larger Vessels, applying afterwards some cicatrizing Medicine; but this Method cannot be observ'd with respect to the whole, but only to those which by Accident put forth in such a manner; and therefore burning Medicines, or the Fire itself, must also be us'd.

The Method of making caustick Applications in the Farcin.

But it ought carefully to be taken notice of, that in all Cases where Medicines are to be apply'd, whose immediate Operation consists in consuming the Part to which they are laid; if the Disease be universal, and spread over divers Parts of the Body at once, as that under our present Consideration, those of the mildest Operation are first to be comply'd with; and that they may the more easily take effect, the Parts ought either to be rub'd till they become somewhat raw, or be gently scarify'd with a Fleam.

*Secondly*, If recourse must be had to more powerful Medicines, or to the use of Fire, as is necessary in obstinate Cases; and if there be a vast Number of Excrescences to be destroy'd, and these seated in divers Parts of the Body, you ought not to attack them all at once, but by degrees, bringing some to Digestion and Matter, before you begin with others, for the communicating too great a Heat to divers Parts of the Body at once, as must happen from strong Caustick Medicines, or actual Fire, will either destroy your Horse, by throwing him into violent and sudden Disorders, or at least create a bad Disposition, which, instead of making a Cure, will render him much worse, as might be easily demonstrated.

*Thirdly*,



*Thirdly*, The Scituation of the Parts is also very much to be regarded in this Intention, and all such harsh Applications ought to be gently and sparingly us'd to the Limbs and dependent Parts, and likewise to the Sheath and other soft Parts, to the Region of the Heart and Kidneys, &c. and when they have been apply'd to those Parts, the Fire ought to be fetch'd out of them with all possible Expedition, by scarifying the burnt Flesh, and using such Dressings as are able to keep down an over-great Inflammation, and bring them suddenly to Matter.

*Lastly*, While these Operations are perform'd, a more than ordinary Care ought to be taken in a Horse's Feeding; and if he be perceiv'd to lose his Appetite, as that is a Sign they have been carry'd to the height of his Strength, a seasonable Stop ought therefore to be put to them, and he should be continued to a Mediocrity in Diet, gentle but daily Exercise; and sometimes opening and laxative Clysters may be exhibited, during the whole Course of such Applications.

We shall put a Period to this Cure, by inserting some few Medicines which may be suited to the several Intentions of cauterising and destroying superfluous Flesh, whereof the two first are very mild and safe in their Operation, and may be us'd without any great Caution, excepting that the Horse ought to be kept from Cold, and have his Water constantly warm'd.

' Take of Quicksilver four Ounces, *Venice-Turpentine* two Ounces, rub them in a Mortar until they are incorporated, and the Quicksilver wholly disappears, after which add two Ounces of Honey, an Ounce of Verdegrease, black Soap and Euphorbium in Powder, of each an Ounce and a half.

' Take of Quicksilver two Ounces, *Venice-Turpentine* three Ounces, black Soap one Ounce and a half, incorporate them as the former; then add Euphorbium and *Spanish Flies* in Powder, of each an Ounce.



With either of these anoint all the Excrescences once a Day, holding a hot Bar of Iron to help the Medicine the better to penetrate; but first of all, if they be dry and without Moisture, they ought to be rub'd thoroughly with a Hair Cloath; or they may be gently scarify'd, as has been hinted; but if they continue so obstinate as not to waste upon the use of these things, then recourse may be had to the following.

Take Oil of Bays and Quicksilver or Neapolitanum two Ounces, Turpentine one Ounce, Corrosive Sublimate in Powder, and Euphorbium, of each an Ounce and a half: Mix them together with as much black Soap as is sufficient to make them into the Consistence of a thick Ointment, and with a wooden Slice anoint all the Excrescences, taking care not to spread it upon the sound Parts.

This will soon destroy the Tumors, and in a short space reduce them to an Escar, which may be anointed with warm Tar once a Day, until the Scab fall off; after which a small Quantity of Verdegrease may be mixt with Tar, or any other Digestive to cleanse the Ulcers, and prevent a fresh growth of proud Flesh, which will be very apt to arise after those fiery Applications, unless the Horse be otherwise in good Order. What is further necessary, after caustick Applications, may be seen in that Chapter where we have treated of Burns and Gun-shot Wounds.

Markham says, the Farriers, his old Masters, were wont to take white Mercury; and, after opening the Knots, they put a small Quantity into each, which, in a short time, made them fall off; but it ought to be very warily us'd, otherwise it will cause dangerous Swellings on the Limbs and Kernels about the Throat, as in an Instance I saw not long ago; but this Caution is hardly necessary to the Country Farriers, who seldom call for it by the Name of *Corrosive Sublimate*, as I have taken notice several times, so that the Apothecaries give them *Mercurius Dulcis* instead of it; which, altho' it does not form any thing like



an Escar; yet, as they pepper them very soundly with it, it is not always unattended with Success.

The following is from *Solleyfell*. He calls it the *Ointment of Naples*, having had it communicated to him by a *Neapolitan* Groom, after he had seen many surprizing Cures perform'd by it; but altho' it has been us'd with Success in every State of the Farcin, according to that Author, yet it is more peculiarly adapted to destroy Excrescences, as it is made up of Ingredients that are altogether Caustick, and somewhat stronger than that which we have last inserted.

“ Take Realgar and Sublimate, of each two  
“ Ounces, Arsenick and Euphorbium, of each  
“ one Ounce; beat them to fine Powder, and in-  
“ corporate them, without Heat, with half a  
“ Pound of Oil of Bay.”

“ Keep the Ointment in a glaz'd Pot, and when  
“ you have occasion to use it, open the Knots or  
“ Swellings with a Launcet, and put into the  
“ Hole a little Cotton dipt in this Ointment,  
“ without heating it in the least. The next Day,  
“ if you perceive that it is fallen away, you must  
“ put in a little Cotton with some fresh Ointment,  
“ but if it stick, one Application will suffice.”

These may be made stronger or weaker, according as you mix them with a greater or lesser Quantity of Ointment, and may be diversify'd by changing one Ingredient for another, providing you keep a sufficient Quantity of those that are Caustick. The *Realgar* is a Composition made of Brimstone, Orpiment, and unslack'd Lime; the *Orpiment* is no other than the yellow Arsenick, but obtains the Name of Orpiment from the Painters. *Corrosive Sublimate* is a Preparation of Mercury, which borrows its caustick and burning Quality from the *Aqua fortis* which enters into its Composition. Any of those us'd dry will yet be of more sudden Efficacy, unslack'd Lime, or the capital Soap Lees evaporated to a Driness will have the same Effect; or the Lunar Caustick, so much in the Acquaintance of *Surgeons*; and, in fine, all things that are plentifully saturated with Fire. But in the  
Farcin



Farcin they ought to be guarded and made more moderate, as in the manner above prescrib'd. Neither is the actual Cautery or Fire to be apply'd otherwise than as an Auxiliary, and to assist in other Intentions, viz. to keep down a luxuriant and fresh growth of proud Flesh, after the Knife, or the more gentle Causticks. But the Reader may turn to the latter End of this Treatise, where the Nature and Use of that Operation is shewn.

## C H A P. XLIX.

### *Of the Mange.*

**A**S the Distemper we have treated of in the preceding Chapter has its chief Seat in the Skin and fleshy Pannicle, that which comes under our present Consideration is yet more superficial, being principally seated on the Surface of the Skin only and Scarfskin. And therefore as the Mange is thus circumstanc'd, it is seldom attended with Pain and Inflammation, but only with an Itching, that thin membranous Tegument not being indu'd with any tender Sensation, as has been observed in the Beginning of the Anatomical Part; but yet if a Horse has been ill manag'd, or that the Distemper has been of a long standing, it is then apt to degenerate from what it was at first, and taking deeper Root it causes Boils and Sores, which often have a very ill Tendency.

*The Cause.*

The Cause is from an over-great Quantity of viscid Serum, bred in the Bodies of Horses by corrupt and foul Feeding, as the eating of Grains, a too frequent use of hot Marshes, want of due Exercise, and the want of good Currying, especially to a Horse that has been us'd to it; for by that means the Pores become obstructed, and the Serofities of the Blood are thereby accumulated in the small Vessels of the Skin. Sometimes it proceeds from want of Food and due Nourishment, whereby the Blood being depauperated, is render'd



render'd unable to reach the Passages of the Skin to make a Secretion there; so that its serous Parts, being detain'd in the small Vessels, turn corrosive and break thro' the Skin, and sometimes it is caus'd by Infection from other Horses.

The Signs are the falling off of the Hair, especially about the Loins and Hams, and from most or all the Joints, according as the Distemper is more or less prevalent, sometimes from the Head and Neck, but very frequently from the Rump. The Skin in those Parts, by reason of the Heat and Corrosiveness of the Matter, turns thick and hard, and sometimes crufted like that of an Elephant, from whence several Farriers have term'd it the *Elephantick Malady*.

As to the Cure, most Farriers lay a great Stress in Bleeding, insomuch that they drain away Blood from several Parts of the Body at once, viz. from the Neck, the Plate-Veins, from the Tail, and sometimes from the Flanks; and all this from a firm, but ignorant Conceit, that in the Mange the Blood is full of Corruption, which, upon examining what has been already said, will be found a ridiculous Practice, and very pernicious, especially to those Horses that are low and out of Heart, as nothing so often makes the Disease degenerate into an ill Habit, which may easily be follow'd with Boils and Ulcers, as it weakens the whole Body, and thereby adds to that which is the Cause of the Distemper.

The Cure.

Therefore all that can be propos'd by Bleeding is to lessen the Quantity thereof, when it happens to be redundant in a Horse, in order to give a freer Passage and Circulation to the Juices in the extream Parts, that the Secretions of the Skin may be duly perform'd, and this we judge very necessary; after once Bleeding the following purging Drench may be given.

' Take Senna one Ounce, Jalap in gross Powder  
' six Drams, Roots of sharp pointed Dock a Hand-  
' ful, slice the Roots and boil all together in three  
' Pints of Water to a Quart, pass the Decoction  
thro'



thro' a Sieve, and add to it two Ounces of Syrup  
of Buckthorn. Or this :

Take Jalap in Powder one Ounce, Diagridium  
two Drams, Cream of Tartar and Diaphoretick  
Antimony, of each half an Ounce. Mix them all  
together and give them in a Pint of Ale.

Either of these may be given with the usual  
Precautions, but they need not be often repeated ; for Purging is no otherwise necessary for the  
Cure of the Itch than Bleeding, and only gives its  
gentle Help when rightly us'd, as it cools and re-  
freshes a plethorick and full body'd Horse.

After these things recourse must be had to out-  
ward Applications, for it is these alone that must  
give the finishing Stroke to it, as the Distemper is  
seated outwardly and not deep rooted ; and for  
that purpose nothing has ever been found more  
effectual than Sulphur, for which it bears the test  
of all Ages ; and if it sometimes proves otherwise,  
it is altogether owing to the ill Management of it,  
or the other preposterous Methods that are made  
use of along with it. The following will kill any  
Itch in the Beginning.

Take common Sulphur and fresh Butter, of  
each half a Pound, Turpentine two Ounces.  
Mix them together, and anoint all the Parts with  
it once a Day. Or this :

Take the Roots of sharp pointed Dock half a  
Pound, boil them in a Pint of Vinegar till they  
be soft, then pulp them thro' a Hair Sieve, after  
which take of Bee's Wax two Ounces, Hog's  
Lard four Ounces. Melt them over a gentle  
Heat, and mix them with the Pulp, then add  
half a Pound of Flowers of Brimstone. Or the  
following.

Take Elicampain Roots in fine Powder two  
Ounces, the Roots of White Hellebore one Ounce,  
Flowers of Brimstone four Ounces. Mix them  
in a sufficient Quantity of Ointment of Tobacco  
to make a stiff Ointment.

Either of these being rub'd upon the Parts,  
with the assistance of a hot Bar of Iron, once in  
twenty-four Hours, will kill the Mange in a few  
Days ;



Days; neither will it be necessary to fret the Skin to a Rawness, for, instead of doing good, that Method proves more frequently prejudicial, as it excites too great Pain, whereby a too great Derivation of the Humors is caused towards the infected Parts, which is the Reason why even the best Farriers are oblig'd to have recourse to caustick Medicines, the Disease being grown too powerful to be destroy'd by those of a milder Operation. The use of Coperass Water and Allum Water is likewise prejudicial in most Cases, as I have often observ'd; for all that these can contribute towards the Cure of the Mange, is only by allaying the Heat and Itching, in which albeit they may sometimes succeed, yet, as they obstruct the Pores very much, by hardening the Skin, they make it liable to crack, often rendring those Parts subject to fresh Heat and Inflammation, by which it degenerates to Ulcers and Boils. The best way, therefore, is only to rub the mangy Places gently with a woollen Cloath, to fetch a moderate Heat into the Part, for by that means the Sulphurs will penetrate thro' the Pores into the small Canals and Vessels with greater Certainty than when they are daub'd upon Places that are raw or incrusted.

This is the true Method of curing the Mange; or it may be done by the use of Mercurials apply'd in the same manner, whereof we shall also subjoin two or three Forms.

' Take of Quicksilver four Ounces, kill it in  
' two Ounces of Turpentine, then by degrees add  
' Hog's Lard or Butter to the Quantity of half a  
' Pound. Or this:

' Take Quicksilver two Ounces, kill it in the  
' same Quantity of Turpentine, adding an Ounce  
' of red Precipitate in fine Powder, with four  
' Ounces of Lard or Butter.

Some make a Mixture of Quicksilver and Brimstone, together with an Addition of Soot and black Soap, which, in some moist and watry Cases, may be of more particular Service. Some use Arsenick, Quicksilver, and other burning and caustick Remedies; but these ought never to be meddled



meddled with, excepting in some extraordinary degenerate Circumstances, and when there happen to be Excrescences that are dead and without Sense, which can by no means be brought to yield to milder Methods; but in an inveterate Mange it will be of the greatest Service to give your Horse the *Antimonial* or *Cinnabar* Balls, prescrib'd in the preceding Chapter against the Farcin.

## C H A P. L.

### *Of Tumors, Imposthumes, and Abscesses.*

A Tumor  
defin'd.

**T**HERE can scarcely be any one so much unacquainted with the common Terms, as not to understand that by a Tumor is meant the Elevation and rising of some part of the animal Body into a preternatural Swelling; in what manner that comes to pass, has been in some measure shewn in the 48th Chapter, where we have taken notice, that as often as the Blood, or their Juices, happen to be very much obstructed in the small Vessels of any Part, that Part will be stretched out beyond its usual Dimensions, especially as there is a perpetual Influx and Succession of the same Fluid from behind; to which we shall add that these Obstructions are caused either by the Quantity or Quality of the said Fluid, whereby it presses and stretches out one Part more than another; or when any Part happens to be hurt or weaken'd by external Accidents, whence being unable to make an equal Resistance with the rest of the Body, it will at length receive such a Quantity of Fluid as will raise it into a Tumor.

The Writers of Surgery, in all Ages, carefully following one anothers Steps, have reduc'd all Tumors to four general Kinds, viz. into the *Natural*, *Encysted*, *Critical* and *Malignant*; and under these they have rank'd all the other Species. But this Division is neither in itself very accurate, nor rightly suited to our Purpose, as our Business is with Horses, we shall therefore reduce them to the *Natural*  
and



and *Encysted* only. Of the first kind are all Boils and inflam'd Swellings; and, in short, whatever Tumors are form'd originally by the Fluids distending their proper Vessels, whether they be critical or malignant, for these differ only in degree from other natural Tumors. And of the second are all those that are form'd within membranous *Cysts* or Bags, as *Wens*, *Anburys*, and some sort of *Figs*, and other Excrescences that grow on the external Parts of the Bodies of Horses: And this agrees the best with what these Authors have observ'd, with respect to the Formation of all Tumors by *Fluxion* and *Congestion*.

All Tumors reducible to the Natural and Encysted.

Those Tumors that are large and come to Suppuration, and have Matter gather'd within them, whether they be natural or encysted, are term'd *Imposthumes*; and when the Matter is lodg'd within the common, but chiefly the larger Interstices of the Body, as those Furrows or vacant Spaces between the Muscles, or between the Muscles and Bones, they are then called *Abscesses*; but all Abscesses, and most kinds of *Imposthumes*, are form'd of natural Tumors.

Abscesses and Imposthumes.

But we shall consider all Tumors, whether natural or encysted, in the following Order, viz. *First*, With regard to their Magnitude and Scituation, there being little to be learnt from their Figure and Colour, especially in Horses. *Secondly*, With respect to the Matter whereof they are form'd. And *Lastly*, We shall lay down some general Rules to be observ'd in their Cure.

Tumors consider'd, with respect to their Size, Scituation, and Matter.

*First*, When a Tumor happens to be scituated upon any Part where there is no depth of Flesh, as on the Nose and upper part of the Face, it will not be apt to grow large; or if it be seated upon the Skin or fleshy Pannicle, and free from the subjacent Muscles, it cannot be ordinarily expected to grow to a Bigness, there being no sufficient Source for its Subsistence and Increase, as we have observ'd in a preceding Chapter; and as those little Tumors very often spread themselves over divers Parts of the Body at once, being thrust out in that manner, because of their Contiguity with the

the



the Skin, which, in some delicate Animals, is able to give little or no Resistance; they are therefore the more unlikely to alter their Size, since it is very reasonable to suppose they make a Revulsion from each other, whereby the Matter, which might have otherwise been discharg'd by the common and ordinary Secretions, or cast off in one large critical Tumor, is evacuated by a vast number of Tubercles and little Hurdles. But albeit Tumors thus scituated do not ordinarily grow to any great Size, yet, as all animal Bodies are made up of Vessels which are capable of Extension and Dilatation, when there is a continual Addition of fresh Matter; therefore, some Tumors that are very superficially scituated, and have but a small Beginning, will increase to a very large Bulk.

And it is from hence we may account for Wens, Anburys, and all such other Excrescences, viz. when some Duplicature of a Membrane or small Vessel is, by an Accumulation of Matter, protruded and thrust forth beyond the common Limits of the Horse's Body, yet in such a manner as gives no great Disturbance to the Circulation of the Fluids that are within; therefore, as these are not apt to cause Pain, they will therefore grow in proportion to the Quantity of Matter which is empty'd into them, and Nature so far encourages their Growth, as to enlarge those Vessels which nourish the Skin, and other Integuments wherein that Matter is contain'd.

But it is quite otherwise with those Boils and Tumors that are seated in the fleshy and muscular Parts, for as they occasion violent Pain by stretching out the Vessels and Fibres, and as the Pain causes a considerable Afflux of Matter, therefore any Swelling form'd that way must have a speedy Issue and Determination by the bursting of the said Vessels; and as it likewise cuts off the Communication of the Blood in those Parts, and therefore it will become a running Sore, until there is a Reunion of the Parts that were tore and disjoin'd.

Now



Now all such Swellings are usually larger or smaller, according as their Scituation is more or less in the thick Flesh, and according to the Multiplicity and Size of the Vessels which go to their Nourishment, and likewise as the Matter finds more or less Room for itself, as happens in Abscesses. The Dependency and Softness of the Part contributes also to the Augmentation of the Swelling and Increase of the Matter, because the Return of the Blood is but slow from the inferior and dependent Parts, and because the soft Parts are easily stretch'd out when once the Blood has taken a tendency towards them, which is plainly evident from those sudden and excessive Swellings which sometimes arise in the Fundament and Sheath.

But the Bones and Sinews are also liable to the like Infirmities, yet the Swellings, which happen to them and other compact Parts, seldom rise to any extraordinary Bigness, because of their Solidity and Hardness, which hinders their being extended; but for the same reason makes them very tedious and difficult to be removed; and if a Horse is put to much Exercise while the Sinews are relax'd, the Pain and Anguish will cause a Swelling in the neighbouring Flesh; and this we may frequently observe in Strains of the Shoulder, Back and Limbs. As for Tumors in the Bones, Horses are indeed not very much subject to them, excepting when they are caus'd by old Ulcers that corrode and penetrate to the Bones; and this is plain enough in those Horses that have been founder'd and batter'd in their Feet for some considerable time, where the diseased Foot may be observed to grow much larger than the other, the Coffin-Bone being often in that Case affected. Neither is it improbable that some of those Horses that are very large jointed, misshapen in their Limbs, and narrow chested, have had their Bones diseased while they were young and pliable, not unlike those of Rickety Children.

Bones and  
Sinews liable  
to Swellings



Swellings of  
the Kernels.

The Swelling of the glandulous and kernelly Parts are also very troublesome, as cannot be unknown to any Farrier of Practice, tho' sometimes they will come to as quick and ready a Discharge as those of the muscular Flesh. And when this happens, Nature is in her full Vigour, and the Horse is otherwise found and able to feed: But when a Horse is weaken'd and brought much at under, by any lingring and wasting Disease, a Swelling in the Glands will often continue hard and immoveable, and without much Pain, Increase or Diminution; and this is very much owing to the Structure and Make of the Kernel itself, which, altho' it be but a soft Part, yet it is so compact, and its Vessels so small and closely laid together, as cannot but render them easily obstructed. But yet in the Case we have mention'd, when a Horse has a lingring Disease upon him, the Swelling does not readily increase, because the Matter is but slowly derived towards it; and likewise as the Passages of the Gland are more than ordinarily enlarg'd, therefore a Quantity of Matter is discharg'd proportionable to the Supplies it receives, and the Smallness and Compactness of the Vessels, and their Disposition, into an infinite Number of Circumvolutions and Turnings, is also the Cause why the Swelling does not easily decrease.

Those Swellings of the glandulous Parts that turn to Imposthumation and Matter, are many of them of the Encysted kind; and that is also owing to the Structure and Make of the Kernels, most, if not all of them, having little *Cysts* or Receptacles for their proper Juices, which may be easily fill'd and enlarg'd, when their excretory Ducts are wholly, or in a great Measure shut up, as must undoubtedly happen in all such Cases.

The Matter  
examin'd.

But we come in the second Place to take a view of those Swellings with regard to the Matter whereof they are form'd; and here it will be necessary to consider that the Matter becomes various according to the various Disposition of Horses, or according as the Tumors are variously disposed and seated;



seated; for when they happen to be superficial and outward, the Matter is then, for the most part, dry, which depends, in a great Measure, upon their Proximity and Nearness to the Skin, whereby the thinner Parts are the more easily evaporated and cast off thro' the Pores; tho', in over-moist Constitutions, the Matter will sometimes be humid and moist. The Matter derived from Membranes and Sinews is generally thin and viscid; and that which comes from Bones is oily and stinking; but the Matter which is more immediately derived from Blood, if a Horse be in good Case, is of a middle Nature, neither too thick nor too thin, neither is it too watry nor too viscid. And thus it seems to be very plain and evident, as all Matter is form'd of Blood, or the Juices produced of Blood, the Matter, in all Tumors, will therefore participate chiefly of those Juices from whence it is immediately deriv'd.

The next thing to be regarded in the Matter, is its Colour, and this also depends upon the Disposition of the Blood. If the Blood abounds with Choler or Gall, the Matter will be yellow; and it will be more or less so, according as that is more or less predominant. If there is a too great Secretion of the Gall, then the Matter will be more than ordinary white; and in some Obstructions, when the Blood abounds with earthy Parts, or when these are easily separated, the Matter will look foul and dusky, and sometimes be streak'd with black Blood, and the Tumor will also look livid and of a Lead Colour. And sometimes from a various Combination of Humors the Matter becomes of different Colours.

But *Lastly*, What we are further to observe concerning Tumors, is to lay down some general Rules for their Cure; and here it will be necessary chiefly to have an Eye to their several Causes; and first, a Tumor that comes by any outward Accident, can only be dangerous according as the Accident is more or less violent; but the least Accident, where there is a Redundancy of Blood, may be troublesome, as well as when a Horse is

The Cure  
of Tumors.



poor and low. When there happens to be a Redundancy, that must be remov'd by Bleeding, and other Evacuations, as far as is consistent with the Horse's Safety; but, on the other Hand, when a Horse is low, and has got some wasting Distemper upon him, besides the outward Intentions, care must be taken to administer such Things as are proper to remove that Indisposition. And, in all critical Swellings, by which we chiefly understand those which tend to the Solution of Colds, malignant, pestilential and other Fevers, the Management must be according as the Disease is perceived to be more or less malignant, taking care always to assist, but never to restrain Nature; but the Reader may consult the third Chapter, and those other Places where we have treated of malignant Disorders, of the Strangles, of the Vives, &c. which are sometimes critical.

The next thing to be regarded in the Cure of Tumors is their Scituation; what relates to internal Tumors and Imposthumations has also been spoke to where we have treated of Foundring and Chestfoundring, in which we have recommended the speediest Methods of Revulsion by Bleeding and Purging; but especially by those things that promote Sweat, and keep down Pain and Inflammation. But as to external Swellings, the principal Intention is either to ripen or discuss them, according as may be most beneficial. Those which are indurated and hard, without Heat and Inflammation, ought chiefly to be treated with Internals, and such as are very powerful to open Obstructions, with the Assistance of those things outwardly which are proper to discuss and dissolve. But those Swellings which are hot and inflam'd, ought to be ripen'd, unless when they are seated where they may cause too great a Derivation of the Humors, as on the Sheath, Fundament, Limbs and Throat, &c. but yet if these be malignant or pestilential, it is better to run any other Hazard than not bring them to Maturity, wherefore the Medicines in this Intention ought to be such as ripen,  
but



but at the same time are not over-powerful in drawing; and for this purpose the Reader may also consult those Places where we have treated of the Bastard-Strangles, and Vives, &c.

When the Tumor is seated near the Interstices of some large Muscles, it ought to be open'd as soon as there is Matter form'd within it, otherwise, if the Matter be detain'd, it may separate the Muscles, and thereby form a Lodgment for itself; and the longer before it is open'd, the larger will be the Abscess.

In the opening of Abscesses, if they be small, a large Orifice made in the dependent and lowermost part, with the assistance of good Bandage to keep the Parts close together, will be sufficient to make a perfect Cure; but if they happen to be large and deep, they ought then to be laid open the whole length, unless the Skin can be kept depress'd by the Application of Flax into the hollow Part; for so long as there is any Lodgment for the Matter, the Abscess will be constantly fill'd. The same Method is to be observ'd, as near as possible, with respect to those Tumors that are large, and have a pretty large Cavity form'd within them.

The properest Dressings in all such Cases are Turpentine, or Turpentine mixt with Honey or the Yolks of Eggs, with a small Quantity of Brandy or Spirit of Wine; and, in most Cases, where there is not an ill Habit of Body, these will be sufficient to make a perfect Cure.

But Wens, Anburys, and other encysted Tumors, require a peculiar Treatment, and, for the most part, ought to be quite extirpate. The Anburys, which we observe frequently to hang at the Legs, and sometimes at divers other Parts of a Horse's Body, and consist only of a thick Jelly or spongy soft Flesh; as these have generally a small Neck next to their Insertion, they may be taken off without much to do, only by tying a waxt Thread round them, straitning it by degrees; and, if after they are fallen off, there be the Appearance of a fresh Excrecence, that may be kept down by the help of some gentle Corrosive, together with



the use of Bandage; and for this purpose Flax, or fine Hurds dipt in Vitriol or Allum Water will suffice.

But to a Wen, or any other Tumor of that kind that grows to a Bigness, a hot Knife must be us'd when it happens to have a narrow Root; but if you have reason to suspect the Vessels which lead to it are become very large, whereby a too plentiful Effusion of Blood may happen, or if it be broad at Bottom, the best way is then to open it, cutting the Skin both ways across, if there be Matter within it that must be evacuated, and then the Bag and other superfluous Parts destroy'd by degrees, which may be done either by cutting or burning, or by the use of caustick Medicines; but the Knife is the most expeditious; and if it be of Substance to keep the Heat, it may be made to answer in most Cases.

The Swellings of the Joints, and Relaxation of the Sinews, are no otherways to be treated than by applying such things as are proper to discuss and strengthen them; but the Accidents to which these Parts are chiefly expos'd, will be particularly handled in some of the ensuing Chapters.

## CHAP. LI.

### *Of Wounds.*

**T**HERE is no one but knows when any part of a Horse's Body is cut, torn, or otherwise divided, he is then said to be wounded, so that Wounds are various, and differ one from another, according to the Diversity of Accidents by which they are caused; some are superficial, others deep. Wounds happen sometimes to be streight, according to the Tenure and Direction of the Fibres; sometimes they are oblique or transverse, that is, slanting or athwart. If the Instrument be sharp, the Parts will, generally speaking, be equally divided; but if otherwise, the Wound will be ragged

and

The diversity of Wounds.



and tore, which is usually the Case of Horses that have been stak'd.

We also distinguish between Wounds that are simple and Wounds that are complicated; those are said to be simple, where the soft Parts are divided without the Concomitancy of other Accidents; and those Wounds are termed complicated, where, besides a Division of the soft Parts, there is also a Contusion of the Flesh, a Fracture or Dislocation of the Bones, all which Circumstances make the Cure of Wounds more or less difficult.

But the chief thing to be regarded in Wounds is their Scituation; for albeit Wounds in the external fleshy Parts are not very dangerous, consider'd as such; yet those of the nervous Parts are often of ill Consequence, when there happens to be an ill Disposition of Body, as they are apt to cause exquisite Pain; and sometimes when the small Threads and Fibres of the Sinews are ruffled and tore, they will bring on a Gangrene and Mortification of the Part; whereas when they are equally cut, they are not apt to be attended with such Accidents. But inward Wounds generally prove Mortal if they pierce the *large Vessels*, the *Stomach*, the *small Guts*, the *Bladder*, the *Spleen*, the *Liver*, the *Heart*, the *Lungs* or *Midriff*; and these are deadly upon a double or treble Account, as most of them are not only endow'd with a tender Sensation, but also a muscular Action, whereby their Reunion is hinder'd, and likewise as many of them are stored with a Multiplicity of Blood-Vessels, which are large; but internal Wounds, which miss those principal *Viscera*, may be cur'd; and some of these, if they be but slightly touch'd, are also sometimes curable, tho' not readily in brute Creatures, who cannot be brought to a Compliance with all the Requisites that are necessary in such Cases. Wounds penetrating the Substance of the Brain are also incurable, because of its Softness, the Multiplicity of its Vessels, and the tender Sense of its Membranes.

As for the Signs of Wounds, they are manifest to the Eye, and when they are deep or inward, are



further discoverable by the help of a Probe, and by divers other Circumstances; as for instance, if the Lungs be wounded, the Air will penetrate thro' the Wound with a frothy Blood of a Vermillion Colour. When the Stomach is wounded, there will be violent Sicknes, with a sudden loss of Appetite, and the Chyle usually issues forth from a Wound in the small Guts, and the Urine from a Wound in the Bladder; and when the Kidneys are wounded, the Horse will stale Blood. By these, and many other such Signs, internal Wounds may be known; but we shall proceed to the Cure, wherein we shall begin with some general Directions.

The Cure.

And *First*, Care must be taken to stop the Blood when there is too plentiful an Hemorrhage. *Secondly*, The Wound must be cleans'd of Dirt, Sand, Splints of Wood, or any foreign Matter. *Thirdly*, All the Applications made to a Wound ought to be warm, especially in the beginning. *Fourthly*, It ought not to be exposed to the Air. *Fifthly*, When the Wound penetrates downwards, and the Orifice happens to be too narrow, it ought to be widen'd either by Incision, or dilated with a bit of Sponge, or some other porous Matter that will swell; but this is only to be done where Bandage cannot be apply'd. *Sixthly*, The Probe is to be as seldom us'd as possible, neither ought there to be long Tents thrust into any Wound; for by these, Wounds that have no bad Tendency, naturally often degenerate into Ulcers of the worst kind. *Lastly*, greasy Ointments are for the most part to be rejected, as they are apt to cause the Flesh to grow too fast; and when that happens, it must be kept down with good Bandage, or the Application of caustick Medicines; but Bandage is of the greatest Importance in the Cure of all Wounds, where there are not some Circumstances to forbid its Application.

Bleeding to stop.

To stop the Hemorrhage or Bleeding, the best way is, before the Horse is over much spent, to make revulsion, by opening a Vein on the fore Parts, if the



the Wound be backwards ; but if the Wound be forward, a Vein may be open'd toward the hind Parts : But in external Wounds, where the Hemorrhage is large, that is generally owing to the Seat and Disposition of the Wound, whereby some large Branch of an Artery happens to be cut ; but if the Artery, from whence the Blood chiefly flows, be not very large, it must then be superficial, as about the Nose, Temples, or the skinny part of the Legs, &c. where the Vessels are unguarded with Flesh ; for albeit the Arteries in a deep Wound may pour forth plenty of Blood while the Wound is recent and new, and that there is a free Passage ; yet this occasions so great a Derivation towards the Wound, that even the Coats of all the wounded Vessels become distended and swollen, so that by their Pressure upon one another their Orifices are shut up and squeez'd close together ; and in this Case there is seldom need of any Stiptick Application to stop the Bleeding.

But when the wounded Artery happens to be very large, or much expos'd, as has been taken notice, so that the Blood flows too plentifully, it must be stop't either by applying a hot Iron, or some cauterising Medicine, otherwise it must be ty'd by passing a Needle under it, and then binding it with a waxt Thread ; but neither Ligature nor actual Cautery is so certain as Caustick Medicines, because an Escar made by the actual Cautery is apt to fall off too soon ; and an Artery, when it is ty'd, is apt again to fall a bleeding as soon as the Threads rot off, especially one that lies superficial and unguarded, and has not the Advantage of being compress'd by the Fullness and Weight of the surrounding Vessels.

Therefore in this Case make a small Pledgit of Flax or fine Hurds, moisten it with the white of an Egg, then lay as much Powder of *Roman Vitriol* upon it as will fully cover the Mouth of the Artery, and apply it over the same ; but care must be had not to apply Vitriol, or any other caustick Medicine, where the Sinews are expos'd and laid bare, unless

you



you can fall upon some Method to defend them from being touch'd by it, otherwise it will be apt to cause Convulsions; but in Places where these are most expos'd, as the Legs, &c. the Arteries are not very often seated close to them; and if it were so, milder Medicines might be made to answer, because what is wanting in the Medicine, may, for the most part, be supply'd by Bandage; therefore, when the Wound happens to be on the Leg, you need only apply the astringent *Crocus* of Iron, fine Bole, or Powder of dry'd Mushrooms mixt with the White of an Egg, and spread upon a Pledgit as above directed, and over that two or three thick Compresses dipt in the same Astringent, making a firm Bandage over all.

The Dressing ought not to be removed for the Space of three Days, that the Wound may be well digested, and there may be no further Trouble with a fresh Flux of Blood. If a Swelling happens in the Leg, by reason of the Bandage, bath it with warm Lees of Wine, or some good Fomentation, such as that hereafter prescrib'd for a Gangrene, afterwards dress the Wound every Day with the common Digestive. The same Method is to be follow'd in those Wounds, where caustick Medicines are apply'd, lest by taking off the Dressings too soon, you set them a bleeding afresh, by removing the Escar before it is thoroughly form'd.

But because the right ordering of all such Wounds as are attended with an Effusion of Blood is of the greatest Importance, there being but few Farriers who have Skill to manage them according to the Rules of Practice, especially when any uncommon Accident happens in the Cure; we shall therefore lay down a Method of making the *Sympathetick Powder*, which being apply'd to the Wound as a Stiptick, will not only put a Stop to the Blood, but procure a speedy Reunion; and this, as *Solleysell* rightly observes, may be very necessary in the Camp, where Flies and other Insects are hurtful. *Solleysell's* way of preparing the *Sympathetick Powder*, is by calcining *Roman Vitriol* in the



the Sun; but the following Method is much more preferable, and only requires a little more Pains.

“Take any Quantity of *English Vitriol*, such as  
 “goes under the Name of *Bow Coperas*, dissolve it  
 “in Water, and filter it through brown Paper, set  
 “it into a cool Place to shoot into Crystals, dissolve  
 “the Crystals in the same Manner, and let it pass  
 “through the Paper as directed, repeating the  
 “Operation until the Crystals are transparent and  
 “pure. Set those Crystals in a clean Pan in the  
 “Sun, either in *June, July* or *August*, so long as  
 “they are calcin’d to Whiteness; when one side is  
 “calcin’d, turn the other, and in a few Days the  
 “Crystals will crumble into Powder; if they do  
 “not, they may be again beat and expos’d to the  
 “Sun, and stir’d three or four times every Day, at  
 “last beat them into a very fine Powder, and  
 “again set them in the Sun, stirring as before  
 “for two or three Days more, in which time they  
 “will be very white, then take in the Matter  
 “while the Sun shines hot upon it, and keep it  
 “from the Air in Glasses well stop’d and in a dry  
 “Place.”

The Sym-  
 pathetic  
 Powder.

This is the Method of preparing the *Sympathetick Powder*, as it is inserted in Dr. *Quincy’s* Dispensatory; to which I shall subjoin another out of the same, that bears the Title of a restraining Preparation of Iron, sold by the Name of *Colebatch’s* Stiptick Powder, and is as follows.

“Take any Quantity of Filings of Iron, and  
 “pour upon them Spirit of Salt, to the height of  
 “three or four Fingers above them. Let them  
 “stand in a gentle Digestion till the Fermentation  
 “is over, and the Spirit of Salt is become sweet,  
 “then pour off what is liquid, and evaporate it in  
 “an iron or glass Vessel until half is consum’d, at  
 “which time put to it an equal Quantity of  
 “*Saccharum Saturni*, and evaporate to a dry Powder;  
 “if upon its first coming dry the Operation be  
 “stop’d, it has exactly the Appearance of *Colebatch’s*  
 “Powder; but if it be continued longer, and the  
 “Heat raised, it will turn red. It must be kept  
 “close stop’d from Air.”

Another  
 Stiptick  
 Powder.

This



This Stiptick may not only be easily made, but is the more for our purpose as the Doctor has made an Experiment of its Efficacy upon a Horse; his Words are these concerning it.

“ If this is not kept close stoppt, it will imbibe  
 “ the Air, and flow so as to lose its Efficacy. I  
 “ have been informed by very good Hands, that  
 “ this is the Stiptick with which there was so much  
 “ Noise made some time ago by the Author of the  
 “ *Novum Lumen Chirurgicum*, and for the Sale of  
 “ which a *Patent* was procured, only in that was  
 “ used Oil of Vitriol, instead of the Spirit of Salt  
 “ in this; but that Difference is insignificant. Of  
 “ this I kept some by me for a time, to wait a  
 “ proper Opportunity to try it; when an extraor-  
 “ dinary one happened by a blundering *Farrier*  
 “ cutting the *Jugular Artery* of a very fine young  
 “ Horse, as he was pretending to take off some  
 “ adventitious Kernels which grew under his  
 “ Throat. The Flux of Blood was so prodigious,  
 “ that the Creature must have forthwith died, had  
 “ not the Fellow held fast the wounded Vessels  
 “ by griping the Part with his Hands, which pre-  
 “ vented the Effusion, until I dissolv'd some of  
 “ this Powder, or rather Salt, in some warm  
 “ Water, and with the Curriers Shavings of Lea-  
 “ ther dipt in it, apply'd it upon the Part; where  
 “ tying it as fast as the Part would admit of, and  
 “ haltering the Horse's Head up to the Rack for  
 “ about 16 Hours, when it was taken off, not one  
 “ Drop of Blood afterwards followed, and the  
 “ Part was easily incarnated, and healed up. This  
 “ is a Preparation of *Maets*, once Professor at *Ley-*  
 “ *den*, and is in the *Collectanea Chymica Leydensia*,  
 “ how much soever some have pretended to make  
 “ a Secret of it since.”

The same Author further takes notice, that this Styptick has been recommended inwardly to stop Fluxes, especially those of Blood; but we are very sure it may answer that End in all Wounds, when apply'd, as in the Instance before recited. And in this respect it may be made use of by those who are but little skill'd in the Practice of a Sur-  
 geon



geon or Farrier. As may also the *Powder of Sympathy*, though we cannot advise any one to depend upon its Sympathetick Virtues.

Having said thus much concerning the first Intention, to wit, the putting a Stop to the Blood in Cases where the cut or ruptur'd Vessels are large or exposed, we shall now proceed to the other Requisites in the Cure of Wounds. But we shall in the first Place take notice, that in all good Constitutions a flesh Wound will easily be cured, if it is not over-much exposed to the Air, as we see in many Instances both in Brutes and Humane Bodies; and a Wound made according to the Direction of a Muscle, or only somewhat slanting, will heal with little or no Application, if the Horse is not put to hard Exercise; for in that Case, as often as the Muscle is contracted, the Wound will be more or less opened, according to the Force whereby the wounded Member is moved. But all Wounds that are large ought to be stitch'd, and when that is rightly perform'd, nothing contributes so much to their Reunion, as it in some measure prevents the Inconveniencies of Motion, and likewise, as it puts a Stop to the Swelling; which, without a plentiful and speedy Discharge, will often cause Ulceration, together with a pre-natural Hardness in the Lips.

Stitching and Bandage are nearly ally'd to each other, and sometimes the one supplies the Room of the other; but most Wounds may be easily cured when Stitching and Bandage can come in to one another's Aid. Wounds, which are large and deep, and which may be press'd together with your Fingers, are the most fit to be stitch'd; but Wounds that penetrate to the Bone ought not to be stitch'd when the Flesh is much divided from the Bone, otherwise an Abscess may be form'd, which will cause the Bone to putrify; the same Caution is also to be observ'd, when by your Probe, or by a Swelling distant from the Wound, you have reason to suspect some of the Muscles are divided, as it happens in very large Contusions. In this Case Bandage is only to be made use of,

Large Wounds ought to be stitch'd, unless they penetrate to the Bone, or form an Abscess.

with



with the proper Applications to the Wound ; but if the Swelling continues, which, for the most part, happens, if at all, underneath the Wound, and therefore becomes unable to bear a firm Bandage, it must be treated as an Impoſthume, by the Application of ripening Cataplaſms ; and when it comes to Maturity, it must be open'd as low as possible, that the Matter may have a free Passage and Vent, after which the Bandage will become of infinite Service.

Wounds of  
a circular  
Figure.

Wounds, that are of a round and circular Figure, cannot be stitch'd, but Nature must fill up that Space by degrees ; neither can those be stitch'd which are very much ragged and torn ; but in a Wound that has several Points and Angles, Stitches may sometimes be made to do Service, but for this purpose no general Rule can be laid down. *Solleyſell* advises to cut all circular Wounds into a long Figure, but that needs seldom be done where Bandage can be apply'd ; for the only thing that makes a circular Wound hard to cure, is when the bottom of the Wound happens to be large and loose, or bruised, or when the Wound penetrates perpendicularly downwards ; in this Case a moderate Incision downward may be made ; but when a circular Wound is not very deep, or if it is not in some respect like a Well or Pit, the Application of Bolsters and Bandage, to keep it firm at the Bottom, will, for the most part, suffice.

Wounds  
among the  
Sinews.

*Lastly*, The Needle is to be sparingly us'd among the sensible and nervous Parts ; for altho' there are divers Circumstances which may require stitching even where the Tendons are wounded ; and altho' it may be more particularly gone about where there is a very sound Constitution, yet, as there is an Ichor and viscid Matter perpetually flowing from the Tendons, even in the best Habits, which cause untowardly Accidents ; therefore, as these are oftentimes heighten'd by stitching, the Practitioner should be very well vers'd in Practice to endeavour the Cure of such Wounds, otherwise than by proper and plain Dressings ; for if this Operation has not always the desir'd Success on humane



humane Bodies, who can be manag'd so as to keep the Muscles, to which those Tendons belong, from all manner of Action, much less can be expected from Brutes, but especially Horses, who keep more in a standing Posture than any other, and therefore are not only oblig'd and under a necessity sometimes to move those Parts, but even at most times to lay a great Weight upon them.

To perform this Operation aright, the Farrier ought to be provided with several Needles, some streight and some crooked, and of these some ought to be more arched than others, and accommodated to Wounds that are deep, and for this End also they ought to be of different Size. Both the streight and crooked should be edged, and not round, that they may the more easily penetrate and cause the less Pain; and those that are appointed for deep Wounds should be strong, that they may not break and cause trouble in the Operation. But in all these things the Farriers may take Pattern from the Surgeons.

*The manner  
of Stitching.*

The stitching of superficial Wounds ought to be perform'd with a streight Needle, and is chiefly necessary upon Parts that are prominent and expos'd to view, where the Skin being only burst gives way and opens wide, tho' it be not much separated from the subjacent Flesh, and if it is not drawn together, it will leave a Baldness, or the Hair that grows upon the Part will be white and softer than that which covers the rest of the Body, either of which becomes a Deformity upon the Cheek, the top of the Loins, or upon any Joint, as we sometimes observe when these Parts have been gall'd, and where there is no room for such an Operation.

But in all deep Wounds a crooked Needle must be us'd, and of such a form as will easily make a Compass under the Wound; for the Farriers Method of tacking the Lips together with a common sowing Needle, or Pack-needle, as I have sometimes observ'd, is quite short, nay, contrary to the Intention of stitching, and often does a deal of Mischief, and would do much more if the Stitches did



did not soon break, as it leaves room for the Matter to gather in the bottom of the Wound. Therefore, when the Farrier goes about the stitching of a deep Wound, he ought first, if there be congeal'd Blood within it, to clean that out, and having press'd the two Sides together, he must make his first Stitch at the middle of the Wound, passing his Needle so as to describe a half Circle under it, and with a strong waxt Thread or Shoemakers End tie the Wound close together, the rest of the Stitches ought to be made at equal Distances, and so near each other as to keep all Parts equally close. They ought also to be ty'd in a Bow-knot, that they may be open'd in case of Inflammation or Matter gathering in the Wound, which will sometimes happen, if the Wound is not sew'd up soon after it is receiv'd.

The Cure may be finish'd by dressing the Wound every Day with a Pledgit of Hurds spread with *Basilicum*, or any other Digestive, washing it often with warm Wine, Spirit of Wine, or Brandy.

Wounds  
that are  
ragged and  
uneven.

But in Wounds that are ragged and uneven, any loose Bits of Flesh or Skin that cannot be again united, ought to be clip'd off with a pair of Scissars, and the Dressing always made so large as to cover the Wound, and not to sink too much into it, for that not only retards the Cure, as it hinders the Reunion, but often causes a bad Disposition in the Wound itself, which is follow'd with proud Flesh, hard Edges, &c. If the Wound penetrates to the Bone, no kind of Ointment ought to be apply'd to it, for all greasy things putrify the Bones; therefore let your Applications to the Bones be only Pledgits of Lint dipt in warm Honey of Roses, mixt with Tincture of Myrrh, or the Tincture of Myrrh and Aloes, until the Bone is cover'd; but if the Bone should by any Accident grow foul, the Flesh ought for the most part to be laid open so far as it is discolour'd, otherwise it will be apt to cause troublesome Symptoms; and if the Blackness does not come off with the Dressings, it ought to be scraped gently, or have a Pledgit of Lint dipt in Tincture  
of



of *Euphorbium* apply'd to it, which will cause it to exfoliate and cast off the Foulness; and after it is become clean, apply Honey of Roses, &c. as above directed.

But a very material thing in the managing of all large Wounds, is a dexterous and seasonable Application of the Dressings. A Wound, that is much inflam'd, can bear no firm Bandage until the Inflammation abates, which generally happens as soon as it comes to matter plentifully; after that, Bandage will be of the greatest Service, and may be made tighter, as the wounded Part becomes able to endure it; but one thing ought to be carefully observ'd, that all Wounds must have time to digest after the first Dressing two or three Days, according to the Size thereof; and when a Wound, or other Swelling, happens near any Cavity, any such Cavity ought always to be filled with Hurds or Bolsters of Flaxen Cloath, and kept there with Bandage. In this respect the following Instance will be of Service.

A dexterous and seasonable Application of the Dressings, very material in the Cure of Wounds.

A Horse was wounded with the Point of a Fork on the outside of the Hough, a little above the Joint, which being a tender sensible Part, occasion'd violent Pain, accompanied with Lameness, and brought such a sudden Flux of Humors towards the Joint, that all the Cavity on each side and beneath the Master Sinew was swell'd to a prodigious degree, and in a short time fill'd with Matter; and as soon as the Matter was press'd out of it, it always fill'd again, which would soon have corroded the Sinew. I advis'd the Farrier, after pressing out the Matter, to fill up the empty Space, on each side under the Sinew, with Hurds dipt in Spirit of Wine, to keep the divided Skin together, and prevent the Matter from falling into it, which, with the Application of a strengthening Charge round the Joint, and an easy Bandage, made a perfect Cure in a few Days.

An Observation.

We shall conclude with some Observations concerning inward Wounds, which, in a great Measure, depends on the right Regulation of a Horse's Feeding; for when a Horse is inwardly wounded, he ought

Internal Wounds how to be manag'd.



to be restrain'd from all such Food as is any ways hard and binding, having nothing allow'd him but scalded Bran, and sometimes a little boil'd Barley. His constant Drink ought to be Barley Water, and at first a little *Sal Prunellæ* or purify'd Nitre dissolv'd in it, as has been prescrib'd in a simple Fever. The following Balls may also be given for three or four Days, to secure him from bleeding inwardly.

Take Sperma Ceti two Ounces, Japan Earth  
' or Bole four Ounces, Gum Tragacanth in Powder  
' one Ounce, Sugar of Lead half a Dram: Let  
' these be form'd into Balls, being first made into  
' a stiff Paste, with Conserve of Red-Roses, and a  
' small Quantity of Wheat Flower, one half to be  
' taken in the Morning, and the other in the After-  
' noon before his Barley Water, keeping him  
' bridled for the space of two Hours thereafter.'

If the Horse becomes bound in his Body, emollient Clysters may be given him of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, the Herb Mercury, the Roots of Marsh mallows, and such-like things, adding no strong Purgative, but rather four or five Ounces of Treacle or Honey, with a sufficient Quantity of Oil or Butter; and if the Guts be wounded, the use of Clysters must even be laid aside also; and if his Diet proves not enough laxative, he may be provok'd to Dung by the following mild Suppository.

Take a Pound of Honey, boil it in a Pan or Skillet, until it turns to a dark brown Colour, stirring it always, then take it off the Fire, and when it begins to be cold, make it into a Roll four or five Inches long, and introduce it into the Horse's Fundament immediately, otherwise it will soon dissolve and turn liquid. *Castile Soap* may also be us'd in form of a Suppository, when it is necessary to provoke your Horse to dung.

Into the Wound may be pour'd, or gently injected, Red Wine, with Honey of Roses made blood-warm, and outwardly it may be cover'd with a Pledgit spread with *Basilicum*, or any other proper Digestive, and above that a Compress of  
Flaxen



Flaxen Cloath made into several Folds, bound on with a Bandage, and over all a Cloath with Buckles and Straps to keep his Body firm. The same Method may also be observ'd in all Wounds that are accompanied with a Fever, only the Balls above prescrib'd need not be given but where there is a great Expence of Blood; and if the Clysters require to be quicken'd, that may be done by dissolving in them a Handful of common Salt.

## CHAP. LII.

### *Of Gunshot Wounds and Burns.*

**G**Unshot Wounds are distinguish'd by their Situation, Size, and Figure, some are very dangerous, some altogether incurable, when they happen to penetrate the Brain, or other noble Parts; and those which shatter the Limbs of a Horse may also be look'd on as incurable, since a Horse in that Condition is able to yield no further Service. Their Size and Figure depend upon the Instrument wherewith they are inflicted, and also renders the Cure more or less certain; for a small Wound is more easily cur'd than one that is large, and a Wound that is circular and round, made with a Bullet, than one which is ragged and torn, such as happen sometimes by Splints, pieces of Iron, Stones, &c. but however they differ in these respects, they are all of them accompanied with loss of Substance, Contusion, and bruising of the Part; and for this reason no Wounds made by Fire-Arms are liable to such great Hemorrhages of Blood, as those made by a sharp and cutting Instrument.

The first Intention in the Cure of Gunshot Wounds, is to fetch out the Bullet or other foreign Matter, whereby they are made; but that is not always practicable, for Bullets are oftentimes lodg'd within the Cavity of the Body, and in the thick fleshy Parts, where the bringing of them out is by no

*The Cure  
of Gunshot  
Wounds.*



means to be attempted ; and sometimes, after several Years Habitation, they fall more outwards, and upon Parts of more slender Substance, and are cast out by Imposthumation, or brought away by Incision. However, the Practitioner ought at first to make tryal, yet not so as to tear the Flesh too much ; but if his Endeavours are to no purpose, he ought to make a counter-opening on the outside, towards the Bottom of the Wound, where he shall perceive any Hardness, nevertheless without touching the large Vessels ; and by this means he may draw out the Bullet with his Fingers, or any convenient Instrument ; but this method of counter-opening is the more necessary, and the more immediately to be gone about, when pieces of Timber, Stone or Iron, or other extraneous Bodies lie in the Flesh, as all such things are apt of a sudden to cause very bad Symptoms, because of their Unevenness.

The next thing to done in the cure of Gunshot Wounds, is to bring them to a good and laudable Digestion, that they may cast off the mortify'd Flesh, to effectuate which, nothing can be better than the common Digestive, with a small Mixture of Oil of Roses pour'd into it every Day ; let the Wound be also often cleans'd with Spirit of Wine, and all the hot and inflam'd Parts about it bath'd with the same. When the Inflammation is very great, and like to be attended with a Fever, a moderate Quantity of Blood may be taken, and laxative Clysters administer'd, and a Poultrice apply'd of Barley Flower, Fœnugreek Meal, and Linseed Meal boil'd in Milk till it be thick, and a sufficient Quantity of Ointment of Marshmallows to make it moist ; adding also an Ounce of Camphire powder'd to every Porringer full of the Poultrice. This may be apply'd hot twice a Day over the Inflammation, putting only a very soft and short Tent into the Orifice. But if the large Vessels be wounded, and send forth an immoderate Flux of Blood ; in that Case, the first Dressing may be made with a soft Tent, dipt in a Solution of the Styptick Powder, described in the preceding Chapter ; and if the Wound penetrate thro' any Member, both Orifices must be dress'd alike. If the Wound be among the Sinews, or other nervous Parts, Oil of Turpentine, mixt with the common Digestive, may be apply'd to it, bathing it now and then with camphorated Spirit of Wine. The Cautions laid down in the preceding Chapter are also to be observ'd, with respect  
to



to Bandages and Dressings, with this further Notice, that no Gunshot Wound can bear any Bandage, further than to keep on the Dressings, until the Escar and mortify'd Parts are discharg'd.

Asto Burns, whether they be made with Gun-powder, or any other way, they ought, in the first Place, to be bath'd with Spirit of Wine camphorated, and afterwards anointed with Oil of Roses, St. *John's* Wort, or Linseed Oil, or Butter. If the Burn be new, the Heat and Inflammation may be taken off, by applying immediately to the Part pounded Onions; some use the Juice of Onions and Verjuice mixt together; Black Soap and common Salt has the same Effect; there are others who use Quicklime beat into an Ointment with fresh Butter; but nothing is better, or so safe, as the camphorated Spirits, applying afterwards the following Cataplasim.

'Take Mallows and Marshmallows, of each four  
'large Handfuls, Linseed one Pound. Boil them in  
'four Quarts of Water, until most of the Moisture be  
'dry'd up, pulp them thro' a Sieve, and add a Pound  
'of fresh Butter, and three Ounces of Camphire in  
'Powder, mix them altogether in a Mortar, and smear  
'the Part with it, or apply it spread pretty thick on a  
'piece of limber Canvas.'

But if the Burn be deep, it must be scarify'd with a Fleam, and the same Poulvice apply'd over it to hasten the Escar or burnt Parts to a Separation; Bleeding and Clysters may be also comply'd with, when there is excessive Heat and Inflammation, &c.

## C H A P. LIII.

### *Of a Gangrene and Mortification.*

A Gangrene is a sudden, violent, and excessive Inflammation, with intolerable Pain, and is no other than a beginning Mortification.

The Cause is sometimes from an ill Habit of Body; The Cause, but, for the most part, from a Puncture, or Wounds in the tender, sensible Parts; or when Splints of Bones, or other sharp and pointed Matter, stick into the Flesh or Sinews; and moreover, the ill Management of any large Wound whatsoever, may, and often brings on a Gangrene and Mortification.



The Signs.

As to the Signs, besides the sudden, violent, and excessive Pain, the Part looks of a deep Red, inclinable to Purple; whereas in a Mortification, there being an absolute Stop put to the Blood, the Part becomes black, soft, perish'd, dead, and without Sense.

The Cure.

The Cure, while it is yet a Gangrene, consists chiefly in the Application of spirituous Things, as Spirit of Wine camphorated (*viz.* an Ounce of Camphire to every Pint of the Spirits) used alone, or mixed with Spirit of Scurvy Grass, or Spirit of Turpentine; a Fomentation made as follows, will also conduce very much to the removal of a Gangrene.

‘ Take St. *John's* Wort and common Wormwood,  
 ‘ of each two Handfuls, Centaury and Camomile  
 ‘ Flowers, of each one Handful, Bay-Berries six Ounces,  
 ‘ common Ashes one Pound. Boil these in six Quarts  
 ‘ of Water until one half be consum'd; and to the  
 ‘ strain'd Decoction add Spirit of Wine camphorated one  
 ‘ Quart.’ Bath the Wound, or the gangren'd Part,  
 with Flannel or Woollen Cloaths dipt in this Fomentation; and, after they are wrung out, apply the Cloaths almost scalding hot to the Part; it may be likewise wash'd with the Fomentation, adding a sixth part of Spirit of *Sal Armoniack* at the time of using it.

All Things that are proper to promote Sweat are to be taken inwardly, such as have been prescrib'd to remove Chest-foundring, &c. But if, notwithstanding all these Means, the Gangrene does not yield, the Practitioner must, with a Fleam or Lancet, scarify to the quick, that the Part may be brought to Suppuration, having in readiness Horse-dung boil'd in Ale or Wine, to be applied hot as a Poultice; and, as soon as the Wounds come to matter, they may be dress'd with *Ægyptiacum* made hot; and if there be still a very great Foulness and Tendency to a Mortification, the Ointment may be mixt with Butter of Antimony, which is a very powerful Remedy; or, with every Ounce of *Ægyptiacum*, may be mixt sixty Drops of *Aquafortis*. *Solleysell* advises Lime-water, and when that proves not efficacious enough, he recommends the following, *viz.*

“ Take crude *Allum* one Pound, *German Copperas*  
 “ grossly beaten half a Pound, *Verdegreafe* in fine Powder  
 “ three Ounces. Boil all together in a Gallon of  
 “ Vinegar, to the Consumption of one half; then,  
 “ without straining the Liquor, reserve it for use in a  
 “ glass



“glass Vial; and if this be too weak, he advises two  
 “Ounces of *Aqua fortis* to be added to each Quart,  
 “shaking them well together.”

The Liquor is to be made hot, and the Part to be dress'd with Pledgits of Flax or Hurds dipt into it.

In all large Mortifications, the Farrier must, with a sharp Instrument, cut and extirpate the dead Flesh, taking care not to hurt any of the Nerves or Sinews that are sound or recoverable, either with his Instrument or Applications; but let his Applications to them consist chiefly of such things as are spirituous, dressing with Honey of Roses beat up with the Yolk of an Egg, with a fourth Part of camphorated Spirit of Wine; and afterwards all such things as are cleansing and proper to promote a laudable Growth of new Flesh.

## C H A P. LIV.

### *Of the biting of venomous Beasts.*

**W**OUNDS made by the biting of venomous Beasts are frequently Mortal, for the Poison communicated to the Blood causes in it so speedy a Rarefaction, that the whole animal Frame is put into an immediate Disorder: The wounded Part becomes swell'd, inflam'd, and of a livid Colour, and its Progress much more sudden than any Gangrene, proceeding from whatsoever other Cause.

The biting of a mad enrag'd Dog is not so poisonous as is generally suppos'd, but only as those Creatures are apt to strike their Jaws with great Force, whereby they sometimes wound and bruise the Sinews and nervous Parts; but the Bite of an Adder is plainly venomous and deadly, from many Instances both among Men and Brutes; and the Bites of those Animals are constantly follow'd with a Drop or two of greenish Matter, which, by its corrosive Quality, poisons the Wound, and infects the Body.

There are infinite ways of curing those Bites; some The Cure, give the Fire immediately, and some cut out the Bit that is wounded; but these Operations cannot be allow'd of in all Parts, but chiefly when the Wound is made in the Flesh, and free from the Nerves and Sinews; others only apply Garlick, Onions, Bay-Salt and Bacon stamp'd together into an Ointment. Others use stamp'd Rue, Mustard-seed, pickled Herrings and



Black-Soap, with a sufficient Quantity of Deer's Suet or Bear's-Grease; and there are some who only lay over the Wound *Venice-Treacle* or *Mithridate*, which are very good, especially if the spirituous Embrocations directed in the preceding Chapter be also comply'd with and us'd often. The Viper-Catchers, who are often bit with Adders, cure themselves by anointing the Wound immediately with Adders Fat, which they always keep in readiness in a Gallipot. The Certainty of which Cure has been also evinc'd, by the Experiments of a great and eminent Physician made upon Dogs, who very reasonably ascribes the healing Virtues of that Fat to its clammy and viscid Parts, but especially as it is more penetrating and active than other oily Substances, whereby he supposes it to involve, and, as it were, sheath the volatile Salts of the Venom, which are the Instruments of those deadly Mischiefs that attend the biting of such Animals. And, for the same Reasons, the Vipers Fat or Grease may, no doubt, be of Service in all other Bites or invenom'd Wounds.

But when the Poison is once got into the Mass of Blood, the chief part of the Cure must be owing to inward Means, which ought constantly to be used at the same time proper Applications are made outwardly. *Solleysell* recommends the Tincture and Essence of Vipers, which, indeed, is not improper, only that their Scarcity makes those Preparations very dear in our Country. However, to a Horse of great Value, a Dose of two or three Ounces of the Powder of dry'd Adders might be given in a Pint of Canary, and repeated several times. But the Method laid down for the Cure of pestilential Fevers, as it consists chiefly in the use of Counterpoisons, may be follow'd in all such Cases; and, as soon as the Malignity and Venom is destroy'd, the Sores may be treated as other Wounds or Ulcers.

---

## CHAP. LV.

### *Of Ulcers.*

ALL Sores, that have any evil Quality ingender'd in them, so as to hinder the Re-union of the Parts, are term'd *Ulcers*, and these are distinguish'd



guish'd according to their Size, Scituation, or degree of Malignity; some are superficial, and only appear on the outward Parts; others are deep, and are therefore term'd Cavernous or Fistulous, which Names are borrow'd from their Figure. The superficial Ulcers are divers, and attended with divers Qualities, some being soft and crusty, sending forth a viscid Matter of a cadaverous and carion-like smell, from whence they are also call'd *putrid*; others have fungous and hard Excrescences, appearing in divers Aspects; and some have hard and scirrhus Edges, which, in Horses, are very thick, having their Bottom of a livid or duskyish Colour, full of little *Papille* and Unevenness.

The *Cavernous* and *Fistulous* are also distinguish'd from each other, the cavernous being deep and broad at Bottom, full of little Holes, with a small and narrow Orifice, from whence there continually issueth a virulent corrosive Matter; whereas the fistulous Ulcers have long, strait and deep Holes, which sometimes communicate with one another like a Coney-Burrow, their Sides callous and hard, and the Matter sometimes corrosive and sometimes not. There are other sorts of Ulcers taken notice of by the Writers of Surgery, as the *Cancerous*, *Corrosive*, &c. but the first is seldom or never to be seen in Brutes, and the last seems not to be a proper Name of Distinction for any particular kind of Ulcer, that being an evil Quality, which is more or less to be met with in most Ulcers, and by which they may be look'd upon to be more or less malignant.

In what manner Ulcers are distinguish'd.

Ulcers are also distinguish'd, with respect to their Causes, whence some are call'd *primitive*, and others *degenerate*; but it is sufficient for the understanding this Matter, to know that all Ulcers take their Origin immediately from Wounds, Bruises, Tumors, or other Eruptions and Breakings out of the Skin, some of which turn Ulcers by ill Management, and others from a vitious Disposition in the Blood.

As to the Signs, they are manifest from what has been already said of their several kinds, we shall therefore make some few Observations concerning their Prognosticks.

And *First*, An Ulcer that is superficial is less dangerous than one that is deep, as it may, for the most part, be cur'd by manual Operation, only with the assistance of proper Applications: Neither need I acquaint any one, that a small Ulcer is more easily manag'd than one that is large. But *Secondly*, An Ulcer pro-

The Prognosticks and Cure.



proceeding from a Malignity in the Blood, &c. whether it be large or small, superficial or deep, is more dangerous than one which is only degenerate, and not attended with such bad Circumstances. And *Thirdly*, As a degenerate Ulcer may, by long continuance, create an evil Disposition in the Blood, by hurting the common and ordinary Secretions, and inducing an ill Habit, it may therefore be as dangerous and bad to cure as any; and a sudden and injudicious Cure of such an Ulcer is oftentimes the Cause of some other Disease. *Fourthly*, Ulcers that are form'd of Abscesses in the Hips, Loins, in the thick part of the Shoulders under the Blade-bone, and in the Joints, and have Communication with the Bones, as these lie out of reach, they are therefore very difficult and hard to be cur'd; and if the Cavities of such abstruse Ulcers be large, they will soon bring the Body of a Horse into a Waste. *Fifthly*, Ulcers in the dependent Parts, as those of the Legs, are very obstinate, as they become the Sink and Drain of all the Humors, but especially as the Matter proceeding from the Tendons, &c. creates a very ill Disposition in them. *Lastly*, All Ulcers in the Lungs, Kidneys, Liver, and other inward Parts, generally prove mortal sooner or later, according as they are situated nearer or at a distance from the larger Vessels, and according to the other Circumstances that may attend them. But we have already taken sufficient Notice of those kind of Ulcers, where we have treated of Brokenwinded Consumptive Cases, and of Heftick Fevers, &c. having recommended, for their Cure, the use of cleansing, healing, and balsamick Medicines inwardly, with a proper Regulation in their Feeding and Exercise. As to outward and superficial Ulcers, with their different Accidents, they have been also sufficiently handled in the 48th Chapter, both as to Externals and Internals. The Ulcers of some particular Parts have likewise been taken notice of, as the Glanders, &c. Those of the Legs and Feet, and other dependent Parts, shall be treated of when we come to the Diseases of those Parts. It remains therefore, that we put a Period to this Subject, by laying down some Directions concerning the Cure of those Ulcers that are term'd Cavernous and Fistulous, and likewise such of them as are abstruse, and form themselves into several Meanders and hidden Abscesses among the Bones and fleshy Interstices, tho' in the latter Circumstances we can give the Practitioner but little



little Hopes of Success, for the Reasons already alledg'd; yet, so long as a Horse continues serviceable, the proper Means ought to be us'd.

And therefore, whether such an Ulcer proceed from an old deep Wound, or any other Cause, the chief thing to be done, is now and then to inject proper Liquors into it, forbearing the use of those things that are very corrosive; for albeit corrosive Applications are sometimes proper in Ulcers that are superficial, and where the Escar can be brought off by the proper Dressings, or the help of an Instrument; and where a fresh Growth of superfluous Matter can be suppress'd by Bandage; yet in the Case now before us they are often hurtful, as all such Applications cause Accidents that ought to be remedy'd by Art, and ought therefore to be within the reach of the Artist; for which Cause the properest Liquors to be injected into all such Ulcers, are Decoctions made of the Roots of *Briony*, *Birchwort*, *Flower-de-luce*, &c. with a third part of Spirit of *Wine*; or rectify'd Oil of *Turpentine*, common Honey, or *Honey of Roses*, may be also made use of in the same Intention; and when there is a Foulness in the Bones, which may be known by the Thinness, Oiliness and Stench of the Matter; in that Case, a Tincture drawn with Wine from *Myrrh*, *Aloes*, *Frankincense*, *Olibanum*, *Saffron*, *Cinnamon*, and such like things, will make a very proper Injection to be us'd sometimes. To the Wound may be apply'd Pledgits of Flax dipt in the same Liquor, or some good Digestive, and over the Dressing a good sticking Plaister. The Injections should always be made warm, and when the Part can admit of firm Bandage, it will never fail to be of Service.

But those Ulcers, which, upon trial with the Probe, &c. are found to be within the reach of an Operation, ought to be laid open, avoiding, as much as possible, an Effusion of Blood, by dividing the large Vessels, and the Inconveniencies that may happen by cutting the nervous and sensible Parts: After Incision any such Ulcer is to be treated as a fresh Wound, only that instead of a Re-union, by closing the Sides again, they must be kept open with Dossils of Flax dipt in Stiptick-Water the first Dressing, and afterwards in some good Digestive, that Nature may fill up the whole Space with a Growth of new Flesh. If there be still a bad ulcerous Disposition in the Part, cleansing Ointments, as *Basilicum* mixt with red *Precipitate* or *Aegyptiacum*; or,  
if



if necessary, stronger Corrosives may be made use of; *Copperas-Water*, *Lime-Water*, or a Solution of *Blue-Vitriol*, or any of those directed in other Parts of this Treatise in the like Intentions, may be also comply'd with to wash the Sore; if the Bone be foul, the Method laid down in the 51st Chapter ought also to be follow'd. In a Fistula, the hard callous Sides must be scarify'd, or touch'd with a Caustick, to bring them even and smooth. The Horse may be also purg'd once or twice, and afterwards go under a Course of the Antimonial or Cinnabar-Balls, &c. but the Reader may consult the 48th Chapter.

## C H A P. LVI.

### *Of cauterizing and giving the Fire.*

**C**Auterizing is perform'd by an Instrument made hot, or by corrosive and burning Medicines; and these are either natural or artificial, which may be made stronger or weaker, according to the several Intentions in which they are used. The first is call'd the *actual* Cautery, and the last the *potential*.

We make use of corrosive and burning Medicines to cleanse and destroy all Foulness which obstructs and hinders the Cure of any Ulcer, to keep down a preternatural Growth of fungous Flesh, to eat away Excrescences, to open Abscesses and Imposthumes, and moreover to stop up the Mouths of Blood-Vessels, thereby to prevent an Hemorrhage of Blood. The actual Cautery is also made use of to most of the same Purposes; but as we have taken Notice of these Things already, and reduced them to Practice, with the necessary Cautions in their Application; we shall not therefore spend the Reader's Time in repeating them over again, but proceed to the other Intentions of Cauterizing, which in a more especial Manner go under the Denomination of *Giving the Fire*.

The Fire is so ancient in the Practice of Surgery, that it seems to have been one of the first Methods used to remove Pains of the Joints, &c. proceeding from cold, glutinous Humors impacted in them, as may be learned from *Hippocrates* and others; and tho' it be now greatly in disuse among us in these Intentions, yet it is to this Day very much practis'd by the *Egyptians* and *Arabs*; and it is reported of the *Moors*, and other Barbarians,



barians, that they sear their Arms and Shoulders only to strengthen them to draw the Bow. The ancient Method was by burning Flax or Cotton under the diseased Member made into a Pyramidal Form, that the part might be inured to it by degrees, and so enabled to bear a necessary Augmentation of the Flame. And Sir *William Temple* had seen such good Effects from it, that it encourag'd him to write his Essay, concerning the Cure of the *Gout* by *Moxa*, which is only a kind of *Cotton* set on fire in this manner.

But whatever Approbation may be given to this method of curing Diseases in the Human Body, it is certain, the Effects of Fire are very extraordinary with regard to Horses in old Grievs in the Joints, Sinews, and nervous parts, after they have bid a Defiance to all artificial Compositions whatever; neither will this be thought strange, if it be consider'd, that those parts are very compact and solid, being compos'd of an infinite Number of Fibres and Nervous Threads, laid so close together, that there is not a Cavity or Interstice to be discerned in them when cut asunder; and therefore when these are obstructed, nothing can be supposed to relieve them, but what is of the most powerful Efficacy.

Now it is very plain that actual Fire may be of the greatest Importance in the removing such Obstructions, and that in a twofold Respect. *First*, As by Cauterizing and Burning the outside, there is a Discharge made, and of Consequence a Derivation of Matter from the obstructed Part, which must give more Liberty to the inclosed Fluid; and *Secondly*, as the Heat, communicated in this manner by the active Particles of Fire, must needs give a sort of new Life and Motion to the viscid Juices, which are thus impacted, whereby they become more fitted to make their way thro' their proper Vents and Passages, and likewise as it forces the relaxed Fibres to contract themselves.

This is so certain an Effect of Fire, that it is even plain in those Instances, where many of the poorer sort among the Country People cure themselves of the Kibes, &c. by holding their Heels over burning Coals, or a hot Pair of Tongs, tho' they do not sear the Skin; and many of the good Effects, which proceed from the Application of Ointments to hard obstinate Swellings and aching Pains in Horses, are more owing to the Hot Bar of Iron made use of in the rubbing in of the Ointments, than any medicinal Efficacy in the Ointments



ments themselves, several of these being no better than common *Hogs-Lard*.

And as the Fire becomes thus useful in all such Intentions, by removing settled Obstructions, so it is of no less Importance in *Ring-bones*, *Quitter-bones*, *Scratches*, and in fine, to loosen all grisly and horny *Excrescences* that grow out upon the Legs and Feet, or any other part of the Body, where, by searing their Substance and piercing the Skin near their Root or Insertion, a stop is put to the Humours that nourish them, so that they are made to rot and fall off.

The manner  
of giving the  
Fire.

*Solleysell* lays down three important Directions in giving the Fire. The *First* is, not to press too hard upon the part. The *Second*, to let the Knife be red-hot, but not flaming. And the *Third*, to heat the Knife or Instrument in a Charcoal Fire. The two first of these Directions are absolutely necessary, and the last may be comply'd with according to the Artist's Convenience.

In all Grievs of the Sinews and nervous parts, the Fire is to be very sparingly given, and a drawing Knife is certainly the properest Instrument, tho' there are some, who make use of a large Gold Coin, from a Conceit of its having greater Medicinal Virtues than really belong to it. Some content themselves with Silver, and there are others, who prefer Copper, from an Opinion of its being a Metal that resists Putrefaction; and among these is our last mention'd Author. But most of our *English* Farriers make use of Iron Instruments in all their Cauterizing Operations, which, if they be smooth and well polish'd, are as good as any, and in this, it is sufficient that they have the Example of most Surgeons for their Authority.

The Knife should be rounded on the Edge, and pretty thick, that it may keep the Heat as long as possible; it ought also to be heated in a very clear Fire (if a Charcoal Fire cannot be had) and afterwards well rub'd upon a Woollen Cloath, that no Dirt or Ashes may stick to it, and until the flaming Redness is wore quite off; then the Farrier must with a steady, dexterous, and light Hand, draw his Lines or Rases on each side the Joint or Sinew, always following the Course of the Hair, without making cross Lines, for besides that they are of no Importance in the Cure, they cause a very great Deformity. A due Care must also be had, never to pierce the Skin, but rather repeat the Strokes the oftner, until it becomes of the Colour of a pale Cherry;



Cherry; for if the Fire happens to touch the Sinews, it will be apt to cause Convulsions; and if the Horse survive these Disorders, he may hereafter become irrecoverably lame.

But when the Grievance happens to be on the Hips, Shoulders, or other fleshy parts, or when the Fire is given to disperse any obstinate flegmatick Humour, that cannot be brought to Suppuration, the Artift may go on with some Boldness; and besides, that the Lines may be made of any Figure, either in shape of a *Palm Arrow*, or *Shield*, or what the Farrier pleases, the Skin ought also to be pierc'd more or less according to the Scituation, and Urgency of the Grievance, that a powerful Revulsion may be made, by drawing away a plentiful deal of Matter. There are many Instances of Cures of this kind to be met with among Horses, and even some in the Human Body, where, by burning the Hip with a hot Iron, the *Ischiatick* Pains and other nervous Obstructions have been altogether removed. But in Cases where the Skin is to be pierc'd, it ought to be done from below upwards, that the Matter may flow downwards, the better to prevent an ulcerous Disposition in the Sores; and into the Orifices or Holes may be introduced little soft Tents of *Flax* dipt in warm *Basilicum*, or any other Suppurative Ointment; for if these be cram'd with hard Tents, the Anguish that must necessarily happen, after giving the Fire, will be apt to create a Fever.

All the fear'd and burnt parts ought immediately to be bath'd with Spirit of Wine, and afterwards anointed with a mixture of Bees-wax and Oil melted together, or with common Tar, until the Escars fall off; but if there be a very great Heat and Anguish, and a tendency to a Swelling, which is apt enough to fall upon the Legs, especially of those Horses that are tender and washy; in that Case camphorated Spirits may be used two or three times a Day, and, if need require, the Cataplasm directed for the Cure of Burns. But these Accidents may in a great measure be prevented, and the whole Intention more effectually answer'd, if, before the Operation, Recourse be had to Fomentations and Baths, or attenuating Oils, such as the Oil of Earth Worms, or the Soldiers Ointment; for by these means, the Grievance will more easily yield to the Impressions of the Fire, and the burnt parts come sooner to a Separation.



I need not acquaint any one, that the Horse must be secur'd with Collars, or such other Engines, as can be made effectual to prevent his licking, biting, or rubbing the Scabs, which is very common when they begin to heal, otherwise it will cause a great Deformity, and such an one as cannot be easily remedy'd. What relates to the firing of *Ring-bones*, *Quitter-bones*, and *Scratches*, &c. shall be treated of in their proper Places.

## C H A P. LVII.

### Of Roweling.

**R**oweling is an artificial Vent, made to discharge noxious Humours, but the Effects of *Roweling*; are not the draining away of ill Humours, as most People believe; for the Matter that proceeds from the *Rowel* is form'd of the Blood; so that by it, both the good and the bad is evacuated: And therefore all that can be propos'd by *Roweling*, is to make a Revulsion, or Diversion from any part, that is weaken'd or relax'd by old obstinate Obstructions; and in this Sense it is useful in many of the same Intentions as the Fire, and is very profitable in all Aches, cold flegmatick Swellings, and even sometimes in Lameness and Infirmities of the Legs. It is also sometimes a Relief, where there is a Fullness and Redundancy of Humours; and in most Diseases of the Eyes: But *Roweling* is absolutely hurtful to Horses that are poor, lean, and hide-bound, or to those that are hectic and consumptive, &c.

The use of  
Roweling.

There are two sorts of *Rowels*, viz. A hair *Rowel*, and *French Rowel*. The one is what Surgeons call a *Seaton*, and the other a *Fonticle* or *Fontanel*; but the *Fonticle* or *French Rowel* is by many prefer'd, as it is not so apt to cause an Abscess, and is therefore more easily dry'd up. But in Cases that require a considerable Discharge of Matter, a small Abscess is not to be altogether feared; because such an one as happens upon *Roweling*, may be easily enough cured by the Application of Bolsters, and tight Bandage.

I need not lay down any particular Directions concerning this Operation, since it is so common, that even every Country *Smith* can perform it; I shall only take notice, that the *French Rowel* ought always to be put in the Interstices or Furrows, that go between the  
Muscles,



Muscles, either towards their Origin or Insertion, or any other Part throughout the whole Tract of any Interstice; but to prevent a too great Abscess, the Hair-Rowel may be better plac'd towards the lower Part of the Interstice, where the Furrow is not so deep, and where the Matter will easily run off; but care ought to be taken not to put in the Rowel too near the Tendons, but where there is some Substance of Flesh.

## C H A P. LVIII.

*Of Gelding and Curtailing of Horses.*

**T**HE gelding of a Foal is an easy Operation, and seldom attended with any ill Accidents. But if a Horse's Stones should be bruised, or otherwise hurt, and so become irrecoverable, the extirpating of these will require the Skill of a good Artist.

The Horse being first cast on a Dunghil, or other soft Place; the *Scrotum*, or outward Case, is to be cut open on each Side, when both Stones are to be taken away, and where there is but one on that Side where the diseased Stone lies; afterwards tie a wax Thread round the Strings to stop the Blood; and with a Pair of sharp Scissars or Knife cut the Strings between the Ligature and the Stone, applying to the Wound Pledgits dipt in the common Digestive mixt with Spirit of Wine, laying over all Compresses, and a Bandage, such as has been directed to suspend the Sheath. If an Inflammation happens, it is to be treated with warm Fomentations and spirituous Things, and the Horse kept to an opening Diet, with Barley-Water for his Drink.

This is a more safe Method than what is generally practis'd, *viz.* by applying the actual Cautery, and then filling the Place with Salt; for albeit it may succeed with a Colt or Foal, while the supermatick Vessels are very small, yet it must needs expose a Horse to many Accidents when he is come to his Maturity.

As to the curtailing or docking of Horses, all that I Curtailing. intend upon the Subject, is only to advertise the Farrier that his Searing-Iron should be smother and better polish'd than what is generally made use of, and that it should be rub'd very clean on a Woollen-Cloath, and the Metal harden'd; for when it is otherwise, the *Scoria* or Sparks that fly off from the Iron are apt to



cause an intolerable Anguish, which falls down into the Fundament and Sheath: Neither should the Iron be at any time apply'd flaming hot, or else it will bring the burnt Part along with it; for want of this last Caution I have seen the Iron apply'd two or three times before an Escar could be form'd, which is always of bad Consequence, as it must be a considerable time before the Bone is cover'd.

---

## CHAP. LIX.

### *Of the Lampas.*

**T**HE Lampas is an Excrecence in the Roof of the Mouth, which hinders a Horse from feeding, and happens usually to young Horses. It is cur'd by applying a hot Iron made for that purpose, and is successfully perform'd in all Parts of the Kingdom; so that there is no need of any Caution, but only that the Farrier do not penetrate too deep, so as to scale the thin Bone that lies under the upper Bars, for that would be attended with very troublesome and dangerous Symptoms.

---

## CHAP. LX.

### *Of the Barbs.*

**T**HESE are small Excrecences under the Tongue, which may be seen by drawing the Tongue aside; and are constantly cur'd by cutting them off as close as may be, with a Pair of Scissars, and rubbing the Place with Salt.

---

## CHAP. LXI.

### *Of the Tick.*

**T**HOU' we find this among the Diseases of Horses; yet it is, by the best Judges, look'd upon to be an ill Habit rather than a Disease, which may probably at first proceed from the Pain and Itching, that happens in the breeding of Teeth. There are divers Methods used to break a Horse of this Habit, but the most



most approv'd is, to make him eat in a Place where there is no Manger, tying him with a Buckle to the Wall, and giving him his Oats in a Haverfack.

## C H A P. LXII.

*Of Wolves-Teeth.*

**T**HIS is a Distemper which happens to Horses in the Decline of their Age, when the Gums are wore down, the Grinders don't meet one upon another, but grow either outwards or inwards, so that their Points prick the Gums or Tongue, and hinder a Horse's Feeding. The usual Method of Cure is to open the Horse's Mouth with the Upset, and with a Gonge and Mallet strike off those sharp Edges, and afterwards file them down smoth; but it is much safer to make use of a well-temper'd File only, tho' it will take a little more Time.

## C H A P. LXIII.

*Of Gigs, Bladders, and other Diseases of the Mouth.*

**T**HE Mouths of Horses are subject to several Infirmities, which, by Reason of the Softness and Spunginess of the Parts, are often troublesome, and cannot be easily remov'd without the Fire, or some corrosive Medicine. The Gigs and Bladders, for the most part, grow out on the inside of the Lips, and sometimes towards the Palate; but those of the Lips are the largest. The usual Method of Cure is by flitting them open, and discharging the Matter, afterwards washing them with Salt and Vinegar. Sometimes a Horse's Mouth is wounded by a mishapen or rusty Bit, and by several other Accidents; all which, either from Neglect, or an ill Disposition in the Blood, will create those sort of Ulcers the Farriers call *Cankers*. In such Cases, the best way is to make use of a small round searing Iron, moderately heated, which may be introduced thro' a brass Pipe, to defend it from touching any other Part; and, when the *Escar* falls off, it may be touch'd now and then with a Sponge dipt in Copperas-Water, until it is cur'd. The falling down



of the Palate, or, more properly, the Relaxation and Swelling of the *Uvula*, is also a Disease to which Horses are subject upon catching Cold, tho' I do not find it much taken Notice of by Farriers; yet Mr. *Snape*, in his Anatomy, says he has met with it several times. The Cure is by blowing Pepper upon it, or touching it with a Feather dipt in the blue Eye-Water, or Spirit of *Sal Armoniack*, &c.

## C H A P. LXIV.

### *Of the Poll-Evil.*

**T**HE Poll-Evil is an Imposthume which arises on the Poll, and, for the most part, is caused by the fretting of a new Halter or Collar, &c. At first it requires no other Method of Cure than what is common to other Boils and inflam'd Tumors, *viz.* by ripening and bringing it to matter; but sometimes it degenerates to a sinuous Ulcer, tho' that be generally owing to want of Skill.

There is a small Sinus under the Noll-Bone, where the Matter is apt to lodge, unless Care be taken to keep the Part firm with Bandage; but, instead of that, the Farriers generally use to thrust in a long Tent, which raises the Flesh, and opens a way into the Sinus; and, by this means, an Ulcer is created where there needs be none; all therefore that is further necessary on this Head, is to caution the Practitioner against such ill Methods; and, if the Tumor has a very large Cavity within it, it is much better to lay it somewhat open, than to thrust foreign Substances into it; and, if it acquires an ulcerous Disposition, it must be treated as such. But the Reader may have recourse to the 55th Chapter, as also to those Places where we have treated of the Strangles, &c.

## C H A P. LXV.

### *Of Hurts and Bruises in the Withers, &c.*

**H**ORSES are very often hurt, or wrung in the Withers by the biting of other Horses, or unfit Saddles, especially when the Bows are too wide, for by that means they bruise the Flesh against the Spines of the



second and third *Vertebrae* of the Back, which form that Prominence which rises above their Shoulders. When the Swelling is moderate, the usual method is to wash the part with Salt and Water, or to apply Horse-Dung, or Salt and Black Soap mix'd together, which very often succeeds; any restraining Charge, as Bole and Vinegar with Whites of Eggs, has the same effect, tho' in a different manner; as also the Whites of Eggs beat up into a Foam with a piece of Allum. This is very much commended.

Sometimes the Hair is rub'd off, and the part becomes gall'd, in which Case nothing is preferable to the rectify'd Spirit of Wine or Brandy, which ought to be us'd often, covering the part with a Flaxen Cloath dipt in Bees Wax, and a little Oil melted together, to keep the dirt from it, and defend it from the Air. But The Cure. when the Bruise happens to be violent, an Imposthuration may certainly be expected, which must be manag'd according to the Directions laid down in the Cure of the Strangles. And as soon as the Matter is discharg'd, and the Swelling fall'n, so that the part can bear to be bound, a Strap may be fix'd to the Breast-Cloath, which may pass between his Fore-Legs, and be fasten'd to his Sursingle, which in a great Measure will answer the end of Bandage, by keeping the Parts firm.

*Solleysell* complains of the ill Accidents attending the disorders in the Withers, and it is no Wonder, for that Author was always too busy with Tents, and but little acquainted with the true use of Bandage. A Tent in the Withers is very dangerous, and in all parts of the Back and Loins, for by them the Flesh is raised, as was observed in the preceding Chapter, and the Matter becomes collected among the Spines, whereby sinuous and fistulous Ulcers are formed, which for the most part prove incurable.

As to those Ailments that proceed from the Bite of another Horse, whether they be on the Withers, the Neck, or any other Part of the Body, they must be Bite on the Withers. often bath'd with Spirit of Wine, and dress'd with Turpentine and the Yolks of Eggs, as all other Wounds or Imposthumes; and if the Bruise cause a small Mortification and Deadness in the Part, which sometimes happens, it may be dress'd with *Ægyptiacum*; and if it prove obstinate, the actual Caution may be made use of to bring it to Digestion; after which it may be manag'd as a simple Wound or Ulcer.



## C H A P. LXVI.

*Of a Navel-Gall, &c.*

**A** Navel-Gall is seated on the Top of the Spine, opposite to the Navel, from whence it has its Name, and is generally caused by a bad Saddle pinching a Horse behind, which, being neglected, turns to a foul fungous Excrecence; and sometimes, after long Continuance, to a sinuous and fistulous Ulcer, sometimes it looks like a harden'd brown Jelly, and sometimes black and mortify'd. While there is Moisture and Sensibility in the Part, an Ointment may be apply'd of Quicksilver and Turpentine, *viz.* an Ounce of Quicksilver to every two Ounces of the Turpentine, rub'd in a Mortar till they be well incorporated, and then spread upon Hurds or Flax: On each Side of the Spine, over the Swelling, may be laid smooth dry Pledgits of Hurds, or Bolsters of Flaxen Cloath, which may be girt round with a Surfingle. But if the Sore be dead and lifeless, a good sharp Razor or Knife may be made use of to cut it to the quick, and then let it be dress'd according to the Directions laid down in the Cure of Wounds, &c.

*A Siftast.*

A *Siftast* proceeds also from a Saddle-Gall, and is another of the Accidents that happen to the Spine; it is dry and horny, and may be cur'd by anointing it first with Oil of Bays, until it turns soft, and then by dressing it with Quicksilver and Turpentine, as above directed, which alone will make a Cure, especially if the hard horny Substance be gently scarify'd in some Places.

## C H A P. LXVII.

*Of a Shoulder-wrench, Shoulder-pight, and Shoulder-splait.*

**T**O understand the Nature of these Infirmities, it will be necessary to remember, that the Blade-bone of the Shoulder is fixed to the Body, not by Articulation or Jointing, but by Apposition, being laid to the Ribs, and fasten'd by the Muscles which lie under and above it; so when a Horse happens to receive



ceive a Blow or Strain in the Shoulder, the Tendons of those Muscles are stretched and relaxed; and when that is violent, it is called a *Shoulder-splait*, and becomes more or less dangerous, as the Horse is more or less hardy.

Every one sufficiently knows, that a Slip, false Step, or any undue Position of a Horse's Leg, will strain and weaken the Shoulder, by stretching those Ligaments; and sometimes the Shoulder is affected by a Hurt or Bruise on the Withers, the Reason of which may be easily enough conceiv'd, by any one who will examine into the Structure of these Parts; but when the Accident proves not so violent as to shew a Looseness and Swelling, it is not easily discern'd whether the Lameness be in the Shoulder, in the Foot, or any other Joint. The best Judges have therefore, in all such Cases, thought it proper to examine all Parts from the Shoulder downwards, and even to unshoe the Horse, that they may know certainly where to apply their Remedies. But the Infirmities of the Shoulders may be distinguish'd from those of the Feet, by having a Horse put to Exercise; for if the Lameness be in the Feet, he will halt most when he is ridden; but if it be in the Shoulder, the warmer he grows, the less he will halt; and, if the Wrench be violent, he will be apt to cast his Leg outwards, forming a Circle as he goes. But if none of these Signs are perceivable in his Gate, the surest way is to turn him short on the lame Side, for that tries the Muscles the most of any Thing; so that if the Grief be in the Shoulder, he will set his Foot on the Ground hardily, and endeavour to favour his Shoulder.

But, in order to the Cure, a Distinction ought to be made between an old Grief, and a Hurt that is newly receiv'd; for, in a fresh Strain, the first Intention is to apply such Things as are proper to allay the Heat and Inflammation, and prevent a too great Afflux of Matter to the Part; whereas in an old Grief, those Things are chiefly made use of that attenuate and render the superfluous Humors fit to pass thro' the Pores; and therefore, as soon as you perceive your Horse lam'd in the Shoulder, by a Fall, or any other Accident, after he has been bled on the opposite Side, a cold restraining Charge may be apply'd of Vinegar, Bole, and the Whites of Eggs. Verjuice may be us'd instead of Vinegar upon the Road, which may be had at any Farm-House; for the sooner a cold Application is made, the

The Cure.



better. The Part ought, in the Beginning, to be refresh'd three or four times a Day, with a Spunge dipt in Vinegar and Bole ; and after that the following Plaister may be apply'd :

Take common Pitch half a Pound, *de Minio* Plaister or Diachylon six Ounces, common Turpentine four Ounces, Oil Olive two Ounces: Melt them altogether in a Pipkin over hot Embers, continually stirring ; and when these are dissolv'd, add Bole in fine Powder four Ounces, Myrrh and Aloes, of each an Ounce. Spread this upon the Horse's Shoulder before it grows cold, and put fine Flocks of the Colour of the Horse all over it.

But when the Lameness happens to be of an old Standing, the following Ointment will be of great Service.

Take of the Soldiers Ointment, or Nerve Ointment, half a Pound, Ointment of Marshmallows six Ounces, rectify'd Oil of Amber four Ounces. Mix them all together, and with a hot Bar of Iron, held as near as possible, chafe the Part twice a Day ; and, at some Intervals, with camphorated Spirits.

The Soldiers Ointment is made as follows :

The Soldiers  
Ointment.

Take fresh Bay-Leaves three Pound, Rue two Pound and a half, Marjoram two Pound, Mint one Pound, Sage Wormwood, Costmary Basil, of each half a Pound, Oil Olive twenty Pound, yellow Wax four Pound, *Malaga* Wine two Pound. Bruise all the Leaves, and boil to the Consistence of an Ointment, and keep it for use. This may be made in a smaller Quantity by those who keep but few Horses.

*Solleysell* recommends the Ointment of *Montpellier* as an excellent Remedy in all Strains in the Shoulders, &c. It is composed of the Ointment of Roses, Marshmallows, Populeon and Honey, of each equal Quantities. The Oils of Turpentine, Earth-Worms, Oil of Petre, St. John's Wort, Nerve Oil, Bears Grease, Horse Grease, Mules Grease, Dears Suet, Badgers Grease, and many such Things are also us'd in the same Intention. But if the Lameness does not yield to these Things, recourse may be had to Roweling, or to the Fire ; but the last is preferable, and less painful than the usual Method of Roweling, by bruising and blowing up the Shoulder.

And therefore, with a hot Iron, make a Circle the Breadth of a Trencher round the Joint, and within the whole Circle pierce the Skin, leaving about an  
Inch



Inch between the Holes, and to each apply yellow Wax and Rosin melted together, until the Escars fall off, and then dress them every Day with Turpentine and Honey, applying Plaisters as directed, until the Sores are dried up.

Some advise swimming a Horse for a Shoulder-splait, from an Opinion of the Joint being out; but if it was really so, he must swim with three Legs, which is almost as impossible as for a Door to move without Hinges. But yet Swimming is not always unsuccessful; and, in all old Grievs, it becomes serviceable in the same manner as a cold Bath, by helping Perspiration, and giving a more lively Motion to the obstructed Matter; and therefore the Morning is the properest Time, because the Water is then the coldest, and it should be a continued Custom for some Time to do effectual Service.

But, in all other Respects, the Horse should be put to no kind of Labour, neither ought any one to ride him, for a Weight upon his Back must needs add to the Infirmary, as the greatest Stress lies upon the Shoulders; but it will be very proper for him to be walk'd out every Day, when the Weather is favourable; and his Exercise may be increased as his Shoulder recovers Strength; a Patten Shoe may also be set upon the opposite Foot, if he leans too much upon it.

## C H A P. LXVIII.

### *Of a sway'd Back and Strains of the Hips.*

**A** Swaying of the Back, is a Pain and Weakness in the Reins, caused by a Fall, the carrying of some heavy Burden, or some other violent Accident; and sometimes the Horse is also hurt inwardly, which brings him into the greatest Disorders imaginable. Yet I am of Mr. *Snape's* Mind, that there is no such thing as a broken Back, in the Sense the Farriers generally mean, otherwise the Horse could not survive it many Minutes: Neither is it very probable that the *Spines* or *Processes* of the *Rack-Bones* should be often broke, unless the Horse be very poor and lean, these being, for the most part, very well guarded by the thick Muscles of the Back; and therefore, by a *swaying* of the Back, is properly to be understood a Stretching and Relaxation of the Muscles and Ligaments of those Parts; and when



when the Hurt is more inward, the Malady must then consist in the stretching of the large Blood-Vessels, &c. but, in all such Cases, the Farrier ought, in his Cure, to treat a Horse as if he was hurt both inwardly and outwardly, as there is a constant Sympathy between both.

The first Thing therefore to be done, is to take a plentiful deal of Blood from the Neck; after which the cold Charge, and the other Remedies prescrib'd in the preceding Chapter, ought to be apply'd, inwardly those Things that are proper to promote Sweat; and, as Mr. *Snape* advises, he may be sweated in a Dunghil, if the common Remedies fail; his Diet must be opening, and all imaginable Care taken to keep down a Fever. He ought to be girt pretty firm over his Reins, yet not so as to hinder the Motion of his Flanks; he ought also to be hung up or kept in a steady Posture: But if the Weakness continues, you may proceed to give the Fire, which must be done by piercing the Skin on the Muscles that lie on each Side of the Spine, avoiding, as much as possible, to burn him near the Flanks, otherwise it will be apt to create a violent Swelling in the Sheath, which would very readily bring on a Fever.

The Strains in the *Hips* are to be accounted for in the same manner as those of the Back and Shoulders, only they are not so apt to create a Fever, as a swaying of the Back. Sometimes the round Head of the Thigh-Bone, is, by the Violence of the Accident, thrust out of its Socket, and then a Horse is said to be *Hipshot*; but if it is not reduc'd immediately he will be irrecoverably lame. The Cure consists in the same Applications that are proper for a Shoulder-splait.

## C H A P. LXIX.

### *Of Bones broken and out of Joint.*

**T**HE replacing of Bones that are disjointed is a very unsuccessful Operation, insomuch that we have few or no Instances of Horses ever becoming serviceable after their Bones have been displac'd; but broken Bones have often been recover'd; and *Solleysell* gives an Instance of a Horse that had a Fracture of the Bone, with a large Wound in the Flesh; and



and of a Mule that had a Fracture in the Leg, both which were cur'd by one who was neither Surgeon nor Farrier; and *Ruini*, and other *Italian* Authors, have laid down a Method of Cure for all such Accidents, tho' the Success must be very much owing to the Goodness of a Horse's Constitution and Sagacity, there being some who will favour any Infirmary or Lameness more than others.

When the Bone is fractur'd, the Horse ought to be rais'd in a Sling; and while one holds the Member with both Hands, three or four Inches above the fractur'd Part, another must extend it and draw it quite streight, after which it is to be bath'd with Vinegar and Bole, and a thick flaxen Cloath dipt in the same Liquor, and laid smooth round it; then with a Roller about two Inches broad, make several Rounds upon the fractur'd Part, ascending also above and below it, making your Turnings even, that the Splints may lie on close; after which apply two or three thin Splints of Wood, wrapt up in linen Cloath or Hurds, always taking care not to let any of their Ends press upon the Sinews; and above them make several Turns with a long Roller upwards and downwards, until the Splints are firm and immovable.

The Leg must be often bath'd above and below the Dressing, with Vinegar or warm Lees of Wine, especially for the first Fortnight, and the Horse kept to a laxative Diet; and the Dressing kept on for the Space of forty Days, making it tight as often as it begins to turn slack. If the Horse is inclinable to favour his Infirmary, he will recover without much Trouble; but if it be otherwise, it will be proper to keep him constantly in a Sling, suffering the fractur'd Member just to touch the Ground.

This is the properest Method for all Fractures in the Legs and Pasterns; but in Cases where other Bones are broke, the greatest Part must be left to Nature, who will make a Reunion in her own Way, tho' it may not be without some Deformity; but we can expect no great Assistance, either from Art or Nature, when a Fracture happens on any large Joint, or very near it; or when a Bone is much shiver'd and splinter'd.

The usual Method to reduce Bones that are displac'd, is by casting the Horse on a soft Place, and putting four strong Pasterns on his Feet, drawing him from the Ground, so as his whole Weight may, in a great Measure, rest upon the disjointed Member. I have seen

The Method  
of reducing  
Bones out of  
Joint.



two Horses serv'd in this Manner, for a Dislocation in the Shoulder, but neither of them succeeded. Some use a Method that is much more cruel; they tie one End of a leathern Thong about the Horse's Pastern, and the other to a yielding Shrub; and then, by whipping him, make him strain with all his Force till the Bone return to its proper Place; but this Method is not only dangerous, but seldom successful.

## CHAP. LXX.

### *Of Hurts in the Stifle.*

THESE, as most other Accidents of this kind, come by a Strain or Blow on the Stifle-Bone, which is the Knee-pan of a Horse; sometimes the Ligaments which cover that Bone are so much relax'd, that it becomes loose, moving upwards, and downwards, and sideways, by the Touch of your Hand; and the Horse going downright lame, is said to be *stifled*; but it is a general Mistake in Authors to fancy the Bone is misplaced, that being merely impossible, unless the broad Ligaments were cut, and then, indeed, it might burst out of its Place.

The Cure.

The Cure consists in the Application of those Things that are proper to strengthen the relaxed Ligaments. If the Strain be new, Vinegar and Bole, &c. ought to be made use of; and after that a Plaister made of Pitch, Myrrh, Olibanum, Dragon's-Blood, &c. The Pitch must be melted with a little Oil or Hog's-Lard, and the other Ingredients made into Powder and stir'd into it while it is warm; after which it may be pour'd upon the stifling Place, covering it with Flocks, or the Stuffs of an old Saddle. The Horse ought not to be put to any hard Exercise, but may go to Grass, or be led abroad for the Space of an Hour every Day, until he is able to bear greater Fatigue.

## CHAP. LXXI.

### *Of the Bone-Spavin.*

THIS is a hard bony Excrecence growing on the inside of the Hough, not far from the Elbow, and is generated of the Matter which nourishes the



the Bones and Ligaments. Some Horses are foal'd with this Imperfection; but it proceeds, for the most part, from straining while a Horse is too young to bear violent Fatigue, which, in process of Time, causes Lameness.

The main Intention in the Cure, is to remove the Excrecence; but this is hardly practicable when it adheres to the Bone as a part of its Substance, but only when it lies as an Appendage, in which Case it may be removed by a dexterous Application of the Fire, or by the use of caustick Ointments; for these, by bringing a Flux of Matter, and a constant Moisture into the Part, will, by degrees, loosen that hard Substance from its Adhesion, so that it may be easily taken off; and for this purpose we recommend the following:

‘ Take Quicksilver and Brimstone, of each two Ounces; rub them in a Mortar until they turn to a black Powder; then take *Spanish* Flies and Euphorbium in Powder, of each six Drams, corrosive Sublimate two Drams, the Apostles Ointment four Ounces. Mix them cold in a Mortar or on a Marble.’

The method of applying this Ointment, is first to rub the Part with a Piece of any round smooth Stick, and then lay over a sticking Plaister to guard the rest of the Hough; this must be made of Rosin, common Pitch, or *Burgundy* Pitch, spread on a thick piece of Leather, having a Hole cut in the Middle, that the Tumor may come thro’ it, upon which the Ointment is to be apply’d, the Hair being also shav’d away, over which must be laid a Pledgit of clean Hurds, fasten’d with an easy Bandage round the Hough, or another sticking Plaister over all. This Ointment will at first draw out a thin Water; but, after two or three Days Application, it will form an *Escar*, which may be scarify’d with a Fleam or Lancet, continuing the Application every other Day until the Bone becomes loose, or its Substance dissolves; and after it is removed, the Ulcer must be dress’d with Honey of Roses and Tincture of Myrrh warm, and then heal’d with Basilicon mixt with Turpentine, &c.

In giving the Fire, *Solleysell* advises to sear the large Vein above and below the Thigh, from an Opinion that the Tumor is fed by it; but it is plainly otherwise, the Office of that Vein being only to take up and carry back that Portion of the Blood which is more than necessary for the Nourishment of those Parts thro’ which it passes; and when that Conduit is once stop’d, there must be a greater Quantity of Blood and Nourishment retain’d

An Observation concerning the taking up a Vein.



retain'd in those Parts, at least, for some time, than before; wherefore such an Effect must be owing, not to an Abatement of Humors, but to a greater Quantity of Moisture derived from a greater Quantity of Blood, whereby the Bone may be more easily separated, as we have already observ'd; but if it chance to have this good Effect in removing a Bone-Spavin, the loss of so large a Vessel may easily be of worse Consequence in other Respects, as shall be shewn hereafter.

## C H A P. LXXII.

*Of the String-halt.*

**T**HE String-halt is an involuntary and convulsive Motion of the Muscles which extend or bend the Hough; when it seizes the outside Muscles, the Horse straddles and throws his Legs outwards; but when the inside Muscles are affected, his Legs are twitch'd up to his Belly; sometimes it is only in one Leg, sometimes in both; but these things are so well known that we need not insist on them. It generally proceeds from some Strain or Blow; for whatever creates a more than ordinary Pain, in any particular Muscle belonging to the Hough, may cause a too great Derivation of Blood and Spirits, whereby such an habitual Contraction may be produc'd.

The Cure is difficult, and rarely attended with Success; tho', in the beginning, a String-halt may be removed with good Rubbing, and the use of Fomentations, with daily but moderate Exercise; for by this means the Blood and Spirits may be equally derived into the diseased Muscle and its Antagonist. The last Refuge is usually the Fire, which has been known to answer, at least so far as to prevent absolute Lameness.

## C H A P. LXXIII.

*Of the Blood-Spavin.*

The Blood-Spavin compar'd to a Varix in Men.

**T**HIS Distemper is a Dilatation and Swelling of the Master-Vein, on the inside of the Hough; and is justly compar'd by Solleysell to a Varix in Men. Its Cure is perform'd by taking up that Part of the

Vein



Vein which forms the Tumor, and healing the Wound with proper Digestives and good Bandage; some think it sufficient to tie a Ligature above the Swelling, and then make an Aperture into the Vein, letting it bleed until the Swelling falls, after which they unbind the Ligature, apply a restraining Charge of the Whites of Eggs, Bole and Vinegar, with a firm Bandage; but this is not so certain, especially when the Spavin is form'd under the great Joint of the Hough, and where the Vein takes a winding Turn round it, in which Case it will be apt to grow again as soon as the Bandage is remov'd. But a cold Charge is very necessary all round the Joint, when the Vein is taken up, to prevent the Swelling that must follow upon the Operation.

## C H A P. LXXIV.

## Of Malenders and Selenders.

**T**HE *Malenders* are Chops or Chinks on the bending of the Knee, which discharge a sharp indigested Matter, causing Pain, and making the Horse go lame before, as the *Selenders* which appear on the bending of the Hough make him go lame behind. They both proceed from the same Cause, and are sometimes accompany'd with a Scab, and with a constant staring and bristling of the Hairs.

The properest Method for the Cure of those Infirmities, is, in the first Place, to wash them with a Lather of Black-Soap warm, or with old Chamberly; after which apply a Poultrice of the Roots of Marshmallows and Linseed, softned with Linseed Oil; and, as often as it is apply'd, you may mix half an Ounce of Camphire in Powder, tying it on with a Roller; this may be continued till the Scabs fall off, and the Sores grow clean. Then take Turpentine and Quick-silver equal Parts, stirring them in a Mortar till they be well incorporated; spread a Pledgit with this Ointment and apply it to the Sore, tying it on as above-directed, and renew the Dressing every Day until the Cure is perform'd, observing also constantly to wash all the Chinks with Brandy, or Spirit of Wine.

The Cure.



## C H A P. LXXV.

*Of the Hough-Bony.*

**T**HIS is a hard Tumor that grows on the Elbow of the Hough, and is sinewy, like the Matter which covers that Bone. It proceeds from a Strain or Blow; and when it happens to be of a long Continuance, it becomes difficult and hard to be cur'd, the Substance of the Swelling being like harden'd Glue.

In the Beginning take the Soldiers Ointment, Ointment of Marshmallows, and Oil of Amber, as directed in a preceding Chapter against Strains in the Shoulder, and rub it into the Part with a hot Bar of Iron, holding it very close, and taking care to fetter the Horse so as he may not strike; if it does not yield to this Remedy, take a sufficient Quantity of the *Diachylon* with the Gums, which may be had at any Apothecary's; melt it in a Pipkin, and pour it warm upon the Top of the Hough, renewing it as often as it begins to waste. If the Swelling increase and turn to an Imposthume, it may be ripen'd with Cataplasms, and open'd with a hot Iron, piercing from below upwards, and dress'd with the common Digestive of Turpentine and Honey, or the Yolks of Eggs, with a Mixture of Spirit of Wine, making a firm Bandage over the Part; and by these Means it will be cur'd. But in case of a continued and obstinate Hardness, you must proceed to the Fire, first penetrating a little way into the Body of the Tumor with a round Iron, and drawing from thence several superficial Lines, which may be dress'd according to the Method already laid down for performing that Operation.

## C H A P. LXXVI.

*Of the Curb.*

**T**HE Curb is a Swelling on the sinewy Parts of the Leg, a little below the Elbow of the Hough, but somewhat higher than the Spavin, on the inside, and is generated of the same Matter that nourishes the Tendons and Ligaments; it is broader and higher at  
its



its upper Part than below, and sometimes causes the Horse to halt, by hindring the Action of the Joint. It happens chiefly to draught Horses, and is hardly cureable by any other means than Fire; however, the Medicines directed in the preceding Chapters may first be comply'd with; or the Plaister of Frogs, with four times the usual Quantity of Quicksilver, may be laid to the Curb, first shaving away the Hair, and renewing it once a Fortnight. This Plaister is somewhat troublesome to make, but it may be had of any Apothecary when bespoke; and I dare answer it will be of the greatest Service to remove all hard Swellings on the Bones or Sinews, by discussing them; sometimes it has the effect of a suppurative Plaister, and will cause an Imposthumation, which equally answers the End, as these sort of Tumors often terminate that way with good Success. But they who will give themselves the Trouble to make it, may observe the following Method, which I have borrow'd from one of the best Judges in Pharmacy.

' Take Frogs No. 3, Earth-Worms four Ounces, The Mercurial Plaister.  
 ' Hog's-Lard one Pound, White-Wine one Pint: Boil  
 ' till the watry Parts are evaporated; strain the  
 ' Lard, and put to it half a Pound of Litharge, boil-  
 ' ing it again with fresh Wine till the whole be incor-  
 ' porated. Then put in Wax and Oil of Bays, of  
 ' each two Ounces, Adders Fat an Ounce and a half,  
 ' Frankincence one Ounce, Euphorbium in fine Powder  
 ' half an Ounce, with Quicksilver half a Pound,  
 ' first incorporated in a Mortar, with two Ounces of  
 ' Turpentine, two Ounces of Oil of Spike, and half  
 ' an Ounce of liquid Storax. Make it into a Plaister,  
 ' and keep it for use.'

## C H A P. LXXVII.

*Of a Fardon.*

**T**HIS is a hard callous Tumor a little below the bending of the Ham on the outside; it is at first scarcely discernable, but in time causes the Horse to halt, and grows so painful as to make him pine away and become light belly'd; but it happens most frequently to manag'd Horses, especially those who have been kept too much on their Haunches. The Cure may be first attempted, by applying the Mercu-



rial Plaster as above directed; but if it proves obstinate, it must be treated as a Bone-Spavin, &c.

## C H A P. LXXVIII.

### *Of Splents and Oslets, &c.*

**A** *Splent* is a callous hard Substance which adheres to the inside of the Shank-bone; when there is but one, it is call'd a single Splent; but when there is another opposite to it, on the outside of the Shank-bone, it is then call'd a peg'd or pin'd Splent.

The Matter  
and Forma-  
tion of  
Splents.

The reason of all such Excrescences may be easily enough apprehended, by those who will take the Pains to examin the Shank-bone of any Horse after the Flesh is scraped off, where they may observe two Appendages growing to the Shank-bone, which are to be met with in all Horses that are young, tho' the Seam by which these Bones are joined to the Shank, is, in some old Horses, quite obliterate and worn out, except in the Middle. Each of these Appendages resemble a Bodkin, being broad at Top and narrow at Bottom, and are joined to the Shank by Apposition, and fasten'd by a gummy Matter not unlike Glue.

Now if a young Horse be press'd with any extraordinary Weight towards his Shoulders, before these Bones are firmly cemented and put together, but especially when he goes down Hill with a Burden or a heavy Man upon his Back, it bears so hard upon his fore Legs, that it causes these bony Appendages to give way, and suffer a Distortion; and altho' the Horse does not always grow lame upon it immediately, yet it brings a redundancy of this glutinous Matter, which ouzes from between the Bones on the inside of the Shank, where there is a little Hollowness and Hardness under the *Periosteum*, like the Gum which issues from a wounded Tree, and is thus form'd into a *Splent*. But when the Distortion is violent, or if the Horse be of a tender delicate Make, the Afflux of Matter will be the greater, so that it ouzes thro' the opposite Side also, and forms a peg'd or thurrow Splent, which looks as if a Wedge was struck quite thro' the Bone; sometimes a double Splent is form'd, which is call'd by the *French* a *Fuzee*; and this happens when there is a fresh Afflux of Matter upon a Splent that is already begun, like the Lays upon an Isicle, by the running down of fresh Water  
upon



upon it. This last sort causes a very great Deformity, and is therefore easily perceivable.

Most of these Swellings make their first Appearance a pretty way below the Knee, where the Cleft between the Bones is the widest, which is very natural; and, in some Cases, but especially when they are of long Continuance, they not only ascend to the Knee, but go a good way down the Shank, and sometimes spread backwards towards the Master-Sinew.

*Oslets* are little hard Substances that arise among the small Bones of the Knee on the inside; they grow out of the gummy Substance which fastens those Bones together, and derive their Origin from a Matter like that which produces Splents, and like them proceed from the same Cause, *viz.* the straining of a Horse while he is young, and before his Joints be well knit; and from hence also we may understand the Nature of all those hard Tumors already treated of, which grow near the Joints, whether they be *Spavins*, *Fardons*, *Curbs*, or of any other Kind, their chief Difference consisting in their Scituation, being all of them form'd of a Matter, which, in time, grows hard, yea, even as the Bone itself; and this is the Reason why they cannot be mov'd but by Things that are of the greatest Efficacy. Notwithstanding, if they be discover'd before they acquire such a Degree of Hardness, they may be made to yield to less powerful Remedies than what we are sometimes constrain'd to make use of.

But as to Splents, which are our present Business, it is very plain from what has been said concerning their Origin and Growth, if the Infirmary could be discover'd at first, they might be kept down and wholly prevented by the Application of firm Bandage upon the Shank; for by it not only the Bones would be constantly kept close together, but the *Periosteum* and Flesh united to the Bones, so that there would be no room for any vagrant Matter to lodge between them; but since it is otherwise, that these are seldom taken notice of until they bring a Deformity along with them, or a Halting, they must therefore be treated as other hard Substances of the like Nature.

And *First*, If the Horse be young, and the Splent not of a very old Standing, an Attempt is to be made to dissolve it; and for that Purpose nothing is preferable to the Mercurial Plaister, inserted in the 75th Chapter, which must be apply'd spread on Leather, and continued a considerable time, shaving away the



Hair as often as it is renew'd ; but if it is not to be removed without Suppuration, then rub it soundly with the Handle of a Hammer ; and after its Substance has been thus bruised, it may be brought to an Imposthume, by applying the Mucilage Plaister, or some good Poulrice, made of the Roots of Marshmallows, Bean-Flower, Fœnugreek and Linseed Powder, and such like, with a sufficient Quantity of Ointment of Marshmallows ; and then the Matter may be discharg'd as from a common Boil or Imposthume, by making a streight Incision upon it from below upwards. But if a more expeditious Method be requir'd, the caustick Ointment, inserted in the 71st Chapter, may be apply'd, with the necessary Precautions, observing further, not to continue it longer than an Escar is form'd by it ; or the following Method out of *Solleysell* may be comply'd with, which is very easy.

“ Shave the Hair, knock, rub, and soften the Splent ;  
 “ then take a piece of the Rind of Bacon, not very  
 “ fat, and lay it on the Part with the fat Side out-  
 “ wards ; afterwards apply a flat Caustery, or red hot  
 “ Iron, of the Bigness of a Shilling, holding it upon  
 “ the Skin ; and in the mean time order another Iron  
 “ to be heated, which must be apply'd on another  
 “ Part of the Skin, but still over the Splent continue  
 “ after the same manner, till the Swelling be dissolv'd ;  
 “ then lay a Plaister over it, and Shavings of Cloath  
 “ over that, taking care that the Horse do not bite it  
 “ off.”

But one thing is very material after the removal of a Splent ; and that is, to keep a firm Bandage over the Part for some time, to prevent its return ; for unless the Parts be kept very close, the same Matter which breeds it at first, will be apt to ingender it again. When the Bone happens to be laid bare, it must be treated according to the Method laid down in the Cure of Wounds.

The Cure of a Splent is hardly to be attempted, if the Horse be grown old, for the Matter becomes then so hard, that there is no way to make it yield without running a very great Hazard ; neither is it cureable when the Disease is in the Bone ; for albeit this is sometimes mistaken for a Splent, yet it is, for the most part, no other than what proceeds from a Caries or an Ulcer in the Bone, which, in time, has been heal'd, and grows into a flinty hard Substance. This may be  
 known



known by its bunching out and Unevenness, and by its Hardness.

The Oslets are more difficult and hard to be cur'd than Splents, because of their Scituation among the small Bones which are in the Joint, and are therefore only to be attempted by giving the Fire, tho' even that is not always attended with Success. But these are rarely to be met with.

## C H A P. LXXIX.

*Of a Ring-Bone.*

**T**HIS is a hard callous Substance, which grows in the hollow Circle of the little Pastern, immediately above the *Cronet*; it is sometimes hereditary, but more frequently occasion'd by a Strain, and is bred of the like Matter with the other hard Substances we have treated of in the preceding Chapters; sometimes it goes quite round like a Ring, from whence it has obtain'd the Name of *Ring-Bone*.

The usual Method of taking it off, is by the Application of strong caustick Medicines, such as Quicklime, Arsenick, Realgar, and the like, the Hair being first shav'd, and the hard Substance scarify'd. Some use unslack'd Lime in Powder, and apply it pretty thick over the Part, fastening it with a Cloath, and then ride the Horse into Water, letting him stand some time in it; by which means the Substance of the Ring-bone is destroy'd; and there is nothing further necessary than to heal up the Ulcer. This is a very expeditious Way, but whoever tries it had need be careful to guard the *Cronet*, or else it will be apt to cause a gathering of Matter under the Hoof, which would readily corrode the Coffin-Bone. There are others who cut the Ring-Bone streight downwards to the *Cronet*, in several Places, and put in Rowels; which, by forming Ulcers, and bringing a Rottenness and Corruption all about the Part, cause the Excrecences to loosen or melt away.

*Solleysell* observes that some Ring-Bones cannot be removed without giving the Fire, nor does that always succeed, but when the Sole is also taken out, and the Frush laid open; for by this there is a very great Moisture derived into the Part, and at the same time room given for the Matter to discharge itself,



which might otherwise loosen the *Cronet*, by being detain'd in the hollow Circle of the Pastern. The Method is this: Take out the Sole, and after the second Dressing, cut the Skin in several Places above the Cronet, so as to lay the Ring-Bone bare; then, with a hot Knife, cut the Ring-Bone thro' the Incisions till you reach to the Bottom, not all at once, but repeating the Strokes gently; in the mean time make a Cleft into the *Fruish*, and keep it open by applying into it Pledgits dipt in a Mixture of Tar, Honey and Turpentine, laying the same Dressing to all the fear'd Parts, until the Escars fall off.

Now it is very plain, a Ring-Bone may be removed by any of the preceding Methods, when rightly manag'd; and the only thing that makes them unsuccessful, is, when a Horse happens to be old or diseased, or when it chanches to be a natural Imperfection; but the most common Impediment, is the want of Skill to heal up the Ulcers, and to prevent the Matter getting under the Hough, and likewise to keep down the Growth of new Excrescences, which are ever apt to arise on those Parts; and therefore, as soon as the Pain and Anguish is over, the Sores should be dress'd with *Ægyptiacum*, or some other cleansing Ointment; and all the hollow Parts round the Pastern fill'd with Flax dipt in Vitriol-Water, or rather Spirit of Wine, and over all a Bandage as firm as the Horse can bear, reaching from beneath the *Cronet* almost to the Knee; this being the true Method to prevent the ill Consequences that may arise in the Cure, &c.

## CHAP. LXXX.

### *Of Wind-Galls.*

**W**IND-Galls are soft, yielding, flatulent Tumors, seated on either Side of the Foot-lock Joint, &c. they are caused by violent straining, or by a Horse's standing on a sloping Floor, and by several other Accidents, as Blows, Strokes from another Horse, &c.

The Cure.

The usual Method of Cure, is by opening them with a Fleam, to let out the gummy Matter, and applying to the Orifice a little Plaister of *Rosin*, *Pitch*, *Mastick*, Oil of *Bays*, with the White of an Egg; and there are some who mix with Plaisters of this kind

*Verdegrease*



*Verdegrease* and *Turpentine*, which is not amiss; but the Ointment made of equal Parts of *Turpentine* and *Quicksilver* will answer the End much better; especially if with it be mixt a small Quantity of *Verdegrease*, and the White of an *Egg* to make it stick fast to the Part. The hollow Spaces on each Side of the Sinew ought to be fill'd with Hurds moisten'd in warm Spirit of *Wine*, and good Bandage apply'd over all the Fetterlock, to prevent their growing again.

But to Wind-Galls that are large, emollient and softening Medicines are to be made use of, as Poultices made of Mallows, Marshmallows, &c. or the *Mucilage* Plaister or *Diachylon* with the Gums spread thick upon Leather. Or the following Charge may be apply'd:

' Take two Ounces of *Galbanum* pounded, boil it gently in a Pint of Vinegar over hot Embers, with half a Pound of common *Turpentine*; and after half an Hour's boiling, take it off the Fire, and add to it *Mastick*, *Myrrh*, *Dragon's-Blood* and *Bole*, of each three Ounces; mix, and make a Charge, which must be apply'd hot.'

If recourse must be had to caustick Medicines, an Ointment may be made with *Quicksilver* and *Turpentine*, of each an Ounce, *Euphorbium* and *Spanish Flies* in Powder, of each one Dram; this may be apply'd to the Wind-Gall, taking care to guard the great Sinew and the neighbouring Parts, as directed in a preceding Chapter. The Horse must always be ty'd up, to hinder him from biting it off. But if this cause too great an Inflammation, as may happen to some delicate Horses, the Ointment may be made weaker, by mixing a greater Quantity of *Turpentine* with it.

## C H A P. LXXXI.

## Of a Sinew-Sprain, &amp;c.

WHEN the Master-Sinew above the Hough, or that above the Footlock, or any of the other Sinews or Ligaments in those Parts, are strained or relaxed, they cause intolerable Pain and Lameness; and, when violent, will sometimes bring on a Fever, and endanger a Mortification, unless there be extraordinary Care taken, and timely Applications made. Therefore, as soon as you observe your Horse strain'd in any of those Parts, which, if it be in the Sinew,



may be known by its being unbent and relaxed, and by the Swelling and Inflammation, you must apply a cold Charge, such as has been directed for Strains in the Shoulder, &c. and after that a Plaister to strengthen the Part. But if it be so violent as to create some untowardly Symptoms, making the Horse sick and forsake his Food, you must, in that Case, take a plentiful deal of Blood from the Neck, and bath all his Leg two or three times a Day, with woollen Cloaths wrung out of a hot Fomentation, made of *Mint, Rue, Pennyroyal, Marjoram, Baum, Rosemary, Wormwood, Lavender*, and such like things; for these strengthen and comfort the nervous Parts; after which you may use Spirit of Wine camphorated, keeping it also cover'd with a Cloath dipt in the same, and fasten'd with an easy Bandage. Inwardly may be us'd all such Things as are proper to promote Sweat and ease Pain. And as soon as the Anguish is over, it will be proper to apply a good strengthening Charge or Plaister of *Pitch, Diachylon, Dragon's-Blood, and Bole*, &c. as has been directed in a preceding Chapter.

Attaint or  
Over-reach.

Sometimes the Strains in the Sinews of the Leg and Pasterns are occasion'd by an *Attaint* or *Over-reach*; we need not therefore bestow any other Place in treating of such Accidents, but only take Notice, that when they are accompanied with a Wound, they ought to be dress'd according to the Directions we have already laid down for the Cure of Wounds, avoiding, as much as possible, all oily and caustick Medicines, excepting when some preternatural Excrescences require the use of the latter. The same manner of Treatment is also requisite to a Horse that is gall'd or wounded by being *cast in his Halter*, applying nothing but good clean Digestives of *Tar, Turpentine* and *Honey*; and making use of spirituous Fomentations, with a good Quantity of Ashes boil'd in them, together with Bandage, as soon as the Part is able to bear it; and by these the Horse will be easily cur'd, if he be otherwise in good Case, without the Pain of corrosive Applications, which only become necessary after the Sinews have been relax'd and rotted with greasy Ointments.

Halter-cast.



## C H A P. LXXXII.

*Of the Grease falling into the Legs.*

THE Distemper that goes under this Denomination, is a Swelling and Gourdiness of the Legs, which frequently happening to Horses after a Journey; most People have therefore believ'd their Grease to be melted by hard Riding, and fallen into their Legs; and that which may have probably given Encouragement to this Opinion, is the Colour of the Matter issuing from the Chinks and Sores in those Parts, when they come to break, somewhat resembling Grease, as the Substance of the Legs is nervous and sinewy, whereby the Matter which comes from thence is different from what is discharg'd from the muscular and fleshy Parts, where the Redness and Texture of the Blood gives it a different Colour and Consistency.

It would be very little to our Purpose to bestow any time in confuting this ill grounded Opinion, since the contrary must be manifest to those who have the least insight into the Oeconomy and Structure of a Horse; we shall therefore proceed to acquaint the Reader, that the Grease has, in common with all other Swellings, either a Viscidity and Thickness of the Juices, or a Relaxation of the Vessels in which these Juices flow, or both.

But if we examine more particularly into the Matter, we shall find, that besides these, there are other Circumstances which conduce very much to the Swelling, and that is the Scituation and Make of the Legs. As to their Make, we have already observ'd, that they are very much compos'd of Nerves and Sinews, whose Vessels are so small, and laid so close together, that the Fluids contain'd in them may very easily become obstructed; and, by their Scituation, they are the most dependent Members of the whole Body; whereby, according to the Doctrine of the Circulation, all the Juices that are to be return'd in the Mass of Blood must ascend upwards in the Veins, which, in those Parts, have little or nothing to help their Progress but the Vibrations and Shakings of the Arteries, together with the muscular Motion. Whereas, on the other Hand, the arterial Fluid is constantly forwarded into the Limbs, not only by its Descent, but by its continual  
Expulsion



Expulsion from the Heart ; and therefore, when once the Blood is vitiated, and the Vessels in the Limbs relax'd and weaken'd, a Swelling must of consequence be expected, because a greater Quantity of Fluid is carried downward by the Arteries, than in that Case can be returned by the Veins.

And this is agreeable to all the common Accidents and Causes that usually bring on the Distemper, as Wounds, Bruises, hard and immoderate Riding, coming off a Journey, or from Grass to stand in a Stable, full Feeding without due Exercise, Colds and Surfeits, Debility and Weakness ; and, in fine, whatever may any wise relax and weaken the Tone of the Fibres ; and if we examine into these more particularly, we shall find, that according to the foregoing Theory, all of them may very naturally bring on the Grease.

For, in the *First* Place, albeit a Wound or Bruise, or other outward Accident in the dependent Parts, is seldom attended with any uncommon Symptoms, if the Horse be otherwise sound, and that due Care is taken in the Beginning ; yet, if a Horse in these Circumstances be neglected, or his Blood be vitiated, it will be apt to bring a Swelling into the Legs, as all Pain is a *Stimulus* which draws a more than ordinary Flux of Humors to the Part affected ; and if the Hurt be near any Joint, &c. it causes such a Stiffness and Aching, that the Horse becomes exceeding lame, and unable to lie down ; so that by continual standing, the Legs become swell'd and gourded.

*Secondly*, By immoderate hard Riding the Sinews and Ligaments are actuated and stretch'd, which is suddenly follow'd with Stiffness and Pain in the Joints, whereby, as in the preceding Case, a Flux of Humors is drawn down upon the Legs.

*Thirdly*, When Horses are come off a Journey, or from Grass, to stand in a Stable, their Legs are apt to turn gourdy and swell'd ; the first of these Cases differs not from the preceding in what relates to the Pain and Stiffness in the Limbs ; but it has also, in common with the latter, the abrupt breaking off a Habit from Exercise to Rest and full Feeding ; for while a Horse is upon his Journey, or at his Liberty in the Fields, he is every Day more or less in Motion, whereby the Blood is kept in constant Agitation ; but when he comes to stand still in the Stable, a Check is put to the Motion of the Blood in the small Vessels of the Limbs, while, by an habitual Aptitude, it still continues to be equally detach'd into all Parts by the larger Arteries, which may easily



easily bring on the Grease, even while there is yet no manifest Disorder in the Blood itself. But in the Case of Horses newly taken up from Grass, there is, besides this, oftentimes a Default in the Blood, especially when they are suffer'd to run abroad till late in the Year, for then the Grass loses its Strength, and begets Crudities, which render the Blood, and other Juices, viscid and thick; and when a Horse is taken off his Exercise, and brought to more generous Feeding, a *Plethora* or Fulness will soon happen, whereby it will be the more apt to stagnate in the Limbs, and cause such Heat and Itching, as must be soon follow'd with a Gourdiness and Swelling. The same Effect is also produced by Colds, Surfeits, and sometimes by Pampering and full Feeding alone, without the Concurrence of other Circumstances.

And *Lastly*, When a Horse has been brought low by Sicknes, or repeated Evacuations, or by any other Cause, there follows an universal Relaxation of Body; so that the Blood, and other Juices, become languid, and are apt to stagnate in those Parts that are the most dependent and remote from the Heart, not only as the Vessels themselves are relaxed and lose their Spring, but also from the Heaviness and Inactivity of the Spirits, whereby they become unable to give their Assistance in its Return; and thus the Grease is oftentimes complicated with some other Distemper.

From what has been said, it will be easy for any one to understand the Nature of the Grease, and the Manner of its Production; we shall therefore proceed to the Cure, wherein the first thing to be regarded, is the State and Condition of the Horse; for if the Grease be an Attendant on some other Sicknes, the Cure will be so much the more difficult; and it will be in vain to expect a Recovery until the Disease is remov'd, which has been the Origin and Cause of it; and therefore, if the Horse be *Hectick*, or has got the *Yellows* or *Farcin*, &c. the Methods laid down for the Cure of those Distempers must be follow'd, at the same time proper Applications are made outwardly: But if it be produc'd of the common and ordinary Accidents, and that the Horse is not otherwise diseased, a Method peculiar to that Distemper only is to be observ'd.

And in this Case, if the Horse has been pamper'd and well fed, the Cure ought to be begun by bleeding and purging, to lessen the Redundancy of Humors; neither should these be too often repeated; but what  
is

The Cure.



is wanting that way, had much better be effectuated by a more spare Diet with daily Exercise. For in all the Circumstances of the Grease there is a Tenderness and Delicacy, either originally or brought on by Habit or ill Usage, which is also manifest from hence, that young Horses are most subject to the Grease, as their Bodies are loose, soft and flexible, and their Juices naturally viscid and glutinous, which is necessary to the Accretion and Growth of all young Animals. Wherefore, when Evacuations are either too large, or often repeated, instead of being serviceable, they often become hurtful, and render the Distemper more obstinate, by adding to that Weakness and Relaxation of Body which is natural to greas'd Horses.

After moderate Evacuations, a Rowel may be made on the inside of the Thigh, or on the Belly, which may be continued for a Month, or longer, if there be occasion; and in the mean time, the Cinnabar or Antimonial Balls, &c. ought to be constantly given, in the Manner we have already laid down for the Cure of the *Farcin*: and while these things are comply'd with internally, the Legs should be frequently rub'd (but not with such hard Instruments as some People make use of) a good Wisp of Hay and a Brush being sufficient for that Purpose. Baths and Fomentations, such as may draw off the Humors by Transpiration, or render them fit to return back again with the common Current, are also to be made use of; and for this purpose we recommend the following.

‘ Take of common Wormwood eight Handfuls, St. John’s Wort, Centaury, Camomile, or the Flowers thereof, of each four Handfuls, Elder-Flowers two Handfuls, Bay-Berries half a Pound. Boil them in two Gallons of Water till one third is consum’d, and make a Fomentation.’

The Horse’s Legs are to be bath’d three or four times a Day, with woollen Cloaths wrung out of the Liquor, and apply’d as hot as he can bear them; adding always a third part of Spirit of Wine or Brandy; and if they be pretty much inflam’d, as happens sometimes when the Sinews are affected, a good Quantity of the Ashes of green Twigs of Vines, Wallnut-tree or Oak, may be boil’d in the Decoction, adding more Water. A good Bath or Fomentation may be also made, by boiling these Ashes alone, or the Ashes of any other green Wood, in Water, when the other Ingredients are not easy to be had. The Lees of Wine,  
with



with a Mixture of Black-Soap, is also very proper to be apply'd warm, as also Cow's-Dung boil'd in Vinegar. The following Cataplasm may likewise be made use of with good Success.

' Take of Honey one Pound, Turpentine six Ounces, ' incorporate them with a Spoon, then take Fœnu- ' greek and Linseed Meal, of each four Ounces, Bay- ' Berries and Juniper-Berries dry'd and made into ' Powder, of each two Ounces. Boil them in three ' Quarts of Red-Wine Lees, to the Thickness of a ' Poultrice; and when you take it off the Fire, add two ' Ounces of Camphire in Powder, spread it on Cloaths, ' and apply it warm to the Legs, fastning all with a ' strong Roller.' This may be continued for a Week, renewing it once in two Days.

The camphorated Spirit of Wine alone is very good, viz. an Ounce of Camphire to every Pint of the Spirits; and if it be frequently used, it will answer in most Cases where the Swelling is recent and new; and even when it has a tendency to break; for by its great Warmth, it puts a Check to that Heat and Itching which is often the Forerunner of Chops and Sores.

But some young Horses are so tender and apt to be greas'd, that even the Impressions of the cold Air in Winter will bring a Swelling into their Legs, in the same manner as it becomes the Cause of kided Heels in Children, by constringing and shutting up the Pores in those Parts, and all the Care imaginable can hardly prevent it. In this Case the following Plaister will be of great Service, not only to dissipate the Humors, but also to defend the Legs and Pasterns from the Air, and other external Injuries.

' Take common Pitch and Diachylon, or de Minio, ' of each half a Pound, Rosin one Pound, Myrrh, ' Galbanum and Frankincense, of each four Ounces, ' Bole-Armoniack and Dragon's-Blood, of each two ' Ounces, Oil Olive half a Pint. The Galbanum ' must be strain'd and dissolv'd in the Oil, with the ' Pitch and Diachylon, over a gentle Fire; after ' which the other Ingredients are to be added, being ' first made into Powder, keeping constantly stirring un- ' til the whole is incorporated.'

This Plaister may be either spread upon Leather, or apply'd hot upon the Legs and Pasterns, with a wooden Slice, with several Turns of a Roller over it, letting it continue so long as it will stick; and if there be occasion, it may be renew'd when it begins to crumble  
and



and fall off. Two of these Plaisters will serve a whole Winter; and while they are continued, there will be need of little other Means besides moderate and daily Exercise; but in all obstinate Cases, a Horse should be turn'd out to Grass, where he may have his full Liberty.

## C H A P. LXXXIII.

*Of the Mules or kib'd Heels.*

THESE are Chinks and Sores on the inside of the hind Pasterns, and in the Heels; sometimes they are caused by Gravel or Dirt wounding those Parts, or by travelling in deep Roads; but, for the most part, they proceed from Gourdiuess, that being the first Place where the Matter begins to discharge itself. If they proceed only from riding in deep gravelly Roads, they may be cur'd without any further Trouble than keeping them clean, washing them often with Chamberly or Brine; but when they are the Effect of the Grease, they become somewhat more difficult to be removed, and send forth abundance of stinking Matter.

While the Swelling is large, they ought not to be dress'd with Medicines that dry too fast, but with such as are moderately cleansing; for which purpose two Parts of *Basilicum*, with one Part of *Ægyptiacum*, will be very proper, bathing all the Chinks and Sores, as often as they are dress'd, with Spirit of Wine; if there be a great Foulness and Rottenness, *Ægyptiacum* alone may be made use of; but if that is not sufficient, you may mix, with every four Ounces of *Ægyptiacum*, white Vitriol and Powder of Galls, of each half an Ounce, with a Dram of corrosive Sublimate in fine Powder; as soon as they are become clean, Quicksilver and Turpentine will perfect the Cure. It will always be proper to keep a Cloath over your Dressings, ty'd on with a Roller, forming a Cross on the inside of the Pastern, that you may make your Turns above and below the Joint, by which means its Action needs not in the least be hinder'd.

Care should also be taken to dissipate the Swelling, according to the Method laid down in the preceding Chapter; neither ought Internals to be omitted, if his Constitution be faulty, which may be easily known by the Disposition of the Sores.



## C H A P. LXXXIV.

*Of the Pains or watery Sores on the Legs and Pasterns.*

**T**H E S E are caused by a ferous Matter ouzing thro' the Pores, which is indu'd with such a Sharpness, that it makes the Hair fall off from several Parts of the Legs and Pasterns; sometimes it loosens the *Cronet* from the Hoof; and sometimes the Flesh appears as if it was disjoin'd from the Bones and Sinews; wherever the Matter runs, it so hardens the Skin, that it is apt to break out into Cracks and Refts, which discharge abundance of stinking Matter, as in the abovemention'd Case.

The Cure consists chiefly in Internals, and in those things that are proper to rectify the Blood, as Decoc-tions of Box-wood, Guajacum and Sassafras, &c. or the said Woods may be rasp'd and mixt with his Oats, and sometimes among dry Bran. All the Medicines prescrib'd in the Farcin may be made use of in this Case: But if the Horse be inclineable to a Dropsy, which may be known by the yielding of the Swelling, and likewise as the fore Legs will also be affected, and by the other Signs peculiar to that Distemper, he must then be treated accordingly; mean while the following Applications may be made outwardly.

' Take Honey, Turpentine, and Hog's-Grease, of each a like Quantity: Melt them over a gentle Fire in a glaz'd Pipkin, and add a sufficient Quantity of Wheat Flower to make it into a Poulrice.' Or this:

' Take Fœnugreek Meal, Bean Flower, Linseed Meal, and Mustard Seed pounded, of each a like Quantity. Boil them over a gentle Fire, with a sufficient Quantity of Ointment of Marshmallows; or, for want of that, with Butter or Hog's-Lard, in to the Consistence of a Poulrice.'

These must be apply'd warm to the Legs and Pasterns, to draw out the Matter, and bring down the Swelling. If there be Foulness, you may take a Pound of Black-Soap, half a Pound of Honey, four Ounces of burnt Allum, two Ounces of Verdegrease in Powder, a Pint of Brandy or Spirit of Wine, with a sufficient Quantity of Wheat Flower. Let this be spread on Cloths, and apply'd as the former.



As soon as the Swelling is abated, and the Moisture dry'd up, it must be very convenient to keep the Legs and Pasterns roll'd up with firm Bandage, whereby the Parts will not only be kept close, but the Influx of fresh Matter prevented; for the Continuance or frequent Returns of those watery Eruptions brings such a Looseness into the Legs, that it causes a Rottenness in the Frush, breeds Splents; and, sometimes, by rotting the Tendons, becomes the Cause of Quitter-Bones, Foundering, and other Distempers in the Feet.

## C H A P. LXXXV.

*Of Warts, Scratches, Rats-Tails, and other Excrescences on the Legs and Pasterns.*

**T**H E S E are all of the same kind, and are more or less dangerous, as they are situated nearer or at a Distance from the large Sinews.

Warts may be wasted by touching them now and then with *Aqua fortis*, or may be cut off when they are superficial. But the Scratches are, for the most part, bred of some tendinous Substance, and have their Roots in or near the Tendons, like the Corns in Mens Feet; sometimes they grow so hard, that by pressing upon the softer Parts they cause violent Pain and Inflammation; but when this happens, a good Poulrice should be apply'd to ripen the Inflammation, which ought to be scarify'd as near the Excrescences as possible, unless the Matter spring naturally from the Roots of it, which will loosen them so as they may be easily removed by the use of Medicines that are but moderately corrosive.

Therefore, to proceed methodically, whenever you observe a Moisture and Rottenness, you need only apply a Lump of Rye-Leaven mixt with Vinegar and the Juice of Garlick, or Mustard-Seed pounded; and in two or three times Application it will bring out the Rottenness. Stamp Onions, the Roots of Marshmallows and Houseleek, made into a Paste with Barley or Rye Flower, has the same Effect. The Mucilage Plaister, or the Diachylon with the Gums spread on Leather, and apply'd to the Part, will also be very serviceable; but if the Scratches be hard, and lie on the Sinews, and thereby occasion Pain and Inflammation, endangering a Fever, in that Case it will be proper to  
take



take Blood from the Thigh-Vein, and to keep the Horse to an opening Diet. Then apply the following Cataplasm, first shaving away the Hair.

‘ Take of Hemlock four Handfuls, Groundsel two  
‘ Handfuls, stamp them with four Ounces of the  
‘ Roots of Marshmallows, and boil them in two Quarts  
‘ of Milk till the Ingredients turn soft, then pulp  
‘ the whole thro’ a Sieve, and make it into a Poultice,  
‘ with a sufficient Quantity of Soot and Flower of  
‘ Brimstone.’

This may be laid all over the Part, and renew’d every Day until the Heat and Inflammation is over, and the Excrescences grow soft and loose, after which they may be manag’d as above directed.

Sometimes Scratches put forth from sinuous Ulcers which penetrate to the Bone; in this Case, you must introduce your Probe into the Orifice, and try all the different ways it reaches, making Incision with a hot Knife, wherever the Part will admit of it, then make your Cure according to the Directions laid down for the Cure of Wounds, &c.

Rats Tails are distinguish’d from the other, because they generally creep from the Pastern to the middle of the Shank along the Master-Sinew, or on the Side of it; and are so call’d from the Resemblance they bear to the Tail of a Rat. Some are moist and some dry, and differ only from Scratches in their Figure and Scituation, and therefore admit of the same Method of Cure. If they be hard, they may be loosen’d or cut off with a hot Knife, and afterwards dress’d with Turpentine, Tar and Honey; and, if necessary, the Powder of Verdegrease and White-Vitriol may be mixt with it. The following Applications are generally us’d for the Cure of Scratches, Rats-Tails, Kibes, and all the other Sorances about the Legs and Pasterns.

‘ Take Hog’s-Grease, Soap, Brimstone and Honey:  
‘ Boil them into a Poultice, with a sufficient Quantity  
‘ of Soot; and to every four Ounces add half an  
‘ Ounce of the Powder of Verdegrease.’

‘ Take four Ounces of Black-Soap, two Ounces of  
‘ Quicklime in Powder, and Vinegar, what is suffi-  
‘ cient to make an Ointment.’

Orpiment, Arsenick, Realgar, and such like things, are also made use of in the same Intention, in the Form of Ointments, with Honey and Hog’s-Lard; and sometimes into that of a Poultice, by a Mixture of Flower, Barley and Rye-Meal; and sometimes Soot:



But these hot burning Ingredients are never properly made into the Form of a Poultice, but are chiefly fit for Ointments, which are design'd only to cover the Excrefcences, without touching the neighbouring Parts.

*Solleyfell* recommends a Remedy, which he calls a *White Honey Charge*, for the Cure of all those Excrefcences. It is as follows :

“ Take eighteen large white Lillie-Roots, chop  
 “ and boil them in two Gallons of Whey, or Barley-  
 “ Water ; when the Roots begin to grow soft, add of  
 “ the Leaves of Mallows and Marshmallows, of each  
 “ ten Handfuls ; continuing to boil them till they be  
 “ all reduc'd to a perfect Mash, pouring in Liquor  
 “ from time to time, to supply what is evaporated ;  
 “ then pulp the Ingredients thro' a Hair-Sieve : Take  
 “ what passes thro' the Sieve, and boil it again with a  
 “ Pound of Tallow, and the like Quantity of Butter ;  
 “ then remove it from the Fire ; and when it has done  
 “ boiling, add Honey and common Turpentine, of  
 “ each a Pound, and make the whole into the Con-  
 “ sistence of a Poultice with Wheat Flower.”

This is to be apply'd cold, in the manner of a Poultice, once a Day, and it will very much help to soften those Excrefcences, and take out the Heat and Anguish wherewith they are often attended. The same Author prescribes also an Ointment made of crude Quicksilver and Brimstone, with a double Quantity of Tallow, which is also very good, but would be much better with equal Parts of Tallow and Turpentine.

## C H A P. LXXXVI.

### *Of a Quitter-Bone.*

A Quitter-Bone is an Imposthume which breeds between the Hoof and Coffin-Bone, on the upper part, and makes its first Appearance by a Swelling on the *Cronet*. It proceeds from a Blow, a Strain, or Over-reach ; and sometimes it is caused by a long continued Swelling of the Legs and Pasterns, &c.

If this Ulcer be not of a very old standing, it may be cur'd by the Application of *Ægyptiacum*, mixt with Basilicum or Turpentine ; but if it be of some Continuance, and that probably the Matter has, by lodging  
 between



between the Hoof and Coffin-Bone, rotted the Coffin-Bone, or the Tendons of the Muscles that pass between that Bone and the Hoof; you must, in that Case, open the Tumor with a Razor, or other sharp Instrument, cutting away all that is corrupted and rotten, either under the Hoof, or any other part of the Foot; and to make way for your Operation, you ought to rasp down some part of the Hoof. If any Bits remain, that you cannot easily come at with your Instrument, you must bring them off by applying Dossils of Flax dipt in *Ægyptiacum* made warm, which, for the most part, will suffice, laying over all Pledgits soak'd in hot Tar. But if you find some Difficulty in separating that gristly Substance, you may mix equal Parts of Myrrh, Aloes, and Sublimate all in fine Powder, making it into a Paste, with a sufficient Quantity of Spirit of Wine, and apply it to the remaining Gristle, laying over it Pledgits soak'd in hot Tar, as above directed; and as soon as it is freed from all the superfluous Substances, and looks clean, you may heal up the Ulcer with Tar, Turpentine and Honey, washing it now and then with Coperas or Vitriol Water.

## C H A P. LXXXVII.

*Of Foundring in the Feet.*

**T**HIS is an excessive Pain in the Feet, whereby the Horse being scarcely able to touch the Ground, draws himself in a Heap, upon which Account most People have constantly been of Opinion, that a Horse in this Condition must also be founder'd in his Body, and his Grease molten, which immediately falling downwards causes that Lameness; and therefore, in their Cure, have made Applications to the Back and Loins, as well as to the Feet. But Mr. *Snape*, in his Anatomy, has not only given the best Account of this Distemper, but has also pointed forth the true Method of Cure, which we shall insert here for the Reader's Benefit and Satisfaction. In describing the *Coffin-Bone* he has the following Words:

“ Its Substance is fungous or spongy, having innumerable little Holes piercing thro' its Sides, for the Passage of the Vessels, as also very many small Sinus's, whereunto are implanted the Ends of the Tendons of the Muscles that move the lower part of



“ the Leg and Foot, whose Fibres being at any time  
 “ affected, either by Bruises, ill Shoeing, or standing  
 “ in the Water after hard Riding, while the Horse is  
 “ hot, or but by standing still in the Stable for several  
 “ Days without having the Feet stopt up, and the like;  
 “ I say, the tendinous Fibres being affected by these  
 “ or other means, cause the Horse to have such great  
 “ Pain in his Feet, that he can scarce indure to tread  
 “ upon them, which Lameness we call a *Founder*. Now  
 “ this Distemper is so much the harder to cure, by  
 “ reason these Fibres lie so far out of reach, most of  
 “ them running on the upper Side of the Bone (be-  
 “ twixt it and the Hoof) and not to its Bottom; so  
 “ that the Hoof growing upon the Sides, as the Soal  
 “ doth at the Bottom, there is great Hazard; but we  
 “ shall miss effecting a Cure, if we only pull the Soal  
 “ out, and do not cut part of the Hoof off also.  
 “ This is not my bare Opinion, but the Experience of  
 “ those who have had good Success in curing founder’d  
 “ Horses, who, by raising the Hoof from the *Crownet*,  
 “ or Top of it, to the very Bottom, in five or six  
 “ Places, until they have made the Blood come; and  
 “ then applying their Remedies to those Places, have  
 “ made those Horses sound, whom the drawing out of  
 “ their Soals would not cure.”

Now it is very plain, when the Infirmary lies in the  
 tendinous Fibres, which are inserted into the upper  
 Part of the Coffin-Bone, it cannot readily be removed  
 by barely taking out the Soal, as Mr. *Snape* has justly  
 observ’d; and therefore the Method he has laid down  
 ought, in all obstinate Cases, to be comply’d with, as  
 the most certain, and what, if rightly manag’d, may,  
 for the most part, be attended with good Success; and  
 nothing can be more properly apply’d to the Wounds  
 made in the Hoof, than *Tar*, *Turpentine* and *Honey*  
 melted together, with a fourth part of Spirit of Wine,  
 soaking Pledgits of clean Hurds in this Mixture, and  
 laying them pretty warm upon the Rasures or Chinks,  
 omitting two Days after the first Dressing, continuing  
 afterwards to make your Applications every Day, until  
 the vacant Spaces of the Hoof are fill’d up. The  
 same Applications ought also to be made to the Soal,  
 covering the whole Foot with flaxen Cloths dipt in Oil  
 and Vinegar beat together, which may be fasten’d with  
 a Roller, or a pretty long piece of Lint.

But the preceding Method is only necessary in obsti-  
 nate Cases, for many times the Foundring is cur’d only  
 by



by melting Pitch and Tar together, with a sufficient Quantity of Hog's Lard, pouring the Mixture boiling hot upon the Soal, and stuffing it up very carefully with Hurds, and above them a piece of Leather with Splents. This is very good, but would be still more efficacious, if the Soal was par'd somewhat thin, and half an Ounce of Camphire dissolv'd in the Mixture, just as it comes off the Fire.

## C H A P. LXXXVIII.

*Of Surbating, &c.*

**A** Horse is said to be surbated when the Soal is worn, bruised, or spoiled by any Accident, as by bad Shoeing, especially when they lie too flat on the Foot, or when the Horse goes too long barefoot; as also by travelling in hard ways, or among dry hot Sand in hot Weather, which dries the Hoof, whereby the Soal becoming hard, presses upon the soft Parts beneath it. If a Horse be surbated by bad Shoeing, you may know the Part that is affected by the thinness of the Shoe where it presses most; and therefore it ought to be par'd deepest in that Part before another is set on; but if the Shoe is not in the fault, it may be known he is surbated, by his continual hitching and moving; but by feeling his Hoofs, you may observe them to be both very hot and dry.

The Cure is very easy before it becomes attended with other Accidents, and may be performed only by stopping up the Feet with Ox or Cow's-Dung and Vinegar; some break a Couple of new-laid Eggs, and apply them raw to the Soals, and then stop them up with Ox or Cow's-Dung; some use only Hog's-Grease boiling hot, and thicken'd with Bran; and there are others make use of Vinegar and Soot boil'd together; but nothing will be more efficacious, in case it be troublesome, than first softning the Soal with the Application of unctuous things, and after that pouring a mixture of boiling Pitch and Tar, &c. upon the Soal, as directed in the preceding Chapter.



## C H A P. LXXXIX.

*Of Retracts and Pricks in the Foot.*

**N**othing causes more Pain and Trouble than the Accidents that happen to the Feet by bad Shoeing, or when sharp Splents or Stubs, &c. are stuck in the tender Parts within the Soal, the Reason of which cannot be very difficult to any one who is acquainted with the Foot of a Horse, which consists of a Bone that is very open and spungy; and which, as has been observ'd in a preceding Chapter, is full of little Holes for the Passage of Vessels, and several Sinus's for the Insertion of the Tendons of Muscles which compose most of that Substance which lies between it and the Hoof; and therefore, when once those sensible Parts are wounded by the above-mention'd, or other Accidents, they turn to Ulcers that are very difficult and hard to be cur'd, unless they be timely prevented. And that which also contributes greatly to this, is the Disposition of the Hoof, which, altho' it be a Defence to the Foot, yet, as all the other Parts are inclosed within it as in a Box, the Artist is thereby often at a loss to find out the true Place where the Grievance lies; for in all Parts that are cover'd with Flesh, a Tumor will arise outwardly, even tho' its Cause be in the Bone; but the Hardness of the Hoof hinders its Elevation and Swelling; and as Nature always makes her Efforts in Places that are weak, and the least capable of Resistance, so it is not uncommon to find a Swelling and Rottenness about the Frush, or about the Cronet, which is sometimes accompanied with a Swelling and Gourdiness of the Legs and Pasterns, when the Cause is from a Caries in the Coffin-Bone.

Now, it is very demonstrable from what has been said, that all such Effects may be produc'd by a Prick of a Nail, a Stub, or a Fleak, when it sticks in those tender sensible Parts, tho' the first is seldom attended with any bad Accident, excepting when the Horse's Blood is distemper'd; and all that is necessary, is only to draw the Nail carefully out, and pour in a little Oil of Turpentine or Spirit of Wine into the Orifice, or rather a little melted Wax, leaving it without a Nail for some Days, and taking Care not to ride the Horse into Water.



But if there be any Fleak or piece of Nail remaining in the Quick, which may be known by examining the Nail you have pull'd out, or by the continued Pain, with a constant Discharge of Matter, you may introduce a piece of dry Sponge, made in form of a Tent, with a Thread drawn thro' the End of it: This may be renew'd every Day, paring the Soal very thin over the Orifice, that it may stretch and widen; for by that means the Fleak or piece of Nail may become loose, and have room to fall off with the Matter. But if after all you find a continued Lameness, and the Matter that comes from the Sore thin and bloody, or yellow, viscid and stinking, you may then reasonably conclude there is an Ulcer form'd either in the Bone or among Sinews; in that Case it will be proper to take up the Soal, and, with a Razor or Fleam, make Incisions until you have got a full View of the Bottom of the Sore, taking Care not to wound the large Sinews, if possible, unless they be mortify'd and rotten; you need only apply dry Lint to the Part, or Lint dipt in Spirit of Turpentine, for the first Dressing, which needs not be removed for two or three Days, in which time the Wound will be digested, and the Blood turn'd to Matter; and if the Coffin-Bone be foul, you may scale it by the Application of some caustick Medicine, as the Powder of Sublimate mixt with Honey, and spread on a Pledgit, or with Spirit of Vitriol; but the best way is to sear it with a hot Iron; and when the Scales are fallen off, you need only dress it with Pledgits dipt in Tincture of Myrrh and Aloes, until the Bone is cover'd, laying other Pledgits over these dipt in warm Digestive of Turpentine, Honey, and Spirit of Wine. If any Accident happen, as the putting forth of proud Flesh, &c. it may be kept down with such Remedies as have been prescrib'd in the Cure of Ulcers. To allay the Heat and Inflammation, which often happens on such Occasions, you may charge the Hoof with Vinegar, Bole, and the Whites of Eggs; and if the Anguish reaches higher, you may charge the Leg and Pastern with a Mixture of Wine-Lees and Vinegar, keeping the Horse all the while to moderate Feeding.

But if after all this the Horse continues lame, and that you find some Difficulty to make a Cure, you may readily suspect the Anguish of this has caused an Ulceration in some other Part of the Foot, the best way is to raze the Hoof in several Places, according to the Method laid down in the 87th Chapter; and when



you have found the grieved Part, you are to treat it as an Ulcer, &c.

## C H A P. XC.

*Of the Running Frush.*

**T**HIS is a scabby and ulcerous Disposition in the Frush, which sometimes causes it to fall off by degrees. It may be known both by the Eye and Smell, resembling that of old rotten Cheese. It is not dangerous, but very troublesome, as it causes a continual Itching.

In order to the Cure, you must pare the Foot with your Buttrefs as near as you can, then wash the Part with Lime-Water or Alum-Water boiling hot; then apply a Charge made of Soot, Vinegar, and the Whites of Eggs, and wash the Parts sometimes with Vitriol-Water; at last, when you perceive the Itching gone, pour melted Tar all over the Frog, and keep the Foot clean from Dirt and Filth.

## C H A P. XCI.

*Of the Crown-Scab.*

**T**HIS proceeds from a malignant sharp Matter ouzing thro' the Skin above the *Cronet* or Coronet, which frets off the Hair, and hardens into a white mealy Scab. In some Horses it is accompanied with a Moisture, and sends forth a stinking Matter, like the Pains and watry Sores describ'd in the 84th Chapter.

The Cure is, first, to scrape off the Scabs gently, and afterwards wash the Sores with Copperas or Vitriol-Water; some make use of Spirit of Wine wherein Tobacco has been infus'd, which often succeeds; others cure this Scab by applying Soap and Salt; but if it be of an old Standing, and grown very obstinate, the following Plaister will be of great use:

‘ Take Rosin half a Pound, Pitch six Ounces, Turpentine four Ounces, Verdegrease and Brimstone in fine Powder, of each three Ounces: Melt the Pitch, Rosin and Turpentine over a gentle Fire, and then stir in your Powders: If it be too hard, you may soften it by adding a little more Turpentine; and if  
‘ you



‘ you incorporate a small Quantity of Quicksilver with  
 ‘ it, it will be so much the more effectual. This  
 ‘ must be spread on Leather, and apply’d to the Part,  
 ‘ first shaving away the Hair, letting it lie so long as it  
 ‘ will stick.’

The same may be apply’d to the Legs and Pasterns, if the Affection spreads above the *Cronet* to those Parts, giving your Horse now and then a little Antimony among his Oats until he be cur’d. But if, by reason of this Scab, the *Cronet* become ulcerated, and some part of the Gristle be infected, as sometimes falls out, you are to extirpate all that is useless, and heal up the Sore, as has been directed in the Cure of Ulcers, &c.

## C H A P. XCII.

## Of Figs.

THESE are spongy Excrescences, which most commonly grow out on the Feet of such Horses as are high and hollow, with large fleshy Heels; they are caused by all the common Accidents that happen to the Feet, as Surbating, Foundring, &c. and oftentimes they are the Consequence of a long continued Gourdiness in the Legs and Pasterns. Their Seat is, for the most part, at the Top or Side of the Frush; but when they are suffer’d to grow old, or are dry’d up with strong Ointments, they take another Course, and spread to the Corner of the Heel. They are, as most other Excrescences of that kind, bred and nourished of the same Matter which sustains and nourishes the the finewy and nervous Parts, and are only to be cur’d by Extirpation.

Therefore, if the Figs be on the Side of the Frush, pare away so much of the Hoof as may give you room to reach the Sore with a Fleam or Lancet, then cut the Soal about the Fig, and take them clean out, avoiding, as much as possible, to wound the large Blood-Vessels. Let your first Dressing be made of dry Hurds to stop the Bleeding; and, if it requires a Stiptick Remedy, consult the 51st Chapter; two or three Days thereafter remove your Dressing; and if any part of the Excrescence be left, you may destroy it by applying *Egyptiacum* spread on Bolsters or Pledgits of Hurds, mixing with every Ounce of the said Ointment half a  
 Dram



Dram of Arsenick or corrosive Sublimate, enlarging or diminishing the Quantity of the latter as you find your Horse able to bear it, or the Circumstances of the Sore may require; and then heal up the Sore with a good Digestive and spirituous Applications, &c.

But if the Fig has its Insertion into the sinewy or gristly Substances in those Parts, you must take up the Soal; and if any parts of the Gristle be corrupted, you may cut it off with a Razor or other sharp Instrument. If the Bone be ulcerated and *carious*, you may touch it with a hot Iron, and then dress it with Pledgits dipt in a Tincture of Myrrh, Aloes, and Frankincense, as has been directed in other Cases of the like Nature; and also with warm Turpentine and Honey of Roses, until the Bone is cover'd; afterwards heal up the Sore with some good Digestive.

### C H A P. XCIII.

*Of Hoofs brittle or too soft.*

**T**H E S E two Extrems are equally prejudicial, as they are often the Cause of a great many ill Accidents in the Feet. The Softness of the Hoof may proceed from a humid, moist Constitution, from going in wet and marshy Grounds, or standing constantly on wet Litter, or from any Infirmary that may bring a too great Moisture into the Feet, as a Gourdi-ness and Swelling in the Legs and Pasterns, &c. And from hence the reason of dry Hoofs may be easily understood, as it must come from a contrary Cause, *viz.* from standing too dry, a dry and hot Constitution, or from any Infirmary depriving them of their due Nourishment.

If the Hoofs be too dry, most greasy and unctuous Remedies are proper to soften them, as Lard, Sheep's or Ox-Suet, Oil Olive, or rather a Mixture of these together. But they will be much the better, if they be made into the Consistence of a stiff Ointment, by adding *Galbanum*, *Wax*, *Olibanum*, and such like things. But an equal Quantity of Tar, Tallow, and common Honey incorporated together, will answer the End very effectually; especially while there is no other Accident besides a bare Hardness of the Hoof. But if the Horse's Hoofs be too moist, they may be bath'd every Day with warm Vinegar, Verjuice, Copperas-  
Water,



Water, and such like; or with these boil Powder of Galls, and let the Horse stand dry, keeping him, at the same time, to moderate Feeding, and his Hoofs will soon grow hard.

## C H A P. XCIV.

*Of Narrow-Heels, &c.*

A Horse that is *Hoof-bound*, and has narrow Heels, has the Quarters of his Foot narrower towards the Shoe than the *Cronet*; so that the soft Substance between the Coffin and the Hoof is pressed upon, which causes the Horse to go lame. Sometimes the Hoof presses on both Quarters, but very often on the inside only, being much weaker, and more easily bent than the other; and, in some Cases, the whole Hoof is shrunk on the upper part, that it makes a hollow Circle under the *Cronet*, pressing so hard, that it intercepts the Nourishment that should go to the Foot.

This Imperfection proceeds sometimes from a Driness of the Hoof, but very often from strait Shoeing, and by weakning the Quarters of the Hoof by paring them too deep; and sometimes it is caused by Foundring, and other Accidents to which a Horse's Feet are expos'd.

The Cure is, first of all, to shoe him with Lunets or Half-moon Shoes, or with those *Pantofle* Shoes describ'd by *Solleysell*, or any other that will sufficiently press out the Quarters; after which anoint his Hoofs with the softning Remedies prescrib'd in the preceding Chapter, and let him stand some Days in his own Dung. But if the Binding and Pressure of the Hoof cannot be reliev'd thereby, recourse must be had to an Operation: And if the Hoof be bound all round the *Cronet*, first give the Fire, making several Rases from the Gristle of the *Cronet* to the Shoe, piercing the Hoof about the Thickness of a Crown-Piece, repeating the same Operation on the other Side of the Heel, for the Fire softens the Hoof and makes it stretch, after which keep the Foot constantly mollify'd and soften'd, as already directed. But in the most obstinate Cases it will be necessary to take out the Soal, which our above-mention'd Author observes to be the best and speediest Remedy, and whose Method is likewise the most reasonable; which is, after the Soal is removed, to cleave the Frush with a Fleam, and fix a Splent



Splent of Iron to the Part, placing it so that it may open the Heels, and keep them an Inch or two wider than they were before. This is plain to Sense, because the intermediate Substance that fills up the Cleft will keep them constantly wide enough for the time to come, if Care be taken in their Shoeing, &c.

## C H A P. XCV.

*Of a false Quarter.*

**A** False Quarter is a Rist or Chink in the Quarter of the Hoof, from Top to Bottom; it happens generally on the inside, that being the weakest and the thinnest, and proceeds from the Driness of the Hoof, but especially when a Horse is ridden in dry, sandy, or stony Ground, in hot Weather, or in frosty Weather, when the Ways are flinty and hard: It is likewise caused by bad Shoeing, and all the other Accidents whereby a Horse becomes Hoof-bound, for the Narrowness of the Heels and Brittleness of the Quarters continually expose a Horse to all the said Accidents.

This Accident is both dangerous and painful, for as often as a Horse sets his Foot to the Ground the Chink widens; and when he lifts it up, the sharp Edges of the divided Hoof wound the tender Flesh that covers the Coffin-Bone, which is, for the most part, follow'd with Blood, and it must of course be apt to render a Horse lame, as it is very difficult to form a Reunion.

The usual Method taken to remedy this Imperfection, is by cutting off that part of the Shoe which lies upon the Chink, that it may be wholly uncover'd; then with a drawing Iron to open the Rist to the quick, filling it up in all Parts with a Rowel of Hurds dipt in Turpentine, Wax and Sheep's Suet molten together, renewing it every Day until the Seam is fill'd up; after it is closed in the Top, or upper Part, it is usual to draw the Place betwixt the Hoof and *Cronet*, which, by softning the Hoof, and bringing a Moisture into it, causes it to grow the faster, and shoot downwards. But there are some who fear the *Cronet* above the Crack, without piercing the Skin just where the Hoof begins; and with another Iron fear the Chink about the Middle of the Hoof, which succeeds very well, if care be taken to keep the Hoof moist with  
Appli-



Applications of Tar, Honey and Grease. Some pour *Aquafortis* into the Rift, when the Pain is violent, to deaden the Part, making a Border of Wax on each Side to hinder it from spoiling the rest of the Hoof; and there are others who prepare a flat piece of Wood, about an Inch in breadth, but at the same time so slender, that it will bend like a Hoop, and of a sufficient Length to go twice round the Hoof; and having first drawn the whole length of the Cleft, they apply Turpentine, Pitch and Suet molten together, to the Sore, and fasten the Hoop with pieces of Lint or Filleting. This is a Contrivance to answer instead of Bandage, to keep the Chink united, and to prevent it from jaring when the Foot is mov'd; which is, indeed, very reasonable; for the least Motion will be apt to discompose the tender Substance that grows up in the Cleft, and cause Imposthumation, which will again open the Hoof. But I am of Opinion, instead of this troublesome way, the following Method will be found more easy and successful.

First, draw the whole Length of the Cleft gently with your drawing Iron, then anoint the Hoof with Tar, Honey and Suet, molten together, as directed, for nothing can be more proper for the Hoof, and lay a thin Pledgit dipt in the same along the Cleft; after this take of Rope-yarn, such as the Sailors use, which is no other than Hemp moisten'd in melted Pitch and Tar, and spun loose; apply the Yarn all down the Hoof, beginning at the *Cronet*, and descend downwards, one Lay after another, as close as the binding of the Hoops of Wine-Casks, laying a smooth Pledgit of Flax behind, to keep it from fretting the Heel. This should be open'd once in three or four Days, that the Cleft may be dress'd; and to prevent any Inconveniency that can happen by the opening, a thin Staple may be also contrived with Points like Horseshoe Nails, cast off obliquely, to take a slender Hold, the Plate of it crossing the Cleft where part of the Shoe is cut off, and the Nails coming out on each Side the Cleft on the upper Part, to be riveted as the other Nails. By this Method a Cleft in any part of the Hoof may easily be cur'd, if the Horse be not very old or diseased.



## C H A P. XCVI.

*Of casting the Hoof.*

THE loss of the Hoof is occasion'd by Pricks, Stubs, Foundring, Surbating, or whatever Accident may bring an Impoſthumation into the Foot, whereby the whole Coffin of the Hoof becomes loosen'd and falls off from the Bone; and sometimes the Coffin-Bone, which is ſpongy and eaſily broke, falls off in large Pieces along with the Hoof; but this is a very deſperate Caſe, ſince a perfect Foot can never be form'd after ſo great a Loſs; but a new Hoof may be procur'd with Care and proper Applications, if the Coffin-Bone, &c. be not injur'd.

The uſual Method to procure a new Hoof, is to apply to the Coffin Tar, Turpentine, Wax, Oil, Pitch, and ſuch things melted together; then they make a Boot of Leather, with a ſtrong Soal, to be lac'd faſt about the Paſtern, bolſtring and ſtopping the Foot with ſoft Flax, that the Tread may be eaſy, renewing the Dreſſing every Day until the new Hoof grow. The Boot is certainly very proper, but the Ointment will not always be ſufficient to make a ſound and ſmooth Hoof; and therefore if the Part grows fungous, which is very common, and, in a great Meaſure, the Cauſe of the ill Shape and Unevenneſs of the new Hoof, ſharper Applications ought to be made uſe of; for which Purpoſe we recommend the following:

' Take of Roſin half a Pound, Oil Olive one Pound:  
' diſſolve the Roſin in the Oil, over a gentle Fire,  
' take it off, and when it begins to cool, add Myrrh,  
' Aloes, Maſtich and Olibanum in fine Powder, of  
' each two Ounces, and make it into an Ointment.'

Take of this Ointment and *Ægyptiacum* equal Parts, diſſolve them over the Fire, and with Pledgits ſoak'd therein dreſs the whole Hoof; and having made an eaſy Bandage over it, return it into the Boot. If the Ointment be requir'd more powerful, you may add the Powder of white Vitriol or burnt Alum, *viz.* two Ounces of either to a Pound of the Ointment, with half an Ounce of Orpiment, whereby the Hoof may be preſerv'd ſmooth, being dreſs'd once a Day in the Manner directed.

It



It is the way of some Farriers, when they observe the new Hoof a growing, before the old one falls off, to pull away the old one, but they ought never to be too hasty, unless some Accident happen to require its Removal, for the old Hoof serves as a Cover and Defence to the new one, and makes it grow the more smooth and even, as in a Mould; and Nature, for the most part, will cast it off of her own Accord, as soon as it becomes useless. I knew a Horse in this Condition that was turn'd out into a Field, where there was a Shade for him to lie under; he lay most part of the time his Hoof was a growing, and had Hay given him five or six times a Day; and by favouring his lame Foot, the old Hoof came off, and the new one grew with very little Assistance; and altho' he was not young at that time, he afterwards travel'd and did very good Service.

*F I N I S.*





BOOKS Printed for, and sold by W ILLIAM TAYLOR, at the Sign of the Ship in Paternoster-row.

1. A Neat, beautiful, and correct Edition of *Plutarch's* Morals, in 5 Vols. 12ves. Translated from the Greek by several Hands.

2. *Bysshe's* Art of *English* Poetry, in 4 Vols. being a compleat Common Place Book to the Works of our most eminent *English* Poets. Continued to the Year 1718.

3. Bishop *Beveridge's* Thoughts, in 2 Vols. 8vo. with Cuts.

4. *Dugdale's* Monasticon Anglicanum. Translated into *English*, with above 100 Cuts of Cathedrals, Abbies, Monasteries, and other religious Houses. Fol.

5. *Theatrum Scotiæ*. Containing Prospects of the most considerable Places in *Scotland*, with about 60 Copper Plates. Folio.

6. Dr. *Salmon's* *English* Herbal, or History of Plants, adorn'd with Figures of the most considerable Species, representing to the Life the true Forms of those several Plants, in an Alphabetical Order.

7. *Vitruvius Britannicus*: Or, The *British* Architect, containing the Plans, Elevations and Sections of the regular Buildings, both publick and private, in *Great Britain*, with Variety of new Designs, in 200 large Folio Plates, engraven by the best Hands. In two Volumes. All delineated from the Buildings, or from the original Drawings of the Architects, who have most generously promoted this useful Work. By Mr. *Campbel*.

8. Sacred Geography, contain'd in six Maps. 1. Shewing the Scituation of Paradise, and the Country inhabited by the Patriarchs. 2. The Peopling of the World by the Sons of *Noah*, and the *Israelites* journeying in the Wilderness. 3. A Plan of the City of *Jerusalem*, with a View of *Solomon's* Temple, and all the sacred Utensils therein. 4. The Holy Land divided into the twelve Tribes of *Israel*, in which are exactly traced our Saviour's Travels. 5. The Land of *Canaan*. 6. The Travels of *St. Paul*, and the rest of the Apostles. The whole very useful for the better understanding the Holy Bible.



